Duke Huon of Burdeux.

Early English Text Society,

Extra Series, Nos. XLIII, L.

1884, 1887.
Sir John Bourchier, Knight. 
Seventeen Baron Berners (1560-1533)
The
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

The Boke of
Duke Huon of Burdeux

done into English by
Sir John Bourchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,
NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY
S. L. LEE, B.A.,
BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. II.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIV, MDCCCLXXXVII.
Extrav Series,
XI. L.
PREFATORY NOTE.

The portrait which is prefixed to this volume will, I hope, prove of some general interest. As the work of Holbein, and a memorial of a first discoverer of the capacities of English prose, it deserves a very prominent position among portraits of English men of letters. The original painting is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire. It has been reproduced here for the first time by the kind permission of its owner, the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson. Lord Berners is represented in the robes of the Chancellor of the Exchequer: he holds in his right hand a lemon to protect him (according to a contemporary belief) from the plague, to which his presence in the Exchequer Court frequently exposed him. The picture is described by Mr. Ralph Wornum in his edition of Horace Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting* (i. 82), but Dr. Alfred Woltmann in his elaborate book on Holbein makes no mention of it. The present engraving is the work of Messrs. Dawson of the Typographic Etching Company.

I regret that I have been unable to complete the reprint of this romance in a second part. The tale of Huon's wife, Esclaramonde, and of the treacherous advances made towards her by the Emperor of Germany (*chapters* lxxxvi—clvii), is alone printed here. The concluding portions of Lord Berners' work, relating the wooing and marriage of Huon's daughter, Clariet, the repulsive trials to which Ide, Clariet's daughter, was subjected, and the early fortunes of Croisant, Ide's son (*chapters* clviii—clxxxiv), are reserved for a third part. For that part I am also preparing glossaries of the proper names, places, and obscure words, with appendices on the leading differences in the language of the first and third editions, and on
some of the more curious legends introduced into the story. Lovers of fairy lore may find much to interest them in the pages that follow. Huon’s second journey to the East (pp. 361 et seq.), to obtain succour in behalf of his wife and child, involves him in more marvellous perils than any he met with in his earlier travels. The descriptions of Judas Iscariot (pp. 363-7) and of Cain are singular examples of the mediæval mythology that grew out of scriptural history. The account of the last days of Oberon (pp. 597-606) is, like many passages in the first part, worthy of notice in future commentaries on Shakespeare’s Midsummer Night’s Dream.

The length of this romance will doubtless deter all but a very few students from proceeding very far in its perusal. It must in fairness be admitted, too, that the plot works sluggishly, wanting in rapid energy, and abounding in detail, which the modern critic will denounce as superfluous. But such incidents as those to which I have drawn attention effectively relieve the story’s prolixity, and the never unmelodious monotony of its language is at times broken, as I have shown before, by tones of the purest beauty. It is moreover in its bulk, as in all other respects, an excellent representative of the popular literature of sixteenth-century England. And let us remember that it is not in effect much longer than an ordinary three-volume novel of our own day, with which in an historical sense it invites comparison. It therefore behoves lovers of the fiction of the present age to treat Huon of Burdeux, its author, and those sixteenth-century readers who could eagerly devour its pages, sympathetically: for the judgment that we pass to-day on Lord Berners’ book and its first enthusiastic patrons, assuredly awaits three centuries and a half hence whatever may survive of the light literature of our own time, and ourselves, who reward it with a golden homage.

I desire to take this, the first opportunity allowed me, of correcting a misstatement made by Mrs. T. H. Ward in the Athenæum (August 18th, 1883), to disprove an assertion of mine that appeared in the same journal five weeks earlier. Mrs. Ward there set among her “facts” the remark that “Lord Berners—unless Mr. Lee has some quite fresh information, in which case I must plead ignorance—
died on March 16th, 1532," and she proceeded to point out, that as I accepted March 10th, 1533, for the date of the completion of an important translation of Lord Berners—"the Golden Boke of Marke Aurelie"—I made "the translation finished nearly a year after the translator's death." If Mrs. Ward had done me the honour of turning to my record of the life of Lord Berners in the Introduction to Part I, published in January last, she might possibly have avoided the frequently repeated error into which she has here fallen. I showed there that notices of the death of Lord Berners in Mr. James Gairdner's Papers of Henry VIII (vol. vi, nos. 238 and 239) prove conclusively that, reckoning the new year, as is the modern custom, from the first of January, he died on March 16th, 1533. The makers of biographical dictionaries have, I know, antedated the event by one year in their forgetfulness of the well-known fact that with Lord Berners' contemporaries the twenty-fifth day of March was the first day of a new year. The mistake is one worth correcting permanently, and I hope to be able to do so in the article on Lord Berners that I am writing for Mr. Leslie Stephen's new Dictionary of National Biography. As for Lord Berners' relations to so-called Euphuism, which was the original subject of my brief controversy with Mrs. Ward, I am quite ready to admit that Dr. Landmann, in a work privately printed at Giessen in 1881, was the first, as Mrs. Ward has shown, to call attention to the important influence he exerted in the matter; but I do not imagine that Lord Berners' connexion with Euphuism is so thoroughly understood in England as to make such a re-statement of the facts as I intend to give in an appendix wholly a work of supererogation.

S. L. Lee.

26, Brondesbury Villas, London, N.W.
December 26, 1883.
Huon of Burdeux.

Howe kynge Oberon deuysyd with his knyghtes in his cyte of Mommure in the fayrye of the dedes of Huon of Burdeux, & of that sholde fall after to hym.

Ca. lxxxvi.

Han kynge Oberon was departyd fro Burdeux he came to his cyte of Mommure. Than he began sore to wepe. Than Gloryaunt demaundyd of hym why he made that sorow. 'Gloryauns,' quod Oberon, 'it is for the vnhappy Huon / he is alone, and I knowe well here after he shalbe betrayed, and all for Esclaramonde his wyfe / for though he haue or this tymе sufferyd greate trauayle and myche trouble and pouerte / yet I knowe surely that he shall suffer more than euer he dyd, & he shal have no socoure of any man lyuyng / 'why, sir,' quod Gloryauns, 'how can that be? / for Huon is a grete lorde, & hath many frendes, and is the moost hardyest knyght now lyuyng / & he is at accorde with kynge Charlemayn, therfore he were a greate foole that wolde make hym any warre, & do hym any dyspleasure' / 'well,' quod Oberon, 'god ayde hym in all his affayres / for or it be longe he shall haue myche to do.' Thus Oberon entred in to his ryche palays, & sayd agayne, 'A, fre knyght Huon, I know well ye shalbe betrayed for the loue of your wyfe, who
is fayre and good, and yf ye take not good hede ye shall leue her and your selue in grete perell of deth / and yf ye scape the deth, yet shall you suffer suche payne and ponerte that there is no clerke lyuynge so 4 sage that can put it in wrytynge.' 'Syr,' quod Gloryauns / 'me thynke this can not be, seynge the loue that is now betwene hym and Charlemayn.' 'Gloryauns,' quod Oberon, 'yet I say agayne to\(^1\) you that, or\(^2\) this S yere be passyd, Huon shalbe in such distres, and so hardly kep, that yf he had .x. realmes he wolde gyue them all to be out of that daunger that he shalbe in' / than Gloryauns was pensyue, and sayd / 'A, sir, for 12 goddes sake neuer leue Huon your frende in suche daunger / but rather socoure hym' / 'nay, surely,' quod Oberon, 'that wyll I not doo / syn\(^3\) I have pro-

\(1\) How Huon toke homage of his men & chastesyd his rebelles, & of .iii. pylgremes, by whom myche yll fell \(^4\)after, as ye shall here.

\(2\) Fter that kynge Charlemayn was departyd fro Burdeux & that Huon was retournyd, he assembled all his barons, to whom he made good chere, 28 and there they toke there londes & fees of hym & made there homage. Than he toke a .M. chosyn knyghtes with hym, & rode in his londes & tooke possessyon of townes & castelles, 32 & was obeyed in euery place except of one Named

\(^1\) vnto. \(^2\) before. \(^3\) seeing. \(^4\) Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2.
Angelars, who was cosyn germayne to Amaury, whom Huon had slayne before at Parys before themperour Charlemyan for yᵉ lone of Charlot / this Angelars was 4 false & a traytoure, & he had a stronge castell with / in a³.iii. legges of Burdeux / he wolde not holde of Huon nor obey hym, tho he was his lege man / whan Huon saw that he wolde not holde of hym nor do hym 8 homage, he was sore dyspleasyd, and made promyse that, ¹² yf that he myght gette hym parforce, he wolde surely hange hym vp & ²as many as were in the castell.³ than Huon assaylled yᵉ castell, & they within defendyd ¹² them⁴ valyauntly / so that many were hurt and slayne of⁵ both partes / Huon was there .viii. dayes & coude not wyn yᵉ castell / than Huon ordenyd before the place a payre of galowes, & on⁶ yᵉ .ix. day he made a ¹⁶ freshe assault by suche force⁷ that he wan yᵉ castell & entred parforce. Angelars was taken & .lx.⁸ men with hym, & they were al hangyd on yᵉ galowes. Than Huon gaue the castell to⁹ one of his knyghtes /¹⁰ than ²⁰ he departyd & went to the castell of Blay, where as he was receyued with gret ioy / and the fayre Esclaramonde was in her¹¹ palays at Burdeux well acompenyd with ladyes & dameselles / & as they were denysyne to- ²⁴ gyther, there entred into yᵉ palays .iii. pylgremes who ryght humbly salutyd the lady Esclaramonde. ‘Syrs,’ ¹² quod yᵉ lady, ‘I pray you shew me out of what countre ye are come’ / ‘dame,’¹² quod one of them, ‘know for ₂⁸ trouth that we are come fro Ierusalem, & haue made our offerynge to the holy sepulture. we haue sufferyd myche pouerite inoure iurnay, wherfore, lady, we requyre you humbly for the loue of our lorde Jesu ³² Cryst to gyue vs sum meet.’ ‘Syrs,’ quod she, ‘ye shall haue ynoough’ / & than she commaundyd two of

¹ omitted. ² Fol. lxi. col. 1. ³ with him. ⁴ selues. ⁵ on. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ strength. ⁸ Forfi. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ the. ¹² Madame.
They are well entertained,

but soon set out for Vienna.

On their way they meet Duke Raoul, who was hawking.

He is a traitor

and a mover of war.

He welcomes the pilgrims,

and asks how they have fared.

her knyghtes to se 1 ye pylgremes sholde haue meet and drynke / & so they were set at ye end of the hall, & a table coueryd for them, & thereon brede & fleshe & wyne / they were well serued. Than the duches 4 Esclaramonde went to vysyt them, & demandyd where they were borne & whether they wolde go. ‘Dame,’ 2 quod they, ‘we be all iii. borne at Vyene, & thether we wolde retourne’ / i syrs, god be your gyde,’ quod the 8 lady, & she gane them .x. Florence, wherof they had grete ioy & thankyd ye duches. 3 Alas! that gyft was yll imploied, 4 as ye shal here 5 after. They departyd & toke ther way, & tranayled so longe that on a twes-12 daye 6 they aruyed halfe a legge fro Vyene / & ther they met duke Raoull, who was goynge a hawkynge / he was a grete & puysaunt lord of londes & seynoryes, & hardly in dedes of armes. grete domage 7 it was that he 16 was such a traytoure, for a more subtilyman coude not be known / for all the dayes of his lyfe he was euer a mouer of warre & stryfe & to do treason, without hauynge regarde other to kynne or other / god con-20 founde hym / for by hym & hys cause Huon sufferyd so myche yll that it cannot be recountyd. This duke Raoull was to marie / thus as he was in the feldes a hawkynge, & .xx. knyghtes with hym, he met the sayd 24 thre pylgremes, & anone he knew them. Than he rode to them & sayd, ‘syrs, ye be welcom home’ / they were joyfull, when they saw the duke, there lord, salute them so humbly, & for ioy therof they shewyd hym such 28 newes that by ye occasyon therof .xx. M knyghtes lost after theyr lyues, & Raoull hymselfe receyued ye deth / & Huon had suche trouble that he had neuer none suche before, as ye shall here 5 after. Than the duke 32 sayd to the pylgremes / ‘frendes, I pray you shew me by what countrees ye haue passyd to com hether.’

1 that. 2 Madame. 3 but. 4 bestowed. 5 here. 6 Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2. 7 pittie.
‘Syr,’ quod they, ‘we haue passyd by Fraunce, & first we were at Burdeux, & there we founde ye duchess Esclaramonde, wyfe to Huon of Burdeux, of whom ye haue herd so myche spekyng of.¹ she is so fayre & so well fourmyd,² so swete, pleasaunt, & gracyous as can be denysyd. she is daughter to the admiral Gaudys, whom Huon hath slayne, & taken her to his wyfe / grete domage³ is it that Huon sholde haue suche a wyfe / for she were meter to be wyfe to a pusaunt kinge, for who so euer had suche a wyfe to lye by myght wel say that there were none lyke her in all ye worlde / wolde to our lorde god, sir / that she were your wyfe’ / whan the duke herde that, he chaungyd coloure & greatly couertyd the lady in his herte / so that he was stryken with such sparke of that for the ⁵ byrnyngge lone that he had to the lady Esclaramonde,⁶ he promysed & swere that he wolde haue her, who so euer sayd the contrary, & sayd howe⁷ he wolde see Huon, & than haue Esclaramonde to his wyfe. Thus duke Raoull sware the deth of Huon / than he departyd fro the pylgremes. yll was employed⁹ the almes that Esclaramonde had gyuen them.

How duke Raoull of Austrych, by the reporte of the pylgremes, was amourous of the fayre Esclaramonde / and of the tornay that was cryed,¹⁰ to thentent to haue slayne Huon. Capitulo lxxxviii.

¹ for. ² fauoured. ³ pittie. ⁴ Fol. lxvi. back, col. 1. ⁵ violent and. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ bestowed. ¹⁰ proclaimed.
HUON OF BURDEUX. [Ca. lxxxviii.

Hus duke Raoull retournyd to the cyte of Vyen ryght pensyue, and sent for his preuey counsell, & than he com-
maundyd them to assemble as myche
4 people as they coude, by cause he sayde that he wolde goo to his vnkle thenperour of Almayne / to whom he sent a secret
message that he shold cause the tournay to be cryed in 8 sum conuenyent place, to thenent that the knyghtes
of Almayne and of other countrees sholde assemble there. The false traytoure dyd it for a craft, to then-
tent that Huon by his prowes and hardenes sholde 12
come to that tournay. The messenger rode forth tyll
he came to Strabrouge, where as he founde thenperour,
who was vnkle to Raoull, for he was thenpermours bro-
thers sonne / whan thenperour herde the message he 16
was joyfull / 4 when he herd those 4 newes fro his
neuewe duke Raoull, whom he loued entyerly / and to
do hym pleasure he sent to all loundes vnder his obey-
saunce, to all knyghtes and 5 squyers suche as of custome 20
were wont to iust and tournay, desyrynge them to come
at a day assygnyd to the cyte of Mayence, for there he
wolde kepe open courte. 6 thenperour kneue not for
what entent his neuew Raoull had deuysyd that 24
tournay. Alas! he dyd it 7 to fynde 8 place to slee Huon,
to thenent to haue his wyfe Esclaramonde. Than
duke Raoull on a day assembled his barons, specially
suche as he had parfyte trust in / he shewed them at 28
length 9 ye cause why he had assembled all that 8 people /
to go to the tournay. Therfore, syrs, 10 I wyll that ye
swere to me the deth of Huon of Burdeux / for I wyll
that ye & I togyther 11 put 12 to our payne 12 to slee hym / 32

1 many. 2 proclaimed. 3 vntill. 4—1 and not a little pleased to heare such. 5 Fol. lxvi. back, col. 2. 6 Now. 7 but. 8 the. 9 large. 10 quoth he. 11 omitted. 12—12 all our vittermost.
& than I wyll wed his wyfe, of whom I am so amorous that I can not slepe nor take any rest; ye same tyme that they thus made promise & sware ye deth of

4 Huon, There was amonge them a varlet with duke Raoull who in his yougth had serued Huon of Burdeux; and when he understode ye Huon came to the tournay, howe he sholde be murderyd / as preuely as he coude /

8 he departyd fro Vyene, & neuer restyd tyll he came to the cite of Burdeux, where as he founde duke Huon in his palays with his lorde, who had been aduertesyd that there sholde be a great tournay at Mayence in

12 Almayne / and he deuysyd with his lorde to go thether. The same tyme thether came the varlet, who humbly salutyd duke Huon, who sayd to hym, 'frend, where hast thou ben so longe?' 'Syr,' quod the varlet,

16 'I come now fro Viene in Austryeh, and duke Raoull who is lorde there hath cryed a tournay in evry countrie, and syr, yf ye go thether ye shalbe slayne / for thys tournay is deuysyd for none other entent / for

20 by cause it is well knowne that there can be no hye dedes of armes done in any place / but that ye wyll be at it. and when they hame slayne you ye duke Raoull wyll hame the duches your wyfe in mariag;

24 therfore, syr, for goddes sake aduyse you well that ye come not there, in as moch as ye loue your lyfe / for ye can not scape / there be a xx. M men that hath sworn your deth; yf ye enter in to the tornay ye can

28 neuer scape the deth / and I haue herde duke Raoull swere that when he hath slayne you he wyll kepe all your londes.' When duke Huon hadde herd the verlet / he sware by god and made promyse that

32 duke Raoull sholde derely by his fals treason. Then and to aid him in his quest of Esclaramonde.

One of the Duke's servants had of old served Huon, and goes to Bordeaux to warn him of the plot against his life.

Huon contemplates going to Mayence when the man arrives, and reveals the danger which threatens his old master.

Huon swears to make Raoul own his treachery.

---

1 now. 2 that. 3 there. 4 vntill. 5 before. 6 held. 7 how. 8-8 after time. 9 and. 10 where. 11 of. 12 proclaymed. 13 but. 14 omitted. 15 too. 16 present. 17 Fol. lxvii. col. 1. 18 therefore. 19 a solemn.
the duches Esclaramonde kneled downe before Huon & sayd, "I, A, syr, I desire you to forbere your goyng thyster at this tyme / for I haue herd often reputed that this duke Raoull is pusan & hath grate londes, & is nephew to themperour of Almayne / and also I haue herde saye that a fals traytoure there is none lyuynge in this worlde.' "Dame," quod Huon, "I haue well herd you / but by y lorde that fourmed me to his ymage, though I sholde lose halfe my londes I wyll go se y traytoure / what veneth he to abasshe me with his thretnynges? / ye I may mete hym in the tornay, or in ony other place where so euer it be, though he had with him x. M men of armes, and that I had but alone my swerde in my hande, I shall sle him what so euer sholde fall therof, and let oure lorde god do with me as it shall please hym; nor I shall neuer haue ioye at my herte tyll I haue slayne hym.' When the duches herde Huon, how he wolde do none other wyse, & that she could not let him of his enterpyee, she was sorowfull, and sayde, 'Syr, syn it is your pleasure / reason it is that I muste be content / but yet, syr, I desire you to take with you x. M. men well armyd, to thentent that ye be not founde vnprouyded, so that ye be assayed ye may be of pusaunce to resyste your enemies / & also that it may be youre pleasure that I may go with you; & I wyll be armed with shelde & helme & swerde by my syde, & ye I may mete duke Raoul, I shall gyue hym suche a buffet that I shall stryke hym from his horse, & I am so dyspleased with hym that there is no membre in me but that trembleth for angre I shall neuer haue ioye at my herte tyll I be reuenged of hym.' When Huon

1-1 Deare Lord.  2 repeated.  3 besides.
4 Madame.  5 to.  6 thinketh.  7 at.  8-8 omitted.
9 seeing.  10 yet.  11 sufficient.
12-12 will please you to suffer me to.  13 Fol. lxvii. col. 2.
14 my.  15 for.  16 ioynt.  17 and.
herde the duches his wyfe he was wel comforted, &
began to laugh, & sayde, 'fayre ladye, I can\(^1\) you grete thanke for your wordes, but ye are to farre gone with
4 chylde to ryde armed; it is a seuen monethes past syn
ye were fyrst with chylde' / then Huon made to be
cryed\(^2\) in all his londes that every man sholde be redy
to go with hym to the tornay at Mayence. The dukes
8 entent was anone knownen through\(^3\) all the countre, so
that it\(^4\) spred a brode that\(^5\) the brute therof came to the
herynge of duke Raoull / and, when he herd that Huon
wold come to the tornay, he was\(^6\) ioyfull therof / then
12 he sware that he wolde go and se Esclaramonde in the
guyse of a pylgreme /\(^7\) then he toke\(^8\) on a beggers gar-
ment and\(^9\) a staffe & a wallet / he shewed his entent to
them of his preuey counsell. they wold haue stopped
16 his goynge, but they coude not / thus he appareled him
selfe lyke a begger / and with an herbe rubbed so\(^10\) his
face and handes that suche as hadde not sene hym\(^11\)
appareled coude not haue known hym, he was so
20 foule and blacke.\(^12\) he desyred his men to kepe secret
his enterpryce. Then he departyd fro Vyen, & neuer
rested tyll he came to the cyte of Burdeux, and so wente
to\(^13\) the palays &\(^14\) fouunde Huon amonget his barons,
24 makyngre grete chere and feest, for to\(^13\) hym was come
dyners lordes and knyghtes, deuysynge of the tornay
that shold be holde at Mayence. Thus Raoull came
before Huon, & desyred hym for the honoure of our
28 lorde god to gyue hym some mete & almes. 'Frende,
quod Huon, 'thou shalt haue ynough / but I pray the
tell me\(^15\) fro whens thou comest, and whyther thou wylt
go, & of what countre thou arte of ' / 'sir,' quod Raoull,
32 'I am\(^16\) borne of the countre of Berry, but it is .xx. yer

\(^1\) giue. \(^2\) proclaimed. \(^3\) out. \(^4\) being. \(^5\) omitted.
\(^6\) not a little. \(^7\) and. \(^8\) putte. \(^9\) toke. \(^10\) on.
\(^11\) otherwise. \(^12\) then. \(^13\) vnto. \(^14\) where he.
\(^15\) Fol. lxvii. back, col. 1. \(^16\) was.
He tells a lying story of his pilgrimage and previous life.

passed syn I was there. when I departed then I was but yonge, for if I sawe nowe before me my father or mother, I shold not know them; & syr, I come fro beyonde ye see, where as I haue ben prysoner amonge ye sarazyns ye space of xiii. yeres in a stronge castell, where I haue suffred moche dysease of hungre & colde, & at last I scaped by reason of a yonge man to whome I promysed, if he coude brynge me to Acre in saue garde, that I wolde then gyue hym twenty ducates of golde / the yong man was conetous to haue the money, and founde the meanes that he brought me to Acre, where as I founde a kynnesman of myn who payed the yonge man that I promysyd hym / and also he gaue me xv. ducates, the whiche I haue spent with comyng hyther. 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye to god to ayde the, for if thou were not soo yll apparelled thou sholdest seme a man of a hye lygnage / for it semeth to me, if thou were wel armyd and wepened, and were in some bysenes, thou were lyke ynough to be fered.'

How after that duke Raoull had ben at Burdeux in the guyse of a pylgreme to se the fayre lady Esclaramonde, he retournyd agayne to Vyen. Capitolo lxxxix.

After that Huon had longe denysed with Raoull / he wasshed & sate downe to dyner, & the duches his wyfe by him / then Huon commaundde that at the ende of the table, ryght before his table, Raoull the pylgreme to be set, & was well serued / but Raoull hadde lytell care other of mete or drynke, for his thought was of another

1-1 after mother. 2 the. 3 that. 4 the money the which I had. 5 had. 6 vnto. 7 there he. 8 Fol. lxvii. back, col. 2.
Ca. lxxxix.] OF DUKE RAOUl'S VISIT TO BORDEAUX.

mater wherupon he sore studied / for before him he saw the noble duches Esclaramonde, of whom he was so amours that he coude not withdraw his eyen fro her / for the more he beheld her the more he was embraised with love / he thought he never sawe before soo fyre a lady in all his lyfe / so that for the grete beaute that was in her / he chaunged often tymes his 8 colour, but it coude not be perceyued by cause he was so blacke & foule with rubbyng of certeyn herbes / & he sayd to him selfe / that who so ever had suche a lady to his wyfe myght wel make auau^t to be the .

1. His love for the fair lady grows apace,

12 happyest man of ye world, that myght haue his pastyme with so fyre a lady / & sayd, by the lorde that fourmed him / though he sholde be damnded in hell for euere / he wold slee Huon & haue his wyfe in 16 maryage, & all Huons londes to be his for euere. Alas, that it had not pleased our lord god that at that hour Huon might haue knowen the treason of Raoull / he sholde then haue bought it ful derey. When ye 20 traytour had eten and made good chere / Huon gave hym7 gowne / shyrte / hosen & shoes / & money for his dyspence / Raoull toke it, he durst not refuse it, but thanked Huon / & so toke his leue & departed, he 24 durst no lenger tary for fere of knowlege / & as soone as he coude he departed out of the town / of his journeys I wyll make no longe rehearsall / but he laboured so lunge that he aryued at Vien; then he 28 went to his palays, where as he was well receyued of his lordes / & they laughed when they sawe hym in that apparell / then within a whyle after he made hym redy, & his men, who were a grete nombre, & so 32 departyd fro Vyen, & toke the way to Mayence.

When his uncle, the emperoure of almayne, was aduer-
tysed of his comynge / he wente & met hym without

1 her. 2 within. 3 euen he. 4 but. 5 swore.
6 this. 7 a.
y e towne to do hym the more honour, & when he saw hym he was ioyefull, & kyssed hym & sayd, ‘fayre nephew, I am glad of your comynge; I haue longe desyred to se you.’ y e good emperour knew nothynge of y e treason that his nephew had purchased agaynst Huon of Burdeux / for yf he had knowen it / to haue dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to that treason. thus hande in hande themperour & his nephew Raoull entred with grete ioye in to y e cyte of Mayence, where as they were hyghly receyued / grete ioy was made at theyr comynge; moch people were in the towne, come thyder to iust & tourney, and many other to beholde the tryumphe. Now let vs speke of Huon of Burdeux.

How duke Huon toke leue of the duches his wyfe, & how he aryued at Mayence & went to the palays. Capitulo .lxxx.

Hen Huon saw his tyme to deprarte fro Burdeux to go to y e turney to Mayence, he made redy his trayn, & toke with him .x.M. men of armes for the garde of his parson of the best horse men in all his coultre / then he toke his leue of y e fayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, who began sore to wepe when she saw his departure / ryght swetly they kyssed togyther at theyr departyng / then he toke his hors & he & his company departed fro Burdeux / & rested not tyll he cam to Coleyn on y e ryne, ther he taryed .ii. dayes to refresshe him, & on his day he armed him & called his company before him, & said, ‘syrs, I wyl take leue of you al, for none of you shall go with me. be nothynge abasshed / for he that always hath saued me

1 Fol. lxviii. col. 1. 2 at. 3 Fol. lxviii. col. 2. 4 vntill. 5 vpon. 6 selfe.
out of all perelles wyll not forsake me at this tyme' / when his men herde him they had grete meruyale / that he wolde take his vyage alone, & he said to them, syrs, haue no doute of me that I shal dye till myn houre be come' / they of Coleyn enquyred nothynge of their estate, for as then there was no warre, & they bylened that they wolde go to the tourney / when his lorde saw he wold go alone, they were sory that he wold go to the tourney alone, and sayd one to another, 'we fere greately he shall neuer returne agayne / & we shall neuer haue suche another mayster agayne' / syrs,' Huon, 'ye shall not nede to take any sorowe for me / for certaynly I knowe well yf ony peryllous besynes sholde come to me, that I shold be ayded by kyng Oberon' / but he neded not to haue sayd so, for when kyng Oberon departed fro him, he bad him not to trust vpon ony ayde fro him, & therfore Huon was a foile, & yll aduysed to truste theron, or to vndertake so peryllous an enterpryce as he dyde, wherby he was in grete peryll of dethe, as ye shall here after.

When Huon was redy he lepte on his horse without ony styrrup, clene armed as he was, & after stretched him so in his styrrupes that ye lethers streyned out thre fyngers ; he was apusaunte knyght, armed or vnarmed, & greately to be fered / he toke leue of his men & left them wepynge in ye cite of Coleyn / then he rode towards ye cite of Mayence ; so longe he rode that he had a syght of the eyte, & then he sawe aboute in the meadow many tenetes & ryche pauylions, pyght vp with pomelles of fyne golde shynyng agaynst the sonne / Huon behelde them well, & so passed forth & entred in to the cite, where as he sawe euery strete full of knyghtes & squyers abydyngse ye daye of turney
HUON OF BURDEOUX.

[Ca. xci.

Huon passed forth tyll he came to ye palays, where as he founde themperour & his nephew raoul, whom Huon loued but lytel, as he showyd wel shortly after, as ye shal here / when Huon was come before the palays he sawe themperour & Raoull his nephew goynge vp ye stayres, then Huon met with a gret almayn, & sayd to him, 'frendye, I pray thee shew me what be yonder two prynces that goth vp ye stayres, & that so much honour is done to them.' / 'sir,' quod he, 'yfyrst is thenperour, & he that foloweth is hys nephew, duke Raoull / he was sone to themperours brother / the turney that shall be made is done for the lone of him, & at his request, & after the tourney he thynketh to mary a grete lady, whose name shall not be knowne tyll the turney be done' / when Huon herde that he blushed in the face for the gret yre that he was in, for he knew wel that Raoull, if he coude fynde ye means, he wyll hane fro him his wyfe the Fayre Esclaramonde / but he promysed in his mynde that fyrst he sholde derely by her / 'frendye,' quod Huon, 'I desyre you do so moche for me as to holde my horse tyll I returne agayne out of the hal, & that I hane spoken with ye emperour & with his lordes / 'syr,' quod the squyer with a good wyll, 'I shall here holde your hores tyll ye come' / now god ayde Huon, for or he myght retourne he was in grete peryll of deth, as ye shall here.

How Huon slew duke Raoull in the presence of themperour sytting at his table / and of the meruayles that he dyd, & how in the chase that was made after him he strake downe themperour and wann his good horse. Capitulo lxxxxi. 32

1 vntill. 2–5 would. 3 to. 4 ere.
5 Fol. lxviii. back, col. 2.
Huon, who was full of yre & dys-pleasure, went vp in to the palays & came in to ye hall, where as he founde moche peple; there was the emperor, who had wasshed his handes, & was set at the table. Huon preased forth before the table with his swerde in his hande, & sayd, 'noble emperoure, I conjure the by ye grete vertu deyne, & by your parte of paradise, & that your soule to be dammned yf case be that ye say not the trouth & gyue trewe inuement with out falshode, nor to spare to say the trouth for no man lyuynge, though he be your nere parent' / 'frende,' quod the emperor, 'say your pleasure, & I shall answere you' / 'sir,' quod Huon, 'yf ye had weddyd a lady, & loue her derely, & that she be fayre / good / swete & sage / & replete with all good vertues / & that ye knowe surely that she loueth you entyrely as a good true wyfe ought to loue her lord & husbande, & then a traytour pryuely to purchase your dethe for loue of your wyfe / & yf by adventure after ye fynde him in ye felde / or in towne, medowe / or wood / in palays / or in hall, & that ye myght accomplysse your thought & your desyre agaynst the same traytour who dyd purchase the sayd treason agaynst you / I denamaude then of you yf ye wolde slee him or not?' / 'frende,' quod the emperor, 'ye have conjured me; I shall answere you to the trouth / not for ye valewe of x cytes I wyll not lye / knowe for trouth yf I had a wyfe, such one as ye speke of / adorned with such fayre vertues, wherof there be many suche / how be it, yf I had suche one as ye resyte, & that I knewe surely that she loued me enterly / then yf I knewe any man lyuynge that wolde

1 many. 2 newly. 3 hopefull. 4 or. 5 is. 6 neerest. 7 hau. 8 therefore. 9 a. 10 and. 11 Fol. lxviii, col. 1 (this should be lxix, lxviii repeated).
purchase me suche a treason / though he were my nere parent, yf I myght fynde him, in what socuer place it were in, and though I shold be slayne in the quarell, there shold nother chyrche, aultre, nor crucyfx that sholde sayne his lyfe / but that with my two handes I shold slee him; and also my herte sholde serue me further / that after I hadde slayne hym / I wolde drawe out his herte out of his body, and ete it for dyspyte.' When Huon herde the emperour, he sayd /
'o, ryght noble and vertuous emperoure / iust and trewe iugement ye haue gyuen / the which I repeale not / but I shall shewe you what hath moued me to 12 demaunde of you this iugement / yf suche a case sholde a fallen to you / and, syr, to yentent that ye shall know yentent what hath me moued thus to do / syr, ye may se here before you he that wolde do lyke case agaynst me, which is your neneue Raoul / who hath purchased my deth lyke a cruell and a false traytoure, to the entent to haue Esclaramonde my wyfe, and all myne herytages / the iugement that ye haue gyuen is 20 iust and trewe / ye shall neuer be blamed in any courte / but ye shall therin be named a noble prynce / and therfore, syr, I haue founde so nere me that purchaseth my dethe & shame / I sholde neuer be 24 worthy to appere in any prynces courte without I were reuenged of hym / and I had rather dye then to forbere him any lenger / ther with he drew his swerde when Raoull sawe the clerenes of the swerde he was a frayde, 28 bycause he was vnarmed / how be it, he thought that Huon wolde not haue ben so hardy as to do hym any hurte in the presence of his vncle the emperoure; but when he sawe that Huon dye lyft vp his swerde to 32 sryke hym, he was in greate fere, and fledde to the Emperoure to saine his lyfe / but Huon perceyued hym

1-1 omitted. 2 be. 3 nor. 4 haue. 5 vnto. 6 in. 7-7 hauing found him. 8 for. 9 and.
so quyckely that he strake hym with a reuerse in suche wyse that he strake of his heed from his sholders, and the body fell downe before the Emperoure / and 

4 the heed fell on the table in the dysshe before the Emperoure, wherof he hadde great doloure / 'god gyue me good lucke,' quod Huon; 'this traytoure shall neuer be amourous of my wyfe, I am sure ynough of hym.'

8 The emperoure, who satte at the table, hadde grete sorowe at his herte when he sawe his newe newe deed before hym / then he cryed alowde and sayde, 'Syr, ye my barons, loke that this knyght scape you not; I shall neuer ete nor drynke tyll I se hym hanged.'

Huon is furious, and slays twenty-eight of the men who lay hands on him.

Huon vnderstode him wel, and fered hym but lytell / 

16 but with his swerde he layde on rounde aboute hym and strake of armes, handes, and legges, so that there was none so hardy that durst approche nere to hym; he slewe so many that it was ferefull to beholde hym / 

20 within a shorte space he hadde slayne mo then cyght and twenty / and the emperoure was in suche fere that he wyst not how to saue himselfe for the grete meruayles that he sawe Huon doo / he douted bycause he was vnarmed / and Huon cryed & sayd, 'traytours, I doute you nothynge.' then on all partyes Almayns & Bauyers assayled Huon / but he defended hym by suche force and puyssaunce, that by the murder that 

24 he made the bloode ranne vpon y6 pauement lyke a ryuer / Huon might haue taryed to longe, for the emperoure and his men wente and armed theym / and Huon, who sawe well that he coulde not longe endure 

28 without paryll of dethe / strykyng with his swerde rounde aboute hym / he withdrewe backe downe the stayres of the palayes, and none durst approche nere 

After much bloodshed, Huon makes his escape.

1 Fol. lxviii. col. 2. 2 stroke. 3 vpon. 4 for now. 5 vntill. 6 himself. 7 great.

CHARL. ROM. VIII.
Huon of Burdeux.

A cousin of Raoul challenges him on leaving the palace.

They fight together fiercely.

Huon is beset on all sides.

and does marvels with his sword.

him bycause they were vnarmed, and for feere of him. Huon, by his hye provys for al his enemies, came to his horse and mountyd hym, and so yssued out / and there was a knyght called Galeram, who was cosyn german to duke Raoul, and he was clene armed and mounted on a good horse / and he followed Huon, and sayde, 'horeson and thefe, thou hast slayn duke Raoull, my cosyn; without thou tourne to me I shall stryke the behynde.' When Huon herde hym he sware he had rather dye then to refuse too tourne too hym / soo he tourned, and they couched theyr speres / and mette so fyersly togider that they gau eche other meruaylous strokes / Galerames spere brake all to peces / and Huon, who had employed all his force and vertu, strake Galeram on the sheld with his spere / the whiche was bygge and stronge / soo that Galeram fell out of the saule so rudely that in the fall he brake his necke, and so lay deed on the erth; & Huon, who thought he had not ben deed, returned agayne to hym / but when he sawe that he stered not / he departed 20 thense / but he taryed very longe / for he sawe well he was closed in rounde aboute, and sawe wel without god had pyte of hym he was not lyke to scape without deth or taken prysoner / they cast on hym darts and swerdes; one with a sharpe swerde cam to hym and gaue hym a grete stroke / but his harneys saued his lyfe, for all the strokes that he receyued he neuer remoued out of his sadell. Whan Huon saw in what daunger he was in / he called vpon oure lorde god, humbly prayenge hym to delyuer hym out of that paryll / with his swerde he dyde meruayles / he slewe and claue hedes to the brayne; he semed rather a 32

1 Fol. lxviii. back, col. 1.  2 vnto.  3 vpon.
4-5 Abide, Villaine.  5 then.  6 great.  7 his.
8-8 good armour.  9 had.  10 omitted.
11 the.  12 that.
spyryte of hell then a man, for he that had sene hym wolde haue sayde that he had ben noo mortall man / he sawe passe by hym a knyght of Almayne / called syr Hans Sperguer / as he passed by / Huon gane hym suche a stroke that he clave hym\(^1\) to the gyrdell, wherof the Almaynes were so abasshed that none durst approche nere to hym, they fered him so\(^2\) sore. Alas 8 that his men at Coleyne had not knowen what case he was in / they were to\(^3\) forre of / Huon, who fared lyke a wylde boore; he layde on rounde aboute hym so that his swerde was all bloody of ye\(^*\) men that he had slayne 12 and maymed / they cast darteis at him, so that at last his horse was slayne vnder hym, wher of he was sorowfull; how be it, lyke a coragyous knyght, with his swerde he\(^4\) foughte valyauntly with his enemys /\(^5\) he sawe where the erle of Seyne com to hym to hame sryken hym with his swerde, but Huon mette with\(^2\) hym so hastly that he had no layser to sryke hym, and Huon gane hym suche a stroke that his helme 20 coulde not saue his lyfe / for Huons swerde entred in to his brayne, and so fell downe deed amonge the horse fete / Huon, who was quycke and experte, toke the deed knyghtes horse and lept vpon hym / and when he sawe 24 that he was new horsed agayne he was joyfull, and then he was able to departe in the spyte of all\(^2\) his enemies / but themperour, who had gret sorow at his herte for the deth of his newe Raoull, made grete 28 haste after Huon with .x. thousande men with hym, and so came fro Mayence\(^6\) on the sporrers, desyryng to overtake Huon / and so rode on before his men, for his horse was so good that he wold rynne as fast as a 32 byrde coude flye / in all ye\(^*\) world there was no horse lyke to\(^2\) hym / the emperour on this horse folowed Huon / & as he rode he saue all the waye deed men lye

---

1 Fol. lxviii, back, col. 2. \(^{omitted}\). 2 Deed. 3 so. 4 still. 5 and. 6 all.
that Huon had slayne / he sporr'd his horse that anone he ouer toke Huon, and sayd / 'thou traytoure, tourne thy sheldede towards me, or elles my spere shall go through thy body, for ye sorowe that lyeth at my herte 4 for loun of my newe, whom thou hast slayne, constrayneth me to make hast to be reuenged 1 upon 2 thee, nor I shal neuer haue ioy at my hert tyl 3 I haue slayne the / moche it greueth me that I am constrayned to slee the with my spere, for I had rather hange the.' When Huon herde themperour, who was so nere hym, and saw howe he was mounted on so good a horse / he called vpon our lorde god, and desyred hym of hys 12 grace to ayde hym to conquere that horse / and when he sawe that the emperour was farre before his men / he tourned his horse heed towardes the emperoure, and couched his spere / and the emperour came agaynst 16 hym lyke the tempest / and they mette togyder so rudely that theyr sheldes 4 were persed, so that the emperours spere brake all to shyuers / and Huons spere, which 5 was 6 rude and stronge, 7 strake the emperour 20 with suche puysaunce that he was stryken fro his horse to the erth sore astonyed, so that he wyst not where he was / and Huon, who had greate desyre to haue the emperours horse, alyghtyd quyckely fro his 24 owne horse, and toke the emperours horse and mounted on hym, and was therof ryght ioyous / then he sayde to hymselfe that he douted not them all / he strake the good horse with the sporres, and fouunde hym quycke 28 and lyght vnder hym / then he lefte the emperoure lyenge on the erth, and 8 was not 9 contente that he was soo soone socoured / for ye the Almaynes hadde not quyckely come Huon had slayne him / 10 when the 32 Almayns cam to theyr lord, and fouunde hym lyeng on

1 Fol. lxix. col. 1.  2 of.  3 vntill.  4 speares.  
5 omitted.  6 so.  7 that he.  8 who.  
9 a little.  10 but.
the erth, they beleued\(^1\) he had ben deed / they began to make grete sorow, and the emperour, who was come agayne to hym selfe, sayde / 'syrs, thanked be god I 4 fele no hurte but I maye well ryde / but I haue grete sorowe at my herte that Huon hath thus ledde awaye my good horse, and is scaped awaye, and also hathe slayne my two neuewes / but, syrs, I counsell you 8 that none folowe hym, for it shall be but a loste 2tyme for the good horse that is vnder hym, and he that is on hym is\(^2\) valyaunt in armes /\(^3\) he is gretely to be douted / therfore I counsell let vs retourne backe agayne / for 12 we may lose more then we shall wynne / but by the grace of god, or\(^5\) it be thre monethes past, I shall assemble suche a nombre of men that the valays and mountaynes shall be full of men / then wyll I goo to 16 the cyte of Burdeux, and wyll not departe thens tyll I haue wonne it, and yf I may gette Huon I shall make hym dye of an yll\(^6\) deth, & shall take and wast all his londes.'

\[\text{The Emperor declares that within three months Bordeaux will be in his hands.}\]

20 ¶ How Huon, after\(^7\) he was mounted on\(^8\) the emperours good horse, he aryued at Coleyne, where as\(^9\) he founde his men, and how he departyd thense / and of the emperoure who lay\(^10\) in a busshe\(^10\)ment in a wode, abydynge\(^11\) to haue slayne Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxii. \([=\text{x}cii.]\)

\(^1\) verily. \(^2\) Fol. lxix. col. 2. \(^3\) so. \(^4\) that. \(^5\) ere. \(^6\) euill. \(^7\) that. \(^8\) vpon. \(^9\) omitted. \(^10\) enambushed. \(^11\) there.
A knight proposes that an ambush shall be prepared in a little wood near Cologne,

and that Huon be there slain on his journey.

The Emperor rejoices in this counsel,

and declares that he, with ten thousand men, will carry out the plan.

Hus as ye haue herde, Huon departed with ye emperours good horse and lefte the emperour lyenge on the erth, who commaunded his barons to retorne backe & not to folowe Huon any further / ther with there cam to the emperour a knyght called Godun, he was borne at Norembrege, & he sayde / 'syr, yf ye wyll beleue me 8 & do after my counsell ye shall do otherwyse / ye shall retourne to Mayence this nyght & ordayne foure C1 of suche men as ye haue here / & sende them with in two leges of Coleyn, on ye lye way in to Fraunce, & there ye shall fynde a lytell wood, 2 and there lette them lye in a busshement 3 tyll Huon passe by them / for I knowe well he wyll go strayte to Coleyne this nyght, & lodge in a frenche mans house that dwelleth there / and in the mornyng surely he wyll departe thens and so passe by the said busshement, so that it shall not be possyble to saue hym selfe alone / but other he shalbe slayne or taken.' When the emperoure herde Godun, he sayde / 'syr, ye haue gyuen me good counsell, and this is lykely to be done / but it were conuenyent to sende mo then foure thousande / for the grete desyre that I haue to gete hym in to my handes constrey meth me to cause hym to be taken, to the entent to be reneged of hym / therfore I wolde go myselfe and take with me x thousande men, and shall goo and lye in the place that ye haue apoynted / for I shall neuer haue parfyte ioye at my herte as longe as Huon is alyue / for he hath caused moch sorowe at my herte for the deth of my two neuwees, whom so pyteously he hath slayne. let us take oure waye a two leges besyde Coleyne, nerer we wyll not approche, too the entent that our comynge be not knowne' / then he chase out

1 Thousand. 2 Fol. lxix. back, col. 1. 3—3 enambushed. 4 about.
Ca. xci.]

HOW THE EMPEROR LAYS AN AMBUSH.

.x. thousande of the moost valyauntes men in his company, & the rest he sent backe to Mayence. Thus the emperour rode forth and rode so longe that daye & 4 nyghte / that an houre, or it was daye, he came to the said wode, & there layde his buss hement.¹ And Huon rode² after he was departed fro the emperour that late in the euenyng he came to Coleyne, wher as he was 8 receyued of his men with grete ioye / then Gerames said, 'syr, I requyre you shewe vs of your adventurues' / then Huon shewed them every thyng, & the maner how he had slayn duke Raoull, & how he departed fro 12 Mayence, & how he was pursued / and how he wanne the emperours good horse / then³ Gerames & all the other had grete ioye, and ⁴thanked god of his fayre aduenture, & had grete meruaYLE howe he scaped / but they knewe 16 nothynge what the emperour was aboute to do, nor that he was in the woode abydynge⁵ for Huon / that nyght Huon and his company were at Coleyne makyng good chere /⁶ the nexte mornyng they herd masse⁷ / then 20 they mounted on theyr horses and yssued out of the towne; they were to ye⁸ nombre of .xiii. M. hardly fyght- yngue men. and, when they were out in the feldes, Huon, lyke a good man of warre, sayd / 'syr, I desyre you 24 let vs kepe togyther and ryde lyke men of warre, to the entent that we be not sodeynly taken;' and so they dyde / the daye was fayre & clere; they myght well be parceyued a farre of / as they were by the emperour of 28 Almain, who lay ⁸ in a buss hement⁹ for Huon. the emperoure spyed them fyrst, and sayd to his company / 'syr, yonder⁹ I se moche¹⁰ people comynghe ¹¹ to vs warde¹¹ / they seme¹² men well experete in armes; neuer 32 byleue me but they be frenche men, and he that is theyr

¹ ambush. ² so. ³ wherat. ⁴ Fol. lxix. back, col. 2. ⁵ there. ⁶ and. ⁷ seruice. ⁸–⁹ enambushed. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹–¹² towarde vs.
and marvels at the number of armed men.

He fears to do battle with Huon and his troops, but urges his own men to bear themselves bravely.

captayne is Huon of Burdeux / he is not come hyther lyke a small parsonage, but he is hyghly accompanied lyke a grete and a myghty prynce. I se well he is valyaunt by that he hath done; he is so noble and 4 hardy that none may be compared to hym. ye haue well sene howe that he all alone came in to my palayes, and there slewe my newe duke Raoull, wher with my herte is in grete dyspleasure / he is gretely to be doubted, for without god helpe vs we shall haue ynoughe to doo with hym / wolde to god that he and I were at accordement & agreed / for he is so noble and so valyaunt that he fereth no man / ye haue well sene syn 12 he departed fro Mayence he hathe slayne mo then .xl. of my men, and hath borne me to the erthe / and he hath taken fro me my good horse, wherby he maye be well assured that there is no man shall take hym yf he be on² his backe / how be it, we must set on² hym, for my herte shall neuer be in ease as long as he lyueth / therfore, sirs, I desyre you euery man this day shewe the loue that ye bere to³ me & the saue garde of youre 20 lyues / for to flye away auyleth not / therfore, syrs, set on togyther, and do so that we may haue the fyrst crye.'⁴

Of the gret batayle within two legees of 24 Coleyne bytwene the emperour of Almayn & Huon of Burdeux, & of the trewes that was taken bytwene them.

Ca. l.xxxiii. [= xciii.] 28

1 Fol. lxx. col. 1.  2 vpon.  3 vnto.  4 advantage.
Von, who rode before his barons denysynge with olde Gerames, regarded on his ryght hande towards the lytel wood; ¹ he sawe in the wood grete clerensesse by reason of the sonne shynyngge on the helmes and on the spere poyntes, wherby he pareuyed clerely ² that ther was moch people hyden in the wood / he shewed them to ³ Gerames and to his other company / and sayd, ⁴ syrs, be in a suerte that without batayle we can not scape / here is themperour who lyeth in awayte ¹² for vs. I desyre you let vs do so that he shall haue no cause too make ony aunt of vs / yonder ye may se them how they set them selfe in ordre to abyde vs, therfore let vs quycly set on them / & soo they dyd ¹⁶ in suche wyse that with⁴ rynnyng of theyr hyres ⁸ erth trymbled, & the sonne lost his lyght by reason of the pouder that rose vp in to the ayre on⁵ both partes / Huon, who ranne before on his pusaunt horse / behelde ²⁰ Godun, who was formost of⁶ his company ; he ranne at hym with a strong spere, so that he ran hym cleen through the body so that he fel downe ⁷ to the erth / & with the same spere Huon met Crassyn ²⁴ polynger who bare themperours baner / Huon strake him so fyersly that he bare horse & man & baner al to the erth,⁸ wherof the almayns and Banyers were sorowfull / Huon dyde soo moche or⁹ his spere was broken that he ²⁸ fyrst bare fyue to the erth so that they hadde no power after to releue them selfe / ther were many speres broken, and many a knyghte borne to the erth that ¹ there dyed among ⁵ hors fete / for the father coude ³² not helpe the sone / nor the sone coude not helpe the father / and many an horse ranne a brode in the felde

¹ and. ² plainly. ³ Fol. lxx. col. 2. ⁴ the very. ⁵ from. ⁶ in. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ ground. ⁹ ere.
and theyr maysters lyeng deed in the bloode and myre.

Huon, who rode aboute in the batayle sleynge and woundyngge his enemyes, behelde on his ryghte syde and sawe the erle Sauary sleyng many of them of Burdeux. 'A, good lorde,' quod Huon, 'yf yonder knyght regyne longe / he shall do me grete domage.'

Then he rode to hym / & gau hym suche a stroke with his swerde so that he strake of his shalder and arme so rudely that it fell vpon the erthe / so that for the greate payne that the erle Sauary endured he fell from his horse / & there was slayne amonge the hors feete, wherof themperour, who was therby, was ryght 12 sorowfull when he saw another of his nephewes slayn / & sayd, 'a, Huon, of god be thou cursed, syn thou hast taken so many of my frenedes; I shall never haue ioye in my hert yf I haue the in my handes to hange the' / 16 'syr,' quod Huon, 'or yf ye haue taken me, ye are lyke to lese mo of your frenedes, & beware of your selfe that ye come not in my handes / by youre nephewe Raoull ye haue all this domage, who by his falsenes thoughte to 20 haue betrayed me & to haue had my wyfe / yf I haue slayne your nephews and your men, I haue done it in defendyng myn owne body; I say to you yf ye be not wel ware of me I shall brynge you to that poynt that 24 it shall be harde for you to be caryed awaye in a lytter.' 'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'the grete hate that I haue to the for the dethe of my nephews, 6 wherby I 6 fele suche doloure at my herte that I had rather dye then that I sholde not be renenged of the / therfore beware of me, for I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll I haue the other quycke or deed' / then they two wente backe to take theyr course togyther / but or they met 32 ye alwayns came ryngynge theyther for fere that they hadde of lesynge of 2 theyr emperoure / and on the other

---

1 Fol. lxx. back, col. 1. 2 omitted. 3 slaine. 4 ere. 5 to. 6–6 makes me. 7 much. 8 thou. 9 the.
parte came thither ye olde Gerames, who fought so
yersely that whom soo euer he strake with a full stroke
hadde no neede of any surgyon; and his company fayled
not for theyr partes / and Huon with his good sworde
opened the thycke prese, soo that the almayns\(^1\) doubted
hym. Huon with his noble chyualry caused his enemys
to recule backe halfe a bowe shotte / then there was a
8 knyght of almayn sawe well that without some remedy
were founde / the emperour & his company were lyke
to be slayne; he went out of the batayle as preuely as
coude, and ronne on ye sporres & rested not 2yll he cam
to Coleyne / then\(^3\) incontynent he rode to the provostes
house, & founde him in his house newlye come fro
masse / then ye knight sayd to him / 'syr provost, yf
euer ye wyll se the emperour a lyue, cause the comons
16 of this cyte to be armed, & come, & socoure themperour
hastely / for when I cam from hym he had gret neede of
ayde / ther is Huon of Burdeux, who hath slayn thre of
his nephews, & this other day he was lodged in this
20 cite. the emperour knoweth well ye knewe nothyng
therof / for Huon had lodged his men in the suburbs,
& in other lytell houses, bycause he wolde not be
perveyued / syr provost, make hast in this besynes' /
24 when the provost herd what daunger themperoure was
in, he sowned\(^4\) the watch belle & made to be cryed in
every strete that every man that was able to bere her-
neys\(^5\) sholde arme them / & to\(^6\) go out in to the felde
28 to socoure themperoure, who was in gret daunger of
his lyfe / when the burgesses of the towne herde that
crye every man armed them as well as they coude / some
were harneyed behynde, & some in a Jacke all smoked,
32 and with staues & other wepons / what a fote & a
horse backe, there went out of ye cyte a 6 .xx. M. men /
yf ye had sene ye horsemens, ye wolde haue laughed at

\(^1\) greatly. \(^2\) Fol. lxx. back, col. 2. \(^3\) where. \(^4\) sounded. \(^5\) armes. \(^6\) omitted.
Very rude is their equipment.

The Emperor, after losing nearly all his men in the battle, seeks out Huon, and challenges him.

The duel begins. The Emperor is flung heavily to the earth, and lies in a swoon.

them, for it seemed they were set a horse backe in dyspyte / there was neuer sene so rude & foule a sorte / it was no meruayle / for they hadde not ben accustomed to ryde in harneys / the prouest rode before, and exorted them to do theyr deours, so they toke the way to come to the batayle, where as Huon & his company dyde parte of theyr wylles. the emperour seynge that he began to lese his men and place, he rode serchyng in the batayle for duke Huon / where as he founde by adventyre Huon, who had newly slayn the Emperoures seneschall. When that the Emperoure sawe hym slayne, he was ryght sorrowful, & in grete rage, then cried to Huon, and said / 'thou knyghte that neuer arte satysfyed to shedde the bloode of my men to abate my lyghtnage and force, I pray the turne thy sheld to me, for yf thou knewest the grete hate that I haue to the thou woldest neuer appere before me.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue grete meruayle that ye so sore hate me & haue taryed so long to be reuenged / therfore, beware of me / for yf I may I shall sende you after your nephewes, whom ye say that ye loue so wel / they toke their cours with grete & rude spere brake all too peces / but Huons spere was bygge & rude / he strake the emperour therwith by such pusaunce that the spere ranne through his shoulder / so that themperoure fell to the erth so rudely that with the fall he brake the bone of his thygh / therby he was in suche doloure that he sowned / and when Huon sawe hym lye on the grounde

1 on. 2—2 a company. 3—3 were not. 4 went.
5 their. 6 and. 7 then. 8 by adventure. 9 a. 10 he.
11 Fol. lxxii, col. 1 (this should be lxxi, which is omitted).
12 vnto. 13—13 beare. 14—14 omitted. 15—16 for reuenge,
16 cau. 17 will. 18 Armour. 19 and. 20 stronge.
21 and therewith. 22 with. 23 his.
he cam to hym with his swerde in his hande, and had 1 slayne him yf he had not ben socoured / but there came so many almayns, that whether Huon wolde 4 or not, they toke 2 and bare 3 the emperoure 3 out of the felde, & layde hym in the wode, & 4 demaunded of him how he dyd / 'syr, quod he, 'I am sore hurte / for my thygh is broken, wherby I endure 5 as moch doloure 8 as 5 I can abyde / but 6 I trust as for deth I shall scape by the grace of god 16 / when they herde that they were 7 joyfull / and said, 'syr, knowe for trouth 8 youre men are sore abasshed 9 / for they be so 10 opprest by Huon 12 and his men / that we fere all your men shal 11 be slayne / we shall 11 go agayne to the batayle & leue some with you to 12 kepe your body 12 / 'syr,' quod the emperour, 14 your force nor your defence can 15 auayle 16 you nothyng 16 agaynste Huon / nor agaynst his men. But I shall shewe you what ye shall do / 17 sende quyckly to Huon and desyre 18 of hym in my name to 19 sease 20 fyghtynge, 20 and 18 desyre hym 18 that there maye be a 20 truse hadde bytwene hym and me for the space of halfe a yere / 21 in that space I trust 21 to fynde some other treaty / 18 so 18 that he and I myghte be frenedes / and yf he refuse this, 22 I se none other remedy but that we shall 24 be all slayne or taken, and then he wyll cause me to dye in some 23 pryson. 'Syr,' quod his knyghtes, 'we shall doo your commandement / but we fere sore that we shall not be herde.' 'Syr,' quod the emperoure, 'go 28 to hym and do the best ye can.' Then they returned to y 29 batayle, where as they founde there company redy

---

1 would have.  
2 the Empeour.  
3—3 him.  
4 then.  
5—5 more greefe than.  
6—6 but, as for death, I trust by the grace of god, I shall escape it.  
7 all.  
8 that.  
9 discomfited.  
10 sore.  
11 will.  
12—12 looke vnto your Maiestie.  
13 Well.  
14 but.  
15 cannot.  
16 anything.  
17 ye shall.  
18—18 omitted.  
19 Fol. lxxii, col. 2.  
20—20 slaying of my men.  
21—21 for within that time I hope.  
22 then.  
23 noysome.
to fle awaye / for they were nere all slayne and taken / the knyghtes fro themperoure came to Huon and desyred hym in the name of the emperoure that he wolde sease the batayle and 1 blowe the retreyte,1 and they sholde 2 do lykewyse in the same maner / and that there myght be a ferme truce bytwene them for halfe a yere / and in that season they trusted that some good wayes sholde 2 be founde that the emperoure and he myght be 8 good frenedes togyther. ' Syrs,' quod Huon / ' if the emperour your mayster hadde me in that daunger / that he is in / he wolde not suffre me to scape a lyue for all y° golde in the world / how be it, I am content that he haue truse for halfe a yere / the which I shall surely kepe on my parte / and yf I be assayed I shall defende me / and yf so be that he come to Burdeux to assayle me / by the helpe of god and my good frenedes, 16 I shal doo the best that I can / But yf he wyll haue peace with me & pardon me his dyspleasure / for the dethe of his nephewes, I shall be redy to make peace / and I shal make amends for all wronges, though I was 20 not the begynner.' Then Huon caused the retreyt to be blowen,4 and in lykewyse so dyde the almayns who had therof grete ioye ; it came to them at a good poynt / for or 5 elles all hadde ben slayne or 6 folye 7 when he had the ouer 8 hande 9 that he pursued not 10 his chase, for then he myghte haue had an ende of that warre, and nother sholde nor spere more broken / where as after many a man was slayne, and was the 28 cause that the cyte of Burdeux was lost & the fayre Esclaramond taken & sette in pryson in the cyte of Mayence, and Huon suffred so moche payn and trouble / that no mortall man can shewe it / thus as ye 32 haue herde Huon graunted the trewes, and soo bothe

1-1 sound the treatie.  
4 sounded.  
5 omitted.  
7 foyled.  
8 vpper.  
2 would.  
3 which.  
6 Fol. lxxii. back, col. 1.  
9 now.  
10 still.
parts withdrew / wherof the Emperour and his company were ryght joyfull. Then Huon called his company / and shewed Gerames and his lordes how he had
4 granted trews to the Emperour for halfe a yere / 'and therefore I charge you al not to breke the peace' / the Emperoure was glad when he herde it / for he knewe well that he was seaped a greate daunger. Then he
8 charged all his men on payne of deth that they sholde not breke the trews. 'And, syrs,' quod he, 'I pray you make redy a lytter that I myght be caryed to Coleyne / for the payne that I fele in my legge causeth
12 all my body to trymble / and when I come there I wyll taryll I be hole.' 'Syr,' quod his lordes, 'your commaundement shall be done' / then they layde the Emperoure in a lytter, sore complaynynge the losse
16 and dethe of his nephews and lordes that were slayne, and his legge greued hym sore. Then Huon said to Gerames, 'syr, thanked be god we haue vaynquysshed the Emperoure & slayne many of his men / therfore it
20 is good that we now returne to Burdeux. I haue gret desyre to se my wyfE Esclaramonde / who thynketh
24 haue grete desyre to returne, so hath all other of youre servauntes; they wold gladly se theyr wyues and chyldren, and some to se theyr louers.'

How Huon gruanted the trews to the
28 emperour, & how the prouost of Coleyne came and assayled Huon, not knowinge of ony peace taken.

Capitulo .lxxxiii.8 [= xciv.]
Huon sees the burghers of Cologne advancing towards him, and suspects the Emperor of treachery.

The provost of Cologne exhorts the men to fight well.

Huon vnderstode y° olde Gerames, he hadde grete joy; then he sounded the trompettes with suche brute that mervaille it was to here, and com¬manded every man to set forwarde towards Burdeux. Then he behelde on his ryght hande and saw them of Coleyne comynge in grete nombre; they were well twenty thousande burs¬gesses and other; they came with baners dysplayde redy to fyght. When Huon sawe them, he had grete mervaille fro whens they sholde come so hastely. Then he sayde to his men; 'syrs, I parceyue clerely we be betrayde, for yf I had wold the Emperour nor his men coude not haue scaped; he hath falsely betrayed me, syn vnder y° colour of trewes they to set newly vpon me.' Thus Huon sayde by themperour without cause, for he knew no thynge thereof, nor that any socoures sholde haue come to hym. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'lette vs rest here and tarye tyll they come nere to vs; than let vs sette on them with suche hast that they shall not know what to do.' 'Syr,' quod his men, 'haue no dought we shall not fayle you for fere of any deth; we trust to slee so many that the erth shalbe coursed with the deed bodyes of your enemyes.' Huon ordred his batayle, and the prouost of Coleyne comfortyd his men, saynge, 'syrs, our em¬perour is dyscomfyt by Huon and his men, who be younder abydyng before vs; they wene to deparde in saue garde; but they haue no power so to do; for the moost parte of them are sore hurt, and there horses sore traumailled, wherfore they shall the sooner be dyscomfyt.' Than the prouost and his men ranne quyckely vpon Huon and his men; there began a feerse bataylle, wherin many a valyaunt man lay on the erth

1 a. 2 nere. 3 pleased. 4 Fol. lxxiii. col. 1. 5 come. 6 companie. 7 thinke.
Ca. xciv.] HOW THE BURGHERS OF COLOGNE FIGHT WITH HUON. 305

The attack is made, and the fight begins.

Deed / and at the 1 fyrst brunt ther wer so many slayne that ye 2 felde was coueryd with deed & hurte 3 men; sum were ouerthrown without any hurte, 4 and yet 4 they coude never asyse bycause of the 5 prose of the horses that ranne 6 ouer them. Huon, who was 1 full of yre bycause he 7 thought that vnder the colore of trewe he was assayled / he ran 8 at a knyght who had done 8 9 gret domage 9 among his men ; it was he that went to Coleyne for that socoure / and Huon strake hym clenfe throw the bodye with his spere, so that he fell downe deed to the erth. Than Huon cryed his crye to gader 10 his men togyther / he layde on the ryght syde and on the lyft / so that he cut of armes and legges, and rasyl helmes fro ye hedes / he semyd rather a man of ye fayrye than a mortall man. But he had myche to do / for his 16 men, who had fought all ye day, were sore tranaylled & wery; how 11 be it, they defeundyd them selues ryght valyantly, & they 12 slew so many of the comons of Coleyne that ye blode ran on the grounde in grete 20 streymes / and themperour, who was issued out of the wood in his lytter, whan he came in to the felde / he herde the brute & crye of the batayle, wherwith he was sore abasshed. Than he demaundyd what noyse it 24 myght be. 'Syr,' quod a knyght, 'it is the good pronost of Coleyne, who hath brought with him the commons of the citie of Coleyne to ayde and socoure you.' 'Syr,' quod themperour, 'and he shall derely 28 abye 13 it / how be it, I thynke he knoweth not of the trewes that we haue taken with Huon / for and 14 I knew that he was aduertesyd therof, I shode cause hym to dye an yll deth. Go to hym and commaunde hym that 32 incontynent he goo to Huon too make amendes for his

1 verie. 2 whole. 3 maimed. 4 at all. 5 great. 6 did runne. 7 had. 8 fiercely. 9—9 verie great hurt. 10 call. 11 Fol. lxxiii. col. 2. 12 omitted. 13 buy. 14 if.

CHRL. ROM. VIII. x
The provost laments the losses his men meet with.

A knight, sent by the Emperor, bids him make amends to Huon for breaking the truce.

The provost, much abashed, seeks out Huon, and begs him have mercy upon him, for he knew nought of the truce.

trespas / and yf he wyll not do it I charge you incontynent \(^1\) sle hym.' When themperour had made his commaundement to one of his knyghtes / he role as fast as he myght to the pronost, who was ryght sorow-\(^4\) full for that he hadde lost foure .M. of his comons, and the knyght slayne that came to hym. Than themperours knyght sayd, 'Syr pronost, ye haue done ryght yll / syn\(^2\) ye haue broken the trewes that was made \(^8\) betwen hym and Huon / yf the emperour may gette you ye shall neuer se fayre day more / without incontynent ye go to Huon and dele so with hym that he be content, so that no reproche be layde to the em-\(^12\) perour.' / whan the pronost and his company herde themperours commaundement, they were sore abasshed, and reculed backe. And the pronost, who was in grete fere for that he had done / and desyrynge to accomplyshe themperours commaundement, strake his horse with the sporres, and restyd not tyll he had founde out duke Huon. Than he lyghtyd a fote, and toke his sworde, and sayd, 'A, ryght noble and vertues prynce, I \(^3\) desyre the, in the honour of Jesu Cryst, hane pyte of\(^4\) me, and pardon me the iniurye that I haue done\(^5\) without the knowlege or lycence of themperour, who wyll cause me to dye a shamfull deth without ye pardone\(^24\) me / for all I knew not of ye trewes betwen you and ye emperour / for I thought he was\(^6\) deed / syr, that\(^7\) I haue done was to thentent to rescue my ryghtfull lorde, and therby I haue lost this day moo then .iiii .M. 28 burgesses and comons of the cyte of Coleyne, and ye most parte of my best frendes, and therfore, syr, I pray you haue pyte of\(^4\) me, elles themperour wyll sle me or set me in perpetuall pryson.'

\(^1\) to. \(^2\) seeing \(^3\) Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1. \(^4\) on. \(^5\) against you. \(^6\) had beene. \(^7\) which.
How Huon return'd to Bordeaux, and of the counsel of the rayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, the whiche he wolde not beleue nor folow.

Huon has pity on the provost, and pardons him.

Huon rides to Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde welcomes him warmly,

and he relates to her his adventures.

and he says to her.

Huon says to her.

Huon says to her.

Huon says to her. She asketh of him.

Huon relates to her his.

Huon relates to her.

Huon relates to her.

Huon relates to her.

but the same.

the.

in reason.

the.

and that.

the.

but.

and.

about.

Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2.

estate.

Madame.

proclaimed.
there, He was\(^1\) concluded with his men to haue slayne me / but by the grace of god I haue done so myche, that in the presence of themperour his vncle, and before\(^2\) all them that were there present, I strike of his hede / \(^4\) bycause he made his aununt that as soone as he had slayne me he wolde haue you to his wyfe / & also\(^2\) all myn herytage / & when I had slayne hym I partyd in hast fro\(^3\) Mayence / and it was not longe after but \(^8\) that themperour folowed me with all his men, mountyd vp on the good horse that ye haue sene, who is so good that I beleue surely there is not suche another in all\(^2\) the worlde / and themperour, who had grete desyre to \(^{12}\) reuenge the deth of his neuew duke Raoull, anaunsyd hym selue a bowe shote before his companye, and cryed after me with many iniuryous wordes. And when I saw that he was far of fro his men I tournyd towards \(^{16}\) hym, & ranne & bare hym to the erth / than I toke the good horse and mountyd on hym, and lete myne owne goo / and when his men saw hym lyeng on the erthe, they feryd lest he had been deed / they assem-bled about hym, & tooke no hede to folow me, by cause they knew well it was but a folye to folow me, \(^4\)syn \(^5\) I was mountyd on themperours good horse. Thus I de-partyd fro them, and went and lay all that nyght at \(^{24}\) Coleyne, wher as I founde my men whom I had left there when I went to themperours courte all alone / the next day I partyd / but I was not gone farre out of Coleyne whan themperour and .x M. men met \(^{28}\) me in the way, where as they had lyene in a lytell wood in awayte for me. Than they ranne at me & at my men / there was a grete batayle on both partes, and many slayne & woundyd. But I dyd so myche by the \(^{32}\) grace of god & my good company / that I overcame them, and I slew two of his neuewes, and I bare

\(^1\) had.  \(^2\) omitted.  \(^3\) to.  \(^4\) Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.  \(^5\) seeing.
themperour to the erth / and when he sawe that the losse of the batayle ran on his syde, he sent to me than a messenger to haue trewes for halfe a yere / 4 the whiche I grauntyd bycause I thought I had done hym dyspleasure ynoough as in sleynge of thre of his neuwes. Thus we departyd, & as I retournyd I met y° prouost of Coleyne, who brought with hym .xx M. 8 men to haue rescued themperour, & so we fought togyther. But as soone as themperour was adversed therof / he sende & commaundyd hym that he sholde no more fyght with me. Than the prouost came to me 12 & cryed me mercy for that² he had done, excusyng hym selfe that he knew nothyng of y° trewes. Than we made to sounde the retrayte of both partes. 3Thus we departyd without any moo strokes gyuynge, wherof 16 I thanke god that I am thus scapyd.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'ye ought to thanke god that he hathe sent you that grace / for I haue herde say that them- perour⁴ whom ye haue slayne his two neuwes is greate /

20 puyssaunt / and a ryche pryncye, ryght sage and experte in the warre, wherefore it is to be feeryd that he wyll not let the mater thus to rest.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon, 'I know well this that ye say is trew; I thynke well

24 he be dye⁶pleasyd with me for y° deth of his neuwes and many other of his kyn / thus, as I haue sayd, I iustyd with hym two tymes / & at the seconde tyme I strake hym to the erthe in such wyse that he brake 28 his thyse, so that he was constreynyd to be borne⁷ in a lytter / and it hath ben shewed⁸ me syn / that y° losse of his good horse greuyth hym more than the losse of all⁹ his men. Lady, to shew you the parrelles and 32 aduentures that I haue founde¹⁰ syn I departyd fro you, it sholde¹¹ be to longe to shew you. But surely I

Esclaramonde fears that the Emperor will pursue the strife. Huon knows that the Emperor is sore distressed by his escape and the loss of his own horse,

¹ he. ² which. ³ and. ⁴ of. ⁵ Madame. ⁶ Fol. lxxiii. col. 2. ⁷ thence. ⁸ told. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had. ¹¹ would.
thynke as soone as the trewes be\(^1\) expyryd, but\(^2\) that\(^3\) themperour with all his puyssaunce wyll come and besiege me here in Burdeux, for it hath ben shewed me of trouthe that\(^5\) themperour hath so made his oth\(^4\) and promyse / and hath sworn by his crowne imparryl that he wyll not deparde hense tyll he haue taken and dystroyed this\(^4\) cyte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'yf ye wyll beleue me / ye shall\(^5\) well resyte\(^5\) this, and I shall tell you how / ye know well I haue a brother called kynge Salybraunt, who is kynge of Bougye, the whiche extendyth on the one syde nere too Monbrant, and on the other syde nere to Tyrooley in Barbarye / he may lede in batayle a .C.M. men / and, syr, surely he is a good crysten man,\(^2\) how be it, ther be\(^6\) but few that knoweth it / this .v. yere he hathe surely\(^7\) beleued on Jesu Cryst / and, syr, yf ye wyll go to hym, and I desyre his ayde by the same token that, whan ye were prisoner in Babylone, I dyscoueryd the secretnes\(^8\) of my mynde to hym, and shewed hym of ye\(^e\) loue betwen you and me / and how ye sholde\(^9\) lede me in to Fraunce, 20 wherof he was ioyfull, and desyre me affectuously that I sholde doo so myche to you / that we myght come and se hym in his owne realme. But the aduenture fell so that our departhyng was\(^10\) other wyse than 24 we had deuyseyd / he was there & saw how my father was slayne, & all suche\(^11\) as were with hym / than for fere he ranne away, & dyd hyde hym in a garden behynd the palays, and there taryd tyll it was nyght / 28 and than he stalle away, and went in to his owne realme / there shall ye fynde hym yf ye wyll goo thyther / I know surely\(^12\) he wyll make you\(^13\) good chere / and wyll not refuse\(^14\) to\(^15\) socoure you, 16 the 32

\(^1\) is. \(^2\) omitted. \(^3\) then. \(^4\) the. \(^5\)—\(^5\) resist. \(^6\) are. \(^7\)—\(^7\) verily he hath. \(^8\) secrets. \(^9\) would. \(^10\) fell. \(^11\) Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1. \(^12\) that. \(^13\) exceeding great. \(^14\) for. \(^15\) ayde and. \(^16\)—\(^16\) for hee will bee so exceeding puissaunt and mightie.
whiche shalbe so grete and puyssant that he wyll brynge with hym moo than a C. M. sarazyns / & syr, I wolde counsell you to take with you a v. or vi. prestes furnysshyd with oyle and creme / for, as soone as he hath his men oute of his owne countre, he wyll cause them to be crystenyd, and suche as wyll not he wyll cause them to dye an yll deth. Syr, I requyre you beleue my counsell at this tyme / for ye know well out of Fraunce ye get no socoure / for yf sum Huon can expect no aid from France. the hate that he hath to you is not yet quenched for the deth of his sonne Charlote, he wyll neuer forget it / and, syr, yf ye go not to my brother for socoure ye may happe to repent it, and peraduenture it may be to late / and do as he doth that closyth the stable dore when the horse is stollen.' Thus the fayre esclaramonde exortyd duke Huon her husbonde, whom she loued entyerly.

| How Huon had grete ioye for the byrh of Claryet his daughter. Capitolo lxxvvi. |

Han Huon had well herd his wyfe he sayd, 'my ryght dere lady and companyon, ryght well I know the grete loue that ye bere to me, the whiche hathe constreynyd you to say thus, wherof I thanke you. By the lorde that on ye crosse dyed to redeeme humayne lynage, I wyll go to no place nor sende for any socoures / tyll I se them befor my cyte, and that I haue cause to purchace for socoures, nor tyll I fele the strokes of ye Almayns and bauyers that they can gyue when they be out of there owne

1 also, 2 and aduise, 3 along, 4 some, 5 well, 6 that, 7 shall, 8 omitted, 9 shutteth, 10 Ladie, 11 Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2, 12 But, 13 for, 14 vntill, 15 labour.
He would be reproached for departing now.

Esclaramonde presses her husband to obtain men from her brother before the Emperor arrives, and tells him her fear of the Germans.

Esclaramonde becomes a mother.

countre / nor as longe as my shylde is hole\(^1\) fyrst, I thynke they shall fele the sharpnes of my spere hede and good sworde /\(^2\) by goddes grace I shall not abandone you nor leue my cyte and good burgesses /\(^3\) it myght 4 greatly be layde to my reproche, yf I sholde thus goo away.' 'A, syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'ye may well know that this that I haue sayd is for the fere that I haue of you / for I haue ben well aduerstesyd that 8 themperour sore hateth you, and not without cause, for his neuewes and lordes that ye haue slayn, and therefore, sir, yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall 4 haue men to defende you brought hyther by the kynge my brother / 12 so that when the emperour is come in to your londe, it shall lye in you other to make peace or warre at your wyll / reason it were that ye made hym sum amandes for the hurtes that ye haue done to\(^5\) hym / and on the 16 other parte, yf he wyll haue no peace / than it shall lye in you to make hym suche warre so that he shall not departe without your agrement and to his great losse. syr, the fere that I haue to lese you constreyneth me 20 thus to say / I haue herd often tymes sayd / that the entre into warre is large / but the issuyenye out ther of is very strayte / nor ther is no warre but it causeth pouerte. But syn\(^6\) it is your pleasure not to beleue me, 24 it is reason that I must be content that your pleasure be fyllyd.' Than they entred in to other deuyse / 7 gret ioye and feest was made in the palayes at Burdeux betwene Huon and the lordes of the countre. at last 28 the fayre Esclaramond, who was gret with chylde, fell vpon trauelynge, and she prayed to god \(^8\) and to oure ladye for ayde & helpe. she was in her chambre, whereas she\(^8\) sufferyd gret payne / wher of Huon ha\(^3\)d 32 gret pyte when he herd ther of / for \(^9\) there was gret

1 and sound. 2 and yet. 3 for. 4 Pol. lxxx. col. 1. 6 vnto. 6 seeing. 7 and. 8–8 for helpe, and. 9–9 the love betweene them was exceeding great.
loue betwen them\(^9\) / at last ye\(^e\) ladye was brought to bed of a fayre doughter / wher of Huon thanked god / than entred in to the ladyes chambre a greate nombre of the ladyes of the fayrye / & came to Esclaramoundys bed and sayd, 'Lady, ye ought well to thanke god / for ye haue brought forth ye\(^e\) moost\(^1\) fayrest and best creature that as now is in the worlde, and to whom oure lord 8 god hath grauntyd moost graces at her byrth / for 2 more fayrer / nor more sage / nor courteys\(^2\) hath not be borne this \(C.\) yeres past / for she shall haue such desteney and happe\(^3\) in this worlde / that of the realme 12 of Arogone she shalbe queene crownyd, and she shall soo gouerne her selfe that she 4 shalbe\(^5\) a seint in paradise.

At Tortouse ther is the chyrche where 1 as yet\(^1\) she is honouryd / the whiche is foundyd in her name, and is 16 namyd saynt Clare.' Esclaramounde was ioyfull of the wordes of these ladyes of the fayrye. 6 grete ioy\(^7\) was made \(^8\) in the chambre\(^8\) for the byrth of this chylde / who was gretly regardyd of the ladyes of the fayry, and 20 they sayd eche to other that this chylld was the fayrest creature of 9 the world / they toke this chylld eche after other and blyssyd it thre times, and than\(^10\) layde it doune and departyd sodenly so that no man wyst 24 where they were become, wherof all the ladyes & other hed grete meruayle. This tydynges was brought to Huon, he was ryght ioyefull, and sayd / 'A, syr\(^11\) kynge Oberon, I beleue surely that as yet ye haue not forogten 28 me. Now I dought no thyng themperour nor all his puyssaunce syn\(^12\) ye haue remembraunce of me.' Than Huon cam in to the hall, and thryder his doughter was brought to\(^13\) hym to se / he toke her in his armes and 32 shewed her to his lordes, who were\(^14\) ioyfull to se her.
Than she was borne to chyrche and with grete solempnyte crystenyd / and named Claryet, because she was soo fayre and clere to beholde. Than she was brought to the duches, who had of her gret ioy / whan the duches had kept her chambre a moneth, than she was chyrchyd, wher of all the courte was ioyfull, and such feest was made that yf I sholde shew you the ryches and noblesse that was there shewed, it sholde be ouer 8 louge to reherse. Therfore I leue spekynge therof at this tyme tyll another season.

Howe themperour assembled a grete hoste and came to Burdeux. Capitulo .lxxxvii. 12

The Emperor of Germany assembles his men at Mayence to make war upon Huon.

Sixty thousand men are collected together.

\(^1\) will. \(^2\) vntill. \(^3\) Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1. 
\(^4\) at large. \(^5\) againe. \(^6\) and all. \(^7\) appointed. 
\(^8\) verie. \(^9\) to.
Ca. xcvi.]  OF THE EMPEROR'S ARMY.

315
countre tyll he had fyrst slayne Huon, who had done hym so great dammage. Thau he commandyd his constables & marshalle to be redy to departe the next 4 day, & to take the way towards Coleyne with al his artylerey and caryage, the which was done. The next day themperour entred in to the fele and so rode towards Coleyne / and whan themperour was within a 8 legge than there met with hym the olde Sauary hys brother, who was father to duke Raoull, slayne by Huon. whan these two brerthen met togyther there was great ioy made.1

12 But than duke Sauory began to wepe, & sayd to his brother themperoure, 'Syr, of your cominge I am ryght joyfull. But when the pyteous deth of my dere beloued somn your iuynew Raoull cometh to my mynde / there is no membre on me / but for doloure 2 and dyspleasure trymbleth / nor I can never have parfyte ioy at my herte as longe as he that hath done me thys dyspleasure 3 be alyue.'3 This duke Sauary was a noble man / but betwene hym and his sonne Raoull was great dyfference, for this 4 duke Raoull was the untrewest traytoure that euer lyued : the which ylues 5 procedyd by y e duches his mother / who was doughter to Hurdowyn of Fraunce, the moost untrewest and falsest traytour that as than lyued in the world / whan themperour herde his brother speke the water 6 fell 7 out of 7 his eyen, & 8 embracyd hym, and sayd, 'My ryght dere brother, your doloure 9 dyspleaseth me / for your doloure is myne, 10 therof I wyll have my 11 parte / and yf ye haue 9 ioy my parte shal 12 be therin. But it is not possyble for vs / to haue hym agayne for whom we make this 32 sorowe' / god ayde Huon fro his enemes, for they greatly desyryd his deth; yet often tymes they that

They prepare to march to Cologne.
On the way the Emperor, whose name was Thierry, met his brother Savary, father of duke Raoul.
Duke Savary weeps for the loss of his son.
He is not an untrue traitor, like duke Raoul.
The Emperor consoles his brother.

1 betwene them. 2 Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2. 3-3 lineth, the. 5 wickedness. 6 tears. 7-7 from. 8 he, much. 10 and. 11 a. 12 likewise.
The army is well received in Cologne.

It was a great host with long lines of artillery, and passed over the Rhone into the country of Bordeaux.

The town is well fortified and furnished with food and guns.

desyre another mans deth anaunseth there owne. Thus, as ye haue herde, themperour and duke Sauary entred in to the cyte of Coleyne, where as they were reseyued with great ioy / and so rode to ye palayes: there they 4 souppyd. I wyl make no longe rehersall of ye good chere that they made there. Than after soupper they went to there rest, and the next mornynge rose and herde masse, and tooke a soppe in wyne, Than departyd 8 out of Coleyne. It was a goodly host to beholde, they & theyr caryage / & 3 arteleiry strechyd foure legges of lenght. Thus they all had sworne ye deth of Huon / they passyd by hye Borgoyyn and by Dolpheurey, and 12 so passyd the ruyer of Rome, and so in to the countre of Burdeux. Nowe I wyll leue spekyng of them tyll another season.

5 ¶ How themperour Tyrrey of Almayne 16 beseged the cyte of Burdeux / and howe Huon made hym redy to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulo lxxviii.

Huon orders all his men to be ready in armes, and to come to Bordeaux, when he heard of the Emperor's protest.

The army is well received in Cologne.

How themperour Tyrrey of Almayne 16 beseged the cyte of Burdeux / and howe Huon made hym redy to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulo lxxxviii.

Huon orders all his men to be ready in armes, and to come to Bordeaux, when he heard of the Emperor's protest.

Huon made hym redy to fyght with his enemyes.

Hus ye haue well herde here before 20 the deuises that the duches Esclaramond had made to her husbonde Huon; who as soone as she was chyrched, Huon sent his commandement al his countre every man to be redy in armes and to come to Burdeux, bycause he was aduertysed of ye cominge of his enemyes / the messengers made such delygence that in 7 xv. dayes 28 after every man was come to Burdeux / and the 8 duke Huon reseyued them with great ioy. Than he repayryd the cyte and the toures and walles, and it was well furnysshed with vytaylles and arteleiry, as in suche a 32

1 and. 2 service. 3 their. 4 Dolphinne. 5 Fol. lxxvi. col. 1. 6 omitted. 7 within. 8 there.
case it\(^1\) aparteynd. \(^2\) At that tyme \(y^e\) cyte of Burdeux was not so strong as it is now / whan duke Huon saw his cyte so well garnysheed with men and vytaylle / \(^4\) he was rytght ioyfull. \(^3\) Than he called to hym the olde Gerames, & sayd / 'my rytght dere frenede, ye se so well this warre \(^4\) that is aparent betwene themplour and me, & nowe we be well aduertysed of his comynge, who is 8 redye to come with all his host to besenge this oure cyte / & therfore, my hertye\(^5\) frenede, who hath aydyd me in so many besynesses, I pray you counsell and ayde me now; for\(^6\) all the conduce of my warre / I wyll" \(^12\) ye haue the charge, & that ye wyll comforte my men \(^8\) to do\(^8\) well, so that of vs there be none \(^9\) yll songe\(^9\) made, and that our enemies haue no cause to prayse \(y^e\) warre that they haue agaynst vs / nor that whan they \(^16\) be retournyed in to there countres that they make not there anauntes amonge their wenches and\(^10\) louers.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I thanke you of the honoure and gret trust that ye haue in me / how be it, ye haue \(^20\) many other more sage and hardy than I am, too whom this\(^11\) charge sholde better aperteyne than to me. But, sir, as for me, I shall so aquyte me that I trust I shall not be reprehendyd.' Thus, as ye haue herde, Huon \(^24\) made his deuyses amonge all his barons / and made all his ordynaunces for the defence of the cyte and the maner of theyr yssues,\(^12\) and apoyntyd men for theyr rescue in reculynge. And themplour was entred in to \(^28\) the countre of Burdeux with a \(^13\) grete puysaunce,\(^13\) byrnynge and dystroyenge the countre, wher of the poore peple were sore abasshed, bycause they neuer had warre before / \(^3\) thus themplour neuer restyd \(^32\) exylnyge\(^14\) & destroyenge the countre tyll they came

\(^{1}\) well. \(^2\) for. \(^3\) and. \(^4\) Fol. lxxvi. col. 2. \(^5\) deere. \(^6\) in. \(^7\) that. \(^8\)—\(^8\) omitted. \(^9\)—\(^9\) euill report. \(^10\) their. \(^11\) great. \(^12\) issuing. \(^13\)—\(^13\) mightie armie. \(^14\) wasting.
before the cote of Burdeux and theyr he pyght vp hys tentes and paulyons / and themperoure lay on the waye ledynge to Parys / on the other parte duke Saurey, father to Raoull, was lodgyd by themperours marshallles / so that all the cyte was closyd rownde aboute. Huon, who was within the cyte, behelde theyr countenaunces and maner of theyr lodgynge. He commaundyd that all his men sholde be redy to yssue out vpon 1 there 8 enemys / the whiche they dyd. Than Huon armed hym 2 rychely / and mountyd vpon his good horse, the whiche was the emperours / and sware that, or 3 he returnyed agayne, he wolde shew his enemys what 12 they of Burdeux coude do / whan he was mountyd on his good horse he cam in to the cyte, and founde the old Gerames redy aparelyd and 4 all his company. Than he ordanydyd 5 v. M. men to kepe the cyte, & 16 .xx. M. 6 to go with hym / thus duke Huon made his ordenaunces. ye may well know 7 that the sorow was great that Esclaramounde made for the duke her husbonde / she was ryght sage. 8 she feryd to lese hym, 20 bycause she knew hym so adventurys / and that his enemys were of so grete nombre / 9 ryght peteously wepynge she made her prayers to our 10 lorde god deuoutly that he wolde kepe, and defende Huon, her 24 husbonde, & all hys men fro daunger & losse, & to sende hym peace. 11

Of the grete batayle that was before Burdeux, where as Huon had grete losse & the 28 olde Gerames taken.  

Capitulo lxxxix.

1 Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 1.  2 selte verie.  3 ere.  4 with.  5 apoyyted.  6 men.  7 imagine.  8 wise.  9 but.  10 the.  11 with his enemies.
Huon, as he have herde, Burdeux was besieged by themperour of hye Almaynes, & by hys brother the duke Sauary, with a grete nombre of men. Than Huon yssuyd out, and when he was past the porte, he made haste, to thentent to surpryce his enemies, for at that tyme themperour was set at dyner.

Than Huon & his company all at ones dasht in amonge the tentes and paulyons / and bet them downe to y" erthe, so that they that were within were sore abasshed, for they had thought that Huon durst neuer a yssued out of the cyte agaynst hym, and the great nombre that he was of. Huon layde on rounde aboute hym so that who so euer met with hym had no nede of leche craft. Also the olde Gerames dyd meruaylles, and so dyd the Burdeloys. many a ryche tent and paulyon was beten downe to y" erthe, and they within slayne and all to hewyn. Huon, who was mountyd on his good horse, met with a knyght of themperours 20 house, and he gaue hym suche a stroke with his sword that he claue his hede to the teth / and than strake another that his hede / helme & al, flew to the erth. they that sawe that stroke was sore abasshed. Themperoures 24 men assembled togyther by heepes. But by the hye prowess of Huon anone they were agaynest departyd / he was so doughtyd and feryd that none was so hardy to aproche nere to hym. The crye and noyce mountyd so hye that the emperour, who was as than at his dyner, when he herde the crye he rose fro the table, and demaundyd what noyse it was. 'Syr,' quod a knyght, who was fled and sore hurt / 'sir, know for trouth that your enemye Huon is issuyd oute of Bur-

1 Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 2. 2 the. 3 much. 4 omitted. 5 verily. 6 hane. 7-7 a leches. 8 ground. 9 and. 10 a. 11 he. 12 mightie. 13 for. 14 them.
deux, and hath done so myche\(^1\) that he hath slayne a quarter of all\(^2\) your host, and without that ye doo rescue your men\(^3\) shortly, your losse is lyke to be ryght\(^4\) grete, \(^5\) for I haue sene Huon your enemy mountyd\(^4\) vpon your good hors, wheren he doth grete meruaylles / for there is none \(\text{that meteth} \)^\(^2\) with\(^2\) hym but \(\text{that} \)^\(^2\) is slayne, he is so cruell and hardy.' when themperour herde the knyght he sweit for displeasure ; \(^7\) incontynent\(^8\) he armed hym / and issued out of his tent and mountyd on his horse / and founde his men redy. Than he saw Huon mountyd on his good horse / than\(^8\) he sayd to his men, 'Syrs, I requyre you at this tyme put to your\(^12\) paynes that I may be reuengyd of myne enemye, who before my face yonder sleeth\(^9\) my men. he is so valyaut that whom so euer he stryketh with a full stroke is but deed / grete domage it was whan he slew\(^16\) my neuew.\(^10\) who so euer can delyuer hym to me quycke or deed shalbe my frende for euer, and I shall\(^11\) shew hym y\(^e\) courtesy / that Esclaramond, who is so fayre, I shall gyue her to\(^12\) hym in maruye, & all the\(^20\) countre\(^13\) of Burdeux.\(^7\)

\(\text{†}\) Than suche as herde his promyse made them redy for\(^11\) couytes\(^14\) of that gyft. But sum hastyd so myche to acomplysh thempourers wyll that it was to 24 late after for them to repent. It is a\(^15\) saynge that an yll haste is not good / sum hastyd so sore\(^16\) that after\(^17\) bought it full\(^18\) dere, as ye shall\(^19\) here. after these wordes spoken by the emperour, suche as desyryed\(^28\) to acomplyshe his wyll ran in all togyther in to the batayle agaynst the Burdeloys / there was grete occy-syon\(^20\) on both partes. Huon, who had grete desyre in his hert to slye his enemies / dyd so myche by hys\(^32\)

---

\(^1\) hurt.  \(^2\)--\(^2\) omitted.  \(^3\) verie.  \(^4\) exceeding.  
\(^5\) Fol. lxvii. col. 1.  \(^6\) he.  \(^7\) and.  \(^8\) whereon.  
\(^9\) killeth.  \(^10\) nephews.  \(^11\) will.  \(^12\) vnto.  \(^13\) Court.  
\(^14\)--\(^14\) the couetousness.  \(^15\) an old.  \(^16\) much.  
\(^17\) afterwardes.  \(^18\) too.  \(^19\) heare.  \(^20\) slaughter made.  

The Emperor arms himself, and orders his men to the onset.

He promises that Huon's wife and land shall be given to the warrior who slays the knight.

There is much rivalry for the promised gifts.
prowes that he reculyd his enemyes to theyr tentes / & it had been yll with them, &
and. 1 duke Sauary had not rescued them / he with his grete prowes made them to
to recover.agayne the feld / there was a sore batayle on both partes. The olde Gerames that day slewe many a
man. But he aduenturyd hym selfe so far forth amounge his enemyes / that his horse was slayne vnnder
8 hym / so that he was constreynyd to fall to the erth / and there he was taken & led to themperours tent, and
gret fetters set on his legges. Alas that Huon had not knownen therof; if he had, he shold not haue ben
12 led away without grete losse. But he was in ye batayle doyng meruelles in armes. he helde his sworde in his
hande tayntyd with blood and braynes of men that he had slayne / there was none so hardy that durst aproch
16 nere to hym / he cryed 'Burdeux' to draw his men togyther / and dasht in to ye greatest prease, & strake
on al partes in suche wyse that his enemyes gaue hym place, for none durst abyde his strokes / the prease
20 was so grete of the men of duke Sauareys that he had gret payne to breke in among them. he fought so
that he semyd rather a man of the fayrye or a speryt than a mortall man / every man had grete meruayle of
24 the prowes that he shewed & his company. Than cam agaynst hym ye olde duke Sauary, with a byrnynge
desyre too be reuenged for the deth of his son Raoull; and Huon parseyued hym well, and made suche hast
28 that the duke had no leyser to gyne the fyrst stroke / for Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his sworde
that he cut clene of a quarter of his shylde, & ye stroke gleynt to the horse necke by suche vertue that it strake
32 of clene the horse hede / so that there by the duke fell to the erth / and yf he hadde not ben well socouryd he

but Huon is as mighty as ever.

Old Gerames also fights with strength, although his horse is killed under him, and he is taken prisoner.

Huon is to be found wherever the fight is hottest.

His prowess is marvellous.

He unhorses at one blow Duke Savary, who desires vengeance for his son's death.

1 if.  2 and.  3 Fol. lxxvii. col. 2.  4 then.  5 clapt.  6 vpon.  7 vnto.  8 still.  9 Now.  10 shewed after company.  11 glyded.
had been slayne / but there came to hym so many men, that whether Huon wolde or not he was socouryd / and mountyd vpon a new horse / whan Huon sawe that he was scapyd, he called vpon our lorde god, and sayd, 4 'A, good lorde, yf I tary here longe I se well that my force shall but lytell profyte me, for there be .xx. agaynst one.' Than he called certen of his lorde that were aboute hym, & sayd, 'Syrs, I perscyue well our 8 force can not longe contynew1 / therfore it is better2 departe betymes than to 3 tary to longe.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'as it shall please you' / 4 than they tournyd them towards Burdeux a soft pace / and Huon dyd / as the 12 sheparde doth go behynde his shepe / so wente he with his sword in his hande / defending his company fro his enemies, 5sorowfull & angry for the losse that he had that day, for in the mornynge whan he departyd 16 from Burdeux he had a .xx. M. of good fyghtinge men, & at his retourne he saw well he had not past6.iii. M., wherwith he was sore displeasyd / & often tymes by the way tournyd & returnyd to his enemies. At last he 20 met with a knyght named Jозerane, & gaue hym suche a stroke that he fell downe deed to ye7 erth, wherof themperour Tyrrey was sore dyspleasyd / for he was his cosyn germayne ; & after7 he slew other .iii. knyghtes 24 of Almayne. Than he returnyd agayne after hys men, & so led them forth8 as the sheparde doth his shepe / & often tymes tournyd & returnyd vpon his enemies, so that there was none so hardy that durst aproche nere 28 hym / therwith thyther came themperour rychely armed with ye9 armes imperyall,10 mountyd vpon a puyssaunt horse. Than he cryed, 4 on forth, my barons / take hede that this traytoure Huon scape not away / yf I 32 maye haue hym in my handes / all the golde in the

---

1 endure. 2 to. 3 Fol. lxxvii, back, col. 1. 4 so.
5 right. 6 above. 7 that. 8 still.
9 omitted. 10 and.
worlde shall not redeeme hym fro hanginge.' Huon, who herd the emperour, sayd, 'A, false olde lepar, thou lyest falsly, I was neuer traytour.' Than themperour ranne at Huon, & strake hym on the shylde, and strake it clene throwe, and the spere brake all to peces. And Huon with his sworde strake themperour on the helme, so that the serkell set with stone & perle was betten to the erth. 2 yf the horse had not swaruyd, themperour had neuer scapyd alyue; neuertheles, the stroke lyght so on his shulder that ye sword persyd the mayle and gaue hym a depe wounde; & forther, ye sword dissendyd to ye arson of the sadell, so that the hors was stryken nye a sounder in two peces / so that & the horse fell downe7 togethyer to ye erth3 / so that & he had not ben rescued by ye Almayns he had ben slayn. Huon was sorie when he saw the Emperour so scapyd with his life; than he tournyd and rode towards Burdeaux after his men, who tarryed still for hym, and Huon dyd so myche by hys prowess that for all themperour & his men he entred in to his cyte of Burdeux. But as than he knew not that the olde Gerames was taken prisoner. 10 Thus, as ye haue herd, duke Huon entred in to Burdeux with 20 .iii. M. men, of whome ye moost parte were sore hurte / he rode to the palays & there alyghtyd. Than he lokyd aboute hym, & was sore abasshed when he saw not Gerames by hym / than he demaundyd yf any man knew where he was. 'Syr,' quod a knyght named Gallerance, 'know for trouthe he is taken prysoner, & is in the handes of your enemie / for to haue aiydyd hym I was woundyd in thre places, & menrhande 32 slayne. I employed my force to haue socouryd hym, but I coude fynde no remedy' / whan Huon herd that / 1 dotard, 2 and, 3 not, 4 bow, 5 Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 2, 6 the, 7 to the ground, 8-8 omitted, 9 if, 10 so, 11 that.
he prasyd grety Gerames force & vertue, & grety compleynyd & sayd, 'alas that I had not knowne of his takyng, or I had returnyd I wolde soner have dyed / but at the leest I wold haue taken sum man suffecyent to a redemyd hym agayne out of daunger.' A pyeuous thyng that was to here duke Huon what sorrow he made for his frende Gerames / but his compleyntes coude not auayle hym / his lordes sayd, 'syr, with goddes grace ye shal haue hym agayne saue & alyue.' 'Syr, quod Huon, 'it shall be a grete adventure without they put hym to deth.' Than Huon mountyd vp to the palays, where as he met Esclaramond his wyfe / whom he kyssyd & embraced many tymes. 'Syr, quod ye lady, 'I pray you shew me of your newes.' 'Lady,' quod Huon, 'they be but pore & dolowrus, for of many. M. men that I had with me out of this cyte, I haue brought home alyue but.iii. M., and yet the moost parte of them is sore wounded / and bysyde that, the olde Gerames is taken prisoner, who hath suffred before this tyme so many paynes & travaylles for my sake.' 'A, syr, quod ye lady, sore wepynge / 'I had rather ye had belened me, and that ye had gone and sought for socoure of my brother / who wolde not laylled you / he wolde a come with you with so myche people and puysaunce that themperour sholde not durst to abyden you.' 'Dame,' quod Huon, 'speke no more therof / for the losse of as myche as cytys be in vulture I wolde not haue gone thither nor too none other parte for any socoure, nor yet wyll not tyll I se me sorer oppressyd than I am as yet / I myght well be reputyd for a coward and recreauant thus to abandone my cyte / I had rather be dysmembred in to peeces than for fere I sholde leue you / it sholde be grety to

1 omittet. 2 haue. 3 lamentable. 4 by the grace of god. 5 Fol. lxxviii. col. 1. 6 he. 7 Alas. 8 but. 9 Madame. 10 more. 11 would.
Ca. c.] OF THE DISTRESS OF BOTH HUON AND THE EMPEROR. 325

my reproche in the courtes of yxe prynces, and when I com there to be markyd with the fynger for that grete defaulte. 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'your pleasure is myne, syn ye wyll haue it so / but I am ryght sorye for the olde Gerames, who is prysoner in ye tentes of your enemyes / who hath suffred for your sake many grete paynes & pouertyes. I cannot be but sory whan I remembre hym.' 'Dame,' quod Huon, 'as yet Gerames is not deed. I hope, by the grace of our lorde Huon hopes to rescue Gerames. God, that we shall haue hym agayne.'

Now let vs leue spekyng of Huon, and speke of themperour, who lay sore hurt on the erth.

How themperour reasyd vp a payre of galowes to hang vp the olde Gerames and all the Burdeloys that were taken prysoners. Capitul. C.

E haue well here before recountyd how Huon entred in to Burdeux after he hadde betten downe themperour Tyrrey, whom he left lyenge on erth, and had ben slayne and his men had not quyckely rescued hym. His men were sorowfull, they feryd he had ben deed, & vnlasyd his helme, & was ryght joyfull when they founde hym alyue. Than they demaundyd & sayd, 'sir, we desyre you shew vs what case ye fele yourself in.' 'Syrs,' quod he, 'I am sore hurt, wherby I fele gret payne; this enemye Huon hath brought me in this case. I was foolishly counselled when I cam hyther to seke for hym, for yf I had taryed styl at Mayence, I and he regrets his departure from Mayence.

1 that. 2 sorowful. 3 Madame. 4 Fol. lxxviii. col. 2. 5 alredy. 6 vpon. 7 if. 8 now. 9 for.
believe to do me displeasure he wolde haue come that my wounde may be serched' than he was borne in to his tent & vnarmed & layd on his bed, & he sownyd thryse for paine of his hurt. And whan he cam to hym selfe, & his woundes serched by his surfyons he demaundyd where ye knyghtes of Burdeux were that were taken in ye batayle, & commandyd that they sholde be brought to his presence / Gerames was brought before hym, who was grete & puysaunt, with a berde as whyte as snow; he was a fayre olde knyght to beholde / his vysage playne & smylynge, he semyd to be a man of hye aflayres / whan ye empour saw hym / he sayd, 'thou old catyue, shew me what thou art / beware,' shew me the trouth / 'sir,' quod Gerames, know well that for feare of any deth I wyll not spare to say ye trouthe / syn ye wyll know what I am, I am named Gerames, & am Huons seruant, whom I loue naturally, & also I am his parent, whereby I haue ye more cause to loue hym / I haue slayne dyuers of your men. 'Well,' quod the emperour, 'I repute the for a foole to gyne me thys knowlege / for, by the grace of our lord Jesu Cryst, tomarow erlye, or I ete or drynke, thou shalt be drawen and hangyd / and lx. of thy company that were taken with thee in the batayle.' Syr, quod Gerames, of this that ye shew me I can you no thanke for it / but I hope, by the ayde of our lorde Jesu Cryst, that I shall do you yet 28 more domage or I dye. 'A, velayne,' quod themperour, gret meruayle I haue of the that thus before me & my barons thou dost vse thretnynges / and yet thou seest clerely how thou art my prysoner, and that it
lyeth in me to put the to what deth it please me / know for trouth, & it were not so late of ye day as it is, I wolde not suffer the to lyue one houre. But or I
4 slepe I shall cause 3 gybettes and 3 galowes to be made
where as thou and thy company shalbe hanged / and I
shall cause the to be hangyd so nere to the cyte / that
yf Huon be so nere a kynne to the as thou sayest, he
8 wyll shew how well he loueth the / he maye haue grete
doloure whan before his iyen he shall se his cosyn and
his men hanged / and than after I wyll assayle the
cyte / and take it parforce, so that than Huon in any
12 wyse shall not scape out of my handes, & so to be
hanged with other / and the fayre Esclaramonde shalbe
brynt or condemnyd to pryson / and than I wyll
byrne all the cyte and dystroy it clene.' "Syr,' quod
16 Gerames, 'ye may say your pleasure, but in the
doynge is all the mater]/ when themperour saw that
Gerames doughtyd not the deth, he was sore abasshed.
Than he commaundyd incontynent galowes to be reysyd
20 vp so gret to hange theron the .lx. prysoners, and to
be set on a lytell rocke nere to the cyte of Burdeux,
to thentent that Huon and his men myght se them
playne / therby to abasshe them / the whiche was
24 done / so the mater restyd tyll the next day in the
mornynge. And when it was day Huon within ye cyte
rose and came to hys palays, and regardyd out at the
wyndowes to se and beholde the host of his enemyes /
28 and as he stode he spayed the new galowes stondyng
on ye rocke. Than he callyd his lordes, and sayd /
'Syrs, neuer beleue / but yonder galowes that I se new
reysyd is for none other entent but to hang theron
32 my men that be taken, & my frende Gerames, wherof
I am sorowfull. Therfore, syrs, quykely make you redy

1 if. 2 ecr. 3-3 a. 4 wardes. 5 &. 6 fortie. 7 vntill. 8 Fol. lxxviii. bacc, col. 2. 9 for. 10 good. 11 verie.
HUON OF BURDEUX.

and urges them to follow him to the rescue.

Seven thousand men are armed.

and mount on your horses / for or they be hangyd we wyll proue our selwe against them / loke to the host warde & se whan they be commynge to ye galowes warde / & whan ye se them be redy on horsbacke, & ye gate open, that we may issue out all at ones / & let vs never thynke to returne tyll we haue rescued our men / for I thynke never to returne m to this cyte tyll I haue delyueryd them out of ye handes of our enemyes.'

Than they armed them a vii. M. by tale of good men of armes, well horsyd, redy at ye gate to deporte whan tyme cam. Now we wyl leue spekinge of Huon / & speke of themperour.

How Huon issued out of Burdeux & rescued the old Gerames and his company, whom themperour wolde haue hanged.

Capt. .Ci. 16

Hemperour, who had grete desyre that Gerames & his company were hanged / caused them to be brought forth by couples, one fast tyed to another, and Gerames the formest / who then ryght tenderly began to wepe when he saw hymselfe in that case / 'A, good lord,' quod he, 'I requyre the haue mercy on our soules, & kepe & defende my good lord duke Huon / who by ye commandement of kyng Oberon shold gyue me his duchy, and he to haue kyng Oberons dygnyte of ye fayre after foure yere passed / I can not say what fortune wyl fal / but I may wel say that I shall never come to greter honour / yet I am comforted in that I am so olde & hoore; it is good reason that I be content to haue lyued

1 vppon. 2 ere. 3-3 towards the Hoaste. 4-4 toward the gallowes. 5 vntill. 6 purpose. 7 aboute. 8 Fol. lxxix. col. 1. 9 was. 10-10 omitted.
so longe / it is now 1 good 1 tyme that I departe out of this world.' Then themperour called to 2 hym a knyght / & sayd, 'sir Othon, I wyl that incontynent ye take thre M. men, & take these prysoners & hange them vp all upon the galowes that were made yester nyght late / & if it be so that Huon yssue out, loke that ye quyte your selfe valyauntly / & yf ye 3 nede of ony 8 ayde, take my horne and blowe it, for I haue redy a poynted .x. M. men to socoure you yf nede be' / when Othon herde themperour he was ryght sory to haue that 4 commision  / for in his youth he was brought vp in the house of duke Seuyn, father to Huon, & som what he was of his kyn, but as then he had slayne a man, wherfore he fled fro Burdeux, & came & serued themperour at Mayence / wherfore he was 5 wo and 5 sorowfull to haue that commyssyon. Then he sayd to themperour, 'syr, me thynke ye do yll to cause them to dye so hastily, better it were to abyde to se what ende your warre wyl come vnto / and also yf it fortune that any of your lordes to be taken here after / for one of theym ye myght recoyer hym agayne / and yf ye see theym / and 6 yf ony of 7 youre barons happe to be taken, they shall dye of lyke deth / and therfore, syr, yf ye wyl byleue me ye shall forbere sleynge of them at this tyme / and, syr, yf ye wyll gyue me lysence / I shall doo so moche to duke Huon / that for the offence that he hath done to 2 you he shall make 8 amends at youre 9 pleasure, and he shall go to 2 some holy pylgrymage to praye for the soules of your nephewes and other of youre lordes that he hath slayne / and he to haue with hym two hundred men in theyr shyrtes, and so to go to the holy sepulture at his owne charge and coste / and he to holde of you all his londes, and to doo you homage.' Then the lordes

The Emperor bids Sir Otho direct the hanging, with three thousand men.

Sir Otho was of distant kin to Huon, and regrets such a commision.

He pleads with the Emperor for delay,

and promises that Huon will make him amends for the death of his nephews.

1—1 omitted. 2 vnto. 3 haue. 4—4 euill office. 5—5 right. 6 then. 7 Fol. lxxix. col. 2. 8 you. 9 owne.
that were there present all with one voyce said to\(^1\) the emperour, 'Syr, the counsell that syr Othon hath gyuen\(^1\) you is worthy to be byleued; we al agree ther to, and desyre you so to doo,'\(^2\) when the emperoure herde theym\(^4\) he was sorowfull and sore dyspleased. 'Syr,' quod Othon, 'ye may surely knowe yf ye hange any of them that be taken / yf Huon happe to take any of your men, he shal neuer scape vnhangyd and drawen.'\(^7\) When the\(^8\) emperour hadde herde Othon speke he was soo troubled, & angry that it semed by his face that for\(^3\) pure yre\(^3\) he was nye\(^4\) in a rage, and sayd / 'beholde, syrs, this foole, who woldke let me to take vengeauze on them\(^12\) that so sore hath troubled me / he hath herde me or\(^5\) this tyme swere and make solempne promyse that I wold neuer returne in to my countre tyll I hadde hanged and drawen Huon of Burdeux / for, by the\(^16\) lorde that made me to his semylytude, I knowe noo man this day, though he were neuer so nere a kynne to me, excepte myne owne brother / but I shal make hym to be slayne yf he speke any more to me for respytynge\(^20\) of theyr lyues / nor I shal neuer loue hym / for I make a vowe to oure lorde god that I wyll neuer returne in to my countre tyll\(^19\) I haue taken\(^7\) this cite parforce.' 'Syr,' quod Othon, 'syn\(^8\) it is your pleasure,\(^24\) I shall speke no more therof / but I byleue it wyll be longe here after or\(^9\) ye fynde ony\(^9\) that wyll be glad to do youre pleasure.' 'Othon,' quod theemperour / 'dyspatch the mater and reuenge me vpon the old Gerames\(^28\) and vpon all his company / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'it is conuenent that I doo it, syn\(^8\) it is your pleasure' / then without ony more wordes he departed & toke Gerames & the other prysoners, and wente with them towards\(^32\) the galowes. Gerames went before with the halter

1 vnto. 2 but. 3-3 verie anger. 4 neerehand. 5 ere. 6 vntill. 7 Fol, lxxix, back, col. 1. 8 seeing. 9 before.
about his neck, sore wepynge, and all his company after hym; so at the last they came to the place of execution; then\(^1\) ye ladders were set vp;\(^2\) then the hangman came to\(^3\) Gerames, \& sayd, 'come on, thou olde dottarde, thou hast lyued longe ynothi you shall no more se hym whom thou louest so well; but I hope shortly he shall bere the company wauynge in the wynde'\(^4\) when Gerames herde hym he behelde hym fyersly, and sayd, 'A, thou vnhappy vylayn, yf one of my handis were lose thou sholdest neuer se fayre day more; how arte thou so hardy to say or to thinke so\(^4\) vlyayn wordes\(^4\) of the best and moost valyant knyght that is now luyynge'? then Othon came to them, and\(^5\) herde how the hangman\(^6\) reuiled Gerames;\(\&\)\(^6\) sayd, 'a, thou false rybaude,\(^7\) thynkest thou not that this knyght hathe ynothi to suffre; though thou doest not reyyle him? yf thou\(^8\) were in that poyni\(^9\) that they be in, and they in the cyte of Burdeux, thou woldest soone repente thy\(^10\) wordes'\(\&\) theerwith he lyfte vp a staffe that he had in his hande, and strake the hangman ther with that he fell downe to the erthe, and\(^11\) sayd, 'A, thou false thefe, do thyne offyce, and speke no wordes' then\(^12\) the hangman durst speke no more;\(^13\) then he toke Gerames by ye halter\(^1\) that was aboute his necke, \& so mounted vpon the ladder, and Gerames after hym; who\(^14\) made pyteous complayntes for Huon his good lorde; the same tyme that Gerames mounted vpon the first steppe of the ladder, they within the cyte vpon the walles perceyued it, \& sawe clerely\(^15\) that without the prysoners were shortly\(^16\) rescued; theyr lyues were lost; then they sayd to Huon, 'syr, yf ye tary any lenger your men shall be all hanged, for

\(^1\) where.
\(^2\) and.
\(^3\) vnto.
\(^4\)\(^4\) villainous a word.
\(^5\)\(^5\) hearing the hangman how he.
\(^6\) he.
\(^7\)\(^7\) base slaeue.
\(^8\) thyselue.
\(^9\) case.
\(^10\) saucie.
\(^11\) then he.
\(^12\) whereupon.
\(^13\) but.
\(^14\) Fol. lxxix. back, col. 2.
\(^15\) evidently.
\(^16\) speedily.

The hangman rudely accosts the old Gerames.

Otho reproaches the fellow with his wickedness, and strikes him sorely.

Gerames mounts the ladder with a halter about his neck.

Huon's lords perceive him from the city walls.
yonder we se one of them is mountyd upon the ladder, who hath a berd as whyte as\textsuperscript{1} snow.' when Huon herd that he was sore dyspleased, & sayd / 'a, good lord, I knowe suerly\textsuperscript{2} it is my true frende Gerames whom\textsuperscript{4} they wolde fyrst put to deth/ therfore, syrs,\textsuperscript{3} quyckly let vs yssu out at the gate / for, yf Gerames be not quyckly\textsuperscript{4} socoured, the traytours wyll put hym to deth; but, yf\textsuperscript{2} I may come tyme ynoogh, it\textsuperscript{5} shall be derely\textsuperscript{8} solde to them therwith.'\textsuperscript{6} Huon, with .vii. M. fyghtynge men yssued out at the gate so fyersly\textsuperscript{7} that the erthe semed to synke\textsuperscript{7} under them / theyr horses made such brute\textsuperscript{8} / and so within a shorte space by a\textsuperscript{12} preuy\textsuperscript{9} way they cam to the place where as the galowes were\textsuperscript{10} / Huon was the fyrst that aryued there /\textsuperscript{11} he aduyed\textsuperscript{11} well the hangman that shold haue hanged Gerames / he\textsuperscript{12} gaue hym suche a stroke with his sper\textsuperscript{16} that he ran hym\textsuperscript{13} clene\textsuperscript{13} through, so that he fell of\textsuperscript{14} the ladder\textsuperscript{13} starke\textsuperscript{13} deed; so was Gerames revenged of the inurye that he had done to hym before. then Huon sayd, 'Gerames, come\textsuperscript{15} of the ladder and arme you in 20 some harneyes\textsuperscript{15} of them\textsuperscript{15} that shall be here slayne.' / Gerames thanked our lorde god & cam downe the ladder, and then thyder came Huons company, who untyed all the other pryners / then\textsuperscript{13} there\textsuperscript{13} began a\textsuperscript{24} sore batayle / the Almaynes wolde not fyle /\textsuperscript{17} Huon\textsuperscript{17} cryed to them, & said, 'ye false traytours, youre dethes is\textsuperscript{18} Juged; dere shall be solde to you the offence that ye haue done to\textsuperscript{19} me when ye wolde slee thus my men with\textsuperscript{28} so vylayne\textsuperscript{20} a deth/ better it had ben for you to haue ben at Mayence\textsuperscript{21} hyden in the lappes of your wenches\textsuperscript{22} and louers.' when they understode Huon, anoee they

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{1} the.
  \item \textsuperscript{2} that.
  \item \textsuperscript{3} I requyre you.
  \item \textsuperscript{4} presently.
  \item \textsuperscript{5} his perill.
  \item \textsuperscript{6} Hereupon.
  \item \textsuperscript{7} groane.
  \item \textsuperscript{8} a thundering.
  \item \textsuperscript{9} secret.
  \item \textsuperscript{10} stood.
  \item \textsuperscript{11} and he marked.
  \item \textsuperscript{12} and.
  \item \textsuperscript{13} omitted.
  \item \textsuperscript{14} from.
  \item \textsuperscript{15} downe.
  \item \textsuperscript{16} armour.
  \item \textsuperscript{17} the which Huon seeing.
  \item \textsuperscript{18} are.
  \item \textsuperscript{19} vnto.
  \item \textsuperscript{20} villainous.
  \item \textsuperscript{21} Fol. lxxx. col. 1.
  \item \textsuperscript{22} mothers.
\end{itemize}
knewe hym, wherof they were sore abasshed / then Huon mette with a knyght of Almayn, and ranne hym clen through, and so he serued thre other / then he 4 drewe his swerde wher with he dyd grete meruayles / for or he seased he slewe .xiii. and also his men dyd meruayles in armes / so that within a shorte space the Almaynes were dyscomfyted, so that none scaped a 8 waye a lyue excepte syr Othon, who valyauntly de-
fended hymselfe / but, when he sawe that his force wolde not helpe hym, he yelded hym selfe to Huon, and gaue hym his swerde, and cryed hym mercy, and 12 sayde / 'syr, I renyre you sée me not, but haue pyte of me / for I promyse you faythfullly that agaynste my wyll I came hyther, but I was forced so to do by the emperour; and, fyrst, I desyred respyte 16 for them, so moche that the emperour was sore dys-
pleased with me. I entreated for a peace to have ben had bytwene you and hym, but my wordes coude not proyte. 8 9 he claims kinship
with him.

He begs Huon
have mercy upon
him.

Huon promises
him pardon if he
will join him for
the future.

Sir Otho consents
to serve Huon for
all time.

28 to your carnall
frende' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'god
shame me yf I do the contrary / but I shall serue you truly as longe as lyfe is in my body' / then Huon came to ye fote of ye ladder, where as he founde Gerames as 32 then not vntyed / Huon kyssed and embrased hym oftentymes, and sayd, 'ryght dere frende, I am ryght
1 Ere. 2 beseech. 3 on. 4 and. 5-5 omitted. 6 In. 7 made. 8 preuaile. 9 so. 10 a. 11 lousing.
glad at my herte when I se you 1 hole of body' / then he wente to the other, and lossed them, and vnbounde theyr eyen, and sayd, 'Syrs, arme 2 you all 2 with the harneys of them that be deed / for a man that is armed hath 3 4 aduantage afores other that be not so' 5 / it was nedeful for them to be armed, god defende them from yll 6 / for anone after they had so meruaylous a renounter that they had neuer 7 none sucho 7 before / for the other x. 8 thousande men came to reuenge them that were deed / they wente 8 to have come tyme ynough & but they fayled, for they came to late / for Huon had taken of all them theyr truage. When Huon saw that he had 12 done that 10 he came for / he returned hym towards the cyte / but he was soo pursued that he was nere surprysed and stopped fro entrynge in to the cyte / when Huon saw his enemies comyng he cryed a hye 11 to his 16 men 12 and sayde, 13 'Syrs, let vs turne vp on them that cometh 13 to vs warde 13 / to y 8 entent that they shall not make theyr anuauntes that they have caused vs to flye awaye before them' / then he and all his men returned 20 agaynst theyr enemyes with a 14 valyaunt corage / 15 at that metynge many speres were broken on bothe partes, & many a knyght borne to the erth / that had neuer 3 power after to releue them selfe / there was suche 24 occysyon 16 on both partes that pyte it was to se it 17 / 15 grete meruayle it was to se Huon how he bett downe his enemies, and claue helmes and rased them fro the hedes of his enemies. he delte in suche wyse that 28 none 18 Almayne durst abyde his strokes, he was so douted and fered; he made the thyczke prese to breke a sonder and flye awaye before him; and by him was syr Othon, who that dyd many a noble dede 32

1 Fol. lxxx. col. 2. 2-2 yourselves. 6 euill. 7-7 the like. 8 hoped. 9 omitted. 10 which. 11 alound. 12-12 saying. 13-13 toward vs. 14 most. 15 and. 17 them. 18 no.
of armes / for next Huon aboue all other that day he bare the pryce / fynally, Huon and Othon and his other men dyd so moche that the Almayns were chasyd to 4 theyr tentes, & many slayne\(^1\) in the chase and sore hurte so that they never rode on horse backe after / some tyme it fortuneth that it is foly to adventure to moche forward / and to late to repent after\(^2\) / I say this for 8 Huon and his company, who were gone so moche forwarde that in great daunger they returned to the cyte / for y\(^e\) almayns, who were thrty thousande men redy before theyr tentes / when they sawe Huon & his men 12 chase theyr company, they set forth agaynst Huon.

\(^3\)When Huon sawe them / he sayd to\(^4\) his men / 'syrs, it is good that we \(^5\) recule to \(^5\) our cyte / for yonder I se comyng mo then thyrti thousande almayns as fast 16 as they can' / \(^6\) when Huons company sawe them, they douted gretely, and not without cause / for they had ben before at two grete skyrmysshes, wherby they and theyr horses were wery and sore trauyled, the whiche 20 was no meruayle / \(^6\) by the counsell of Huon they returnyd a fause galop towards theyr cyte / and y\(^e\) Almayns were at theyr backe, and chased them so quickly that more then fiue Hundred Almaynes entred 24 in to the cyte with them of Burdeux / but they that kept the gates that daye were sage\(^7\) and dyscrete, for as soone as they perceyued that Huon and his company were entred / and with them a\(^8\) fyue hundred of theyr enemyes / they wolde kepe theyr gates no lenger open, for fere that theyr enemyes shold haue entred with to grete a nombere, so\(^9\) for hast they cut a sonder the corde that helde vp the purcoloys, the whiche fell downe by 32 suche force that it fell on\(^10\) the horse of an Almayn that was vnder,\(^11\) the whiche horse was cut clene. a sonder,

\(^{\text{1}}\) Fol. lxx. back, col. 1. \(^{\text{2}}\) afterward. \(^{\text{3}}\) and. \(^{\text{4}}\) vnto. \(^{\text{5}}\)--\(^{\text{5}}\) recoil into. \(^{\text{6}}\) so. \(^{\text{7}}\) wise. \(^{\text{8}}\) aboute. \(^{\text{9}}\) that. \(^{\text{10}}\) upon. \(^{\text{11}}\) it.
soo that the man and the fore parte of the horse fell within the gate, and the hynder parte of the horse fell without / wherof ye Almains that followed after were sorowfull and angry that they had not come thyder soner / then they returned to theyr tentes, complaynyng for the grete losse and domage that they had that daye by the hye prowess of Huon & his men / and also they that were entred in to the cyte were sore abaished when they saw themself closed within the cyte. When Huon perceyued it, he had grete meruayle / that they were soo entred in amongst his men / for he knewe not therof, and yet he was the last that entred / then he sayde, 'A, ye false traytours, ye shall al dye an yll deth' / then he sayd to his men, 'syrs, slee them all' / then incontynente they alyghted and kneeld downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, & pyte of theym / as to saue theyr lyues / 'and put vs in pryson / we be all men of a noble lygnage / & it maye so be that by vs ye may haue peace with the emperour.' Then Gerames sayd to Huon / 'syr, I requyre you to haue pyte of them, and put them not to deth, for so it may be that by them ye may haue peace.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I am content to do at your pleasure as ye wyll haue me do' / then he commanded they sholde al be vnarmed / then they al made promyse to Huon not to departe without lycence / 'Gerames,' quod Huon, 'I wyll that these prysoners be brought vp in to the bowr & there departed, and set in dyuers houses that be sure, and let them haue all thynge necessary for theyr lynyng' / then Gerames delyuered theym to the kepyng of suche as he trusted / and so eche of them was kepte in a courtoyse pryson. Now

1 Fol. lxxx. back, col. 2. 2 sustained. 3 enclossed. 4 himselfe. 5 and. 6 quothe they. 7 with the Emperour. 8 parted. 9 to.
let vs leue to speke of Huon and of his prysoners, and speke of the emperoure.

I Howe the Emperoure assayled the cyte of Burdeux two tymes, where as he lost many of his men. Capitulo .C.ii.

S ye haue herde here before how Ilium chased his enemyes to theyr testes / and how it was tyme for hym to returne to his cyte, & how he was so pursued by the Almayns that more then fyue hundred of them entred in to ye cyte, and were closed with in it, and the resydue returned to theyr tentes sorrowfull & angry for ye grete losse that they had. 2When they were returned ye Emperoure demaunded what tydnyges, & how they had sped / & yf they had taken Huon quycke or deed. 4Syr,' quod a knyght, 4 it is follye for you to speke thus / for Huon is no man so lyghtly to be taken / for the .lx. men that ye sent to haue ben 2hanged be rescued by Huon, and the thre .M. men that ye sent with them are all slayne, & dyuers other sore hurt, 5 in peryll of dethe, and besyde that, fyue .C. men of ye best of your frendes are entred in to Burdeux / for we so hastly pursued Huon & his men / that entrynge in to the cyte fyue .C. of our men entred in to the cyte, entermedled with Huons men, & theyr they be inclosed in / therfore, sir, we alow & 8counsel you that ye agree with Huon / yf ye do not ye shall lose youre men / for Huon is so fell & cruell / that he wyll hange vp your men as ye had thought too haue done his, of whom one of them was his cosyn /

1-1 returne to. 2 so. 3 not. 4 fiftie. 5 and, 6 within. 7 advise. 8 for. 9 all. 10 Fol. lxxxi. col. 2.
ye may do as it please you,' when themperour herd
his barons what counsell they gauze hym, he was1
sorowfull, and sayd, 'syrs, ye do me grete wronge to
requyre me to make any peace with Huon / syn ye 4
knowe well what othe & promys I haue made that I
wyll never be at peace with hym / and to yeent
that ye shal speke no more therof / knowe fer trouthe
that tho2.x.M. of my nexte3 frendes were taken by 8
Huon, I wolde rather suffre them to 4be slaye of4 a
shamefull deth then to agree to any peace with Huon
tyll I haue slaye hym / and his cyte 5brynt5 &
dystroyed.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn6 it is youre plesure 12
ye may do as ye thynke best.' 'Syrs,' quod the
emperor, 'I wyll that ye assemble all myn hoost, and
sende to my broder that he brynge all his men / and
then with all our puyssance7 assayle the cyte / and 16
that none be so hardy8 to recule backe tyl9 ye cyte
be taken / this was proclaymed through the hoost / &
every man10 redy to assayle the cyte; and ye1 chefe
captayne was duke Sauarey, who brought all his men 20
in good ordre to the dykes, well furnysshed with
ladders & other necessary thynges parteynyng to
assaulte. The same tyme Huon and his men were
vnarmed and goyng to dyner / 11 when he herde the 24
noyse and crye without / he toke a sop in wyne, and
armyd hym and all his men / and every man went
to the walles to theyr defenses / and Huon and 12 the12
olde Gerames / Othon / and Barnarde, a valyaunt knyght, 28
mountyd on the toure ouer ye1 gate, and the Almayns
on every parte entred in to the dykes, and rysed vp
many a13 ladder to the wall; and11 they with in caste14
downe 12 agayne theyr ladders, so that they that were 32
on them fell downe in to the dykes,12 soo that they had

---

1 verie. 2 if. 3 neerest. 4-4 die. 5-5 be burnt.
6 seeing. 7 we will. 8 as. 9 vntill. 10 was.
11 but. 12-12 omitted. 13 scaling. 14 them.
no power to releue vp agayn / for there was caste
downe on them erthe and 1tymbre & stones, 2so that
they coude not aryse2 / fyerce was ye assaulte that ye
4 Almayns made, & they within made goodly3 defence, for 2they slewe with bowes & crosbowes / that pyte it
was to see the deed & hurt men that lay on the erth2 /
Huon & Gerames shotte so with theyr crosbowes /
8 that at euery shotte they slew some man, or sore
wounded hym / 4longe enduryd this assault / so that
fynally the Almayns were constrayned to recule back a
bowe shotte / whereof they within were5 joyfull. Then
12 themperour Tyrrey, byenge sorrowful and full of yre6 /
came to his men, & rebuked them shamefully / com-
maundyng them that incontynent they shold returne
agayn to assaile the eyte / sayenge that 2yf they wolde
16 quyckely assaile ye cyte agayne2 they sholde not fayle
to winne it. Then the Almayns, to please theyr lorde,
returned in gret hast with theyr ladders & pyrkes / &
came in to the dykes / where as then there was no
20 water, & reysed7 vp 2theyr ladders 2to ye walles / but
they were no soner vp / but they within bete them
downe agayne / 8so that they that were vpon them
were8 in damager of theyr liues / for they 2within2 caste
24 downe tymbre & 2stones & fagottes, with fyre & hote
oyle & leade9 / so that ye assaylauntes were fayne
parforce to recule10 backe / & they within shot arrowes
so thycke / that it semed lyke snow. themperour was
28 sore dyspleased, & duke Sauarey / when they saw none
other remedy. many were slayne and sore hurt /11
themperour & Sauarey his broder, seyng that they
coude nothynge profyte, sowned ye retrayt / & so
32 returned to theyr tentes, sore dyspleased for ye gret
losse that they had / 12they lost that daye mo then

1 Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 1. 2-2 omitted. 3 noble.
4 and. 5 very. 6 rage. 7 them. 8-8 and put them.
9 vpon. 10 recoile. 11 and. 12 for.
Two thousand Germans were slain and three thousand wounded.

The Duke Savary, the Emperor's brother, thinks the city impregnable, but the Emperor resolves to continue the siege.

Huon thanks God for his success, and bids his men be wary in the future, but his losses have been very heavy.

...nothing can be done by famine; 2 those that are lord thereof are hardy and cruel & to be feared & doubted / for he is 8 experte in armes / wherfore it is impossible to take y e cyte perforce.' When themperour vnderstode him, he was right sorowful, & made agayn new promys not to departe thens / tyll he had Huon at his plesure. Huon, 12 who lytel set by y e threnynge of themperour, went in to his palais, & sayd to his men / 'sirs, we ought gretely to thanke god for y e defence of our cyte / many Almayns be slayne & hurte / I doute them nothyng / 16 for our cyte is stronge / or it be lost it wyll cost many men theyr lyues / I desyre you all take good hede that we be not begyled.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we shall take good hede therof / as well for you as for y e saugarde 20 of our lyues.' Thus Huon & his men deuyysed togyder / how be it, they were sore apayred for at y e beginnyng they were a 6 xx. M men / & then they were not past. vi. M. Now let vs leue spekyng of them & 24 speke of themperour, who was ryght sorowful for his losse.

Howe Huon sent Habourey his messenger to themperour to requyre peace / & of his 28 answere.

1 Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 2. 2 for. 3 vntill. 4 and before. 5 greeued. 6 about. 7 above.
Hen the mperour had herd duke Sauerey his broder speke / he made a solempne othe / that what so ever fortune sholde fall / he wolde not departhe thems, wynter nor somer, tyll he had won ye cyte / then he sent for his rerebande / as farre as his empyre stretched, commaundying every man to come to 8 him, all excuses layde a parte / & so they dyd / of theyr commyng by the way I make no mencyon, but so longe they tranayled that they came with in a leepe of Burdeux.2 When themperour knew therof he had 12 gret ioye, & mounted on his horse with other lordes with him / & rode 3 & met them, & spake to them, & made them good chere. Thus his force encreased, & Huons minysshed 4 dayly / often tymes Huon 5 wolde yssue 6 out on his hors called Amophage / and made dayly many gret skrymysshes / somm tyme he wan / & some tyme he lost / he slewe many Almayns / so that they all fered him / for there was none that durst 20 abyde him / his hors was so delyuer 7 that none durst aproche nere hym without he were slayne / & Huons men 8 dyd acquyte 8 them valyauntly / so that yf they lost at one tyme / they wanne .iii. tymes for it / but 24 theyr force coude not longe endure / 9 theyr enemies were so many & they so fewe, for 2 they had made so many issues 10 out 10 that they had lost many of theyr company / for of .xx. M. they were lefte but .v. C. 11 / 28 & a .C. archers / and a .C. crosbowes to kepe theyr towne with all 10 / wherof Huon was 10 ryght 10 sorowfull / when he sawe that he had but .v. C. men / he called to hym Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Richar, 32 12 they were all of his kynne and he sayd to them 12 / syrs, I se 10 well 10 that every daye we do minysshe 13 /

1 Now. 2 and. 3 Fol. lxxxii. col. 1. 4 diminished. 5-5 issued. 6 vpon. 7 cruel. 8-8 qutt. 9 for. 10-10 omitted. 11 men. 12-12 saying. 13 diminish.
wherfore at length we can not endure agaynst the emperoures force / therfore I thinke that it were good / that we sente to themperour to knowe yf he wyll here spekynge of any peace. 'Syr,' quod they, 'we thinke your aduyse ryght good / it were good too knowe yf he wyll agree therto or not' / then Huon called Habourey his messenger, and commaunded him that incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, & say vnto hym 'that yf it be his pleasure to here spekynge of any peace, I shall condyscende therto / and too make hym amendes at his pleasure / for ye wronge and domage that I haue done him and my men. Also shewe hym how I wyll become his man, and do hym homage for all the landes that I haue / the whiche I was wonte to holde of the kyng of Fraunce / but syn I haue no socoure fro hym / I am dryuen parforce to purchase for my profite in some other place / & besyde that, shewe hym that the v. C. prysoners that I haue of his men / I shall deliuer them quyte without any ramsome payenge / & also when lent cometh / I & a C. knyghtes with me at my coste and charge / shall passe the see and go to ye holy sepultire / to pray for the soules of his neuwe that I haue slayn / & for all other as hath ben slayne by occasyon of this warre.' 'Syr,' quod the messenger, 'I am redy to fulfyll your commaundement, what so euer fall ther of' / and so departed, & went to themperours host, and entred in to the ryche tent / and then he kneled downe before themperour, & sayde, 'The puyssaunt god, who on a crosse dyed to saue all humayne lygnae, kepe & defende from all yll / themperoure & all his barony. syr, duke Huon of Burdeux sendeth to you salutation and good amyte, requrynge you, in the honour of our lorde Iesu cryst,}

1 omitted. 2 long. 3 and. 4 quoth he. 5 vnto. 6 his. 7 that. 8 seeing. 9 Fol. lxxxii. col. 2. 10 hee. 11 almighty. 12 the. 13 kind. 14-11 god.
that he may have peace with you / by that he will become your legible man / & do you homage, & holde his landes of you / and wyl delyuer quyte y e/v. C. men of yours that he hath in pryson in the cyle / & more ouer, he offereth hymself and a. C. knyghtes to passe the see this neste lent and to go to the holy sepulture to pray to our lorde god for the soules of your newes that be 8 deed, & for other that by hym and 1 his meanes hath ben slayn in this warre / syr, yf it well 2 please you this to do / ye shall do a gret almes dede / for lyfe can not be had agayne to them that be deed." When

12 the emperor Tyrrey had well herd Haboure, ye messenger / he became as reed as a bronde of fyre / and regarded the messenger fyrsly, and sayd, 'A voyle my syght, thou fals gloton 2 / but that I doute to be 16 reproued, I shold cause thee to be hwen 4al to 4 peces, but a messenger oughte not to be touched for any wordes that he can speke / but saye to thy lord / that by him & by his cause 5 I haue 6 7 had slayne 7 mo then 20 xx.M. men, bysye my thre newes and my yonger brother ; but by that 8 lorde that dyed on a 8 crosse to redeeme vs all, I wyll neuer haue peace with hym tyll I haue hym at my pleasure / nor neuer returne agayne 24 hider to me nor none other vpon any such message." When Haboure the messenger herde the emperor, he was in grete fere, and wolde gladly he had ben in Burdeux / then he departed without any mo wordes 4 28 spekyng, and rested not tyll he came to Burdeux / 9 he wente to the palyses, where as he founde duke Huon / then he sayd, 'Syr, I haue ben with themperour / and shewed hym at length 10 all youre message / but his 32 answere wyl not serue to your demaunde / for he sayd to me / that he wyl haue no peace with you tyl he haue

---

1 by. 2 omitted. 3 varlet. 4—4 in. 5 meanes. 6 Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1. 7—7 lost. 8 the. 9 where. 10 full.
you at his pleasure / to do with you what he wyl / and thus I departed from hym, and lefte hym syttyngge at his table at dyner.'

Huon of Burdeux.

Cap. C.iii.

Hen Huon vnderstode ye messenger he was full of yre and dyspleasure, and sayd / 'syrs, I commaunde you al in hast go and arme you / for, or euer ye Almayns be rysyn fro theyr dyneres, and armed I shall make them so sorowfull that they shall curse thehoure that euer they were borne / for I had rather dye then to leue them in this poynt, for I wyl go serue them of theyr fyrst messe.' then euer man armed hym / and Huon lept on his good horse Amophage / then he toke leue of the fayre Esclaramonde hys wyfe, an so departed out of Burdeux with his company, and rode towards themperours tentes / the same tyme themperour was rysyn fro his table / and he had ordeyned .iii. hondred men on horse backe to kepe ye tentes whyles he was at dyner / then Huon and his company came so quyckly that he was amonge them, or they percyued any thynge, & he cryed 'Burdeux,' & strake a knyghte with his spere clene through the body, so that he fell deed to the erth / then he ran at a nother and serued him in lyke wyse, & so he slew iii or his spere brake / then he drew his swerde & bette downe men & horses / & brake the thyckest presse, so that euer man gaue hym way / and Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Rycher, & all his company dyde meruaiies in armes / so moche they

1 Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 2. 2 ere. 3 vpon. 4 his. 5 before. 6 Rychard, always so written in 1601 ed. 7 a.d.
dyd that within a sherte space the thre. C. Almayns that were set to kepe ye tentes were all slayne; then Huon & his company entred in amonge ye tentes & 4 paulyons;¹ they bete downe² tentes, & suche as they met were slayne; then ye almayns on all partes armed them / & the emperor sowned his trompettes, & armed him / he was so sorrowful & angry with ye trauel & 8 domage he was put to by Huon / that he enraged & was nere out of his wyt / for nyght & day he could take no rest. When he was armed, he mounted on his horse, & xx. M. Almayns with him, & they all sware the
deth ³ofi Huon / whom god defende, for, yf he longe taryed there, he sholde be in daunger of his lyfe / but he was wyse and sage⁴ in feates of armes;⁵ he loked towards the emperours tende and sawe wel twenty thousande men redy to come vpon hym / then he sayd to his men / 'syrs, it is tyme that we recule⁶ to oure cyte / we may wel now go without blame / 'we may noo lenger tary here without grete daunger' / 'syr,'
20 quod Gerames, 'we be redy to do your commandement' / then they take the way to returne to the cyte / but the emperour, who desired gretily the deth of Huon, he and his men pursued Huon as faste as theyr horses 24 wolde⁸ go / and when the emperour was nere to Huon, he sayd, 'A, thou fals traytoure, so many tymes thou haste troubled & angred me that lenger I wyll not suffre the to lyue / turne towards me, for with the 28 I wyll iust, or elles I shall slexe the flyenge / I hadde rather⁹ dye then not to take of the vengeaunce for the hurtes that thou haste done to me' / when Huon herde how the emperour called him traytoure, he was sore dyspleased, & turned his horse towards the emperour, and sayd, 'A, false olde churle, where as thou sayest I am a traytoure / I shall shewe the how thou lyest

¹ where. ² the. ³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. ⁴ discreet. ⁵ and. ⁶ retire. ⁷ for. ⁸ could. ⁹ to.
and the Emperor narrowly escapes death.

Huon would have cut off his head, but the Germans rescue their sovereign.

The Emperor is filled with a longing for vengeance.

falsely' / then they ranne eche at other with theyr speres in theyr restes, so that they met so rudely and strake eche other on theyr sheldes by suche force that theyr sheldes brast\(^1\) a sonder / themperoure was a 4 puysaunt prynce, so that his spere brast\(^1\) all to peces / but Huons spere was stronge & helde, wherwith he gaue the emperoure suche a stroke that shilde nor haubert coulde not warraunt hym, but that y\(^e\) spere entred in to 8 themperours syde / so that yf he had not swarued a syde, he had not scaped y\(^e\) 2 deth / that stroke was so sore that themperour fell to y\(^e\) erth in such wyse that nere hande he hadde broken his necke with y\(^e\) fal, & so lay in a swone. Huon, seynge themperour lyenge on y\(^e\) erth, \(^3\) in grete yre\(^4\) & dyspleasure\(^5\) desyred to hauue slayne themperour / then he drewe out his good\(^2\) swerde, & turned to \(^6\)him to hauue stryken\(^6\) of his heed / 16 the whiche he had done, yf he had not ben quyckely\(^2\) rescued / but the Almaynes fro all partes cam thyther / so that they rescued themperour fro deth, and set hym on a hors with moche payne / then he thanked our 20 lorde god that he was so\(^7\) scaped, and made anowe to god that he wolde neuer more fyght with Huon hande to hande / but he wolde pursue hym to the deth, yf he coude.

How Huon made another issue out of Burdeux, and toke away al the bestes that were in the pasturs without the townes pertaynyng to themperours hoost. 28 Cap. C.v.

---

\(^1\) burst.  \(^2\) omitted.  \(^3\) Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2.  \(^4\) rage.  \(^5\) he.  \(^6\)–\(^6\) strike.  \(^7\) well.
Huon saw that he coude do no more at that tyme, and that yᵉ Almayus increasèd in grete nombre to have assayled hym / then he spurred his good horse Amphage, who made suche lepes that it semed he had flown in the ayre / he had his swerde in his hande, and strake therwith so gret 8 strokes that none durst approche nere hym / thus he rode after his men and led them towards the cyte as yᵉ shepherde doth his shepe, for as soone as his enemies approched nere hym, he shawed theym his 12 shelke and spere poynt / and as he rode there came a yonge knyght named Gerard / ryghte hardy and valyaunte in armes; he was bastarde sone to the emperoure / who desyred greatly to wynne honoure 16 and prayse / he sawe Huon on his good horse, and sawe¹ that no man durst approche nere hym / ⁵ cam after him & cryed, 'A, thou fals truytoure, to flye awaye⁴ shall not auayle ⁵ the, for I brynge thy dethe in the 20 poynt of my spere, with yᵉ whiche I shall slee the fleyng without thou turne to me, for or⁶ thou scape me I shall cause the to be hanged in the syght of them within Burdeux'⁷ / when Huon vnderstode the knyght, 24 and saw the grete hate and yre⁷ that he was in, and herynge howe he called hym truytoure / he thought and sayd to hymselfe / that he had rather dye then he that had sayd these wordes shold ⁸ departe⁸ without 28 felynge the sharpenesse of his spere / the whiche he couched in the rest and spurred his horse, who ranne lyke the thonder / ⁹ he gane the knyght suche an horryble stroke / that¹⁰ his sheld nor¹¹ armure coude 32 saue his lyfe / for his spere persed through bothe his sydes, and³ was clene borne ouer his hors croupe starke

¹ likewise. ² vnto. ³ hee. ⁴ it. ⁵ Pol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ ere. ⁷ rage. ⁸–⁸ haue departed. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ neither. ¹¹ his.
All the Germans flee before him in fear.

But he loses many men at every onset, and is in great peril.

He was fighting with thirty thousand Germans, but he returns at length to the city in safety.

Huon begins to despair of his fortune.

The Emperor moves his host nearer to the walls.

deed / 'go thy waye,' quod Huon, 'thou shalt never have power to do any man dyspleasure' / then he drew his swerde, wherwith he delte suche dys-syplyne among the Almayns that all fled before hym. 4 Gerames / Othon / and Bernarde & Rychar employed theyr forces and vertues ryght valyauntly / but the Almayns dyd so moche that Huon lost parte of his men, and the rest he ledde with him / oftentymes he turned and returned agaynst his enemies / but what so ever force or prowes he shewed, yf he had not in hast gone away / he nor neuer one of his men hadde scaped without deth / for mo then .xxx. M. Almayns were nere hym, and all they desyred his deth / but god dyd hym that grace / that he and the small nombre that he had lefte entred with hym in to the cyte, and y gates closed / and themperour in grete dyspleasure returned to his tent / and by the waye he founde his bastarde some deed / for whom he made suche sorowe that his lordes nor his broder coude not apeare hym; and so he caused hym to be borne to the tentes, and was gretely complayned of all the barons / for he was lyke to haue ben a noble man. And Huon went to his palayes, where he founde the fayre Esclaramounde, who demaundedye how he dyde. 'Ryght well, lady,' quod Huon; 'thanked be god I am returned in sane garde, but I haue lost many of my men;' and therwith he wepte, and the lady comforted hym as moche as she myghte / then themperour, beynge in his hoost, knowyng for trouth that Huon had but a small company in the cyte and that he thought he coude do hym but small domage fro thensforth / dyslodged and cam and lay nerer to y cyte, and dressed vp his engyns and montons to breke the walles, and made every daye

1 any. 2 and. 3 a. 4 those. 5 were. 6 Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. 7 verie. 8 mountains.
beynge\textsuperscript{1} at the walles; and they within defended them valyauntly\textsuperscript{2} with theyr crosbowes; many men, bothe within and without, were slayne / this syege endured 4 fro the beginnyng of August vnto\textsuperscript{3} Easter after / wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and\textsuperscript{4} complayned for the losse of his noble barons / and\textsuperscript{5} men that he had lost. Also he sawe his tours and gates sore\textsuperscript{6} beaten, 8 and his enemies\textsuperscript{7} before his\textsuperscript{8} cyte / and loked for no socours fro any parte / and\textsuperscript{9} he had with hym\textsuperscript{10} but\textsuperscript{10} thre hundred knyghtes and a hundred men to kepe the cyte with all / then he called Esclaramonde his wyfe, 12 and sayd, 'Dame,\textsuperscript{11} I knowe well ye endure trouble and dyspleasure ynough / and therefore I pray you & ye can gyue me any good counsell, gyue it me\textsuperscript{12} / for the yre\textsuperscript{13} & dyspleasure that I haue at my herte troubleth so myne 16 vnderstondyngye that I can not tell what to do / &\textsuperscript{12} on y\textsuperscript{e} other parte I se my cyte besyeged & my men slayn, nor I can gete\textsuperscript{14} none apoyntment\textsuperscript{14} with themperour, who\textsuperscript{15} is so\textsuperscript{16} sore dyspleased with me that I can neuer 20 haue his loue / he hath slayne my men, wherof I am so sorowfull that my herte were fayleth me\textsuperscript{1} / 'sir,' quod Esclaramonde, 'ye do grete wronge to say these wordes before me or\textsuperscript{17} to complayn your domages / if ye wold a\textsuperscript{18} 24 beleued me\textsuperscript{19} ye had gone to my brother for socoure, who wold haue come with you & brought\textsuperscript{21} such\textsuperscript{22} nombre of men that themperour durst not\textsuperscript{18} abyden you, & also to haue made ther by my brother a crysten 28 man, for he hath byleued in our lorde god this seuen yere past' / 'dame,'\textsuperscript{23} quod Huon, 'all that ye say myght well haue ben,\textsuperscript{24} but I had leuer\textsuperscript{25} haue lost thre

\textsuperscript{1} battering. \textsuperscript{2} for. \textsuperscript{3} to the. \textsuperscript{4} verie much. 
\textsuperscript{5} other good. \textsuperscript{6} so. \textsuperscript{7} lying. \textsuperscript{8} the. \textsuperscript{9} that. 
\textsuperscript{10}—\textsuperscript{10} not abone. \textsuperscript{11} Madame. \textsuperscript{12} now. \textsuperscript{13} rage. 
\textsuperscript{14}—\textsuperscript{14} no agreement. \textsuperscript{15} for he is. \textsuperscript{16} omitted. 
\textsuperscript{17} in this sort. \textsuperscript{18} haue. \textsuperscript{19} then. 
\textsuperscript{20} Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. \textsuperscript{21} you. \textsuperscript{22} a. \textsuperscript{23} Madame. 
\textsuperscript{24} done. \textsuperscript{25} rather.
such cytes as this is\(^1\) then to haue lefte you, & my lorde, & good burgesses, whom I loue so faythfully. yf I had but a. M. knightes to defende my cyte / with an yll wyll I shall\(^2\) departe fro you, for I am \(^3\) in certayne\(^4\) that yf I go and seke for socours I shall haue payne ynough, & ye that shall abyde here are lyke to haue more.\(^4\) I know wel that themperour, who\(^5\) hateth vs,\(^6\) setteth all his entent to haue vs / & yf he take you, ye s shall be in grete paryll / & yf I tary here with you, & go for no socour / this cyte wyll be taken \&\(^7\) famished / & both you, & I\(^8\) distroyed / for themperour, who loueth vs but\(^9\) lytell, and not with out a cause, yf he \(^12\) may take me I shall dye of\(^1\) a shamefull dethe / it is no meruayle though\(^10\) he be displeased with me / for I haue slayn his sones \& neuwes, \& many of his best frendes; yf he maye take me I shall haue no pyte\(^16\) shewed to\(^1\) me / \& I know well with out I have some socours myne ende is at haunde / wherfore, dame,\(^11\) I thinke it best that I go to your brother for socours / for I\(^12\) haue taryed ouer long' / 'syr,' quod Esclaramond,\(^20\) 'ye speke it\(^13\) very late / for now ye know well that all our brede and wyne / and flesshe / \& fysshe / begyn to fayle vs, and all\(^14\) other vytales / wherfore it shall\(^15\) not be longe after your departure but that this cyte shall\(^16\) \&\(^24\) be taken and distroyed / and the men within slayne / and I ledde in to grete mystery / yet for all that I wold not counseyle you to abyde here / but I pray you make hast to departe.' When Huon herde her, he began to 28 wepe / and abashshed\(^17\) his chere to the erth, and studied\(^18\) a lytell, and\(^19\) sayd, 'Dame,\(^11\) I thinke vpon \(^20\) one thynge / the whiche to you shall\(^16\) be ryght \^1\) profytable / wherby ye shall haue vytayle ynouge to lyue by\(^1\) an 32

\(^1\) omitted. \(^2\) should. \(^3\)–\(^4\) assurred. \(^5\) for. \(^6\) so. \(^7\) or. \(^8\) be. \(^9\) a. \(^10\) if. \(^11\) Madame. \(^12\) see that I. \(^13\) of this. \(^14\) our. \(^15\) cannot. \(^16\) will. \(^17\) abashing. \(^18\) studying. \(^19\) he.

\(^20\) Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2.
hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of that I thanke god, yf it may so come to passe.' 'Dame,' quod Huon, 'I shall tell you how this cyte may be renytayled without grete losse of any men / trewe it is here without in the medowwe there are two hondred men set there by the Emperoure to kepe ye beestes pertaynyng to his hoost, the whiche are without nombre / what in beefes / keen / and hoggas / and mo then x thousande shepe / the which beestes by the grace of Iesu, or I slepe I wyll brynge them in to this cyte / and than ye may snee them and pouder theym in salte, soo that ye shall haue no famyn for a hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I pray to god ye may brynge it to passe.' thus they taryed tyll souper tyme / and after when it was nyght / & that they thought that they of ye hoost were a slepe / and sawe that the wether was troublous as they wolde desyre it, he armed hym and all his men / he set men at the gate to defende hym at his recoiling. Then he mounted on his good horse / then he opened the gate, and yssued out as preuely as he myght / and tooke the way to the medowe and came thyder / and Huon then cryed, and sayd / 'a, ye vyllaynes, this pasturage is myn / I come to chalenge it / in anyll hour ye put your beestes here to pasture; ye shall make me amendes / for the beestes that I fynde here in my pasture I wyll goo and pounte theym / and yf the emperoure wyll haue theym he must bye them and make amendes for theyr forfeyt, & ye that be the kepers shall derely a bye it.'

The Emperor has much cattle for his host, and these he will bring into the city.

Huon arms his men for the adventure, and leaves the city by night.

He challenges the keepers of the cattle to surrender them to him.
They prepare to fight,

but Huon slays very many of them forthwith.

He and his companions kill all the two hundred keepers, save one, who escapes to warn the Emperor.

The Emperor rushes forth with his men, but the cattle had already entered the city.

Huon and his men turn upon the Germans who were in pursuit of them, and kills many of them with his own hand.

Hen the keepers herd Huon speke they had grete fere / they thought to haue gon and taken their horses, & to haue defended them selfe, but Huon & his company gane them no layser so to doo / then Huon with his spere strake one starke deed, & after he slew ye seconde / the thyrde / & fourth / & so slewe many as long as his spere helde; 8 then he set his hande on his swerde, wherwith he claue a sonder helmes and shieldes and bette downe men on every syde, & Gerames / Othon / & Rycher / dyd valyantly. 2 so moche dyd Huon and his men within a 12 shorte space that the two hundred men that kept the beeswes were all slayne except one, who scaped & ran to themperours hoost; then he shewed themperour how Huon & his men were yssued out of the cyte, and that 16 all the keepers of the beeswes were all slayne, and ye beeswes taken and dryuen in to ye cyte / when themperoure herde these tydynges he was ryght sorowfull, and armed hym & his men, & lept on theyr horses & ranne towards the cyte to stoppe Huon fro entrynge in to ye cyte / but or they came thyder al ye beeswes were entred in to ye cyte / & 10 when Huon saw themperoure comynge, he sayde to 11 his men, 'syr, I requeyre you let vs turne vpon our enemies who cometh after vs / for I wold fayne shewe them how men that cometh fro foraging can rynne with theyr speres.' then they turned agaynst the Almayns so that 23 eche of them bare a man to the erth, & they drew theyr swordes / & slew men rounde aboute them / and Huon vpon his good hors Amphage held his swerde in his hande all 12 he sprent 12 with ye bloode of his enemies, 32 wherwith he cutte of armes, legges, & handes / he was

1 Fol, lxxxiii, back, col. 1. 2 and. 3 so. 4 for. 5 then. 6 verie. 7 where. 8 omitted. 9 before. 10 Now. 11 unto. 12–12 to be sprinkled.
more douted then the deuyll / for by his prowes he dyd so moche that his enemyes fled before hym and made hym \textsuperscript{1}way, so that in \textsuperscript{2}the spyte\textsuperscript{2} of al the Almayns, after that he and his men had slayne foure M. of his enemyes / he entred into the cite with all the pray of his beestes / wherwith themperour & his men that followed were sore dyspleased for the losse that they had,\textsuperscript{3} & for that Huon was so scaped fro theyr handes / and that he had taken away there beestes and slayne his men / thus as ye haue herde Huon entred into the cite of Burdeux \textit{with} all his praye.

\textbf{12} \[ How Huon of Burdeux made hym redy to go to seke for some socours, \& of the sorowe that the duches his wyfe made. \] Ca. c.vi.

\textbf{16} A

\begin{itemize}
  \item After that Huon was entred in to the cite, he wente to his palays, \& there founde the duches Esclaramonde, who vnlased his helme \& cypped \& kyssed him, \& said, '\textit{Sir}, I pray you, how haue ye done?' '\textit{Fayre lady,}' quod he, 'we haue slayn many an Almayn, \& haue brought away ye \textit{pray} / for in \textsuperscript{4}all the emperours host we haue not left nother porke / kyne / nor moton: we haue broughte all into this citye, thanked be god / so now I shall leue you in more suertye in myne absence / for ye haue nowe wytayle wynough for a hole yere. Nowe I wyll go to your brother / \& ye I fynde that he wyl be crystened, I shall bryng hym with me / ye not, I shall defye hym and sley hym without he wyll beleue on Iesu chryste, what so ever fortune fall.' '\textit{Syr,}' quod Esclaramonde, sore wepyng, 'haue no 32 dought\textsuperscript{5} / for it is more then vii. yeres syns he desyred
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{1} Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. \textsuperscript{2}--\textsuperscript{2} despite. \textsuperscript{3} received. \textsuperscript{4} Fol. lxxxv. col. 1. \textsuperscript{5} of that.

CHARL. ROM. VIII. A A
Huon of Burdeux.

Huon calls his friends together, and informs them of his purpose.

He bids them remain quietly within the city in his absence.

and warns them of their danger.

He entrusts to them the keeping of his wife and daughter.

Gerames and his companions weep on hearing Huon's words.

to be chystenyd, wherfore, syr, I requyre you loue my brother' / 'dame,' quod Huon, 'I shall do your pleasure' / then he called to hym hys preuy frendes, and sayd / 'syr, ye knowe wel what daunger and parell we be in: and by-cause in all thyngys nedefull oughte to be made prouysyon with deylgens / this citye is nowe well prouyded of vytyale, wherfore ye shal not nede to make eny eysssuynge out without ye se great advan-
tage: and as for assawlt, yf ye defende it well it is inpreynngnable for our enymeys to wyn it / yf ye be to yeld it vp, beware what ye do / for the great hate that the emperour hathe agaynst vs paraduenture wyl con-

strayne hym to breke his promys: yf ye be taken by force, or by this meanes, ye shall all dye myserably, & my wyfe murdered in pryson, or elles myserably to fynyshe her dayes / and my lytell doughter, Claryet, whome I loue so derely, & shalbe lost, and my citye dys-
stroyed and brought to vttre ruyn / wherfore I commaunde vnto you my wyfe & my doughter and all the rest returne agayn, the whiche shalbe shortly yf I may / and I shall brynge with me suche socoure that ye shall al be joyfull therof / quod Gerames, 'god gyue grace to sende you agayn in saugard / ye knowe wel ye leue vs in great pouerte and fere, wher-
fore we al desyre you not to forget vs,' and therwith they al wepte / then Huon sayd, 'I praye you make no suche sorowe for my departynge: for knowe the busyn-
es that causeth me to departe: for without I go for some socoure ye knowe wel we ar but dede / & Gerames, I gyue you the kepyng of my wyfe and chyld / ye ar bounde to serue me trewe / for in you I haue my parfyght trust.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'haue ye no

---

1 Madame. 2 there. 3-3 omitted. 4 but. 5 bee. 6 shee. 7 commend. 8-8 vntill I. 9 Fol. lxxxv. col. 2. 10 that. 11 yee.
doughte but that as longe as I haue lyfe in my body, I shal not fayle them in lyfe nor dethe.'

When Huon hard Gerames say so, he began sore to wepe / and the fayre lady Esclaramonde be gan to make suche sorowe that she wrange hyr handes and tare hyr here, and made suche cryes that evry man had pety of hyr / they comforted hyr as moche as they myght: she had great cause to wepe and to be sorowfull / for Huon returned to Burdeaux she and all they that were with her sufferyd so moche payne and pouerte that to shewe it wold cause a harde harte to wepe for petye. And after that Huon had thus spoke to his companye, he entered in to his chapell, & was confessyd of the bysshop of the citye, and was hoselyd. Then the bysshop gane to Huon a stoole that was halowed and of great vertue, & sayde, 'syr, I requyre you, for ye love of our lorde Iesu chryst / kepe well this stoole, for such an owre maye falle that it wyl stand you in good stede.' Huon ryght humbly toke it, and thankyd the bysshope. It dyd hym good seruyse after / for on a daye as he passed he / had therof so great nede that he wolde not a forborne it for .xiii. good cities, as ye shall here after.

How Huon departed fro the cytye of Burdeaux, and sayled tyll he came into the hye see, & had manye great fortunes.

Hen Huon had taken the halowed stoole, he delyuered it to his chapleine, who was a wyse man and of a holy lyfe, and commaundyd hym to kepe it well. Then he toke .v. knyghtes to Huon takes with him five knihts,

but Gerames promises to protect Esclaramonde and Clariet, so long as he lives.

Esclaramonde is sorely grieved when Huon takes leave of her.

Huon is confessed by the bishop of the city, who gives him a hallowed stool, which should stand him in good stede.
Huon of Burdeux.

He and his company embark in a ship moored on the Garonne, and sail away.

Huon weeps at the thought of having left his wife and daughter.

The ship enters the high sea.

and a chaplain and a clerk.

Huon finally bids his wife farewell amid her tears.

Haue with hym, and his chappleyne and a clarke to serve hym. Then Huon went to his wyfe, and kyssyd her at hys departynge, and she fell in a swoune in his armys, & Huon sore wepyng releuyd her, and sayd / 4 "fayre ladye, I requyre you forberre makyng of this sorow." "A,^1 syn," quod she, "well I ought to be dolent,^2 syn ye le/3ue me me beseygd with them that desyretethe your dethe" / "dame,"^4 quod Huon, "dyscomfort you not / for by the grace of god I shall make a shorte retourne." Then he clypped and kyssed her, recommaundyng her to our lorde Iesu chryste. Then Huon and suche as were appoynted to go with hym departed 12 out of the palays, and went to a backe posterme vpon the ryuer of Geround, where there was a shyp redy and rychely garnyshyd with all thynges convenyente / then^5 Huon clene^6 armyl & his men enterid into the 16 shyp & had no hors with them / when Huon departed, he delyuered his good hors to the kepyng of syr Bar- narde his cosyn / and toke his leue of Gerames and of all his other companye / and so lyfte^7 vp sayle, and 20 so^8 or^9 it was day in the mornynge he was more then .ii. leges fro Burdeaux. Then Huon regarded ye^e citye, and sore wepyng dyd recommaunde it to our lorde Iesu chryste, humblye requyryng hym to haue in his sate-24 garde his citye / wyfe / and chylde, & al other that were within it. Thus duke Huon sayled a long the ryuer of Gerounde, petyously complaynyng for his wyfe, the fayre Esclaramounde, & for his fayre daughter, 28 Claryet / whom he coude not forget / for he had so great dought to lese them that when he rememberyd them he wepte. 10 So long they sayled that they enteryd in to the hyghe see / 11 he had good cause to wepe and 32 to make sorow: for he never entered agayne in to

1 good. 2 sorowfull. 3 Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 2. 4 Madame. 5 there. 6 being. 7 hoyseyd. 8 so omitted. 9 ere. 10—10 They sayled so long. 11 and. 12 great.
Burdeaux tyll\(^1\) the emperour had taken it, who hated duke Huon mortally. Huon beynge in his shyp thought in hymself, that\(^2\) his harte gaue hym or\(^3\) he returned to the cytye of Burdeaux, that\(^4\) the cytye shuld be taken and his wyfe\(^5\) led away / wherfore\(^6\) he deter-
myned in his corage, that if it so / \(^7\) fortuned, and if euer he returned agayn, what so euer ende came therof, he wolde sle the emperoure Thyrry, & that castell nor towne shulde not saue hym. There was a notable knyght with Huon who sayd:\(^8\) 'syr, leue your musyng and set\(^9\) your hope\(^10\) in god. he shall ayle you & socoure you in all your affayres\(^11\) / he shall\(^12\) helpe your wyfe and kepe your cytyle tyll\(^1\) ye returne / discomforte your selfe no further,\(^13\) thynke of god / and praye to\(^14\) hym to gene you the grace to acomplyshe your vyage / the whiche I hope ye shall\(^15\) do\(^15\) yf ye thus do' / when Huon harde hym he was\(^15\) confortyd, and thanked the knyght : and so sayled forthe tyll\(^1\) they were far on\(^17\) the see & loste theyr ryght way / for the shyp turned on the ryght hand and loste the waye that they shulde haue sayled / and saylyd in to places not knowen to enye of the marynery / wherof the patron was sore abasshed in hym selfe, without makynge eny knowleg therof / \(^2\) so longe they sayled with wynd and wether that they aryued at a porte where as they founde many botes / then\(^18\) they caste theyr ancre and went a lond to refreshe them\(^19\) / then Huon called to hym the mayster of the shyp and demaundyd of hym yf he could sayle to y\(^e\) realme of Anfamie / 'syr,' quod y\(^e\) mayster, 'I was neuer there nor I haue no wyll\(^20\) to go thether / it were a folye for me to take on\(^17\) me to sayle thether, 

---

1 vntill.  2 and.  3 that before.  4 omitted.  5 the faire Escleremond.  6 therefore.  7 Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1.  8 vnto him.  9 put.  10 trust.  11 enterpryzes.  12 will.  13 but.  14 vnto.  15-15 not faile of.  16 much.  17 vpon.  18 there.  19 themselves.  20 minde.
The pilot of the vessel does not know in what direction to sail, and a new pilot is sought and found.

He warns Huon that the voyage to Aunafamie, the realm of his brother-in-law, is long and perilous.

Huon is sad at the thought that a whole year must pass ere he can return to Bordeaux.

Huon and his company move into a new ship.

I had neuer no knowlege to sayle by that straynge see. But I counsayle you here in this porte where as ye ar nowe to hyer a nother patron that can bryng you thether. 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye you to do so moche as to gette me one' / 'Syr,' quod he, 'I shall do that I can' / then he and Huon serchyd fro shyppe to shyppe and fro bote to bote to get a pelot / at laste they came to an aunsyent man / who sayd that he coude well bryng them thether / and sayd how he had bene there before that tyme. 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'yf ye wyll bringe me to the realm of Aunafamie I shall gene you gold and syluer plente' / 'Syr,' quod the olde patron, 'I shall do your pleasure / but, syr, one I say to you / knowe for trouthe the vyage is ryghte perelous & dangerous to passe and a long vyage. it wyll be halfe a yeere or ye can com thether / and besyde that we muste pas by a perelous Goulfe / the whiche is reputed to be one of the mouthes of hel / for if by aduenture by fortune of the wynde that we be blowen nere to it we shal neuer departe / but be loste for euer.' when Huon hard the pylot, he began to wepe and complayne for hys wyfe and his dere doughter whom he had lefte in the citye of Burdeaux in great dought to be taken. For he saw wel then he coude not returne of a hole yere with eny socours / how be it, he lefte not his vyage / then he commandyd his seruantis to dyscharge all his baggage and vytaules out of the one shyp in to the other / when the new shyp was redy in all thynges Huon entered into it. Then the newe patron demaunded of the olde maryner the cause why thei came thether and fro whense they came. 'Syr,' quod he, 'trew it is we
came fro the citye cf Burdeaux / the whiche stondethe vpon a notable ryuer, and when we were entered in to the see / a sore wynde rose vpon vs in suche wyse that

4 we were constrained to abandon our shype to the wynde, and wether, and fortune of the see / the whiche hathe brought vs hether' / 'frend,' quod the new patron / 'as sone as ye were out of the ryuer of Gerounde, yf ye

8 had turned your 1 sterne towards the sirode, 2 ye hadde neuer comen hether, and within a moneth ye shulde haue com to the realme of Aufamie, where as now ye be 3 far of 7 / when Huon vnderstode the cause of theyr

12 comynge thether, he was ryght sorowfull and sore dys-pleased yf he coude haue amendyd it. But his dys-pleasure coude not ayde 4 him : but rather hynder hym / therfore he let it pas, and so toke leue of hys fyrst

16 patron, and lyfte vp theyr ancres and sayles: and when they were in the see the wynde arose / and encreased more and more 5 in suche wyse that they were more then 6 .vi. wekys that ye wynde chaungyd not, so that

20 yf god had sufferyd the wynd to have continued one monethe or .vi. wekys lenger, they had com to the place where as they wolde haue bene. But or 6 they came there, they sufferyd moche payne / for there rose

24 vpon them suche a wynde 7 that they were forced to auayle theyr sayles. The heuen waxed darke, the mone was couerid / the torment was great and maruaylous, 8 the waues of the se were of a great heughte and orryble 9

28 to beholde / whereby, whether they wolde or not, they were constreyned to go as the wynde wolde lede them / theyr fortune was so 10 terryble / that there was neuer sene suche a 11 storme before / wherof Huon and his men

32 and his patron were 12 sore abasshed, 12 and specially the

1 Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1. 2 sea roade. 3 verie.
4 helpe. 5-5 for the space of. 6 ere. 7 and tempest.
8 daungersous. 9 terryble. 10 great and.
11 mightie. 12-12 greatly afraide.
The pilot is sorely discomfited, and knows not whither he is going.

At length the sun appears, and the winds abate.

The ship goes with the wind, as none knows in what direction to guide her.

patron more then Huon was / he was sore dyscomforted / and peteouslye he called on our lorde Iesu chryste / requyrnge hym to bryng them to a good porte / there was nother maryner nor patron but that 1 4 were sore abasshyd, 2 nor they wyste not where they were. They were in this tourmente 3 the space of .x. dayes, In 1 the whiche tyme they neuer saw the 4 cleren-nes of the sonne : for the darkenesse that was there as 8 then / the which 5 greatly anoyed 6 them. And when it came to the xi day, and that the tourment and wynd began to abate and the see 7 pesable and styl / where with 8 Huon and his companye were well comforted : 12 the heuen clered vp and the 9 sonne cast out his rayes alonge vpon the see / then 10 when the master 11 sawe the fortune of the see, and the great tourment began to sease, he caused one of the maryners to mounte vp into 16 the toppe to se yf he myght se 12 any lond / but he coude se none, wherof the patron was sore 13 abasshyed & sayd how 14 he knew not 15 wher 15 he was, for he neuer saylyd in that 16 partyes / and sayd to Huon, 'syr, it is fyfty 20 yeres syn 14 I fyrste vsed the see / but yet I neuer sayled in these partyes, wherof I hane great maruayle ' / when Huon harde that he was sore dyspleasyd and sayd / 'syr, let vs take the aduantage of the wynde and let 24 our shyppe dryue vnder the conducte of our lord Iesu chryst. I hope that our lorde god wyll not suffer vs to be pershysshed in this se.' 'Syr,' quod the patron, 'I 17 agre well to your sayinge, and so let vs do' / then 28 they turned theyr helme and toke the wynde in to theyr ful sayle / the wynde was good and fresshe and the see 18 meke & pesable / so that within a shorte tyme 19 they had sayled a great iourney. Then Huon called on 20 our 32

1 all. 2 afraide. 3 for. 4 Fol. lxxxvi. back. col. 2. 5 did verie. 6 annoy. 7 waxed. 8 therewith. 9 glorious. 10 omitted. 11 of the shippe. 12 discie. 13 greatly. 14 that. 15—15 in what country. 16 those. 17 do. 18 very. 19 space. 20 vpon.
lord god and held vp his handes towards the heuen, & sayd / very god, who in this world transitter world diddest to be borne in the wombe of a maid, and after here regned . xxxii. yeres, and then reseyued the deathe and passyon upon a frydaye / and after rose from deathe to lyfe and went into hell and drewe out the sowles / out of the paynes infernall / sayd Huon, who harde this great noyse: hadde great fere therof, so that he woste not what to do, and grows fearful.

Huon puts his trust in Christ.

Huon looks ahead.

He hears a thunderous roar.

1 omitted.
2 Thou.
3-3 transitter world diddest.
4-4 afterwards diddest raigne here upon earth.
5-5 didst suffer.
6-6 that didst rise.
8 Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1.
9 vppon.
10-10 that we may safely escape.
11 and lowing.
12 the.
13 I may.
14 Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2.
15 all.
16 (tabouryng in original.)
17 to gather.
and so were al tho that were in his companye / the patron commaundad a maryner to mounte vp into the toppe to se what thynge it was that made all that noyse / and so he dyd, and behelde that waye / and at last he parseyued the daungerous Goulfe, wherof he had harde often tymes spoken / wherof he had suche fere that nere hand he had fallen downe into the see / he came downe and sayd to the patron, 'Syr, we be al in the waye to be lost, for we be nere one of the Goulfes of hel' / wherof Huon and the patron and all other had suche fere that they trialbelyd. 'Syr,' quod the patron, 'knowe for throughthe it is imposyble to scape out of this perelous Gulfe / for all ye sees and waters and ryuers there assemblethe to gether / and perforce we muste passe that waye' / when Huon harde that, he began petyously to complayne and sayd / 'a, swete 16 wyfe Esclaramonde, I se nowe clerely that our loues must parte / the beaute and ye bounte that is in you I can not forget. Alas! I shall neuer se you. I praye to our lorde Iesu christ to gyue you that grace to be agreyde withe the emperoure Therry to the entente that in peas and reste ye maye vse the resedewe of your lyfe / for as for me I shall neuer brynge you eny socours or ayde.' Then he studied a season and then sayd, 'good lorde, I take the, syn it pleaseth the that I shall pas out of this worlde, I humbely requyre the to receyue my solwe into thyne han as for the body and lyfe I care lytell for / synne it pleaseth the 2S that I shal thus ende my dayes.' Then Huon lefte his wepynge and the wynde seasyd and the sayle abated; yet neuer the lesse, the shyppe styll went forth to a lone in such wyse as thonghe it had flowen on 32

1 those. 2 of the mast. 3 and looked round about him. 4 omitted. 5 and thereof. 6 vnto. 7 all. 8 then. 9 and louing. 10 more. 11 again. 12 Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 1. 13 my. 14 seeing. 15 and depart this life.
ye see / 'Syr,' quod the mayster, 1 'ye maye se clerly 2 that we mede not to travaile our selfe to gyde our shyppe / for the Goulfe that is so nere vs draweth the 4 shyp to 3 hym in suche haste as ye maye see. 4 Anone ye shall se that we shall tumable therin' / 'mayster,' quod Huon, 'it is conuenyente 5 that we abyde the aduenture and fortune of the see, such as our lorde god 8 wyll sende. lette vs truste in hym, and desyre hym that his pleasure be fulfylled : 4 more I can not 6 saye, for agaynste hym we can not 6 sryue.' Then Huons chapelayne confessed them one after another. 4 Then 12 incontynent the great noyse seasyd. For 7 they came thereither at a good poynte / for the 8 same tyme as theyr 9 fortune was 3 gulf was full and playne / so that a shyppe myght pas ouer it without daunger as well as 16 in a nother place of the see / 4 when the patron sawe that, he sayde to Huon, 'Syr, we oughte greatly to thanke our lorde god / for we ar nowe come at suche a tyme that the Goulfe is full and playne, so that we 20 maye passe ouer suerly with oute any daunger' / when Huon harde  that, he was ryght joyfull and all wepynge he knelyd downe and so dyd all the companye, and dewontly they thanked our lord god that he had sent 24 them that 9 grace. Then Huon rose vp and saw besyde hym a great pese of canwasse. And the waues of the see / betynge agaynste it with great vyolence / wherof he hadde great marueyle. For the waues of the see 28 bet 10 so sere agaynste the clotehe and with so great vyolens: that they reueld backe / & for all the betynge of the see agaynste the canwas yeit it brake not. Then Huon harde a voyse cryenge on hye, 11 petuously 11 complaynynge, saynge, 'O, very god, in an yll oure I was borne when I solde the pusuant god who ded me

1 of the shippe. 2 euidently. 3 vnto. 4 and. 5 new. 6-6 omitted. 7 But. 8 vrye. 9 good. 10 Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 2. 11-12 and pitifully.
that grace\textsuperscript{1} as to take me as one of his dyceyples & apostelles / and for the goodnes that he dyd me I renderyd hym an yll\textsuperscript{2} rewarde for the dewyll: the enemye of all humayne lynage enteryd into my body, \textsuperscript{3} whiche \textsuperscript{4} was ful of synne / and exortyd me to selle my god & good lorde / for xxx. pens of money that was then corante in the countre of Iudee / and, vnhappy that I was, yf I had trusted in his great marce all the trespas \textsuperscript{8} that I had done had bene forgeuen me. But pryde and mysbeleue and wanhope\textsuperscript{3} that was in me with the dewyll: who blyndyd myne understondyngye,\textsuperscript{4} wolde not suffer me to haue enye hope of grace or pardon for \textsuperscript{12} my trespas. For of my synne I neuer had repentaunce. And the dewyll doughtyngye to haue loste me put me in to dysparasyon, wherby I loste \textsuperscript{5} goddes grace.\textsuperscript{5} For yf I wolde haue axed marcy of my lord god he wolde \textsuperscript{16} haue pardonedy me of all the trespas that I had commytted agaynst hym. Alas!\textsuperscript{6} caytyue that I am, fro hense shall I neuer deparde.\textsuperscript{7} ¶ when the mayster of the shypppe harde this woyce / he demaunted of hym \textsuperscript{20} and sayd / 'what arte thou that thus peteously complynethe?' I commaunde the to shewe me \textsuperscript{8} yf\textsuperscript{8} there be any man leuynge in this worlde that can ayde and socoure the, and caste the out of the\textsuperscript{9} payne that thou arte \textsuperscript{24} in:' when the voice hard hym, he spake no mo wordes nor gaue\textsuperscript{10} none anwered.\textsuperscript{11} Then Huon \textsuperscript{12} awaunsed hymselfe to the bourde of the shypppe,\textsuperscript{13} desyrous to know what thyngne it was that made that peteous\textsuperscript{14} complynyte, \textsuperscript{28} and sayde, 'Thou that so sore doste complynye,\textsuperscript{15} I coniure the in the name of our lorde Iesu chryste and by all his powre, and by the gloryous\textsuperscript{16} vyrgyn saynt Mary

\textsuperscript{1} fanour. \textsuperscript{2} euill. \textsuperscript{3} false hope. \textsuperscript{4} and. \textsuperscript{5} the grace of god. \textsuperscript{6} poore. \textsuperscript{7} but alwaies to remaine in this torment and paine. \textsuperscript{8} and whether. \textsuperscript{9} torment and. \textsuperscript{10} made. \textsuperscript{11} at all. \textsuperscript{12} Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1. \textsuperscript{13} being. \textsuperscript{14} pitifull. \textsuperscript{15} and mourne. \textsuperscript{16} blessed.
his mother / and by all the sayntes & holy angellles
and arcangellles: that are in ye realme of paradise /
and by all that euere god made in heuen and in erthe /
that thou answere and shewe me what man thou arte,
and who hathe put the here / and wherfore thou art
here: and wether thou mayste come to vs or not: &
what is thy name: and why that this canwas is here
set / wherfore it serueth: and yeuer it may be put
from the.

When this woyse had harde Huon coniure hym
in such wyse, it answered hym shortly and sayde:
'O thou mortall man that haste coniured me so sore:
and a5 desyryd to know my name, I shall shewe the;
know for sartayne that my name is Judas, & am the
same man that sold Iesus Chryste to the Iues for
xxx. pens than beynge corante in the countree of
Indee / & deliueryd into their handes my ryght dere
lorde and mayster, who so moche honour had done to
me, as to holde me with hym as one of his apostelles,
and by a false and faynte lune I kyssed hym on the
mouth to shewe the Iues wiche he was. And after
I saw hym beten and yll intreyd as ye may here in
the holy scryptures & Evangelystes: who of his
passyon hathe made mensyon / and when I sawe how
I had betrayed my mayster, I was sorrowfull and sore
dyspleasyd but I neuer durst cry hym marcy / wh[e]rein
I dyd great folly / for he was so petuous and full
of marcy, yf I had cryed hym marcy he wolde afor-
given me / but the dewyll, which is ennemye to all

\[1-1\] hath made and created. \[2\] in this miserie.
\[3-3\] omitted. \[4\] from. \[5-5\] also hast. \[6\] for.
\[7-7\] unto the. \[8\] I. \[9\] selfe. \[10\] our lord. \[11\] money.
\[12-12\] honoured. \[13-13\] account. \[14\] he he in original.
\[15\] read. \[16-16\] therein haue made mention of his passion.
\[17\] at my hart. \[18\] Fol. lxxxviii. col. 2. \[19\] commit.
\[20\] pitifull. \[21\] that. \[22\] haue.
He strangled himself upon a tree, and his soul was set in this place to remain there for ever.

Tormented unto death, Judas cannot die.

The canvas, on which he lies, was given him by God to save him from the wind on the right side, because he once gave away such a canvas in charity for the love of God.

Huon advises Judas to ask for God's mercy even yet.

vmayne creatures, wold not suffice me to do it. But I went and strangelyd and hangyd my selfe on a tree, when I was dede my soyle was taken and set in the plase where as ye see me now: and here I shall be for euer 4 in tourmente and 3 in 3 Payne / for neuer shall I parte from hens: for nowe it is to late to call for grace, for 4 ye domes is geuen vpon me: wherfore I do and muste suffer this tournmen & Payne: 5 for all the waters and ryuers of 8 ye world doth assemble together here, there 6 as I am in this Goulfe / wher I am so 7 beten and tourmented by the great wanes and course of the great ryuers. Thus I am tourmented and can not 8 dye, nor neuer come out 12 of this tourmente nor Payne / this Canwas that ye demaunde wherto it 9 dothe serue, 9 and whye 10 it is here set, know for 11 trouthe, that on a day I gaue it for the loue of god / nor I neuer gaue after any thyng for goddes sake, as longe as I leuyde / and therfore when I was set here, our lorde god wolde that the good dede that I had done in geuynge this canwas for his sake, shulde not be vnrewardyd: therfor our lorde god wold that 20 this Canwas shulde be set on my ryght syde, to the entente 12 to save me from the wynde, and from the great wanes of the see that 13 cometh so boysteously a gaynst me / as ye haue sene how they bete agaynst 24 this Canwas / I had no grace to aske marcke of our lorde god for my trespas, the deuyll was so great with me / wherfore let ery man take ensaple by me, and aske marcke while he haue space. 1 14Thus I haue 28 shewed you all my dere. 15 'Iudas,' quod Huon, 'I belyue yt that thou wilte yet crye to god for marcke he wyll haue marcke and pety of 16 the.' 'Nay, nay,' quod Iudas, 'topraye can not awayle me, for I am dampned 32

1 and. 2 remaine. 3-3 omitted. 4-4 judgement. 5 continually. 6 heere enen. 7 sore. 8 by no meanes. 9-9 sereth. 10 wherefore. 11 a. 12 for. 13 here 14 Fol. lxxxviii, back, col. 1. 15 state. 16 on.
for euer / and yf ye wyll beleue me be ware,¹ tary not here to long, for yf ye do ye shall neuer departe hense for the Goulfe,² the² whiche is nowe full and playne, 4 it wyll not reste³ long but that ye⁴ see wyll issue out, & all the ryuers with in it / ye were happy that ye came at the owre that ye dyd. For anone the waters wyll Issue out with suche a bowndaunce / that the wanes 8 that wyll ryse shall seme lyke hye mountaynes: it is more then two hundred yeres symne there passyn any shyppe this way / but that men, shyppe and all, were swalowed in to the Goulfe / wherfore, Huon, I counsayle 12 the that incontyne thou departe hense / without thou wylte be lost for euer; it is tyme that thou depart hens whyles the Goulfe is full / it will not longe rest, but that the waters wyll Issue out with suche brute 16 and noyse, that yf ye be .xv. leges of ye shall well here the tourmente that it wyll make. If ye had comen but halfe an owre soner then y⁶ dyd ye had neuer scaped the daunger therof.' 20 "When Huon vnderstode Iudas, he hadde great maruayle / he¹ Ioyned his handys towarde the heuen: thankynge god of the grace that he had sente hym / Then Huon desyred y⁶ patron that they myght departe 24 thense in hast. 'Syr,' quod he, 'it shall be done.' Then they drewe vp theyr sayles, and so departyd / they hade not sayled a leege but that they sawe a farre of great brondis of fyre brynnyng⁴ Issuyng out of y⁶ Goulfe so 28 longe and so hye that they had nere hande come to ⁵theyr shyppe. And the waues that Issued out of y⁶ Goulfe were as hye as mountaynes, and they aproched so nere⁰ theyr shyppe that they ⁷were nye⁷ perysshyd for 32 theyr shyppe was nere hand full of water, so that they had moche to do to lade out the water, and were fayne ³ and. ²—² omitted. ³ continue. ⁴ burning. ⁵ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vnto. ⁷—⁷ had like to haue.
At a great pace they passed on, for the water drove them onwards.

No land is in sight for many weeks.

At length a high rock with a thick wood, and a white house upon it, is seen afar off.

They sail in that direction.

to abate their sayle. For the water that Issuyd out of the Goulfe draue them so rudely that a byrde coude fleye no faster then they wente. In that case they were a monethe, and durste neuer houye vp sayle / 4

Thus they draue a greate season without seyght of any londe / then Huon called vpun god, and sayde / 'A, verye god, I hadde rather haue taryed styll in myne own countre, and haue taken suche fortune as it shulde / 8 a5 pleased the to sende me: then here to be loste in this straunge see. A, lady Esclaramond, I pray to god7 kepe you and Claryet, my daughter / 8I thinke I shal neuer se you more.' Thus Huon complayned 12 saylyng in the see in fere of his lyfe.1 Thus they were in the daunger of this Goulfe 5v. wekys, and neuer coude se londe, wher of they were in great fere / often times they prayed to our lorde to haue petye of them. 16 Then Huon desyred the patron to mounte vp to ye maste / to se ye he myght se any londe.1 The patron, who greatly desyryd so to do, anone he mounted vp and regardyd on all partyes to se ye he myght spey any 20 londe. at last he sawe afarre of an hye rocke / and on ye heyght therof they sawe a thicke wode, and at the enter of the wode he sawe a lytell howse / wherof he thankyd god, and deseundayd downe and shewyd Huon 24 what he had sene, and sayde / 'syr, yonder, a far of, I haue sene a great rocke, & on ye heyght therof a great thoycke wode, & therin I haue sene a lytell house, or hermytage; the howse is whyght, I can not tel 28 what yt is8 / by the grace of god or10 yt be nyght we shall take7 londe there and refresshe vs11 / when Huon hard that he was nyght ioyfull, and thankyd god. Then they drewe to that parte, and had good wynde and a 32 fresshe / wenynge to haue come thether the same

1 and. 2 swiftly. 3 but. 4 seeing. 5 haue. 6 vnto. 7 to. 8 for. 9 Fol. lxxix. col. 1. 10 ere. 11 our selves.
nyght, but they sayled .iii. dayes and .iii. nyghtes, and conde come no nerer to the woode then they were before, wherof they had marneyle / it semed to them 4 euert that the wode and the howse rose vp hygger and hygger / 1 then they could not tell whether they went / yf they had knowne they wold not haue gone thether for all the golde of 2 the worlde / for yf god had not 8 had petye of them they were all lykely to haue ben lost / for the plase that they sawe a farre of was a castell, and therin closyd the rock of the Adamant: the which castell was daungerous to aproche / for yf 12 enye shyppe come nere it and haue any Iron nayles within it, and 3 a shyppe come within the syght therof, the Adamant wyll drawe the shyppe to 4 hym. And therfore in those partyes the shyppes that sayleth by 16 that see ar made and pynned with woodden nayles, and without any maner of Iron, otherwyse they be loste and perysshyd. For the propertye of the Adamant is to drawe Iron to hym / thus Huon and his company 20 were there the space of .vi. dayes, goynge and saylynge abought the rocke of the castell of the Adamand. But yf they had haue a good wynde the fyrst daye, they had aryued euyn at the whyghte howse, that they sawe 24 fyestre in the woode / the which was the fayrest and most rycheste howse in ye worlde, within which was so much golde and rychesse that no man leninge 5 coude esteme the walue therof / for the pyllers within that 28 howse were of Cassedony / and the walles and towres of whyghte Alablaster. There was neuer dyscryued in[s]crypture nor hystory the beauty of such a castell as this was, for whenne the sonne cast his rayes on it it 32 seymd a far of to be of fyne chrisntal, it was so clere shynyngge. In this castell was nother man nor woman: but dede mennes bones lyenge at the gate of this

but it seems to recede before them.

They little knew that they were approaching the rock of the Adamant, which is very dangerous.

It draws towards it all ships with iron nails in it.

Therefore ships sailing in that sea should be made with wooden nails.

The white house or castle, however, is full of fine gold, and very beautifully wrought.

1 and. 2 in. 3 that. 4 vnto.

Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.
castell / at the porte there lay many shyppes, so that their mastes semyd a far of to be a great foreste.

† How Huon deuyed withe his patron in regardyng of the castell of the Adamat.  4

Ca. .C.ix.

His castel was set on a rokke of the Adamant stone: for the eest to the weest was not so stronge a castell / for yf al the worlde had come before it, and men within to defend it, coude never be won by any mortall men:

the forest that semyd to them a far of were ye mastes of the shyppes that had bene there arryued by constrainte of the Adamant / but for all ye shyppes that were there / there was no lenyng man / but there lay the bones of them that had dyed by famyne & rage /

Huon and his company had great maruayle / for when they aproched nere to ye castell, they were forsyd to tryke sayle / for the Adamant drewe the shypp so sore that, yf they had not quickely stricken theyr sayle, the shypp had broken all to peses, & they all drowned in the see. The shyppe wente so faste that it was maruayle to consider it. Then the patron of the shyp, who was wyse & sage, knew anone how they were nere to the castell of the Adamant, because theyr shyppe went so fast without sayle thetherward / faster then yf they had had a full wynd in all theyr sayles / nor they coude not tourne theyr shyppe no way fro that part, they wold gladly have returned yf they had coude, but it wold not be

---

1 from.
2 so.
3-3 omitted.
4-4 man lining therein, yet.
5 men.
6 their.
7 been.
8 maruaylous.
9 and.
10 discreet.
11 Fol. lxxxix, back, col. 1.
12 any.
13 for.
bycause the Adamant drew 1 so sore the Iron1 to hym 1
by nature; when the patron sawe that clerely2 they shold3 anyue there, he began pecuteously to wepe,4 and
4 sayde to Huon / 'syr, our lorde god hath created vs in
this worlde to lyue and to dye / and there is none but
5 that5 muste passe the passage of this, and bycause we
knowe suerly that no creature can scape that / wher-
8 fore6 we ought to be contente with that7 can be none
otherwyse / syr I say this that 5 dethe to abyde, we
must be comforted, for here5 we muste all dye / when
Huon harde the patron, he had great maruaye, and
12 sayde / 'patron, I praye you shewe me the cause why
ye say thus? / in this castell that we se before vs, is8
there9 Sarasyns within it, or spyrytes of hell that hath
sworne our dethe / suerly I dought them not, make good
16 chere, be nothyng abashshed, take 10 corage in you,10
for by the ayde of our lorde Iesu chryst, and by the
forse of myne armes and good sword, if ther be eny
man within the castell that wyll resyste agaynste vs, I
20 assure you I shall some delyuer11 hym. Anone ye shall
se what I can do / I neuer saw in all my lyfe so fayre
a castell / I cannot tell yf12 they within wyll defend vs
the entre in to the port13; yf they wyll haue any
24 trybute of me, I shall gladly pay it, so they demaund
no thynge elles / and yf I se14 they wyll demaunde eny
thynge elles,15 I shall shewe them how my sword can
cut16 / for I had 17 rathere18 dye then in any prynces
28 courte it shulde be layde to my reproche19 that for eny
man I shulde recule20 backe one fote, for fere or dought
of3 deth / for I wyll neuer be taken alyue, therby to
dye in pryson’ / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'your forse

1—1 the yron so sore.  2 needes.  3 must.  4 lament.
5—5 omitted.  6 therefore.  7 which.  8 are.
9 any.  10—10 good courage and joy.  11 you from.
12 whether,  13 or not.  14 that.  15 of mee.
16 answear it.  17 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2.  18 to.
19 and shame.  20 retire.
The pilot replies that human prowess is of no avail,
as rooks, the which naturally draweth it all manner of Iron, to the most fayrest and strongest castell of the world. It is set and compassed with a rocke of Adamantis stones, as the almighty God would have it, that ye maye well see our shyppe goeth so faste with out any sayle: the Adamant, draws whyte of the ancrees and nailles that be in our shyppe. In the woode that seme the forest, as the master of suche shyppes as hath there aryued, draws hether by the Adamant.

When Huon understode the patron, he was sorrowfull, and no marauyle then piteously he complained for his wyfe and his child, for he saw well he could not scape the deth, nor neuer depart then. Then he wepte for this world haste fourmyd me. I require thy grace, that this pouer sygger that I am enclyned to all myssesfortunes, that it maye please the to resuede my soule into paradise; as for my lyfe none account thereof. But I praye the, good lorde, to saue my wyfe and chylde, whome I haue lefte in daunger of deth, or elles wylayne pryson.' And with thos wordes the ship entered the porte with such a force and pusance that it ran In amonge the other shyppes, so that ye the shype had not ben stronge, and ye other shyppes had bene broken all to peses. It ranne vnder the water, and the old shippe sawe that his shyppe was not broken, thanking be almightie God.
broken he thanked God. Than he loked into the hauen, and sawe so many shyppes that he had marauyle therof / and he was sore abashed in that he sawe another man nor woman sterynge abrode. Also he regardyd the castell, the which was so fayre and riche that there was none suche in the world. Then he thought to sende thetther one of his companye to knowe what people were with in the castell / he sawe well there was no waye to enter / but by a a strayte waye of C.C.C. and lxxx. greses of heght: ye waye was so strayte that no man but one at ones coude mounte vp the grees, he had great marauyle when he sawe no man comynge fro the castel. Then he called one of his knygghtes, and sayde, 'Syr Arnolde, I wyll that ye go vp to this castell to see what people be within, other sarasyns or paynymes; knowe who is lorde there, and saye howe I greatly desire to be aqueynted with the hym; ye ye can do so moch that I myght be aqueynted with the hym: then I & my men wyll mount vp to gether some good adventure fall: for I haue hope in god yet we shall skape this daunger.' 'Syr,' quod Arnold, 'I shall do your pleasure / then he departed, and went fro one shyppe to another tyll he came to the londe / then he went to the rocke and founde the grees and mounted vp. But or he came to the castell gate he rested hymselfe .iii. tymes, when he came to the gate he rested hym he was so wery: and beheld the gate, the whiche semyd to hym meruelusly fayre; then he began to crye and calle to the entent that some man shuld come to speke with hym; when he saw

---

1 great. 2 dismayed and. 3-3 omitted. 4 nor Child. 5-5 looked about him and beheld. 6 throughout all. 7 for. 8 that. 9 and narrow. 10 degraees. 11 & was sore troubled in mind. 12 and command. 13 it. 14 either. 15 of. 16 maye. 17 vntill our lord that. 19-19 as you haue commanded me. 20 and. 21 degrees. 22 before. 23 Fol. lxxx. col. 2. 24 vnto. 25 and rich.
but no one replies that none dyd speke, he stode & harkened yf any parson were comynge to open the gate; but none apered / then he knockyd and called a gayn, & sayd, 'porter that art within, com and open the gate, that cursed be thou of god.' this Arnolde had a good occupacion to crye and call, for within was nether man nor woman that wold open the gate / when he saw that he was nye gruged for dyspleasure / & lokyd downe vnder the gate to knowe yf he myght se other man or woman to speke to / then he lokyd on the ryght hand of the hal dore, and there he saw an orryble serpent / the whiche kept the castell and palays / it was a marueylous great serpent / heyer then any hors, his eye lyke .i. torches brynnyng / when Arnolde saw hym he was sorrowful and sore dyspleasye, and when the serpent harde y\(^e\) knockyn 16 and noyse at the gate, brayenge & cryenge, he came to the gate warde / when Arnolde saw the serpent aprochynge to the gate, he fled a way in so great hast that he had nere haud fallen downe the steyres: he rested not tyl he come to y\(^e\) shyp wher Huon was, & sayde, 'syr, I have bene aboue at the gate of the castell, and cried and knocked therat more then the space of an owre: but there was nether man nor woman that dyd aperse, & when I saw that I leyde me downe to loke vnder the gate, to know yf I myght se other man or woman to speke vnto / but I coulde never se ony creature / but a great and a orryble serpent, hygher then a great hors, with eyen redder then fyre, with marueylous great talons and tayle / there was nether man saw a Fowler fygure of a best.'

1 and, 2 or elles. 3 knocke. 4 omitted. 5 nor Child. 6-6 angry with. 7 espie. 8 vnto. 9-9 turned him round about. 10 burning. 11 right. 12 great. 13-15 toward the gate. 14 with great turie. 15-15 (with verie feare) fell. 16 vutill. 17 whereas. 18 Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1.
Huon, 'nowe I see well we be all but dede / for we have no thynge to eate nor drynke, wherfore we shall dye for famyne and rage. But yf I maye enter in to the castell, I shall gyue that sarpent suche a stroke that he shall never more harte enye man leuynge. Alas, what haue I sayde, my hardynesse nor nor a wauntynge can not helpe me / for I se well that I and all you muste dye, for it is impossible for vs to departe heu.' Than the patron sayd to Huon, sore wepynge, 'syr, it behoueth vs to depart our wytayle: yf ye wyll sustayne the ryght & customes of the see / when men comethe to Suche a case that there is no remedy to gette any freshe vytyale / then it is a reason that the lorde and capetayne haue the one halfe to his parte and the other parte egally to be deluyed amonge his men.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'ye maye do your pleasure, do as ye shall thinke best.' Then the patron caused al theyr vytyales to be brought forth, and then it was deuyded / the patron was a wyse man / when Huon saw that, he began to wepe, he dyd eate but lytell at euerie meale by cause his vytyale sholde endure the lenger / howbeit all that but lyttell awayed, for or .xv. dayes were passyd / all theyr vytyales were expyrede excepte Huons parte of the whiche he gaue euerie man parte, & kepte for hym selfe no more then other men had. And as they were in this daunger they saw a galyot wherein were .xxx. men, sarasyns, and theues and Huon divides with them his own portion. 

A pirate ship comes alongside of Huon's vessel, and threatens it.

1 omitted. 2 my. 3 from. 4 part. 5 to, 6 deuided. 7 before. 8 spent. 9 galley. 10 great. 11 and. 12 Fol. lxxxx. back, col. 2.
Huon joyfully welcomes the men in the galley,

but they, speaking in Spanish, declare themselves Saracens,

and threaten Huon and his company with death.

Huon bids his companions arm themselves,

here this fayre shyppe / it can not be but it is rych and full of goodes: they shall not scape vs: but it shalbe owrs, for therin ar but fewe men to defende the shyppe.'

Howe a galey withe sarasyns came and assayled Huon, who were all slayne, and also all Huons men; and how Huon went to the castel of the Adamant & slewe the 8 great serpent, and of the merueilles that he founde there.

Hen Huon sawe the galey aryue, and goynge to his shyppe he had great 12 maruayle what men they were / then he alyghtyd a torche & toke it in his hande, and came a borde on the shyppe, and sayd / 'sirys of this galy, ye ar wel arnyued here; 16 ye be welcome; 1 we haue great ioy of your companye' / when the sarasyns hard Huon, they 1 well 1 perseyuyd by his language that he and his company were chrysten men / then ech of them behelde other smylynge for 20 ioye / one of them turned his speche and spake good spanysshe, and sayde to Huon / 'felowe, it is no nede for vs to hyde what we be: al we that thou seeest here be sarasyns, and ye be chrystened / wherfore we wyl 24 haue all the rychesse that is yn your shyppe / and besyde that, all your hedes shall be streken of and your bodys cast into the see.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'or 2 thou haste our shyp at thy commaundement, fyrste 28 thou shalte bye it derely.' Then Huon cryyd to his men that they sholde arme themselfe to defend them fro the paynymes / 3 the which they dyd dylygently.

And Huon, who was redy armed, and by that tyme the 32

1-1 omitted. 2 ere. 3 Fol. lxxxii. col. 1.
Ca. ex.] OF THE FIGHT WITH THE PIRATES.

Sarasyns were entryd into the shyp. Huon was redy before them with his sworde in his handes, wherwith he stroke the fyrst that he met withall in such wyse that his hede flew fro his shuldres. Then he strake another and clane hyme to the throte / and so the thyrde and the fourthe were shortely slayne / he layd on so rounde a boughte hyme that his enemyes were aфрayed to beholde hyme. Then the chefe mayster of ye theues came and rebuked his men bycause they had sufferyd Huon to do them so moche hurte and domage / he approchid to Huon to haue stryken hyme / but Huon, who was lyght and expert in dedes of armes, awoydyd his stroke, and strake the Sarasyn with a reuerse that his hede likewise slayn. Then the captain of Huons ship; cryed 'Burdeaux' / to reioyse his men and to geue them corage. Also Arnolde, who had sene the serpente in the castell, dyd marueylles, & bet downe his enemyes, wherof Huon toke great pleasure. And there was a great myghty Sarasyn / who cam behi[n]d this knyght Arnolde as he fought with a nother Sarasyn, and he gane Arnolde with an axe such a great stroke that he claue his hede to the tethe / whereof Huon was ryght sorowfull, and sayd he had rather dye then the deth of Arnolde shulde not be reuenged. Then he approchyd to the same paynyme and lyfte vp is sword with bothe his handes, and he stroke the sarasyn on the shulder that y sworde entered in to the breste. And the patron of Huons shyppe vnarmyd came to the batayle with a great staffe in his handes, wherwith he layd on sarasyns in suche wyse that suche as he stroke ne dyd after no sorgyon. Then a Sarasyn advised hym, and came and gane the patron suche a stroke with a sword on the hede that his hede and fights himself with his wonted boldness. He slays the captain of the ship; and cheers on his men. But Arnold, the knight who had seen the serpent in the castle, is killed, and Huon swears vengeance upon his murderer. The captain of Huon's ship is likewise slayn.

1-1 had great joy. 2 neere unto. 3 lifting. 4-4 omitted. 5 into. 6-6 needed. 7 Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.
was clouen to the brayne, wherewith Huon was ryghte sorowfull. But it was not long or he reuengyd his dethe / for he strake the sarasyne suche a stroke that he claeu hym to the brest / when the patrons seruauntes sawe theyr mayster slayne, they made great sorowe / and disarrayd as they were, they came to the batayle with great staves in theyr handys / and fought with them fersly. But ye saraysns who were armyd had anone slayne them all, wherof Huon was sory, for he had then with hym lefte a lyue no mo but .iii. men of defence. And the Saraysns, who in ye begynnynge were , were all slayne excepte .vii. parsones / they 12 feryd Huon / for they saw wel none coude endure agaynste his strokys / then they fled out of Huons shyp and enteryd in to theyr owne galey. But Huon and his .iii. knyghtes that were with hym followed them and slew them all, and caste them into the see. Then Huon and the .iii. knyghtes that were with hym toke all ye fleshe / bread / and wyne that was in the galey and bare it into theyr shyp, wherby they leuyd more then .vii. monethes. And then when theyr vytales began to fayle them they were sorrowful / they had no vitayle to leue by longe, and yet they dyd ete but lytell; so they became pale & lene for famyne / peteously Huon complayned and sayd / 'O ye, my dere and trewe frendis, who for my loue haue left your londes, your wyues, and chyldefren. Now I perseuyre ye must nedys dey for the rage of famyne: alas, catyue that I am, I shal not long lyue after you ; great pety e it was to here the complayntes that Huon made, who sawe his men dye before his face / and also

---

1 and sore displeased. 2 before. 3 and. 4 that. 5 was. 6 all. 7 and entred into. 8 right sorrowfull and angry. 9 greatly. 10 so fast that they. 11 then. 12 right. 13 beganne to be. 14 through. 15-15 omitted. 16 poor. 17 Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1.
he saw\(^{15}\) that he must folowe the same danunce. Then
he sayde, \(\text{\textquoteleft}a, \text{a lady Esclaramonde, I shall never see you more; I praye our lord god that he will comforte you}\)
\(\text{\textquoteleft}4\) in all your affayres / as for me,\(^{1}\) it is imposyble to lyue .\(\text{\textquoteleft}\)iii. dayes lenger.\(^{\text{.}}\) After that he hade made this
petyous\(^{2}\) complaynte he behelde his\(^{3}\) .\(\text{\textquoteleft}\)iii. knyghtes, who
renderyd vp theyr sowles and dyed for\(^{4}\) hunger. The
8 petefull complayntes then that\(^{5}\) he made was petye to
here / he hade no hope to be aydyd by any man
mortall,\(^{6}\) wherfore he knewe suerly\(^{7}\) he coude not lyue
\(\text{\textquoteleft}\)past .\(\text{\textquoteleft}\)iii.\(^{8}\) .\(\text{\textquoteleft}\)dayes lenger. Then all wepynge he wente fro
12 his knyghtes that lay\(^{9}\) dede and wente to the bourd of
his shyp and lokyd in to \(\text{\textquoteleft}\)y\(\text{\textquoteleft}\) see \(\text{\textquoteleft}\)yf he coude\(^{10}\) spye any
maner of shyp comynge thether. For he thoughte that
\(\text{\textquoteleft}\)yf any shyp came thether of the sarasins, he wolde
16 hane some vytales or elles to dye in the quarel / thus
Huon was there\(^{11}\) all\(^{12}\) alone without\(^{13}\) companye.\(^{13}\)

\(\text{\textquoteleft}4\) When Huon saw that no maner of shyp was
comynge thether, he was\(^{14}\) sorowfull. Then he turned
20 hym and regardyd the castell, the which semyd to\(^{15}\)
hym marauaylously fayre and great, and sayd / \(\text{\textquoteleft}a, \text{a good}
lorde, how cane it be that this fayre and rych castell
shuld be voyde without man or woman; I hane great
24 marauyle of that syr Arnolde showyd me / for he
showyde me that within the castell was nother man nor
woman, and howe that there shulde be a great serpente.
I cannot tell \(\text{\textquoteleft}yf\)\(^{16}\) it be trewe or not, and\(^{17}\) whether he
28 spake it for fere / but by the grace of god, thoughe I
shulde\(^{18}\) dye in the quarel, I wyll knowe the trouth /
for I were as good to dye by the\(^{19}\) serpente as to dye for
hunger' / then he\(^{20}\) toke his sworde and dyd\(^{21}\) on his

\(\text{\textquoteleft}1\) poore soule. \(\text{\textquoteleft}2\) pitifull. \(\text{\textquoteleft}3\) the. \(\text{\textquoteleft}4\) through.
\(\text{\textquoteleft}5\) that then. \(\text{\textquoteleft}6\) mortall man. \(\text{\textquoteleft}7\) that. \(\text{\textquoteleft}8\) above twoo.
\(\text{\textquoteleft}9\) there. \(\text{\textquoteleft}10\) might. \(\text{\textquoteleft}11-11\) omitted. \(\text{\textquoteleft}12\) any.
\(\text{\textquoteleft}13\) sore weeping and almost dead through famine. \(\text{\textquoteleft}14\) right.
\(\text{\textquoteleft}15\) vnto. \(\text{\textquoteleft}16\) whether. \(\text{\textquoteleft}17\) or. \(\text{\textquoteleft}18\) shall.
\(\text{\textquoteleft}19\) horrible. \(\text{\textquoteleft}20\) Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 2. \(\text{\textquoteleft}21\) put.
He mounts the steps, and reaches the fair castle.

He admires the alabaster and the fine gold of which it is built.

But on examining the curiously-wrought gate, he sees an inscription saying that the castle is only to be entered by the worthiest of all knights.

for the serpent can overthrow all of small prowess:

but on the right side of the gate hangs a purse with a key within it.

Huon trusts in God to aid him.

helme, & take his sheld, and dyd so moche with the goynge fro shyp to shyp tyll he came to the londe. And then with moche payne he mounted vp the degrees / and so came to the gate of the castell / then he sate downe and rested hym & beheld the fayre castel; he thought he neuer saw no suche before, for the walles and tounes were of fyn alabaster clere shynynge, and the towres rychely coueryd with fyn golde of Arabe; when the sun cast his rayes ther it caste so great lyght that it gaue lyght far of / when he had longe behelde it he saw the gate, the whiche was fayre and rych, that great beaute it was to behold it: for the .ii. leuys of the gate were coueryd with fyn golde inter-medelyd with other rych oueragis. And on his ryght syde he saw by the gate a wyndowe, and ouer the same there was wryten in letters of golde, saynge: Let any man be ware how he entereth in to this castel, without he be the worthiest knyght of all other, or elles it were foly to assayye it. For he shall fynde there such adventure / if his body were harder than a stethy of stele yet he shuld be but dede and loste without he be of that pusaunce to resyste agaynste the great serpente, & vanquesshe hym / many men have assayed that neuer coude spede / & he that wyll enter in to the castell beholde a lytell purse that hangeth on the right hand of the gate, where he shall fynde kyke for to open the gate / when Huon had red the writynge, he began sore to muse in hym selfe, and said, very god, syn thou haste sauyd me from so many parelles in tyme past, I humbly requyre the at this tyme to ayde me; and to geue me grace that I maye vanquesshe this orryble serpent & brynge hym to the deth / for I had 32

1 vntill. 2 gate of the. 3-3 omitted. 4 and. 5 none. 6 and spheares. 7 thereupon. 8 a. 9 at his pleasure. 10 as. 11-11 good Lord. 12 and succour. 13 Fol. lxxxii. col. 1.
rather dye in fyghtynge lyke a valyaunte knyght; then to dye for famyne. Then Huon rose vp and went to the purse, & toke out the keye and opened the gate and enteryd, and closyd the gate agayne after hym.

How Huon of Burdeux fought with the orryble serpent, and slew hym, within the castell of the Adamant. Ca. cxi.

Hen Huon was enterid into the castell, he sawe before the hall dore the orrible serpent, who was resyn vp: his skyn was of dyuers colours, and it was so harde that no Iron nor steele coude enter in to it / when Huon sawe the best so great he doughtyd hymselfe, and calyd vpon Iesu Chryst requirynge hym to haue petye vpon hym & to gene hym grace to sle that dredefull best / when the beast sawe Huon, he had great marueyle / for he had bene there a longe space that neuer man came there / he strechyd out his clawes and cast his tayle round abought hym, and came hastely agaynst Huon / who, when he sawe the beast aproche nere to hym, he made the sygne of ye crosse on his forhede, recommaundynge hymselfe to god; with his sworde in his hande and his sheld before hym and he fersly marchyd towards the serpent / he was so hydeous and ferfull to behold that the beast semyd rather an enemye of hel then any other beast / his body was marneylous great, with an vgelye hede with .ii. eyen bygger then .ii. basyns ful of brynnyng fyre / when he cam nere to Huon he lyfte vp one of his pawes thinkynge to haue drawen downe Huon to the erth / he strake on Huons shyled by such force that he pullyd it fro his sholder / lether nor
And his sword cannot hurt it.

Huon sees a spear by the gate with a broad head, and seizes it with both hands.

The serpent opens his mouth to attack Huon, but the knight thrusts the spear down its throat, and reaches its heart.

Buckyll coude not resyst it / & then with his teth & nayles he tare the shylde all to peses / Huon, who was lyger and light, lept by the syde of the serpent and gane hym a great stroke with his sworde on\(^1\) the ere, 4 that he thought to haue clouen asonder his hede. But he coude do it no more hurte then yf he had streken on\(^1\) a siethy / so that his sword reboundyd agayne / wherof Huon was\(^2\) sorowfull, and sayd / 'a, good lord, 8 now I se well that my dayes ar at an end: A,\(^3\) lady Esclaramonde, I praye our lord god to saue you & my daughter Claryet / for this daye ye shall lese me.' Then he auauysyd hym to the serpent, and gane hym a 12 great stroke on\(^1\) the haunche be hynde / & yf he dyd but lytell with his fyrst stroke he dyd lesse hurte with that stroke / for he coude in no wyse cut through y\(^e\) serpentis skyn: wherfore he was in great fere; and 16 the serpent, when he felte hymselfe sryken, cast his tayle rounde abought Huon by\(^5\) suche force that Huon\(^6\) ouerthrew\(^7\) to y\(^e\) erthe and\(^8\) quyckely releuyd agayne. Then he saw by the gate a great square spere with 20 a sharpe, brode hede / \(^9\) then he put vp his sworde and toke the spere in bothe his handys, and came\(^10\) agaynste y\(^e\) serpent, who came and encounteryd hym withe open mouthe to haue swalowed Huon / but Huon, 24 who was stronge and lyght, toke the spere and layde it on his arme, & saw the serpent with his mouth open / he strake the spere into the mouth of the serpent so depe that with the hede of y\(^e\) spere he cut his hart\(^28\) a sonder / when the serpente felte hymselfe hurte to the deth, he caste out a terryle crye, so that all the palays\(^11\) sowned,\(^9\) so that the noyse myght be harde a leage of. Thus the orryble serpente was slayne / when 32 Huon sawe that he was dede, he knelyd downe & lyfte

\(^1\) vppon. \(^2\) right. \(^3\) faire. \(^4\) Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1. \(^5\)  with. \(^6\) he. \(^7\) Huon. \(^8\) hec. \(^9\) and. \(^10\) with all his force and strength. \(^11\) place.
it behelde. Then he rose and went to the serpent, and regardyd hym, for he was hedyous and ferfull to

4 behelde / he was .xviii. fote longe; when Huon had well regardyd hym he went and sate downe to rest

him 3 by the hall dore 3 / for he was so wery and faynt with the blud that he had lost, and with swete, that he

8 had moche Payne to draw his breth / the whiche was no marauyle, for he had nother eten nor dronken of all

that daye / when he had well restyd hym then he rose vp desyreng 4 to know whether any man or woman

12 were within ye castell or not, to speke vnto them / he enteryd into the hall, the whiche he marueylously

regardyd: it was so fayre and ryche to beholde that there is no clarke in the worlde can dyseruy the beaute

16 & rychesse therof; the ryche chambers that were on

the syde of the hall were al composyd and made of whyght marbyll polysshed / the postes were coueryd

with fyne golde / at the ende of the hall there was a

20 chamency, wherof the two pillers that susteynyd the

mantell tree were of fyne Iaspar / and the mantell was

of a ryche Calsedony / and the Lyntell was made of

fyne Emeradis traylyd with a wyng of fyne golde / and

24 the Grapy's of fine Saphers. This chemeny was so ryche

that none such coude be founde. And all the pillers

in the hall were of 6a 6 red Calsedony / 7 the pament 8

was of fyne Ambre.

28 when Huon had well aduysyd 2 this hall, he

lokysd towardeys the chaumber, and ouer the dorys of
every chaumber was written in letters of gold, the

which shewyd where the keyes were of every chambr.

32 Huon, who coude well rede the letters / and vnderstonde it / he founde a purse wherein were the keyes of every

---

1 for. 2 behelde. 3—3 before to rest him.

4 as desirous. 5 Fol. lxxxii. back. col. 2. 6—6 omitted.

7 and. 8 pavement.
He enters one of them, and wonders at its rich furniture.

He opens the door of another chamber, and finds great quantity of jewels and gold.

A third chamber is still more richly equipped, and in it are presses filled with gowns of fine gold and rich mantles of sable.

chambre, all of fyne gold; he toke one of the keyes and opened one of the chambres1 / and enteryd into 2it.2 Then he lokyd all aboughte the chambre / and sawe it garnysshed and hangyd with the moste rycheste clothes that euer were sene / the benches & bedstedes were all of whyght Iuory, so rychely entraylyd & wrought and garnysshed with presyous stonys / that no mannes tonge coude dyscryue the beauté and rychesse therof / all was made by enchantement. This palays was3 great and large, and well garnysshyd with chambres. 4 When Huon had well regardyd this chambre he was5 abasshed that he coude nother se man 12 nor woman. Then he lokyd ouer 6the dore of another chambre,6 where there was also 7wyten in letters of golde8 as there9 was10 ouer the fyrst dore. Then Huon toke the key and openyd the11 dore, and enteryd in to 16 that chambre12 / and there he founde great quantyte of gold & rychesse and13 iouelles, with14 precyous stones, that great beaute it was15 to beholde / 'a, good lord,' quod Huon, 'I wolde16 haue bylenyd that in all the world 20 there had17 not17 bene so much ryches as I se here'18 / then anone he sawe a nother chambre, and toke the key & enteryd,19 & for all the ryches that he20 had sene20 before, there he found much more / there were presses24 made of fyne Iuory21 rychely wrought & entayled, so that there was no beast nor byrd but there it was22 wrought; in the whiche presses were gownes and robes of23 fyne golde, and23 ryche mantelles furryd with28 sabyls, and all other thynges24 apartaynyng to the aparel of mankynde / and the beddys so rychly coueryd that

1 doores. 2—2 the chamber. 3 exceeding. 4 beheld. 5 greatly. 6—6 another chamber doore. 7 Fol. lxxxxiii. col. 1. 8 according. 9 it. 10 written. 11 another. 12 also. 13 rich. 14 other most. 15 for. 16 neuer. 17—17 omitted. 18 present before me. 19 therin. 20—20 sawe. 21 very. 22 most cunningly. 23 most. 24 the which were.
it 1 coude not 1 be dysceryuyd 2 / thys chambré was so fayre and rych that Huon coude not 3 be satysfyed with regardyng 4 therof / ther were wyndows 5 rychely 4 glasyd openyng vpon a gardeyne side, the whiche 6 was so fayre and so well garnysshyd with floweres 7 swete smellynge, and 8 al maner of trees charygd with frewtis so good & so delysyous to ete / 9 so 9 that the 8 smelle of them wold haue satysfyed a mannes apetyte. Huon, who sawe this fayre gardyn, desyred greatly to enter into it to gather some of the 10 frute / he lokyd ouer the dore and founde the 11 key, and went to the 12 purse and toke the key, and 11 * openyd the dore, and enteryd 12 into y 6 gardeyne and gatheryd of the frute at his pleasure, & dyd ete therof, for he had 13 great apetyte 14 to ete / he thought the frute maruaylous 16 good. yf I wolde shew or dysceryue the beaute of this gardayn, 15 it shuld 16 be over long to resyte, there wer so many sondry frutys so fayre and so swete of smellyng, that a syke man of any infyrmyte shuld 16 sone 20 17 recouer 17 helth. Also there were herbys and floweres so swete 18 that all the gardayn semyd 19 full of balme / when Huon had bene there a good space and had well eten of the frute at his pleasure / he returnyd in to the 24 chambré that he came fro, and then 20 vnarmyd hym and dyd 21 of all his clothes, & toke out of y 6 presse a fyne shyrte and dobelet / hosyd and shone / gowne / cote and cappe / such as he wold chose / for there was 28 no man to saye hym naye / when he was thus newly areyd, 22 there coude not be founde a more goodlyer man / acordyng as the cronycle saythe / I byleue he

Glass windows from it open upon a garden filled with fair flowers, and trees, and fruits.

Huon enters the garden, and eats the fruit.

The beauty of the spot cannot be described.

Huon returns to the chamber, and takes from the presses some rich clothes.

1 1 was impossible to. 2 by anie mortall man.
3 neuer. 4 beholding and viewing. 5 very. 6 garden.
7 most precious. 8 of. 9–9 omitted. 10 that.
11–11 purse with the key therin, and then he. 12 went.
13 a. 11 desire. 15 Fol. lxxxiij, col. 2. 16 would.
17–17 have recouered his. 18 and delightfyll. 19 to be.
20 he. 21 putte. 22 arrived.

CHARL. ROM. VIII.
was borne by the fayrey / as then there coude not be founde so goodly a man lenyng / when he was thus aparelyed he went fro chambre to chambre / alwayes harkenenge yf he myght here the wyse other of man or woman / but as long as he was there he coude here no thynge, wherof he was sory; there he was viii. dayes without etynge of any thynge sauing of ye frutis of the gardayne / wherby he waxed feeble and faint. Then he prayed our lorde god to comforte hym out of that daunger; petyously he complaynyd for his wyfe and chylde, saynge: 'A, my dere wyfe, god socoure you in all your affayres / for ye shall neuer haue socoure of me / for I tary but for the oure of dethe, the whyche is nere aprochynge to me / for I am so sore beten with famyne that I haue moche payne to sustayne myselfe.' Thus Huon was viii. dayes in the castell of the Adamant / euery 20 day etynge of the frutys of the gardayne / and at nyght he lay euery in the best bed in the chambre. Nowe let vs leue spekynge of hym, and let vs retourne to the duchesse Esclaramonde, who was besegyd within ye citye of Burdeaux, where as she was in great dyspleasure, and not without a cause / for she sufferyd moche payne and trobyll.
How after that Huon was departyd fro Burdeaux the Emperour made dyuers assaultys to the cety / but he coude not wyn yt for the defence of the good cheualyry that was in yt / and of the bussheynent that was layd by the counsell of duke Sauary, wherby the citye was taken & wonne.

e haue harde before howe duke Huon departyd from his citye of Burdeux, where as he lefte the duches his wyfe / who was in great displeasure when she sawe the departynge of her husband. She greatly complayned and sayd: 'a, my ryght dere lord, your departynge ought greatly to greue me. I fere ye shall not come in tyme to socour and to bryng me out of daunger that I am in / for it is impossible for vs long to endure agaynst this emperour. Alas! I haue more sorowe for my daughter then for my selfe:

12 and I am sorowful for my lordis and knyghtis who for the lone of you and me are in parell of theyr lyues. It had bene better for vs to haue taryed stil in Babylon then to come hether to suffer all this tourmentis /

24 paynes / and pouertyes / and at laste paynfull dethe' / with sayenge of these wordes ye duches she fell in a traunce amonge her lordys. Then Gerames releuyd her and sayd / 'lady, dyscomforte you nothyng, but take good corage and comforte your men, who hathe great desyre to defende this citye for the sauegarde of their owne bodyes and lyues / thus to make sorow ye can wyn no thyng therby, but lese more to more: haue

32 no dought that Huon your husbonde wyll leue you at

1 with in. 2 ambushment. 3 the. 4 Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. 5 omitted. 6 not.
HUON OF BURDEUX.

this poynte. he is gone to your brother for socoure / he wyll not long tary / and he wyll brynge you suche socoure that ye emperour nor the Almayns shall haue no leysour to graunt hym the vyctory'. Thus Gerames 4 comfortyd the duches, who was glade to here Gerames. Thus as they deuyseyd to gether, the Emperoure, who was aduerteysyd of Huons departying and howe he was gone for socoure / he assembelyd his counseyle in to 8 his tent, and there he shewyd and declaryd the great losses that he had sufferyd as wel of the dethe of his nepheus as of other of his frendys and kynne / and the great domage that by Huon he had sufferyd, and sayde / 12 'syrs, all this ye knowe well / his aquayntaunce hath the cost vs derely. Ye haue all harde how he is departyd to seke for socours / but I can not tell to what parte he is gone. As for the realme of fraunce, I know well he 16 shall haue no socoure there / for as it haue bene shewyd me of late / that the ryght noble and vyctorious prynce Charlemayne is dede / who louyd Huon but lytell by cause of his sone Charlot whome Huon slewe / 20 and Charlemayne hathe lefte be hynde hym but one sone namyd Lowis, who is but of a yonge age: 3 I beleue yt he were of full age that he wolde rather come to socour me then Huon, who slewe Charlotte his bro- 24 ther / therfore it canne be none other wyse but that he is gone in to some far countre for socours; therefore I thynke it best that in the mene tyme, or he retourne / that on all sides let vs contynually assayle the citye / 28 and let every man do theyr payne to be reuengyd for the dethe of theyr frendys whiche are slayne by them within the citye.' ¶ when the lordis harde the emperour, all with one woysse answeryd and sayd, 'Syr, the 32 reason that ye haue shewyd vnto vs is to be kepte and done / and we shall go arme vs and make vs redy, to

---

1 for, 2 Fol. lxxxiiii. col. 1. 3 and. 4 ere. 5 heere. 6 which.
the entente to come to your entencyon, the whiche is reasonable. Then they sownyd theyr hornes and busyns, and euer man armyd hym \(\frac{3}{3}\) / and came with standarde \(\frac{4}{4}\) dysplayed to assayle the citye, and they that were within as well as they coude they defendyd the citye: they \(\frac{5}{5}\) without reryd vp ladders agaynste the wallys \(\frac{6}{6}\) by great \(\frac{6}{6}\) strengthe / but they \(\frac{5}{5}\) withe in dyd bette them downe into the dykis, and then they cast von theym hote lade and boylynge oyle / and quycke Lyme / and great stoneis, & fogottis brynnynge, \(\frac{7}{7}\) so that they that \(\frac{8}{8}\) were downe in the dykes had no powre \(\frac{9}{9}\) to releue \(\frac{10}{10}\) agayne; but there myserably dyd vnder the ladders. There was on bothe partyes \(\frac{11}{11}\) great shotynge with crossebowes and slyngynge of stoneis, so thych that it semyd \(\frac{12}{12}\) snowe sleynge in the ayre / marueyle it was to regarde \(\frac{13}{13}\) the olde Gerames / how he exortyd his company to do wel / and also the duches Esclaramonde, with her daughter in her armes, cryeng to \(\frac{14}{14}\) her men and sayd, 'ye, my dere lordys and knyghtys, fyght lustely: put \(\frac{15}{15}\) to your payne \(\frac{9}{9}\) to defend your bodyes and your lyues / your wyues and chyldren / to the entente that the Almayns make not theyr auaunte of the wynnyng of this \(\frac{19}{19}\) noble citye by assault / the whyche is so goodly and ryche / for, syrs, I knowe well ye shall not \(\frac{21}{21}\) be in this payne \(\frac{21}{21}\) no longe season / for duke Huon, your ryghtfull lorde, shall shortly sucoure vs all.' Then \(\frac{24}{24}\) the noble barons, knyghtys, and burgesses / herynge the \(\frac{25}{25}\) comorte of the noble \(\frac{25}{25}\) lady the duches Esclaramonde, with a maruaylous \(\frac{27}{27}\) corage \(\frac{25}{25}\) they came to

A fierce assault upon Bordeaux is forthwith prepared, but the defenders of the city make a fierce resistance.

Gerames and Esclaramonde exhort Huon’s men to fight lustily.

Very valiant is their defence.
and the Germans are forced to retire.

The Emperor invites his men to give him advice as to whether he shall continue the siege longer.

The Emperor's brother, duke Savary, urges the Germans to persist in their endeavour, but declares it necessary to capture Gerames.

and the Germans are forced to retire.

The Emperor invites his men to give him advice as to whether he shall continue the siege longer.

The Emperor's brother, duke Savary, urges the Germans to persist in their endeavour, but declares it necessary to capture Gerames.

the\(^1\) defences / and dyd\(^2\) so valyauntly that theyr enemyes were fayne\(^3\) to recule\(^4\) backe with great losse & damage / wherof the emperour and his lordys were ryghte sorowfull / and they within the citye ryght\(^5\) ioyous\(^6\) of the\(^7\) victory that god had geuen them that day. Then every man \(^7\) drew to theyr\(^7\) logyng and made great ioy / and the emperoure and his men withdrew\(^8\) in great dysp[1]easure for theyr\(^9\) losse. ¶ when y\(^e\) emperour was vnarmyed, and had refresshed hymself,\(^10\) Then he sayd to his lordis / syrs, we haue ben a longe season before this citye and haue had\(^11\) many losses : therfore, syrs, I requyre you to counseyle me what is 12 best to do / this citye, is stronge & wel furnyshed with knyghtis and men to defende it / by vs it wyl nener be won, without vytaylis fayle them / but I thinke they haue but small store of vytayle : therfore I desyre you 16 to shewe me your adyuyses whether we shall departe fro this citye without more doynge, or elles abyde here vpon suche fortune as god wyll send vs / when y\(^e\) emperour had sayd as moch as\(^12\) pleasyd hym,\(^13\) then the duke 20 Sauary, his brother, rose vp & said / syr, me thynke yf I may be blyeuyd, \(^14\)that this citye can not long endure ; and y\(^e\) cause why I shall shew you / ye know well that Huon theyr lorde is gone to seke for socours / on the 24 other syde, they with in the citye haue but fewe men and but yll furnysshed of vytayles / within the citye there is an olde knyghte who is a valyant and a hardy knyght / and therfore it were profytable to study howe 28 he myghte be taken, or elles slayne / this shulde greatly auaunce your enterpyse / of the whiche ye can not fayle yf ye wyll blyeu my counseyle, as I shal shew you. Trewe it is this day we haue had grete losse and 32

\(^1\) theyr. \(^2\) behaued themselves. \(^3\) forced. \(^4\) retyre. \(^5\) ioyfull. \(^6\) great. \(^7\) went vnto his. \(^8\) themselves. \(^9\) his. \(^10\) selfe. \(^11\) sustained. \(^12\) he. \(^13\) omitted.
receyuyd great domage, wherof they within ar Ioyfull / wherefore it were good to sende sartayne motouns and beestys in the nyght tyme with a fewe kepars: sende 4 them into the medowe nere to 1 the citye / and I am sure 2 when the olde knyght knowe therof, the whiche he shall knowe by the wachmen on the toures and walles / then incontynent he wyll issue out with suche 8 power as he hath to take the bestes & to bryng them into the citye. And to the entente that they shall never retourne agayne into the citye incontynente or 3 the monde 4 dothe 4 aryse, sende a goo[d] nombre of 12 befores / and motons to the medowe. Then haue redy armyd 1x. thousande men, and send them to the lytell mountayne, where as the galowes were 5 reysyd / and when they parseyue that they within the citye be 16 issuyd out to feche the praye / then let the 1x. thousande men drawe nere to the gate of the citye / to the entent that they without shall not enter agayne, but to their great losse. And yf ye wyll thus do, I put no 20 dought but that or 6 it be mydnyght they shall be all taken or slayne / and the mater may so come to pas that 7 ye shall enter into the citye at your pleasure. ¶ Thus I haue shewed you as I thynke best / yf any man 24 knowe any better waye, let hym speke 7 / Then every man regardyd the Emperoure and seyde, 'syr, the counsayle that duke Sauary your brother 4 hathe geuyn you we thynke all 4 that a more noble counsayle coude 8 28 not be geuyn to any prynce.' when the emperoure undersode his counsayle of his brother duke Sauary, and that all his lordys dyd alowe y 9 same / he was ryght Ioyfull, and sayde 2 it shuld so be 9 done. Then 32 he callyd his marshall and commandydyt that it shulde be done 10 as his brother had deuysyd it before / the

1 vomto. 2 that. 3 ere. 4-4 omitted. 5 is. 6 before. 7 Fol. lxxxi, back, col. 2. 8 can. 9 bee so. 10 according.

He suggests a device to induce Gerames to put himself in peril. Herds of cattle should be sent under the city's wall, and when Gerames and his men issue out to seize them, a large force of Germans should be set in ambush to seize or slay them.

All the Germans approve duke Savary's counsel, and the Emperor gives directions for putting it into effect.
whiche was done\(^1\) dylygently, and sente\(^2\) .xl.\(^3\) men with .vi. hondred motons and two hondred beestes nere to\(^4\) the citye / and layde theyr enbusshement of .x. thousande men by the lytell mountayne. It was darke nyght, & the mone was not rysyn / wherby they within coude not parsayue them / the whiche turnyd to theyr great losse and damage / for all those that issuyd out of the citye of Burdeaux were slayn and taken, as ye shall here after.\(^6\)

¶ Of the dethe of the olde Gerames and of the takynge of the citye of Burdeaux, and of commonyng of the duches with the 12 Emperoure, & of the deliuerynge of the Castell to the Emperoure. Ca. cxiii.

\(^9\) e have hard here before how the Emperoure assaylyd the citye of Burdeux, 16 and of the great losse that he receyuyd\(^10\) / wherof Gerames and they within the citye were ryght ioyous,\(^11\) and made great feast, and thonkyd our lord god. Then 20 after supper Gerames callyd all the knyghtes and other together and sayde, 'Syrs, ye have sene this daye the great assaulte that the Emperoure and his men hathe made to this cytye / but, thonkid be god, the losse is 24 returned to them / for there are dede and woundyd a great nombre of them / and many of them are sore weryed of tranaylynge,\(^12\) & thynkethe nowe to reste themselfe / and nowe is theyr owre that they be sette 28 at supper, and custumably they sytte ever longe at theyr table / far lenger then freche men dothe / wherefore I wold thynke beste that incontynente without de-

\(^1\) verie.  
\(^2\) with him.  
\(^3\) fiftie.  
\(^4\) vnto.  
\(^5\) then.  
\(^6\) hereafter.  
\(^7\) the comming.  
\(^8\) vp.  
\(^9\) Fol. lxxxv. col. 1.  
\(^10\) sustained.  
\(^11\) ioyfull.  
\(^12\) with tranayle.
laye 1 to arme vs all 1 and to 2 issue out of the citye and go to theyr tentys and arayse them / and then let vs do there as good 3 knygghtys ought to do, to the entente 4 that good songes maye be made of vs. And that the Almaynes haue no cause to say but that we be as good men as they be.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Othon and Bar- narde, ‘we be redy thus to do.’ ‘Syrs,’ quod Gerames, 8 ‘let vs make hast, that we may retourne agayne or 4 the mone rysethe.’ Then they armyd themselfe. Alas, what an yll adventure came to them that 5 nyght / for y 6 moste parte of tho that issuyd out were taken and 12 slayne. A, good lorde, what a losse fell to the good 2 citye of Burdeaux. A, noble lady Esclaramonde / ye may wel wepe and complayne. 6 your dayes of 7 sorowe and 8 Payne and doloure aprocheth nere, wherby ye ar 16 lyke to bere such dyseases and pouertye that no man lynynge canne recounte it / nor ye shall never issue out of that daunger and sorowe 8 tyll ye be delyueryd by the good duke Huon your husbande / when Gerames 20 and his companye were redy, they mountyd on theyr horses / they 9 issuyd out at the gate as preuely as they coude / so that they were not parseyuyd by them that were set to watche for them, nor they hard not when 24 they were in the felde / they rode a fawse galope to the tentys, y 8 which they myght well se elerely by the lyghte that were in the tentys / when they came nere, they dasshed theyr sporys to theyr horses and cryed 28 Burdeaux 1 / and strake and cut asonder the cordys and stayes so that many tentis fell to the eth / & suche as came out were slayne / great noyse & cry began to ryse in the host, & euery man ran to theyr armur 10 / 32 and Gerames & his companye slew many of theyr enemys, and made them to fle before them / it was

so that their valiant deeds might be remembered in song.

All agree with Gerames,

and preparations are made, but ill fortune is awaiting their sortie.

---

1—1 we should arme ourselves.
2 omitted.
3 Fol. lxxxv. col. 2.
4 ere.
5 at.
6 all.
7 for.
8 trouble.
9 and.
10 armour.
dreadful to beholde the damage that they dyd there. But
fynally the losse fell 1 vpon them / for the Emperoure
and all his men were redy / when Gerames sawe howe
all the hoost was mouyd / then he sayd to his com-4
panye, 'Syrs, it is tyme to recule2 backe / for we maye
tery here to longe / yonder cometh the emperoure with
a 3 great pusaunce3 to close vs in / it is nede4 for vs to
make hast that we may go5 in saucety.7 Then all to 8
gether in one company6 retournyd, and went the way
towards Burdeaux. But they had not gone fare or 7
that they were ouertaken by the almaynes / and they
layde on on all partyes with theyr speris and swordys.8 12
Then Gerames turnyd hym to an almayne / and with
his sperre ranne hym cleane throug / and in drawynge
out his sperre he fell downe dede to the erth / and then9
strake another, whome also he sloe. He dyd such 16
dedes of armyes that or 7 his sperre brake he slewe .v. of
his enemyes / wherof the Almayns were sore abasshid.
He brake the prese in suche wyse that none durst
aproche nere 10 hym / ryght wel dyd Othon and Bar-20
narde and such as was 11 with them.12 But then the duke
Sauary, who with .x. thousande men laye in the busshe-
mente nere to 10 the citye / when he 13 hard the 14
noyse and crye, he 15 thought wel 15 that they within the citye 24
were Issuyd out / when Gerames and his companye
sawe how they were enclosyd bothe before and behynde,
they were sore abasshed. ¶ when Gerames saw that
theyr forse and proues 16 coud not anayle them, but that 28
other they must be taken or slayn, Then swetely 17 he
callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryste / requyrynge hym
to saue 18 his good lorde, duke Huon of Burdeux, and
the duches Esclaramond his wyse. Then he cryed to his 32

1 Fol. lxxxxv. back, col. 1. 2 retire. 3–3 mightie armie.
4 needfull. 5 away. 6 they. 7 ere.
8 swords & spears. 9 he. 10 unto. 11 were.
12 him. 13 had heard. 14 great. 15–15 supposed.
16 powers. 17 earnestly. 18 and defend.
company, & sayd, 'Syr, I pray you hartely at this tyme\(^1\) shewe forthe your prouesses, and \(^2\) do so\(^2\) that this emperoure & Almaynes haue no cause to make theyr anauntes that they haue founde vs as men dys-mayde,\(^3\) and \(^4\) let vs shew them how our swordys can cut.' Then all together \(^5\) set on \(^5\) theyr enemys in suche wyse that at the fyrste brounte the Almaynes were \(8\) constrained to recule\(^6\) abacke. Gerames dyd such dedys that none durste aproche nere hym. Then the duke Sauary weth \(x\) thousande men came vpon them sodaynely / the whiche was none egall partye / and \(12\) also the emperoure with his great batayle came also vpon\(^7\) Gerames and his company, who had goten them-selues in to the subbarbes of the cyte and a great\(^8\) wall behynde them at theyr backes, where as they stode\(^9\) at \(16\) a baye agaynste the almaynes / \(10\) for as the wyld bore doth kepe a baye agaynst the mastyues and bayingne houndes, so dyd they of Burdeaux agaynst the almayns,\(^10\) Gerames was in the myddys of them, and vnder\(^11\) his \(20\) helme aperyd his long whyght berde / and ye emperour who had great shame that so fewe men in nombre shuld kepe a baye \(10\) in that moner\(^10\) agaynst his pusaunce\(^12\) & do to\(^13\) his men so great domage / he parseuyd where \(24\) the olde Gerames was / who had often tymys slayne manye of his men and done hym suche damagys that he thought he coud neuer\(^14\) have amendys\(^14\) therof suffycyent / and thought that yf he shuld haue scapyd them \(28\) a lyue / that he wolde do hym moch more hurte and dyspleasure\(^15\) after / and sayd to hymselfe that he had rather dye incontinent then he shulde not as then be reuengyd vpon hym / & therwith incontynent he

- Ca. cxiii.] OF GERAMES’ VALOUR. 395

1 Fol. lxxxxv. back, col. 2.
2-2 behaue your selues so valiantly.
3 amazed.
4 but.
5-5 they assayed.
6 retyre.
7 old.
8 mightie.
9 did stand.
10-10 omitted.
11 vnderneath.
12 highnesse.
13 vnto.
14-14 be reuenged.
15 damage.

At their first charge, the Germans recoil; and Gerames’ men set them-selues before the walls of the city and ficht like wild boars at bay.

The Emperor vows that Gerames shall die,
couchyd his spere / and ranne at\(^1\) Gerames on the one syde or\(^2\) he was ware, so that\(^3\) the emperour ran hym clene thorowe \(y^e\) body / so\(^4\) this\(^5\) ientyll knyght Gerames fell to the erthe and dyed incontynente. great domage\(^6\) fell that daye to Huon of Burdeaux / for he loste the treweste and best frynde that he had. Alas, for that petuous journey that fell that daye to them of Burdeaux. They had good cause\(^5\) to wepe / alas, good 8 duches Esclaramond, what losse haue ye receyuyd to lese hym who was your chefe conforte and refuge / ye myght haue called hym more then father. A, ryght noble lady / there neuer came to you a greater mys\(^12\) chefe than ye haue by the dethe of Gerames / who lyeth dede\(^6\) among his enemyes / when the Almaynes sawe that Gerames was dede / then they fought so\(^7\) that within a short space all they\(^7\) of Burdeaux were slayne\(^16\) and not one scapyd alyue / excepte Barnarde, who was on \(y^e\) pusaunt hors Amphage: for the gambaundes and worke\(^8\) that he made, none\(^8\) Almayne durste aproche nere hym / for Barnard nexte\(^9\) Huon was the moste\(^20\) valyaunt knyght of his body that was as then leuynge / for when the almaynes sawe hym on\(^10\) that horse / they chasyd hym no further, then\(^11\) they wente to theyr tentes, and Barnarde seysyd not tyll he came to\(^9\) the\(^24\) gate of the citeye / the whiche was openyd / when he was enteryd and the gate agayne closyd\(^12\) / the burgesses and comunaltye sawe how Barnarde came in all alone / they demaundyd of hym and sayd / 'syr, where is\(^28\) your capetayne, the olde Gerames?' Then sore wepyng he shewyd them at length the petuous and dolorous aduenture, \(y^e\) whiche, when they hard that,\(^13\) they made suche cryes and wepyng that petye it was\(^5\) 32 to here and to se them / the brute and noyse was so

\(^1\) old. \(^2\) ere. \(^3\) Fol. lxxxxvi. col. 1. \(^4\) that the. \(^5\) for. \(^6\) even now. \(^7\) them. \(^8\) not an. \(^9\) vnto. \(^10\) vpon. \(^11\) but. \(^12\) closed agayne. \(^13\) omitted.
greate and lowle, that the 1 lady Esclaramond harde it / wheroft 2 she 3 had maruaile 3 and was 4 in great fere / Therwith syr Barnarde enteryd in to 5 the castel gate 4 and so mountyd into the hall, where as he founde the duches Esclaramonde / who was sore abasshyde when she sawe syr Barnarde come alone / who shewyd her the great losse that she had receyuyd 6 that day / wher 8 with for inward sorow she fell downe in a swoune, and so lay a longe space as thoughe she had bene dede. Then the ladyes and damoyselles sore wepyng releuyd her / then she cast out a great crye, wryngynge her handes and terynge her here, and sayde, 'A, Huon, my ryght dere lorde, this day ye haue loste your moste sorrowfull and dolorous wyfe and welbelouyd douhte.'

Then 7 ladies and damoyselles & other wyues who had loste theyr husbandys / fathers / and bretherne came in to the castell and made suche cryes and sorowes that the noyse therof was harde into the emperours hoste without / and it was shewed the emperour that ye noyse and brute that was made within the citye and castell was for the losse they had receyuyd that daye. And then they sayde it shulde be good that the nexte monnynge euery man shulde be redy to go and assayle the citye, and sayde that yf enwer they shulde 8 wynne it the owre then was comen. ¶ when the emperour 9 harde that reason, he sayde that the aduyce was very good / and 10 he wolde it shulde so be done / he gaue the charg ther of to his constable and marshalles. thus 11 the nexte monnynge the 12 host was redy, & the emperoure commaundyd to set forward / and so 13 they came before the citye garnysshed with all thynges nedefull and necessa ry for assawlte / then 14 they 15 marched

1 Fol. lxxxvi, col. 2. 2 wherat. 3—3 maruailed. 4 stood. 5 at. 6 sustaine d. 7 the. 8 would. 9 had. 10 that. 11 & so. 12 his. 13 then. 14 and. 15 Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1.
forwarde and aproched the cytye / and when they came there they gau a great crye, and entryd into the dykys and reryd vp theyr ladders to the walles in dyuers places / so that they that were within were sore 4 abasshyde¹ / For within were but burgesses and marchesautys, who coude lytel skyll of 2 the 2 warre / how be it, they mountyd vpon the walles to 3 defend 3 theyr citye. But the citye was so sore assayld on all partyes / 8 that the defendauntys wyster not where to make resyst- ence / the shot of them without flew so thycke that none within durste appere vpon the walles, wherby they enterid perforce into the citye and slewe as many 12 as they met withall in theyr entryng. And then they went to 4 the gate and openyd it / so that the emperour and all his lordys entryd into the citye. Then euery man wente abrode in the stretes to take presoners and 16 to spoyle mennes houses. ¶ when the emperour sawe how he was lorde of the citye / he 5 made it to be cryed 5 in euere strete that no man 2 shulde be so hardy 2 on payne of dethe / 6 to vyolat 6 any woman, or deflowre 20 any mayd / nor to breke any church, nor to set any hous a fyre / and also all suche as were in any churche for saugarde / that they shulde go at theyr pleasure without any trouble or daunger 7 of body or goodys / 24 8 the emperour, who was a wyse priace, thought in hym selfe that great damage and petye it shulde 9 be to dys- troy and put to ruyne such a noble 10 citye / so stronge and so 2 well furnysshed with burgesses & marchauntes. 28 When suche as were fled vnto strong places for refuge vnderstode y 8 emperours commaundement, euery man & woman retourned to theyr owne houses, so that there was but lytell damage 11 done / and that was by them 32

¹ afryd. ² 2 omitted. ³ 3 and defended. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ 5 caused it to be proclaimed. ⁶ 6 should wronge. ⁷ either. ⁸ for. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ famous. ¹¹ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 2.
that entered first. If when the lady Esclaramond saw how the citye was taken / ye may be sure she had great dolore, for first she sawe her citye taken 4 by her enemys, and her selfe closed within the castell yll furnysshed with wyntyles / and moche people with her / wher by she sawe clerelye without god dyd ayde her that her dethe aprochyed nere. Then peteously she 8 complayne to god and sayd, 'Very god, on whome I beleue fervemly, and for whos sake I haue lefte my fyrste mysseluen & forsake my parentis and frendys to take to my husbonde a chrysten man / to yentent to reseuye 12 thy law / syr, I requyre the of thy grace to haue petye of me, pouer, desolate creature / and to kepe & defende my dere chyde from all yll encomberaunce / for yf it be thy pleasure to saue my chyld I am content to abyde 16 such fortune as it shall please the to sende me, and besyde that, I requyre thy grace to saue and kepe Huon my dere lorde and husbonde.' Then all wepynge, she called to her syr Barnard, and sayd, 'ryght dere freund, 20 I can take no counsayle now but of you / ye se well how our dethes aprocheth / and how it is impossible for vs to kepe and defende this castell agaynst the emperoure, who hathe won the citye, and I dought yf 24 he enter into this castell parforce, we shall be the fyrste that shall recyue dethe / and by cause I see wel I cannot scape from hense, I require you, my dere frende, and by the trouth that ye bere to Huon, my 28 lord and yours, that incontynent ye take my dere daughter Claryet, whom I holde here in myne armes / and fynde some meanes that ye maye departe out of this citye, and bere hyr stayght to the abbey of Clune, 32 the which is in Borgoyne / and delyuer her into the kepynge of the abbot there. and recommaunde me to

1— was ryght sorrowfull. 2— the enemie. 3 O God. 4 children. 5 what. 6 omitted. 7 vnto. 8 that. 9 Fol. lxxxxvii. col. 1.
Barnard sees that his strength is now of no avail, and promises to fulfil Esclaramonde’s bidding. The Emperor and his army come before the castle, Esclaramonde desires to speak with the Emperor, and urges him to have mercy upon her.

huym. he is vnclle to my husbande Huon, great vnclle to my chylde. ‘Lady,’ quod Barnard, ‘I know well yf I be taken here I shall be slayn. Howe be it, yf I coude se or knowe that my abdyngre here conde ayde or socour you, bothe for myne honour and for the louse of my lord Huon, I wolde neuer depart hense fro you / but my resystence and force is but of small value / and by cause I wolde serue you as I am bound to do / I am redy aparyyled to take on me that aduenture as to bere your chylde awaye and to set her in sauegard by the grace of god when the duches vnderstode Barnarde, she was well comfortyd / and as for her selfe, she regardyd nother her lyf nor dethe / when she knewe that her chylde shulde be sauyd. Then she deluyeryd her chylde to Barnarde / to the entent that in the nyght time he shuld issu out. Then the emperour and his lordis came before the castel. when the duches knewe that / she came to the gate, and at a wyndowe she desyryd to speke with ye emperoure / who was there redy present, and sayde / ‘dame, say what ye wyll to me at your pleasure’ / when she sawe the emperour, she sayd / ‘syr, I knowe well ye are the hede and chefe of all crystendome, & noblest / wherby ye ar bounde to defend and kepe from yll all noble men & women / I that am the daughter of an hye and myghty emperoure / and that for ye loue of Iesu chryst hauve forsaken myne owne false bylleue / to bylleue on ye christen faythe / syr, I requeyre you 28 hauue pety of me and of all thos that be here with me, as to respyte our lyues / and to put fro all rancoure, & malyce, and pardou them that no thyng had to do

1 vtterly. 2 good. 3 and Maister. 4 fournished. 5 vpon. 6-6 our Lord and Sainjour Iesus Christ. 7 vnto. 8 Madame. 9 and. 10 cheefest. 11 the christened. 12 my good Lord and Sainjour. 13-13 (for his sake that made and created you) to. 11 and compassion. 15 you. 16 Fol. lxxxxvii. col. 2.
with the begynnynge of this warre  / when the emperour harde the resonable request of this lady, he cast fro hym all the mortall hate that he had to her and to them that were within with her. Then he, mouyd with pety and compassyon of the noble lady, answerid and sayd / 'dame, for the loue of our lord Iesu chryst I repele fro me all my dyspleasure / so that ye render to me this castell and to put it vnder myne obeysance to vse it at my pleasure / & to yelde your body as my presoner, and all tho that be within, and thus ye shall haue all your lyues sauyd.' 'Syr,' quod the duches, laude and prayes be to our lorde god for this grace that ye shewe vnto me and to my companye.' Then the emperour wente backe, and made expresse commandement thrughe out the citye / that no man shulde be so hardy as to do any hurte or iniury to any maner of parsone within the citye; but to suffer every man to abyde in theyr owne howses peasybly without pyllynge / wherof the burgesses and comunalte of the citye were ryght ioyefull. Thus, as ye haue harde, the citye of Burdeaux was taken by the emperour who was chosyn in Almayne, & comyttyd by the emperour Charlemayn tyll his sone Loys shulde be of full age and able to kepe the empyre.

How the duches Esclaramond deliуeryd her daughter Clariet to Barnarde to bere to the abbot of Cluny / of whome the abbot was ioyfull. Ca. C.xxiii [== Cxiv].

1 had. 2 vnto. 3 Madame. 4 giuen. 5 Iesus Christ. 6 killinge. 7 vntill. 8 rule.
e hauue harde the pectous taking of the citye of Burdeaux, and of ye trete and apoyntment that the duches Esclaramonde had made with the emperour / 4 when she had made her apoyntment / she went to her company pectously wepyngge / and shewyd them all the maner of her tretye, wherof euery parsone was glad that theyr lyues shulde be sauyd / 8 but they made gratt sorow for that the duches shuld be come a presoner / 3 then she callyd Barnard, and sayd, 'Syr, when it is nyght issue out by the posterne with my doughter Claryyet, and bere her to ye abbdt of 12 Cluney, who is her great vncl.' 'Dame,' quod he, 'be in suerty that I shall not reste ii. nyghtis in one place tyll I hauue deluyerdyd your doughter to ye abbdt of Cluney her great vncl.' Then Barnarde toke 16 leue of the duches, who kyste her dghter at her departrynge / There was a posterne that openyd into the feldis; it was so small that Barnarde was fayne to lede his horse in his hande / the nyght was darke, and Barnarde knew well the wayes / mountyd on his horse / and the chylde in his armys / and so rod forthe and passyd the laundes of Burdeaux, and was newer sene by any man tyll the nexte day / he rode so all ye nyght that his horse was werly. And when he sawe that he was past al daungers, and scapyd all perelles / then he rode at hys ease for loue of the chylde / and he complaynyd greatly for the good horse Amphage that Huon had lefte in his kepyng; but he dursyte not take that horse with hym for fere that

1 Fol. lxxxvii. back. col. 1.  2 pitifull.  3 &.
4 vuio.  5 Madame.
6—6 of good cheere and by the grace of our Lord and Sainour Jesus Christ.  7 vntill.  8 good.
9 sore weeping and pitifully complaning.  10—10 but he.
11 Fol. lxxxvii. back. col. 2.  12 & afterwards he.
13 with.  11 mortall.  15 vntill his returne.
He shulde haue delt the worse with the lady Esclaramonde / y e which had bene trewe / for the emperour louyd so wel the horse, 1 that he desyryd more to haue 4 agayne the horse 2 then 3 to win the citeye / and therfore Barnarde durste not take the horse with hym. So longe Barnarde rode that he ariuyd at Monglew, the which is callyd Lyon, on the ryuer of Rone / and fro 8 thens he rode to Mason, and fro thence he restyd not tyll he cam to the abbey of Cluney. 4 Then he alyghtyd, and desyryd to speke with the abbot. 5 when the abbot sawe Barnarde with a chylde in his armes, he had 6 12 maruayle therof / 5 when Barnard saw the abbot al wepynge, 7 salutyd hym, and sayd / 'syr, the ryght desolat duches of Burdeux / your nese, wyfe to 8 the duke Huon of Burdeux your nephue, hathe sent here 16 to 8 you her daughter Claryet.' Then the good abbot embracyd hym, and toke the chylde and kyssed it mo then .xx. timys / and demaundyd why he brought the chylde to 8 hym / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'the cittye of Burdeaux hathe bene besegyd by y e emperoure of Almayne / and so straytly kepte that it was nere hand famysshed / manye knyghtis that were within ar slaynye / so that Huon your nephue, by the coumsayll 24 9 of the duches his wyfe, & consent of all his company, is departyd out of Burdeaux to seke socoure of the kyunge of Amphanie, brother to 8 Esclaramond, Huons wyfe / and so it is a longe tyme syn he departyd, & we 28 neuer coude here any 10 word of hym / and thus he lefte vs in Burdeaux, and our chefe capytayne was y e old Gerames, your cosyn, who was brother to the good prouost Guyer / & so it was 11 on 11 a nyght we issuyd out 32 and rode to y e emperours tentys and slew many of our

1 the horse so well. 2 agayne after horse. 3 for. 4 &. 5 and. 6 great. 7 hee. 8 vnto. 9 Fol. lxxxxviii. col. 1. 10 any omitted. 11—11 that vppon.
enemyes, and when we sawe tyme, we returnyd towards our citye / but by some spye we were parseyuyd when we issuied out, wherby the emperoure, knowynge therof, sende duke Sauary his brother with .x.M. men to lye in a busment nere to ye citye / so that when we had thought to have enteryd into the cytye, duke Sauary was before vs with .x.M. men / ther we fought a long space / but fynally the olde Gerames and his companye were all slayne, none scapyd but my selfe, and that was by reason of my horse / so I enteryd into the citye, where as there was made great sorowe / and the nexte daye the emperour with great assaulte van ye citye and cam to the castel, where as the duches was, who saw well she coued not longe holde the castell ; she made her tretye to save her body and her companye, and so they ar all presoners / or she delyueryd vp ye castell she delyueryd me her daughter, and so I issuied out at a posterne preuely and was not parsayuyd / therfore, syr, your nephue bathe sent you her daughter to the entente that for the loue of her father and of her ye wold kepe and norrysshe her tyll her father, duke Huon, be retournyd.’ when the abbot vnderstode Barnarde he began to wepe, & toke the chyld in his armys, and kyssyd her oftentymes, and sayde, ‘my dere chyld, ye it please our lorde god I shall be to you bothe father and mother, and shall norrysshe you tyll ye be great / and then mary you to some pusaunte prynce / in whome it shall lye to conquere agayne your herytage/ your herytage/ for I haue here in this house suche treasure that it is suffycyent to conquere ye a hole empyre.’ Then the abbot sente for a noble lady of the countrie, and a nouryse, and delyueryd them the chylde.

---

1 our. 2 before. 3 neece. 4 were. 5 Fol. lxxxvii: col 2. 6 vntill. 7 vnto. 8 mightie. 9 omitted. 10 my. 11 a. 12 for.
to kepe and to nourysshe / for a fayred 1 nor better furnysshyd\(^1\) of her age was neuer sene. Then the abbot sayd to Barnarde / syr, ye shall abyde here styl\(^4\) with me tyll\(^2\) this chylde be of age, or elles her father\(^3\) retournyd.\(^1\) Now let vs leue to speke of this yonge chylde Claryet, and of the abbot / and retourne to speke of the dolerous company that were in the castell 8 of the noble citye of Burdeaux.

\(\text{Ca. Cxv.}\) How the duches Esclaramond yeldyd vp the castell to the emperour / and how she and her companye were \(^4\) led to pryson\(^4\) in the citye of Magence. Ca. Cxv. e hane wel hard here before that after the departynge of Barnard fro the castell in Burdeaux with Claryet, Huons daughter / how the emperour had made a tretye with the duches Esclaramonde for the delyueraunce of the castell / the whych passyd ; and on the next mornynge the duches spake with the emperour, who with all his men were\(^5\) there reyd before the place abydyng to haue the delyueraunce of the castell. And \(^6\) when he sawe the duches at a wyndowe over the gate, he sayd, 'dame,\(^7\) I wyll that the promys that ye made me yester day ye vpholde,\(^8\) or elles I wyl do\(^9\) as I thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the duches, 'I am redy to fulfyll my promys, so that ye promes me agayne that my body, and al ladyes and damoyselles and other 28 to\(^10\) be sanyd, & not towchyd by no vyllayny, nor none\(^11\) yll done to\(^12\) our bodys.' 'Dame,'\(^7\) quod the emperour, 'all this that ye \(^{13}\) saye\(^{13}\) I promyse to vpholde;\(^8\) but you and all suche as be with you shall be

---

1\(\text{—— creature.}\) 2\(\text{—— vntill.}\) 3\(\text{—— h.}\) 4\(\text{—— prisoners.}\) 5\(\text{was.}\) 6\(\text{Fol. lxxxxvii. back, col. l.}\) 7\(\text{Madame.}\) 8\(\text{performe.}\) 9\(\text{according.}\) 10\(\text{shall.}\) 11\(\text{no.}\) 12\(\text{vnto.}\) 13\(\text{—— require heere.}\)
my prisoners.' "Syr,' quod the duchess, 'my lyfe and my body and all suche as be here with me, I put them into the saugarde of god and of you.' Then she descendyd downe & come into the hall, where as she founde her petuous company makynge great sorow eche to other, for they knewe not if euery they shulde mete agayne. Then the duches commaundyd to open the gate, the whiche was done. Then the emperoure and all his lordys enteryd into the castell / but he wolde not go in to the hall tyl he had all the ladies and other brought out / to the entent that they shulde make no request to hym, & he ordayned a .M. knyghtes of the most aunsyentys men of his hoste / then he deleyueryd the duches and vi. ladys with her, and all the other prysoners, as well they that were within the castell as other that had ben taken before at dyuers skyrmysshes / he sent them straye to the citye of Magence / and set them all in pryson in towres and other places / but y duches was put all alone in a stronge towre, within the whiche there was a depe dongeon / and therin she was set, out of the whiche she neuer issued till she was deleyueryd by Huon her husbonde. Then the emperour, beynge in the castell of Burdeaux, sente ouer all ye countrie that all such as were alyue shuld come and do their homage to hym and take their lordys of hym / whiche they dyd. Then he made his prouostis and offycers to do iustyce both in the citye and countrie; and after that the emperour had bene there .viii. dayes he went out of the citye and rode and tooke possessyon of Blames and of Gerounde, and set there his offycers / when he had full possessyon of all the countrie he lefte kepers in the countrie / and so retournyd to the citye of 32

1 in. 2 omitted. 3 where. 4 or not. 5 immediately. 6 and. 7 untill. 8 Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. 9 vnto. 10 according to his commaundement.
Mageres, where as he was receyuyd with great ioye.\(^1\) Now let vs lene to speak of ye emperour Thyrry / and speke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, beyng in the castell\(^4\) of the Adamante in great pouerte and famine.

How there aryud at the castell of the adaman a shyp full of sarasyns, wherein was the bysshop of Melayne / and how Huon causyd them to be chrystenyd; and then he brought them into the castell, where as they founde great plente of vytyayle.

Ca. C.xvii [\(=\) Cxvi].

E haue hard here before how Huon was in the castell of the Adamant in great pouerte and famyne, where as he had been \(X\). dayes without mete and drynke excepte Appelles / and frute that grewe in the gardayne / wher by he became so febyl and \(2\) so voyde\(^2\) that he had scant\(^3\) powre to sustayne hymselfe on\(^4\) his fete / he founde there ryches ynowe, golde and syluer, apparell & iouelles, and rych beddyng/ so that he wantyd no thynge excepte vytyayl/ and as he\(^5\) walkyd in the chambr where as the tresure lay, he beheld an arch vaultyd, rychly peyntyd with gold and asyr, vnder the which stode a rych chayre, and ther in a couchyn of clothe of gold borderid with perlis and presyous stonys; Huon, who was very of walkyng, sate downe in the chayre to reste hym.

Then he began sore to muse, castynge down his loke to the erthe, and by reason that his longe mantell had swepte the powder awaye fro the pavenent, there aperyd letters of golde written on the pament; \(^6\)he red the\(^7\) tenoure of them was, who so euer rede

\(^1\) and triumph. \(^2\) weake. \(^3\) scarce. \(^4\) vppon. \(^5\) Fol. lxxxix, col. 1. \(^6\) and.
and thence learns that underneath the pavement is a cellar filled with all kinds of food.

But only such as are free from sin shall enter the cellar alive.

Huon prays to God for aid.

On the side of the chair he finds a key of gold, with an inscription written upon it.

With the key he opens a little wicket leading to the cellar.

Within all is as clear as mid-day, and Huon sees a great oven.

And near the oven are ten fairies—all young men—who were making bread.

The letter shall fynd that under this pavement there is a seller with vytyable, bothe brede, flæsche, and wyne and of all sondry metys for man or woman to ete of but the letters sayd, that who so euer\(^1\) enter into this seller, without he be with out dedly synne, as sone as he toucheth any of the mete, sodaynly he shall dye. when Huon had red al the letters he had great maruayle and fere, and thoughte in hym selde that when he 8 departyd fro Burdeaux, he was confessyd or\(^2\) his prest dyed and syn that tyme he coude not remembre any thynge that he had comyttyd that shuld be dedely syn, \(^3\) then he made his prayers to our lorde god \(^12\) deouhtly, sere wepyng and when he had endyd his prayers as he knelyd on\(^4\) his knees before the chayre, he saw hanginge on\(^4\) the syde of the chayre a lytell keye of golde; he toke it\(^5\) in his hande \\(^6\) and began to muse on the wytynghe that sayd / who so euer enter in to this castell, thoughghe they be valyaunt \\(^8\) \\(^6\) wyse / noble knyghtys, yet they shal not knowe well what to do / then he sayd to\(^7\) hym selde / rather then I shulde 20 dye for famine, it were better to dye shortly then longe to \(^8\) langushe.\(^7\) Then Hu\(^\text{on}\) recommanid hymselfe to the ayde and helpe of\(^10\) god, and toke the key and openyd a lytell wycket and drewe the dore to\(^7\) 24 hym. Then he regardyd\(^11\) into the seller, the whiche was as clere as thoughe the sonne in the myddes of the day had enterid in at \(^x\) 12 wyndowes \(^/\) he went downe a\(^14\) .vii. score grefes, then he lokyd\(^15\) on the ryght syde and sawe a great ouen with .ii. mouthes, the whiche caste out a great clernes / then he saw nere therto .x. fayre yonge men, they were all of the Fayry, .iii. of them had\(^17\) made the past for bred / and .ii. deluyeryd

---

\(^1\) should, \(^2\) before, \(^3\) and, \(^4\) vppon, \(^5\) vp, \(^6\) or, \(^7\) vnto, \(^8\) endure in this hunger and thirst. \(^9\) Fol. lxxxix. col. 2. \(^10\) almightie. \(^11\) looked downe. \(^12\) the. \(^13\) and so. \(^14\) about. \(^15\) regarded. \(^16\) hand. \(^17\) omitted.
the louys to other .ii., & they dyd set them downe on a ryche clothe of sylke / then the other .ii. men toke the louys and deliuerid them to one man by .ii. louys 4 atones / and he dyd set them into the ouen to bake / and at the other mouthe of the ouen ther was a man that drewe out the whyght louis and pastes, & before hym there was a nother yonge man that reseyuyd them 8 and put them into baskettis rychely payntyd. when Huon had aduysed them, he had great maruayle, and came and salutyd them, sayenge / 'syr, I praye to god5 sane you & all your companye' / when they hard Huon accosts them, 12 Huon speke, they gaue no maner of answere, but beheld eche other / when Huon saw that none of them wold make hym any answere / he was sore abasshyd / how be it he sayd / 'syrs, ye that be here, I coniure you in the name of the father,9 sone, and9 holy gost / & of the 10blessyd vyrgyn Mari his mother and of all sayntys / angellis and arkeangellys, and of all the courte selestyall / that ye answere me to that I do Huon speaks to them in the name of all the inhabitants of heaven. 16 of the theامر and busynes and behelde Huon, and rubbyd of the paste & mele12 of theyr handis and fyngers / then6 the mayster 13of them behelde Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye14 knowe ye ye were other Sarasyng or paynym ye shuld neuer depart12 hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god / 20 Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye14 knowe ye ye were other Sarasyng or paynym ye shuld neuer depart12 hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god / One of the fairies reproves Huon for his speech; 24 28 Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye14 knowe ye ye were other Sarasyng or paynym ye shuld neuer depart12 hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god / 32 Therfore, Huon, fayre syr, I knowe well ye haue great

1 vpon. 2 vnto. 3 which were. 4 our lord. 5 to. 6 and. 7 vnto hym. 8 and greatly troubled in his mind. 9 and of the. 10 omitted. 11 of you. 12 from. 13 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 1. 14 well. 15 that.
As long as Huon remains in the castle, he shall have any manner of food and wine he may desire.

Huon demands what people they are that inhabit this place,

but the fairy is wrathful at the question.

He tells Huon, however, that the castle was built by Oberon's father, Julius Cesar,

but he offers him food and drink in an inner chamber, richly furnished.

hunger / therefore, if ye wyl dryneke or ete, enter into yonder ryche chambre the which ye se open / where ye shal fynd the table redy set, and the pottys of syluer and the wessell of golde borderyd with precyous stonyes and perle / and the basyns of golde, with ewers with water to wasshe your handys / then downe at the table and there ye shall fynde metis and drynyks such as ye wyl wysshe for, and as longe as ye wyl tary here in this castell, ye shall haue euery daye lyke seruys or better if ye lyste / for any mete that ye wyl wysshe for ye shal haue it at your desyre, and of wyne in lyke wyse two tymys in the day, without ye wyl fast. But, syr, I reqlyre you of one thinke: that fro henseforth ye do not coniure me nor none of my company / and then ye shall haue euery thynge at your desyre.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'for henseforthe I shall not speke to you / so that by the coniuracyon that I haue coniuryd you, ye wyl shewe me what people ye be that abyde thus in this castell, and what ye call this castell, and who is lorde therof / and by whome al the ryches that is here within is kept? I wyl go ete somete, and then I pryay you shewe me.' Then they answeryd Hu on ryght fersly, and sayd / 'and, thou false and vntrewere, for to demaund any suche thynge of vs / at this tyme I shall shew you / but afterwarde / by me nor by none other of my company ye shall neuer here worde spoken.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'therof I am sory, and I hartely desyre you yet ye here after I speke to you alone that ye wyl answere me.' 'Naye, suerly,' quod he, 'that wyl I neuer do / but I shall shewe you that I haue promysyd, syn ye wyl knowe it.' Syr, knowe for trouthe that Iulius Cesar, father to the noble kyng

1 and. 2 and the cloth layd. 3 and there. 4 you. 6 pleasure. 6 of. 7 vnto. 8 heere. 9 it vnto me. 10 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. 11 Ah. 12 knight. 13 the request. 14—14 seeing you are so desirous to. 15 good and.
Ca. cxvi.] HOW CESAR CAME OF OLD TO THE CASTLE.

Oberon, causyd this castell to be made by crafte of the
fayry / the whiche castell can not be greuyd no take
parforce / so it fortunated that 1 on 2 a daye that Iulius
Ceser, after he had vanquesshed ye great pompee / he
came into Alexandre to Tholomeus kyng of Egypt, and
dyscomfytyned hym and toke fro hym all his londis to
gyte it to 3 his syster, the fayre Cleopatre, who was
quene of that londe, and after she maryed Marcus
Antoniys / and after that Iulius Ceser had this done to
refrasshe hym / he come hether withe the quene of the
preuy Isle / and broughte her the same nyght into this
castel / and there were .iii. kyngys of the lynage of
Tholomeus, who when they knew that Ceser was in
this castell / they made an army, and with many
shyppyes and galyses they came, and laid sege before this
16 castell / and laye at the sege a longe space and coude
not hurte it of the value of a 4 peny / so long they lay
here that they were sore dyspleasyd therewith / and so
they thought to depart home into theyr owne countrees /
but by reason that theyr shyppe were naylyd with Iron
naylis they coude not departe 5 hence. For the
Adamante stone, that by nature draweth 6 the Iron to 3
hym / and so they laye here so longe that they all dyed
24 myserablye for famyne and rage / for no shyppe can
depart 5 hens without it be pynnyd with nayles of
woode and not of Iron. And where as ye demaunde
fro whence comyth the treasure that is here within this
28 castell / knowe for a truthe that it was the ryches that
these thre kyngys lefte in theyr shyppyes when they
were dede 7 / the which treasure, after that they were
ded, Ceser causyd it to be brought into this castell /
32 and or 8 he dyed he delyueryd vnto me the kepynge of
this castell and treasure. And I and .xl. other of my
felawes are here condempnyd by the fayre to abyde

1 omitted, 2 vppon, 3 vnto, 4 one, 5 from, 6 Fol. c. col. 1, 7 dyed, 8 before.
Forty-one men are condemned to abide in the castle till the world's end.

After Cæsar's murder at Rome, Oberon swore never to visit the castle again.

The fairy speaker's name is Gloriadas, and the castle is called the Adamant.

After Huon had eaten and drunk, he came to a chamber door, and having found the key, he entered.

It is made of crystal painted with gold and azure. All the battles of Troy and Alexander's deeds are portrayed there.

The floor is covered with sweetly-scented flowers, and singing-birds fly about the room.

here to the end of the world. And when that tydynges came to the knowlege of kynge Oberon that his father, Iulius Cesar, was slayne and murderyd within the senat of Rome by them whom he trustyed well / kynge Oberon toke suche dyspleasure that he made promyse and assurance that he wolde never come here more & no more he hath done, for he thought ye if he shulde haue comen hether he shulde haue dyed for sorow, for the great loue that he had vnto his father Iulius Cesar. And syn ye wyll knowe my name, I am callyd Gloriadas, and this castell is callyd the Adamante. Nowe I haue shewyd you the trouthe of your demaund, and one thynge I saye to you, ye shall neuer departe hens as longe as you leue, without ye flye in the ayre as a byrde dothe flye.

 quando Huon vnderstode hym he was ryght sorowfull. And so after he hadde well eten and dronken at his owne pleasure, he toke his leue and departid, and came to a dore of a chambre, and sawe letters of gold wryten ouer the dore, wherby he had knowlege where the key was / he toke it and openyd the dore and enteryd into the chamble, and saw how all the chamble was made of Chrystall payntyd rychely with gold and Asure. And there was porturyd all the bataylys of Troye and all the dedys of Alexander. And on the pauement was spredde a brode Roses and flowres, and herby, sweete smellynge above all other sanorys of the worlde, and in the chamble there were dyuers byrdys flyenge abought the chambrle, syngynge so marauylous sweetly that it was to here them. The rychesse and beauty of that chambrle can not be dyscryuyd. Huon had marauylous great pleasure to

1 vnto. 2 Nowe. 3 the noble. 4 again, that. 5 from. 6 nowe I haue shewyd you your desire. 7 Fol. c, col. 2. 8 that. 9 portraiture of the. 10 vpon. 11 omitted. 12 great. 13 and melodie. 14 could.
Ca. cxvi.] of the splendour of the castle’s inner chambers. 413

beholde it / there he sawe a table set full of mete / and therby stode great pottys of gold garnysshyd with precyous stonyes full of wyne / there was no mete in the 4 world but that there it was redy / Huon had good apetyte to ete, for he hadde eten but lytell before / by reason of the talkynge that he had withe Gloriadas. 1Then two yenge men broughte hym a basyn of golde 8 broderyd with perles to washe his handys / & a nother brought hym a towell to wype his handys. Then Huon sate downe at a ryche table, the whiche was broderyd with prsyous stonys / the clothe that laye vpon the 12 table was of sylke rychely wroughte / Huon dyd ete his mete, for he had good apetyte there to / a goodlye yonge man caruyd vnto2 hym, and another bare his cuppe / Many folkes there was to 3do all ye 3 seruyse that 16 myghte be done4 vnto any creature leunyng in ye 6 worlde / and he spake to 5 them, but none wold answere6 one word, 7 wherwith he 8 had great dyspleasure; 8 but when he saw there was none other remedy he 9 let it pas 20 and forgat it, bycause of the swete melody that the byrdys made. oftentymes he wysshyd for10 Esclaramond his wyfe,4 and for his daughter Claret, and for Geramys / Barnard / and Rycharde, and his other companye that 24 he lefte at Burdeaux: thus Huon was seruyd in the castell of the adamant / when he had dynyd the seruauntis toke vp y e table and brought hym water & a towel to washe his handis / then he rose11 fro the table 28 and went12 into the seller, where as he saw every thynge as he had sene before / he salutyd them in passyng forby,13 but they made none answere / so he cam to 5 the greses and mountyd vp / and then wente 32 and sportyd hym fro chambe to chambe / and then

The rarest food is spread upon a table,

and Huon eats of it.

A gold basin is brought him by two young men to wash his hands.

All the services he may require are done for him by youths, to whom he speaks without reply from them.

At length he leaves the beautiful chamber;

1 and. 2 for. 3-3 hane done. 4 omitted. 5 vnto. 6 him. 7 Fol. c. back, col. 1. 8-8 was angrie and sore displeased. 9 did. 10 his wife the faire. 11 vp. 12 downe. 12 by.
and returns to the garden above. When he is hungry again, he goes again to the cellar, and the food is ready for him as before. Although he is angry because none will speak with him, his health recovers, and he wishes himself at Bordeaux battling with his enemies.

At length he sees a Spanish ship approaching the port.

Huon fears for the safety of the ship, but it dashes in among the old rotten ships, and is unhurt.

into the gardayne, wherein he took great pleasure; and when the tyme came to ete he retournd in to the seller, and so into the chambre wher as he found every thinge reday as he had done before / but he was sore displeasyd that they that seruyd hym wold not speke no word / thus he was there a hole moneth / and toke suche pleasure there that he recoveryd his helth and strengthe and beautye / greatly he was anoyed that there was no man there that wold speke one worde to hym / oftentymes he wyssbyd hymselfe at Bordeaux with a C.M. men of armis to gyue batayle to e emperour who had done hym so moche damage. And on a daye as Huon walkyd in the hall saynge his prayers, he lokyd out at a wyndow into the see / and he saw a far of a shyp with full sayle comynge to a ryue at thatporte / and they were .iiii. score marchauntys all of Spayne / they knew not what port they aruyd at.

How Huon saw a shyp aryue at the port of the Adamant.

Hen Huon saw this shyppe aryue at the porte he greatly complaynd for them, and sayd / a, good lord, what asorte of good marchauntis hane here bene lost / yf they of yonder shyppe knewe therof they wolde not aryue here by theyr wylles / and so then he sawe the shyppe com in with such a force, and it dasshed in so sore amonge the other olde shyppys, that the shyppe was nere perysshed. But the other vesselles were so old that they were

---

1 for. 2 and greatly. 3 Huon. 4 vnto. 5 at. 6 vpon. 7 of. 8 a a in text. 9 comming before with full. 10 and. 11 did arriue. 12 Fol. c. back. col. 2. 13 Castle of the. 14 hande. 15 shippes.
Ca. cxvii.]  

HOW A SHIP ARRIVES AT THE PORT.  

415

rotten, so that ther by the new shyppe was sauyd who had bene .xx. dayes in tourment in\(^1\) the see / so that the men that were within it were so\(^2\) sore tranaylyd and 4 faynte for famyne, that they were scant\(^3\) able to sustayne themselfe on\(^4\) theyr fete. ¶ When Huon sawe them aryue all wepynghe he complaynyd for them, for he sawe well they were all lost, and that they shulde 8 neuer departe\(^5\) thense / when the shyppe was a ryuyd, the marchauntis within it calllyd vpon Mahound to ayde\(^6\) them / and the mayster of the shyppe stode vp and wente \(^7\)on londe,\(^7\) and lokyd towards the castell

12 and sawe Huon where he stode lenyng in a wyndowe, wherof they had great ioye, thynkynge that they were arruyyd at a good port / supposynghe that he that they sawe there before them had bene the lorde of the 16 castell / by cause he was so marueylous rychely aparaylyd.\(^8\) Then they salutyd Huon in the name of Mahounde theyr god. ¶ When Huon hard that he knew suerlye that they were Sarasyngs, and he\(^9\) coude

20 very wel\(^10\) spake the spanysshe languag, answeryd to the mayster and said / 'frendis, ye that be here aryuyd / shewe me\(^11\) the troughte fro whenshe ye ar come, and what ye be / for be you\(^9\) sure as longe as ye lyue ye shall

24 neuer depart\(^5\) hense / and without ye haue vytylles brought with you, ye are \(^12\)here yll aryuyd.\(^12\) Then the mayster trymbelynge, sayd / 'syr, know for troughte\(^9\) I am of\(^13\) Spayne, and of\(^14\) the cytye of Luysarne, and that\(^15\) 28 that\(^16\) be here\(^16\) with me ar al marchauntis of Portyngale and come fro the cytye of Acre, and there we chargeyd our shyp with marchaundys / & we had\(^17\) good wynd till\(^18\) we were passyng the stratis of Marrocke, and that

\(^{1}\) on.  \(^{2}\) omitted.  \(^{3}\) scarce.  \(^{4}\) vpon.  \(^{5}\) from.  
\(^{6}\) and to succour.  \(^{7}\) a shoare.  \(^{8}\) and.  \(^{9}\) that.  
\(^{10}\) Fol. ci. col. 1.  \(^{11}\) (I pray you).  
\(^{12}\)—\(^{12}\) all arrived at an unfortunat place.  
\(^{13}\) the countrey.  \(^{14}\) dwelling in.  \(^{15}\) they.  
\(^{16}\)—\(^{18}\) are come hether.  \(^{17}\) a marueylous.  \(^{18}\) vntill.
who have been driven from their course.

In their storm-tossed wanderings they had rescued the bishop of Lisbon and his chaplain from shipwreck, who are on board.

The ship is without food, and all on board are starving.

we were here to our owne countre / then a tourment and a tempest toke vs & draue vs of fro our owne countre, the whiche tempest hath enduryd this .xx. dayes / so that perforce we were feyne to abandon our shyp to the see and wynd, as the shyp wold go at a venture, and at last we aruyyd by a great rocke, and there we cast ancre; and whyles we laye there we founde on the rocke bysshop of Lysbone, and his chaplayne with hym, who came thether dryuyng on a mast of a shyp that had bene perysshed, and all his company were by the fortune of the see. Then the bysshop and his chaplayne prayed me humbly to saue theyr lyues, and to take them in to my shyp, and I had pitye of them, and deluyeryd them fro the daunger, & toke them in to my shyp, and gane them mete and other thynges suche as I had, for they had bene dede by famyne and I had not geuen them mete / and yet I thynke they wylle be dede for famyne or it be to morowe at nyght / for I haue no more vytayle, nother for my selfe nor for such as be within my shyp / thus, syr, I haue answeredyd to your demaunde / and therefore, syr, I requyre you, in the honour of god & of mahound, to shew me to whom this castell doth apartayne, and who is lorde

1—1 and then suddenly a great tempest arose and,
2 the coast of. 3—3 a great distance, and this.
4—4 continewed these. 5—5 past, so extremely that.
6 perforce. 7 raging of the. 8 even. 9 but,
10—10 by good fortune we chaunced to.
11—11 presently after the we were arriued there we went vp into. 12 and there we founde.
13—13 one of his chaplaines. 14 vpon. 15 the rest of.
16 drowned. 17—17 misfortune at.
18—18 humbly prayed me to haue pite vpon them and.
19 whereupon. 20—20 compassion on.
21—21 (as one verie glad and willing to deliuer them from that daunger), I. 22 and drinke.
23 almost.
24 yf. 25—25 succoured them.
26—26 that they will not liue vntill to-morrow at night, for truly.
27 Fol. ci. col. 2. 28 I desire.
thereof, and what is the name thereof, and of this porte where as we be aryuyd.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'know for trouthe this castell and porte is the place 4 in the world most hatyd and doughtyd of paynyms and Sarasyns, and I shall shewe you the cause why / this castell is set on a rokke of Adamante stony, so that yf any shyp\(^1\) come hether by adventure\(^2\) 8 can never departe\(^3\) agayne. For the Adamant is of that nature that it draweth all wayes to\(^4\) hym the Iron / and therfore any shyp that is nevlyd or hauyn in it any Iron, and by hap\(^5\) come nere this port, by force\(^2\) 12 shall be constraynyd here to aryue.' when the mar- chanunt hard Huon / he began sore to wepe, and\(^6\) so dyd all the other and sayd / 'syr, we are sore\(^7\) abasshyd of this\(^8\) that ye haue sayde.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'all 16 that I have sayd is of trouthe; but, syrs, yf ye wyll byleue me, and to\(^9\) take on\(^10\) you chrystendome, and byleue on the faythe of Jesu chrysyste, and byleue farmely in hym, you and all suche as be in your 20 shyppe I shall bryngye you into suche a place where as ye shall haue mete and drynke at your pleasure / and apparell as ryche as ye shall demaunde / & then I shall shewe you so moche golde and rychesse 24 that ye shall be saufysyed with the beholdynge therof. Therfore yf ye wyll byleue on\(^11\) god\(^12\) ye shall haue all this that I haue sayd before, or elles ye shall all dye of rage,\(^13\) of famyne myserably.' \(\dagger\) when 28 the patron\(^14\) harde Huon, he sayde, 'syr, knowe for trouthe it is\(^15\) vii yeres paste syn I \(\text{\textit{belenyd fyrste}}\) of\(^16\) the faythe of our lorde\(^17\) Jesu chrysyst, and,\(^18\) syr, I thanke you of the curteysy that ye\(\text{\textit{offer}}\)\(^19\) me; & fro

---

\(^1\) chance to. \(^2\) it. \(^3\) from hence. \(^4\) vnto. \(^5\) chaunce. 
\(^6\) lament and. \(^7\) dismayed and. \(^8\) these words. 
\(^9\) omitted. \(^10\) vpon. \(^11\) vpon. 
\(^12\) and of his sonne Iesus Christ. \(^13\) and. \(^14\) had well. 
\(^15\) about. \(^16-16\) belenyd vpon. \(^17\) and Sauriou. 
\(^18\) Fol. ci. back, col. 1. \(^19-19\) haue shewed vnto.

**Ca. cxvii.] OF THE CONVERSION OF THE MOORISH SAILORS. 417**

**Huon informs the master that the castle is hated by Saracens**

because of the power of the adamant on which it is built.

**The newcomers are sorely distressed,**

but Huon promises to bring them safely out of danger if they will be converted to Christianity.

**The master of the ship is willing to embrace the Christian religion.**

Hoon bids him order his company to follow his example.

All are ready to comply with their master's command.

The bishop of Lisbon and his chaplain ascend the steps leading to the castle.

hensforth I submyt me to the sauegarde of 1 god and of his 2 mother, the blessyd vyrgyn Mary, & to them I commende my sowle.' 2 when Huon hard that he was ryght joyfull, and sayd, 'frind, go to thy shyp, and 4 moye 3 all thy company to byleue on 4 Iesus chryste / and shewe them what parell 5 they be in nowe / and what welthe they shall haue yf they byleue 6 on god 6 / and also shewe them what pleasure they shall fynde in 8 this plase / and yf they wyll not thou mayst wel say that they are come to theyr laste ende shortly / and the .ii. men that thou hast saudy cause them to com hether to 7 me / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'I shall sende 12 them to 7 you /' then he departyd and entryd in to his shyp / and there he shewyd his company all that he had harde of Huon, and 8 was commaundyd to shewe 9 them / when the marchantis, who were 10 paynyms, 11 16 harde theyr patron 12 in what case & parell they were in / they answeryd all 13 how 14 they were redy all 15 to do his pleasure, and to receyue chrystendome, wherof the patron was ryght joyfull. 16 Then the patron sent for ye 20 byshop and his nephe, who was his chaplayn, & sayd / 'syr, in the castell there is a lord who wyll 17 that ye 18 incontynent go 19 a lond, and go to speke with hym.' when the byshop harde the patron he rose vp 24 with mocch payne from fayntenes, by reason of famyne, and sayd how 14 he wolde gladly fulfyll his commaundement. Then he and his chapelayne departyd out of the shyp, and came to the stayres, and mountyd vp to 28 the castell / but they were fayn to reste them by the waye dyuers tymys 20 ; when they came to 7 the gate they

1 almighty. 2—2 sonne Iesus Christ. 3 moye. 4 vypon. 5 and daunger. 6—6 vypon almighty god & of his sonne Iesus Christ. 7 vynto. 8 what he. 9 say vynto. 10 all. 11 had. 12 declare. 13 all answered. 14 that. 15 readie. 16 to heare them say so. 17 prayeth you. 18 omitted. 19 will come. 20 and.
marueylyd greatly of the great beaute and ryche warke that they sawe there\(^1\) / so they \(^2\) came to \(^3\) Huon, who taryed for them at the hall dore. when they came \(^4\) nere to \(^3\) hym they humbly salutyd hym. 'Syrs,' quod Huon, 'god saue you,\(^1\) I praye you shewe me the trouthe of what countre be ye of.' 'Syr,' quod the bysshop, \(^4\) syn it please you\(^4\) to knowe I shall shewe you 8 the trouthe / syr, I was borne in the citye of Burdeaux, and am bysshop therof, & haue bene this .xx. yere / and a deuosyon toke me to go a pylgremage to the holy sepulture / but god wold not suffer vs so to do ; for 12 when we were departyd fro Lysbone, a great wynde & torment rose vpon our shyppe / the whiche was fayre and ryche, and well furnysshed with marchauntis / & so by fortune our shyp ran againste a rocke, so that 16 our shyp burst\(^5\) all to pecys / \(^6\) so that\(^6\) all our company were there\(^7\) drowny'd, excepte myselfe and my chape-
layne, who is my nephue, and so\(^7\) we .ii. sauyd our selues on\(^8\) ye\(^e\) maste of our shyp, flotynge on\(^8\) the see /
 20 and\(^7\) so\(^9\) by the grace of god / the shyp that is here beneth aryuyd by fortune at the porte nere to\(^3\) the rocke, and I prayed hym in the honour of god\(^10\) to saue our lyues / and the patron had petye\(^11\) of vs, & toke vs 24 in to his shyp, and dyd as\(^12\) moch for vs as thouge we had bene his bretherne / syr, thus I haue shewyd you owre aduenture. And, syr, I re quyre ye pardon me in that I so\(^13\) sory regarde\(^13\) you / but, syr,\(^7\) I shall shewe\(^14\) 28 the cause whye I do it / me thynke I see before me ye\(^e\) good duke Seuyn of Burdeaux, who swetely nourished me in my youthe : ye greatly resemble to\(^3\) hym, and he\(^15\) set me to soele to\(^16\) Parys, and then he sente me

---

\(^1\) and, \(^2\) Fol. ci. back. col. 2. \(^3\) vnto.
\(^4\) seeing it is your pleasure. \(^5\) burst. \(^6\) and there.
\(^7\) omitted. \(^8\) vpon. \(^9\) that.
\(^10\) and of his soune Jesus Christ. \(^11\) and compassion.
\(^12\) so. \(^13\) stearnly behold. \(^14\) you (quoth he).
\(^15\) ge in text. \(^16\) at.

---

Ca. cxvii.] OF THE BISHOP OF LISBON AND HIS CHAPLAIN. 419

The bishop replies that he was born at Bordeaux, and for twenty years was bishop of the city.

He and his chaplain left Lisbon on a pilgrimage, and were wrecked at sea.

The Saracens who are in the ship below rescued them.

The bishop notes the resemblance of Huon to Duke Sevin of Bordeaux, who was his benefactor in his youth;
to Rome, to our holy father the pope of Rome, to whom I was a kyn, and he dyd me moch good, and gave me the bysshoprych of Myllayne. duke Seuen is dede & he had ii. sones, the eldest callyd Huon, & the other Gerrarde / Huon was sent for to paris by kyng Charlemayne, & by the way there fel to hym a marveylous adventure, for he slewe the kynges sone Charlot in his own defen[ce] not knowynge that it was the s kyngys sone, wherfore the kyng banysshed hym the realme of Fraunce, and sent him to the Admerall Gaudys in Babylon to do his message, and afterwande he returnyd into Fraunce. And syn he hath had great warre with the emperoure of Almayne / more I can not saye, and I am sory that I know not where he is becum, for my father, who was brother to abbote of Cluney, longe agone norysshed Huon vp in his youth or his father duke Seuyn dyed / my father dyd teche him, wherfore I haue great sorowe at myne harte that I knowe not where he is becom synne the peas was made betwene hym and the kyng of fraunce. when Huon vnderstode the bysshop, his blud changyd, and embrasynde hym swetely, sayd / 'Syr, ye are my cosyn: I am Huon who passed the see and went to the admyrall Gaudys, and I slew hym, and led away with me his daughter, the fayre Esclaramonde / who was maryed to me by the pope / and I haue left her in the citye of Bourdeaux in great pouerte, besegyd by the emperour of Almayne / I blyue suerly she is taken by this tyme.' when the bysshop hard Huon he began sore to wepe / and Huon embrasyd and kyssed hym, and sayd, 'cosyn, ye ar happy to fynde me here / elles shortly ye had been dede' / 'syr,' quod he, 32

1 vnto. 2 hec. 3 Fol. cii. col. 1. 4 God be with him. 5 out of. 6 right. 7 good. 8 before. 9 and greefe. 10 and concluded. 11 had well heard. 12 and vnderstode him. 13 he. 14 I omitted. 15 our holy Father. 16 and miserie. 17 that. 18 or.
'I ought greatly to thanke god therof. But, syr, I
requeyre you\(^1\) gyue me som mete / for I am so sore
famysshyd that I can scant \(^2\) sustayne my selfe on
my fete.' \(^4\) 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god
I shall bryngye you to suche a place where as ye shall
haue mete and drynke at your wysshe.' \(^5\) Then Huon
toke him by the hand and brought him into the palays
and thrugh the chambres / the bysshop was \(^6\) abasshed
to se y\(^e\) great \(^7\) ryches that he saw there. Then they
went downe into the seller / the bysshope beheld the
maner of every thyng, and had \(^8\) maruayle that none of
them that he saw there wolde not speke any word /
he passed by them with Huon, and salutyd them / then
he enteryd into the ryche chambre / where as the table
was redy, and seruantis to gyue them water, and they
all .iii. sate downe / \(^9\) then Huon sayde to the bysshop,
'cosyn, I confesse you by the sacramente that ye haue
resuyyd / that ye nor your chapelayne be so hardy \(^10\) to
ete one morsell of mete yf any of you be in any dedly
syn / yf ye be incontynent, confesse you to your chap-
elayne, and he to \(^11\) you; for yf ye do otherwyse ye shal
no soner ete one morsell but incontynent ye shal dye.

\(^1\) when the bysshop \(^12\) vnderstode Huon he had
24 great maruayle, and sayd / 'cosyn, by the grace of god I
fele my selfe in good estate \(^13\) to abyde dethe \(^14\): when I
departyd fro rome, Both I and my nephu were confessed
and assoyled \(^15\) of the pope \(^15\) of all our synnes / and syn
28 we enteryd in to the see we haue done \(^16\) no synne.'
Then Huon sayd, 'cosyn, syn \(^17\) ye be bothe in this case
ye maye ete and drynke at your pleasure' / and so they

\(^1\) to.
\(^2\)\(^2\) punished with hunger and thirst, that I am neere hand
famished and can scarce.
\(^3\) vppon. \(^4\) Fol. cii. col. 2.
\(^5\) pleasure, and such as you will wish for. \(^6\) greatly.
\(^7\) omitted. \(^8\) great, \(^9\) and. \(^10\) as. \(^11\) vnto.
\(^12\) had well heard and, \(^13\) not. \(^14\) for.
\(^15\)–\(^15\) before and assoyled. \(^16\) committed. \(^17\) seeing that.
They eat and drink at their pleasure.

They marvel at the sumptuous furniture of the room, and at its sweet odours and sounds.

dyde / they had need thereof / they all there were rychely serveyd: they had every thynge as they wysshyd for / the bysshopp and his nepheue dyd ete and drynke, and they were greatly 2 abasshyd of the great rychesse 4 that they sawe there / & they were rauysshyd with the swete syngynge of the byrdys, and ye 6 herbes & frowres that were there spred abrode smellynge so swetely that they thought themselues in Paradysy / and 8 they had great maruayle to see the servuatis to serue them so pesably, but they wold neuer speke one worde / they wold gladly a demaundyd the cause why / but Huon had expressly chargyd them3 they shulde make 12 none inquery. Thus passyd theyr dyner in great ioye / & so wasshyd theyr handys and rose vp; 5 then 5 the bysshop & his chapelayne sayd grase deuoutly. Then Huon toke the bysshop by ye hand, and sayde / 16 'cosyn, 6 go we 6 vp in to the palays, and then ye shall go downe to7 your shyp / and shew them without they wyll dye incontynent / let them be chrystoryd, and dresse vp tubbes with water of the see / and halowe 20 you it, and chrysten them therin / and I shall come after you with my sworde and clene armyd / to the entent that ye refuse thus to do, I shall stryke of theyr hedys.' 'Syr,' quod the bysshop, 'I shal do 24 your pleasure.' Then Huon armyd hym, 8 and wente after the bysshop and his nephue downe to the shyp 9; when they came there they founde Elinas the master of them, who had prechyde so moche to10 the Saracyns 28 that he had converted them all excepte tenne. they bare hym in hand that they were glade to be chrystenyd / but theyr thoughtys was11 otherwyse / for they x. had concluyd in theyr corages not to renounce ye lawe of 32

1 for. 2 Fol. cii. back, col. 1. 3 that. 4 then. 5-6 from the Table and. 6-6 we will go. 7 into. 8 seyle. 9 and. 10 vnto. 11 were.
maomet for to byleue on Iesu Chryst / but they were content to be chrystenyd, to thentent that they wold not dye there for famyne. when Huon and the byshop 4 was come to them the byshop 4 sayd, 'Syrs, I requyre you all shew me your entencyon that yf with a good hart not coloured ye wyll be come chrystenid, and byleue on the lawe of Iesu chryst, & leue the false and 8 detestable law of mahounde, the which is no thyngne worth.' 'syr,' quod they al, 'shortely delyuer vs, for we 6 rage for famyne, the which so sore ouer presseth vs, 6 that we can no lenger endure nor suffer it' 7 when 12 Huon 8 hard them he lawdy 9 our lorde god, and had great ioye therof; then 7 the byshoppe and his chape- layne confessyd them al and assoylyd them, 10 and in two great vesselles he 11 chrystenyd them all. Then they all

16 cryed vpon Huon, and sayd / 'syr, for the loue of our lorde god, get 12 vs some mete / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye shall haue incontynente ynow so that ye shall be satys- fyed.' Then Huon and the byshop & his chapeleyne 20 all iii. went into the castell, and chargey whole 13 theyr neckes mete ynowe & brought it to 14 the shyp / and causyd all the marchauntis to syt down / then 7 the mete was set before them / & the wyne powryd out in 24 to cuppes / amonge other sate the .x. Sarasyns, who had rescuyyd 15 chrystendome fayntly and falsely / and at y 6 fyrst morsell that they dyd put into theyr mowthes sodaynely they dyed: the other marchauntis, when they 28 saw that, they were greatly abasshyd, and regardyd eche other, and durst not aproche to towche y 6 mete, for they 16 went all to haue 16 dyed / 'syr,' quod Huon, 1 Mahomet. 2 vpon. 3 vnto. 4 Fol. cii. back, col. 2. 5 God the Father, and of his Son our Lord and Saviour. 6—6 be so hungrie and thirstie, that we are almost famished, the which ouerpres ses vs so much. 7 and. 8 had well. 9 humbly thanked. 10 of all their sinnen. 11 omitted. 12 giue. 13 vpon. 14 into. 15 the. 16—16 had thought that they would have all. Their hunger is, however, so great that they consent to baptism, without believing in Christianity. After all are baptized they cry out for fooe. Meat and wine are set before them in the castle, but the ten who had received the rite falsely, died on tasting the first morsel. The rest of the converts fear to eat, lest they die also,
424

HUON' OF BURDEUX.

bat Huon
reassures them.

be not dismayde of 1 this;

[Ca. cxvii.

men

for these .x.

thai are

dede dyd baptyse them selues but alonely to saue theyr

&

lyues,

haue mete

to

of 4

for the loue

god

/

drynke at your ease

/

and not with 2 good

ye shall want none 5

and

/

and toke
caryed

vp

dronken

/

when

men

mete

&

thai

they were 7

drynke

8

/.

when 8

at theyr pleasure they rose

the ryches that was 9 in the shyp, and

all

it

so fell to theyr

&

they had eten

'

by Huon how

they that dyed were no trew chrysten

abasshyd
After the meal
the men carry
up the merchandise in their ship
into the castle.

and 4

therfore be not afrayde, ete

/ for

the other marchauntys vnderstode
6

harte, 3 nor

into the castell /

8

when they came

there

they had great ioy and pleasure to beholde the halles 12

and rych chambres that were there

so

:

moch gold

and 10 syluer and other ryches they sawe there thai
they had therof great maruayle.

Then they behelde

the rych beddys and chambres aparaylyd wheras they 16
They

are delighted with the

myght

lair aspect of the

so pleasaunt

8

them.

reste

Then they saw the

and dylectable 11

to

fayre gardayne
/

12 the

13

them

beholde

more

garden and the

rooms of the

they regardyd

it

the fayrer

semed

it

to

castle.

plase

was of lenthe and brede a bowe shote

And when

the owre

them down

into the seller,

where

as there

cam

for sopper / the?*

and

/ the

more. 20

Huon

after into the 14

was mete and drynke plente

&

/

led

chambre
and

after

supper they went agayne into y e palays, and laye in 24
the ryche beddys that they founde there redy, and in
the mornynge the bysshope and his chapelayne sange 15

masse before
present / and

A happy time

Huom and all the other that 'were there
when they wolde ete they wente to the 28

plase acustomyd,

&

there they founde alwayes

redy

they spend in
their

new

abode,

euery thynge that they desyryd 16

/ in

the day tyme they

e
y gardayne to sporte them / oftentymes the
bysshop prechyd to 13 to them and confessyd them. 17 32

wold be

1

in

nor abasshed
5

6
10
14

Fol.

ciii. col.

ayd in

rich.

at.

4
3 conscience.
almightie.
thinges at your wish.
8 and.
9 were.
7 greatly.
12 that.
13 vnto.
delightful!.
lfi
17 of all
or wisht for.
their sinnes.

a.

nothing, but haue

ir'

1.

text.

did sing.

n

all


Thus they were there together the space of a moneth, in great pleasure and solas. But who so euer had ioye Huon had none, for his abydynge there greatly anoyed hym / oftentymes he wolde complayne for his wyfe Esclaramonde, and for his daughter Claryet, and sayde, Dame, as oftentymys as I remembre what daunger I haue lefte you in my harte nere departeth out of my body / a cursyd emperour, thou causeth the me to suffer moch yil when I thynke that by this tyme thou hast taked my citye / my wyfe / and my chylde, and set them in thy preson / I wold ye it were the pleasure of our lorde god that they were here with me. Then I wolde neuer departe hens: and no more I shal do without it by the grace of god / A, syr, kynge Oberon, ye haue gyuen me your realme of the fayry; ye it might be your pleasure nowe to socoure me as to delyuer me hense, and to ayde me to dystroy this emperoure who hathe done me so moche yll.'

How Huon was borne by a gryffon out of the castell of the Adamant, and how he slewe the gryffon and v other yonge gryffons / and of the fountayne / of the fayre gardayne / & of the frute of the tree nere to the fountayne.

Huon perceives a great bird

Ca. Cxx.

1 all. 2 greened. 3 for. 4 the faire Ladie. 5 Madame. 6 often. 7 Fol. ciii. col. 2. 8 from. 9 noble. 10 the. 11 so much. 12 for euer were I bound to your Mightiness. 13 away. 14 vppon. 15 feyyng in text.
thetherwarde / this byrd or fowl was bygger then any
hors in the worlde / wherof he had great maruayle.
Then he saw where it cam to the same porte, and
lyghtyd in\(^1\) the maste of a great shyp, and sawe how 4
for\(^2\) the weyght of the fowle the mast had nere hand
broke asonder. Then after he sawe the fowle a lyght
downe into the shyp ; and toke with his talantys one
of the .x. men \(^3\) that\(^4\) dyd bycause they wolde not 8
bileue fermely on\(^1\) god\(^5\) / they could not putrefye, but
lay styll in the shype all hole and sounde ; then the
fowle\(^6\) lyfte hym vp into the ayre and carryed him
awaye as lyghtly as a hauke wold carry a pegyon. 12
Huon, who saw this, had great marauayle, and behelde
the Gryffon whiche way he dyd flye ; and as far of as
he myght se he sawe to his semlytude a great rocke
as whyght to the syght as Crystall / \(^7\)then he sayd to 16
hymselfe\(^8\) ' wold to god 9 I were there, I thynke it be
some place inhabytatable\(^7\) ;' then he thought to\(^10\) hym-
selwe to com thether agayne the next daye to se yf the
Gryffon wolde come agayne to fech his praye : yf he dyd 20
he thought ye he wolde be out of that\(^11\) castell, the
gryffon myght bere hym armyd so\(^12\) suerly that he
shuld do hym no hurte with his talantis / thinkynge to
lye downe armyd with his sword in his hande amponge 24
the dede men / and when the Gryffon had brought
him wher his yonge byrdes were / then to fyght with
the Gryffon / yet he thought or\(^13\) he wolde thus do he
wolde agayne se yf the Gryffon cam and held the same 28
way as he dyd before / for he thought snerly yf he
retournyd to the same plase it muste nedys be some
londe / for he thought\(^9\) it\(^14\) impossyble to get out of
that castell by any other maner of wayes. Then Huon 32

\(^1\) vpon. \(^2\) with. \(^3\) Fol. ciii. back, col. 1, 
\(^4\) that that in text. \(^5\) and of his sonne Iesu Christ. 
\(^6\) fowle in text. \(^7\) and. \(^8\) I. \(^9\) that. \(^10\) within. 
\(^11\) the. \(^12\) as. \(^13\) before. \(^14\) were a thing.
The next day the griffin returns and seizes another corpse.

Huon notices that the bird is very horrible to look upon.

It flies away to the crystal rock, which is called the rock of Alexander,

because Alexander once stayed there.

retournyd to the gardayne to the bysshop and to the other companye, and made no semblance of that he had thought to do; then he talked with them of dyuerse maters. And when the tyme came they went to to ete and drynke as they had bene acustomyd to do before. when nyght came and that Huon was in his bedde he lay and studyed of the convayauance of the 8 gryffon / desyrynge greatly for the daylight 3 to go and se yf the Gryffon returnyd to feche his praye / when day came, Huon rose and harde mas, then he went to the wyndowe and lokyd there so longe that at the laste

12 he sawe a farre of where the Gryffon came flyynge fro the same place as he hadde done the day before / and came and sate downe on the same maste, beholde the dede men that laye vnder hym, whiche of them he myght

16 take to his pray / Huon behelde hym and sawe howe he was a crewell fowle. His becke was marauylously greate / his eyen as great as a basyn, and more redder than the mouthe of a fornays / and his talantys

20 so great and so longe that ferfull it was to beholde hym / and then at last he alyghtyd downe into the shyp and toke one of the dede men in his talantis, and so mountyd into the ayre / and flewe the same

24 way as he dyd the day before. Huon behelde hym well, and sawe howe he flewe to the whyght rocke. This rocke was callyd the rocke of Alexander / for when Alexander passyd the desertys of Inde, and

28 wente to speke with the trees of the sonne / and of the mone / he came to ye same rocke, and at his returne he baynyd hym in a fountayne nere to the rocke, and there he taryd a sartayne space and sawe there many

32 thynges. Now let vs leue spekynge of this rocke and retoune to Huon / who fyxed his corage / that he

1 vtto. 2 and. 3 Fol. ciili. back. col. 2. 4 her. 5 service and. 6 she. 7 vpon. 8 necke. 9 bodys. 10 the Griffen. 11 that. 12 bathed.
determinynid to be borne thens by the Gryffon, and sayde to hymselfe that he had rather adventure dethe then to abyde any lenger there / for he hadde so great desire to se his wyfe and his child that he put fro hym all fere of dethe.

W when Huon sawe that the Gryffon was gone with his praye, he went to the bysshope and his company, and shewyd them all that he had sene and thought to do. when they hard Huon they began greatly to wepe, and wrange theyr handys, and tare theyr here, makynge the greatest sorowe of the worlde, and cryed out and sayd / 'a, cosyn,' quod the bysshope, 'by ye grace of god ye shall neuer take on you suche a folye / ye ought not to seke for your owne dethe soner then it is the pleasure of god that your owre be come; syr, for goddes sake forsake vs / but tary here with vs.' 'Frendys,' quod Huon, 'I remembre the daunger that I lefte my wyfe, and my chylde, and my citye, and lordis, and burgesses, and comunaltye / my harte is so sorowfull therof, that it nere 20 hande sleeth me / ye shall abyde here in the sauegarde of our lord god / and I wyll take the adventure that god wyll sende me, and I praye you speke no more to me in this mater.' when they saw they coude not tourne Huon fro his enterpryse, the sorow that they made no man can declare / that nyght they passid in great sorowe and doloure / tyl the next mornynge that Huon arose. Then he came to the bysshope, and was confessyd and receuyd his maker / then he dynydel wel with his company / then after he went & armyd hym in dobyll armure and with mayle on his

\[1\] within. 2 a. 3 her. 4 Fol. C.iii. col. 1. 5 unto. 6 and. 7 all had. 8 pitifully. 9 did. 10 and greefe. 11 in. 12 vpon. 13 omitted. 14 when. 15 and so agreed. 16 thereat. 17 to. 18 for, by the grace of god I will venture it. 19 that. 20 vntill. 21-21 at his hand. 22 dinner. 23 himselfe.
leggys, and helme on his hede, and gyerte his sword about hym, and when he was redy, and sawe it was tyme to departe, he toke his lene of the bysshoppe and 4 of all the other, and commaundyd 3 them 4 to 4 god; when the good bysshoppe saw his departure he made great sorowe, and so dyde all the other / but none of them durste speke any more to hym / the bysshoppe 8 embasyd hym at his departynge, and sayde, 'cosyn, in 6 the 7 sauegarde of 8 our lorde 8 Iesu chryste I commend ye, and that he may of his grace preserue you fro all your enemyes.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the 12 great desyre that I have to ayde and socourre her whome I lefte in great pouertye and dought of her lyfe constraynethe me thus to departe / for ye I go not by this m[e]nes I must ever abyde here, and then 9 shall 16 I false her my promyse / and I wyll kepe my faythe and 9 promys. Thus I recommend ye to 5 god.'10 Then he departyd fro them and passyd out of the gate, and went downe the stayres and went in to the shyppe, 20 and then he lokyd into the see and sawe where the gryffon was comyng / 10 when he parseyued that he laye downe amonge the ded men withè his sword nakyd in his hande, and helde it on his thye by cause it shulde 24 not fall in the see ; and as sone as he was layd grouslynge12 a monge the ded men, the Gryffon came and 13 restyd on a 13 shyp maste as he 14 was acustomyd to do / and he 14 was so heuy 15 that the mast 16 bent nye 16 28 asonder. when Huon saw that, he was in great fere, and callyd vp on our lorde Iesu chryste for ayde and

He arms himself fully in strong armour, and takes leave of his companions.

Huon passes out of the gate of the castle, and down the steps, and into the ship.
The griffin approaches, and Huon lies down among the dead men with his sword drawn.
He trembles for fear,

1 vppon. 2 that. 3 commended. 4-4 all into the sauegarde of almightie. 5 vnto. 6 to. 7 Fol. C.iii. col. 2. 8-8 almightie god and of his Sonne our Lord and Saviour. 9-9 I shall breake my promise vnto her, but by the grace of god I will keape my faithfull. 10 and. 11 vpou. 12 crewling. 13-13 alighted vpon the. 11 she. 15 and so great. 16-16 was neere hand broken.
souere, and to saue hym fro ye fell\(^1\) Gryffon / & the Gryffon, lokyng for his\(^2\) pray, saw where Huon lay armyd / wherby he semyd more greater then any of the other dede men / the Gryffon desyryd to haue hym \(^4\) to his\(^2\) nest to gyue hym to\(^3\) his\(^2\) yonge byrdys / \(^4\) so he \(^4\) cam downe into the shyppe and toke Huon in his\(^2\) clees, and straynyd hym so faste by bothe sydes \(that\) his clees enteryd into the fleshe for all his harnays,\(^5\) so \(8\) that the blode issued out, and Huon was in that dystresse that all his body trymbelyd, & petously he callyd vpon our lorde god for ayde\(^6\) / but he durst not stre for any payne that he felt, \(^7\) the Gryffon\(^8\) bare hym \(^12\) so hye and so far that in lesse then thre owres he\(^9\) bare hym to ye whythg rocke / and there layde hym downe, and for trauayle that the Gryffon had he\(^10\) flew downe the rocke to a fountayne to drynke / the whiche \(^16\) fountayne was of such great vertue that the bountye therof coude not be descruyyd / and Huon, who lay on\(^11\) the rocke was sore wery for faynt, for the blode that he had losed / \(^12\) thought in\(^13\) hymselfe that ye euer \(^20\) he wolde scape fro that daunger it was tyme for hym\(^14\) to shewe then\(^15\) his prowes / then he rose vp and lokyd rounde abought hym / and sawe howe\(^16\) there was nere hym a fayre foreste / then he prayed\(^3\) our lorde god to 24 ayd\(^6\) hym to depart\(^17\) thens in sauegard, and that he myght ones\(^15\) retournye into his owne countre to se hys wyfe and chyld, whome he so well louid, then anone he sawe ye\(^e\) Gryffon / who had sene Huon ryse vp; then \(^28\) she came withe her mouthe open to haue deuowryd Huon, who\(^19\) was repenisshed with hye prowes,\(^1\) came agaynste the Gryffon who had her pawes redy open to haue gryppyd Huon / \(^19\) who was light and quycke, gaue 32

\(^1\) cruel. \(^2\) her. \(^3\) vnto. \(^4\) and then she. 
\(^5\) armery. \(^6\) and succour. \(^7\) Fol. C.iii. back, col. 1. 
\(^8\) did. \(^9\) she did. \(^10\) she. \(^11\) vpon. \(^12\) he. 
\(^13\) within. \(^14\) then. \(^15\) omitted. \(^16\) that. 
\(^17\) from. \(^18\) agaynste. \(^19\) but he.
the Gryffon suche a stroke with his sworde that he 
strike of one of his\(^1\) fete by the ioynte, and so the 
gryffon fell to the erth and gaue suche a crye that the 
4 yonge Gryffons, beynge in theyr neste in the foreste, 
harde the crye and knewe wel that it was the voyes of 
theyr mother / father had they none, for he was slayne 
but a lytell before by a kynge of perce with his 
8 archers / bycause the Gryffon had slayne the kyngrys 
horse for mete for his yong.\(^2\) Thus when they hard 
the crye of theyr mother they rose vp in to the ayre, 
they were \(\text{v.}\) in noumbre; they came all atons with 
12 open wyngis \(\text{vpon}\) Huon / \(\text{s}\)when he \(\text{4}\) sawe them\(^5\) all \(\text{v.}\) 
comyngye on\(^6\) hym he had great fere / he strake the 
fyrste on\(^6\) the necke\(^7\) that he strake of the hede clene 
frø the body. Then the seconde seysyd Huon by the 
16 mayle, that yf he had not styken of his\(^1\) legge he had 
borne hym vp intó the ayre / but Huon gaue hym 
suche a stroke that the legge hangyd styll at the lap of 
his\(^8\) mayle, then\(^3\) he toke it of with his hande and 
20 caste it to the erthe / and with another stroke he slewe 
that Gryffon / \(\text{3}\)Then came the thyrde and gaue Huon 
suche a buffet with his wyngis that made Huon to 
knele downe on\(^6\) one of his knees / Then Huon strake 
24 that Gryffon suche a stroke on the wyngge / that it fell 
clene fro the body. And the fourthe he strake of his 
legges / and with another\(^9\) strake of his hed, and also 
then he slewe the other with the one wyngge / then 
28 came the fyfte the Gryffon, who was bygger then any of 
the other Gryffons / \(\text{3}\)then Huon strake at hym, and 
the Gryffon resyd\(^10\) vp his fete and spredde abrode his 
wyngis, and gaue Huon suche a recountre that the noble 
32 kunyghte was styeken to the erthe; when Huon felte 
ymselfe hurte and laye on\(^6\) the erthe, he callyd vp on 

\(^1\) her.  \(^2\) ones.  \(^3\) and.  \(^4\) Fol. C.iii. back, col. 2. 
\(^5\) omitted.  \(^6\) \(\text{vpon}\).  \(^7\) in such sort.  \(^8\) the. 
\(^9\) stroake.  \(^10\) reared.
god for ayd\(^1\) / for he thought\(^2\) he shuld neuer hane rysen more / & wysshyd hym selfe at that tyme that he had taried styl in the castell of the Adamante with his company, who for sorowe that they had when Huon went into the shyppe / they durst not abyde the comyng of the gryffon / but went and dyd hyde them selues in the castell. And Huon, who was sore woundyd withe thys fyfte gryffon, rose vp as well as he myghte / and came to the Gryffon, who was redy to dystroye hym with his becke and naylys. Then Huon, lyke a vertuous\(^3\) hardyye knyghte\(^4\) toke corage, and lyf vp his sword Avith hothe his handys, and strake the Gryffon such a stroke on\(^5\) the hede that he claue it to the hraynes, so the Gryffon fell downe dede to the erthe.

\(\star\) Howe Huon foughnte with the great gryffon \(16\) & slew her. C. c.xxi.

Hen Huon saw that he had slayne the .v. yonge gryffons he thonkyd oure lorde god for the grase that he had 20 sent hym as to ouercome suche .v. terryble beastis.\(^6\) then he sate downe to reste hym, and layd his sword by hym, thynkynge then to be in a suerty\(^7\) / but it was not longe but that 24 the great Gryffon, who had brought hym fro the castel,\(^8\) came on\(^5\) hym with thre fete, and betynge with his wyngis / \(^9\) when she saw her yonge\(^10\) slayne, she cast out a great cry so that all the valey range therof / when 28 Huon sawe her comynge he was in great fere, for he was sore wery with trauayle and losse of blode that it wasayne to sustayne hynmselfe / howbeit he sawe well\(^11\) it

\(1\) and succour. \(2\) that. \(3\) and a. \(4\) Fol. C.v. col. 1. \(5\) vpon. \(6\) foules. \(7-7\) that they had beene all slaine. \(8\) of the Adamant. \(9\) and. \(10\) ones. \(11\) that.
was\(^1\) nede to defende hymselfe /\(^2\) then he came to the Gryffon to haue stryken her, but he coude not, the gryffon was so nere hym betyng with her wyngis so 4 fersly that Huon fell to the erthe, and his sworde fell out of his handys, wherof he had great fere / for he thought hymselfe in al hys lyfe neuer\(^3\) so nere dethe as he was then / he callyd then rytgh petuously for 8 aye\(^4\) of our lorde Iesu chryste / and the Gryffon\(^5\) bet hym merueylusly with her beke / wyngis / and talouns / but the doble\(^6\) cotys of mayle that he had on were 7 so strong that the gryffon coude not breke them / but yf 12 the gryffon had not lost before one of \(^8\) his fete,\(^8\) and loste so moche blod as he\(^9\) had done, Huon coude neuer a scapyd without dethe / the Gryffon so sore defowlyd and bet hym that he coud not 10 ryse vp.\(^11\) Then he 16 rememberyd hym selfe how\(^12\) he had by his syde a rych knyfe, the whyche he brought\(^13\) fro the castell of the Adamant / he drew it out and ther with strake the Gryffon on\(^14\) the brest .\(^vi\). great strokys, euery stroke as 20 depe as the knyfe wold go / and as his hap\(^15\) was this knyfe was of\(^16\) two fote longe,\(^17\) and therwith \(^y\) Gryffon fell downe ded / then Huon arose and dyde\(^18\) of his helme, and lyfte vp his handis to\(^19\) the\(^17\) heuen & thankyd\(^20\) 24 god of his vyctory /\(^2\) he was\(^21\) sore traauyllyd and sore\(^17\) chargyd with blod and swete /\(^12\) he dyd\(^18\) of his helme, and behelde rounde abouth hym, and coude se no thynge to trowble hym ; when he had taryd there a 28 sartayne tyme he rose vp & lokyd downe the rocke, then\(^2\) he sawe a fountayne in a fayre medowe / then he went downe and came thether / then\(^2\) he sawe the fountayne so fayre and clere that he had great maruayle

Huon fears that he shall be killed by the monster.

Huon draws a knife that he had brought with him from the castle, and strikes the bird six times in the breast, so that it died.

Huon is weary with the fight,

and happily finds a clear fountain at hand.

\(^1\) great.\(^2\) and.\(^3\) neuer\(^4\) after himselfe.\(^5\) did.\(^6\) noble.\(^7\) Fol. C.v. col. 2.\(^8\)--8 her Legges.\(^9\) she.\(^10\) in no wise.\(^11\) againe.\(^12\) that.\(^13\) with him.\(^14\) vpon.\(^15\) fortune.\(^16\) length.\(^17\) omitted.\(^18\) put.\(^19\) vnto.\(^20\) our lord.\(^21\) so.

CHARL. ROM. VIII. F F
White jasper with flowers of fine gold and azure forms its masonry,

and at its bottom is gravel of precious stones.

Huon drinks the water.

All his wounds heal at the first draught, for the fountain was the fountain of youth, which cures all infirmities.

Huon bathes in the fountain.

At its side grew an apple-tree,

and Huon tastes its fruit.

Beyond he sees an orchard,

therof / he saw the masonrye\(^1\) therof ryche, all of whight Jasper wroughte rychely with flowers of fyne golde and Asure /\(^2\)when he sawe the water so fayre he hade great desyre to drynke therof / then he dyd of 4 one of his dobyll armure to be the more lyghter, and so aprochyd to\(^3\) the fountayne / and sawe the grauell in the botome all of presyous stones /\(^2\)then he dyde\(^4\) of his helme and dranke of the water his fyll, and he had 8 no soner dronke therof but incontynent he was hole of all his wounadys, and as fresshe and lusty as he was when he came fro the castell of the Ada\(^5\)mant, wherof he\(^6\) thankyd our lorde\(^7\) Iesu chryste. This fountayne 12 was callyd the fountayne of youth, the whiche was of suche vertue that what so euer sykenes a man or woman had, yf they baynyd them in the strenge of that fountayne they shulde be hole of all infyrmytyes. 16 Then Huon vnarmyd hym and dyd\(^4\) of all his clothes, and bathyd hymselfe in the strenge to put away the blode and swete that his body was colouryd with all /\(^2\)when he was clene wasshyd, then he armyd hym\(^8\) 20 agayne with one of his harnes,\(^9\) and lefte\(^10\) the other / by this fountayne there grewe an appell tree chargyd with leuys and frute / the fayreste that myght be founde / when Huon sawe the tree chargyd with so 24 fayre frute he rose on\(^11\) his fete and aprochyd to\(^3\) the tree,\(^12\) and toke therof a fayre apple and a great, & dyd ete therof his fyll, for the apple was great /\(^2\)he thoughte\(^13\) he never dyd ete before of suche a frute / 28 ' a, good lorde,' quod he, 'I ought greatly to laude & prayse the, synne\(^14\) thou haste\(^15\) replenysshyd me this day with such a fountayne and suche frute.' Then he lokid on\(^11\) his ryght hande and sawe a great orcheyarde 32

\(^1\) workemanship. \(^2\) aud. \(^3\) unto. \(^4\) put. 
\(^5\) Pol. C.v. back, col. 1. \(^6\) most humbly. \(^7\) most Saviour. 
\(^8\) selfe. \(^9\) armours. \(^10\) off. \(^11\) vppon. 
\(^12\) tre in text. \(^13\) that. \(^14\) seeing. \(^15\) thus.
full of trees, berynge good frute of dyuers sortys, *that*
great beaute it was to beholde them. This gardayne
was so fayre that it seynyd rather a paradise then a
4 thyng terrestryall. For out of this gardayne there
issuyd suche a smell and odoure *that* Huon thought
that all the bawline and spycery of the worlde coude
not cast out so swete a smell. *'A, good lorde,' quod*
8 Huon, 'what place is this that I am in / for yf the
Gryffon had not bene here I wold haue thought I had
bene in paradyse / good lorde, ayde and socoure me
so that I be not loste nor dede.'

12 *How an aungell aperyd to* Huon and
commandyd hym to gather thre apples of
the tree by the fountayne, and no more;
and how the aungell shewyd hym tidinges
of his wyfe Esclaramonde, and of his
doughter Clariet / and shewed hym the
wayne that he shulde go thens. Ca. C.xxii.

Hus as ye haue harde Huon deuysyd
by hymselfe at the fountayne, then he
went agayne to the tre, and sayd
howe he wolde ete of that frute, and
gatheryd thereof as moche as shulde
suffyce hym for .vi. dayes / and in
that space he trustyd to come to some place where as
he shulde haue mete suffycyente. Thus as he was
goynge to the tre warde, sodaynely there aperyd to
hym a lyght shynyngge, that he thought he was
rauysshed in the heuen amonge the aungellys / ther-
with he harde a voyse angelicall, that sayde / *'Huon,

1 in.  2 that.  3 God, I pray thee to.
4-4 in all mine affaires and enterprizes, and at this time.
5 Fol. C.v. back, col. 2.  6 vnto.  7 the faire.  8 from.
9 towards.  10 omitted.
knowe for trouth that our lord God commaundyth the not to be so hardly as to gather anye more frute of that tre / excepte thre apples, the which God is well content that thou shalt gather, and no more / here 4 after they shal serva the wel / so that thou do kepe them clenely & worthely as they ought to be kepte / it shall not be longe or 1 thou shalt haue great neede of them / the frute of this tree is callyd the frute of 8 youthe / it hath suche vertue that yf a man of 3.iii. score or of a 1. yeres of age do ete therof, he shall become agayne as yonge as he was at the age of 3.xxx. 2yeres. In yonder gardayne thou mayst go and 12 gather of the frute there 3 at thy pleasure, and ete what thou lyste. But ete no more of this tre 4 that thou haste eten of, 5 therfore beware 6 gather no more therof excepte the sayde thre appelles 7 knowe for 16 trouth 8 9 yf thou breke my commaundemente / the frute shall be derely sold to the. 'Syn,' quod Huon, 'lawde and prayse be to our lord God my creature, when he shewethe his grace to me that am so poner a 20 synner, and that he wil thus vyset me / I shall neuer consent to breke his commaundemente, I haue rather dye. 10 My body and my soule I recommende to his good grace. But thou, the frende 11 of God, I requyre 24 the shewa me howe dothe my wyfe Esclaremond and Claryet my daughter, whome I haue lefte in my citye of Burdeux, besieged by the Emperoroure Therry of Almayne; I haue great fere that they be famysshed 28 within the citye, and my lordis and compaynye that I lefte there with her slayne and dede.' 'Frynde,' quod the voyse, 'know for sartayne that the citye of Burdeux is taken, and all thy men dede or taken, and 32 thy wyfe in pryson in the great tour of Magence,
where as the emperoure Therry kepeth her straitly, & thy daughter Claryet is at Cluny in ye abbey, wher as she is wel seruyd / and the abbot, who hathe always 4 lousyd the, he hathe her in his kepynge / and she is as well cherysyd there1 as she were his proper2 daughter.3

'Syr,' quod Huon, 'and whye was she brought thether?' 'Huon,' quod the voice, 'knowe well that Barnarde thy 8 cosyne garmayne brought her thether.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'I praye you3 shewe me yf Gerames / & Rychard4 be alyue or not?' 'Frend,' quod ye5 voyce, 'at ye6 takyng of ye7 citye they were slayne by the

12 Emperour.' when Huon6 harde those petyfull tydyingis he began tenderly to wepe, complaynynge for7 Esclaramonde his wyfe and for the dethe of8 olde Gerames, and sayld, 'frynde, I requyre you3 shewe me yf euer I shall 16 scape, consyderynge that I am here closyd in with the see, the which goethe rounde a boughte this rocke / and I se no wyae to go out there of / Gladly I wolde knowe yf euer I shall retornne into my countre to se my wyfe 20 & daughter, who ar in great9 daunger.' 'Huon,' quod the voyce / 'comforte thy selfe / then10 shalt thou11 see12 ageyne thy wyfe esclaramond, and thy chylde13 Claryet, and thy good citye of Burdeaux / but or14 thou15 come 24 there thou shaltse suffer moche payne and be in great fere16 / the emperour Tharry hathe conqueryd all thy countre and Geronnell is vnder his obeyaunce with the citye of Burdeaux.' Then Huon sware and made 28 promyse that yf our lorde Iesu chryst wyll17 gyne hym that8 grace that he maye18 retornne into his2 countre, that suerly he wolde sle the emperoure Tharry, what so euer ende come therof. 'Messanger of god, I requyre 32 you3 shewe me by what maner of wyae I maye passe

Huon weeps over the death of Gerames, and asks whether he may escape from the rock whereon he stands.

The angel replies that he shall only rejoin his wife and child after he has suffered more ill fortune.
The angel bids Huon gather three apples, and follow a path leading to some clear water, where a ship awaits him.

He is to let the ship go what course it will.

The angel departs, bidding Huon be faithful to Jesus Christ.

out of this rocke? 'Huon,' quod the voyse, 'go to the sayde tree and gather the thre apples as I haue sayde to the before, and kepe them well and clenly / for thou shalt hereafter haue so moche profyghte by them that at the ende thou shalt come to thy desyre and wyll, and shalt be out of thy great Payne, troubyll, & thoughte. Take this lytell pathe that thou seeste here vpon thy ryghte hande, and so go thou S downe to the fote of the rocke, and then thou shalt fynde a fayre cler water, & theron a fayre shyppe, enter in to it; fyrst go into the gardayne and gather frute to servne the as long as thou shalt be in the shyppe/ then lose the shyppe fro the chayne that it is tyed by / and let the shyppe go whether as it wyll tyll it come to the porte where as thou shalt arye. But be thou sure or thou come there thou shalt be in as great fere as euer thou wert in all thy lyfe dayes, nor thou wert neuer in so great parell / I commaunde the 10 to the sauge-garde of our lorde Iesu chryste, I go my waye and leue the here.' Then Huon knelyd downe and held vp his 20 handis, and sayd, 'a, the very messenger of god, I requeyre the haue me recomaundyd to my creature' /

'Huon,' quod the voyse, 'be of good confort, for as long as thou arte trewe and faythefull thou shalt haue ayde and socoure of our lorde Iesu Chryst, and shalt attayne to thy desyres / but or thou come thyerto thou shalt suffer moche Payne and fere. But after, as I haue sayde, thou shalt haue welthe younge and 28 exalte all thy fryndys.' Huon was glad of that the voyce had sayd hym / but he was in great dyspleasur in that his wyfe Esclaramond was prysoner in the citye of Magence, and of the dethe of Gerames and of 32
other his lordis and seruauntys / and sayd to hymselfe, 'yf he maye the emperoure shall derely abye that bargayne.' Then Huon went to the gardayne and gathered frute to bere into the shyppe. 2Then he wente to the fountayne, where as the tree of youthe was therby / and then by the commandement of the Aungell he gathered thre apples / and trussyd them sauely; and then he dranke of the fountayne at his pleasure. Then he departyd and toke the litell pathe, the whiche was betwene the gardayne and the streme that 4issuyd out of the fountayne / the whyche streme ran and fell into 12 the great ryuer where as the shyppe laye; and when he was enteryd into this streme he sawe yᵉ goodlyest presyous stonyes that euer he sawe, they were so fayre and so rych that the value 5 coude not be estemyd, the grauell of the streme that issuyd out of the fountayne were all precyous stonyes, and they cast such lyght that al the mountayne and rokke dyd shyne therof, wherof Huon had great maruayle. Also he sawe the shyppe so fayre that he was therof 6 abasshyd / the ryuer ioynyd to the ryche gardayne where as Huon had gathered fryte of xiiii. sortys, the which he put into the shyppe / 2then recommaundynge hymselfe to our lord 7

Huo. 439
8
Huon gathers the three apples.

He follows the path, which runs by a stream full of precious stones.

At the end of it

The ship passes very rapidly down a great river, called Dyplayre.

and enters within it.

I. 2 and. 3 there. 4 Fol. C.vi. back, col. 2.
5 of them. 6 greatly dismayed and. 7 and Saviour.
8 upon. 9 Lady. 28 Thus as ye haue harde Huon saylyd al alonge in this shyp on the ryuer of Dyplayre / ryght desyrous to brynge out of danger his wyfe the fayre Esclaramond.
Huon of Burdeaux.

Huon's ship was richly bedecked with gold and ivory. A cabin within it was roofed with gold and precious stones, which shone brightly through the night.

Huon sailed alone between rocks, and saw no town nor human being.

After three days' journeying, the rocks ahead appear to close above him and form a dark passage.

Huon enters the passage, where all is black. The wind rises, and the air grows cold.

Howe Huon of Burdeaux sayld in a ryche shyp, and of the perelous goulfe that he passed by, and how he aryued at the porte of the great citye of Thauris in Perse.

Huon as ye haue hard was Huon on this ryche ryuer in his shyp, the whiche was broderyd with whyght Iwory & naylyd with nayles of fyne gold / & the fore castell of whyght crystal medelyd with rych cassydony, & therin a chambre, the selynge with sterres of gold & presyous stones / the whiche gaue suche clerenesse in the darke nyght as thoughe it hadde bene fayre day / and the bed that Huon laye on / there is no humayne tongue can esteme the valewe therof / therin lay Huon euery nyghte, and in the daye abrode in the shyppe / it was noyfull to hym for that he was alone without company / & sayld every daye betwene two rockys without syght of any towne or vyllage, or man or woman / when he had bene in this shyppe thre dayes and thre nyghtis he behelde before hym and sawe howe two rockis began to draw together and to couer the ryuer, and it semyd to his syght that the shyppe shulde enter into a darkenes; howbeit, the ryuer ener styll kepte his brede / but the nerer he came ye darker the passage semyd; and when the shyppe came nere it she went so fast that Huon thoughte no byrde in the worlde coud flye so fast / then it began to be sore blacke and darke, and ye wynde rose, and haylyd so extremely that he thought the shyppe shulde perysshe / and Huon was so colde that he wyst not how to get

1 of. 2 yppon. 3 wrought. 4 Fol. cvii. col. 1. 5 came. 6 yrkesome. 7 omitted. 8 vnto. 9 that. 10 and. 11 it. 12-12 haue perished.
any hete. Then he hard petuou\textsuperscript{1} voysey spekyng dyners languages, cursynge the tyme that euer they were borne. Then he harde thonder and saw lyghtenyng 4 so often / that certaynely he thoughte to\textsuperscript{2} be perysshed and\textsuperscript{3} lost.\textsuperscript{3} Thus Huon was in this shyppe in great fere of lesynge of his lyfe / \textsuperscript{4}when he was hungerid then he dyd ete of the frute that he had brought 8 thether / then agayne he was comfortyd in that the aungel had sayd to\textsuperscript{5} hym that he shuld se againe his wyfe\textsuperscript{6} & his doughter Claryet. when he had bene in this case the space of thre dayes he sate downe on\textsuperscript{7} the 12 see bourde of the shyppe / \textsuperscript{4}then he harde suche a brute so great and so hor\textsuperscript{8}ryble that yf the thonder had fallen fro the heuen, and that all the ryuers of\textsuperscript{9} the world had fallen downe fro the rockes / \textsuperscript{10}coold not hau made so 16 hydouse anoyse / as the tempest made\textsuperscript{11} of the Goulfe the whiche is betwene the see of perse and y\textsuperscript{e} great see occyan: it was neuer hard that euer any shyp or galey scapyd that way without perysshynge / when 20 Huon saw hymselfe in that daunger denouently he callyd to\textsuperscript{7} our lorde god, and sayde / 'a, \textsuperscript{12}very god,'\textsuperscript{12} nowe I see and parseyue that without\textsuperscript{13} re cuer\textsuperscript{13} I am loste and come to my end / but syn\textsuperscript{14} it is your pleasure 24 and wynde\textsuperscript{1} that I shall peryssh, here I requyre\textsuperscript{15} your benyvolent grace to accept my sowle in to your\textsuperscript{16} handys.' Huon had no soner spoken those wordys but a wynde arose with so great a tempest that\textsuperscript{17} Huon 28 went\textsuperscript{17} then suerly to haue bene\textsuperscript{18} loste.\textsuperscript{18} Then he saw comynge agaynst hym great barres of Iron red hote, that fell downe fro\textsuperscript{19} alofte\textsuperscript{10} in to the ryuer before Huon, in suche wyse\textsuperscript{20} that when they fell into the water, by

\textsuperscript{1} pitifull. \textsuperscript{2} hau bene. \textsuperscript{3} and neuer to haue escaped out of that danger. \textsuperscript{4} and, \textsuperscript{5} vuto. \textsuperscript{6} Escleremond. \textsuperscript{7} vpon. \textsuperscript{8} Fol. cvii. col. 2. \textsuperscript{9} in. \textsuperscript{10} they. \textsuperscript{11} made after Goulfe. \textsuperscript{12} good lord, \textsuperscript{13} thy ayd and succour. \textsuperscript{14} seeing. \textsuperscript{15} beseech. \textsuperscript{16} fauourable. \textsuperscript{17} hee thought. \textsuperscript{18} cast away. \textsuperscript{19} on high. \textsuperscript{20} sorte.
Thus before.

The ship ran aground in five feet of water.

Huon draws the ship to land, and leaps out.

He finds the gravel to be of precious stones, and casts some of them into his ship;

they shine as brightly as ten torches.

Huon launches his vessel again, and travels on in mid stream as quickly as a bird.

He has no food

reason of the hete of the barres, trowbelyd so the water that ferfull it was to beholde. Thus was Huon a great space / or he coude passe the Goulfe, the whiche was so perelous / and the shyppe wente so sore by force of the wynde / so that the shyppe wente out of the myddes of the streme, and so was nere to the lond so that the shyppe coude go no further.

¶ when Huon sawe and parsayuyd that the shyppe was vpon the grounde, he thought then suery to haue bene drownyd. Then he toke an ancre and put it into the water to knowe how manye fote the water was of deppenesse. Then he founde it but v. fote. Then he toke one of his ancre and caste it a londe & then drewe by the corde tyll the shyppe came nere to the banke syde / then he Issued out of the shyppe and lepte a londe / then he saw sodaynely a bought hym a great clerenes wherof he was abasshed, and wyst not what to thynke / then he sawe before hym all the grauell in the water were medelyd with presyous stones / when Huon sawe that / he toke a scope and cast into the shyppe so moche of those presyous stonyes that it gaue as great a light as thoughe x. torchys hade bene brynnynge / so much of this grauell Huon dyd cast into the shyppe that he was wery of laboure / and when he saw the shyp suffycyently chargyd / then he enteryd agayne and drew vp the ancre, and trauelyd so sore that he broughte agayne the shyppe into the myddis of the streme, then the shyppe went so faste that a byrd coude not haue folowid it. Thus he was x. dayes or he coude passe that Goulfe / thus day and nyght he saylid, and great fere and sore opressyd for famyne, for he had no thynge to etc but frente, so

---

1 it.  2 was after Huon.  3 before.  4 omitted.
5 was grounded and.  6 And.  7 Fol. evii. back, col. 1.
8 shoare.  9 untill.  10 greatly dismayed and.  11 that.
12 mingled.  13 before.  14 with.
15—15 through hunger and thirst.  16 nor drinke.
that therby he was waxed so feble that he cou'd scant sustayne hymselfe on his fete / and on the xi. daye at the sonne rysynge he sawe apere the clerenes of the day lyght, and then he was out of the darkenes & enteryd into the see of perse, the whiche was so plesaunt and peasable that great pleasure it was to beholde it / then ye son rose and spred abrode his 8 stremis vpon the see, wherof Huon was so ioyfull / as thoughe he had neuer felt payne nor fere. Then a fare of before hym he sawe apere a great citye / and in the hauen ther of there were so many shyppes and 12 galyes that theyr mastys semyd to be a great forest, wherof Huon had such ioy at his harte that he kneled downe lyftynge vp his handis to the heuen, thankynge our lorde god that he hadde sayd hym fro this perelous Goulfe. This citye was called ye great citye of Thauris in Perse / and lorde therof was a pusaunte admyrall / who had made to be cryed and puplysshed / that all maner of marchau^tys by londe or by see that wolde come to his citye shulde haue free goynge and free comynge without let or disturbaunce other in the bodyes or goodys, whether they were chrysten men or Sarasyns / so that yf they lost the worthie of a penny they shuld haue agayne .iii. / and the same tyme that Huon came and aryued at that porte was the daye of theyr free feaste / wherfore there was so moche people of dyuers landys that they coude not well be nomberyd / when Huon was come into the porte he caste his ancre ner to the land syde, and was ryght ioyfull when he saw that he was on the ferme londe. Then he had great desyre to know in

but the fruit he had gathered at the angel's behest.

At length the perilous gulf is passed and the sea of Persia entered.

A great city comes into sight, afar off, with a large harbour full of ships.

It was the city of Tauris in Persia, and the admiral of the city allowed ships of all countries to tarry in his port.

Huon casts anchor, and lands.

---

1 scarce. 2 vpon. 3 and. 4 and sphereas. 5 appear before him after sawe. 6 faire. 7 Fol. cxvii. back, col. 2. 8 vnto. 9 omitted. 10 and humbly. 11 the. 12 proclaimed. 13 their. 11-14 times the value thereof. 15 banke. 16 himself.
what plase he was aryued in. Now leue we speking of Huon tyll tyme shall be to returne therto agayne.

Howe syr Barnarde departyd fro the abbey of Cluny and went to seke for Huon his cosyn, whom he founde at the porte of the great citye of Thauris. Ca. C.xxiii.

e haue hard here before how after the takyng of Burdeaux, Barnard, who was cosyn to Huon, had borne Clariet, Huons chylde, in to Burgoyne, and deleyueryd her to be kepte with ye good abbot of Cluny. After that Barnarde had taryed there the space of viii. dayes he was very there, and on a daye he sayd to the abbot, 'A, Syr, I wold at the takyng of Burdeaux I had bene slayne with my cosyn Gerames, for when I remembre my good lord Huon, my hart fayleth me in suche wyse that it is great payne for me to bere the sorowe that I endure / and after when I remembre the duches Esclaramonde his wyfe, who endurethe suche mesery that it is petye to thynke therof, dowbeleth my sorowe. Alas, what shall Huon say yf he retourne and fynd his citye taken, his men taken and dystroyed / and his wyfe in prysone in great myserye and pouertye; I fere me he shall dye for sorowe. Alas, I se all that I haue is loste for the loue of Huon on my lorde / for the whiche I care lytel for, yf he be in sauetye alyue, and that he may retourne agayne / & I am in great dyspleasure.
that we can here no newes of hym neuer\(^1\) syn he departyd fro Burdeaux / I shall neuer rest as longe as I lyue tyll\(^2\) I haue founde hym, or harde som sartayne newes of him \(^7\) / 'cosyn,' quod the abbot / 'yf ye wyll enter into this enquest ye shuld do me great pleasure, and for the great desyre that I haue had that ye shuld do\(^3\) this vyage, I wyll gyue you a thousande florences towards youre Iorneye.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'I thanke you.' Then the abbot delyueryd hym the money, and Barnarde made hym reddy to departe the nexte daye / and so he dyd, and toke leue of the abbot and departyd, & rested not tyll\(^2\) he came to Venys / wher as he founde Galeyes reddy to go to the holy sepulture, wherof he was\(^4\) ioyful; and so saylyd forth they came to porte Iaffe, where as he wente a londe\(^5\) with other pylgremes / and euer as he passyd by the other portis he euer-demaundyd for Huon / but he coude neuer fynde any man that coude shewe to hym any maner of newes of hym. \(^7\)Then he departyd fro\(^8\) porte Iaffe and wente to Ierusalem, where as he taryed .viii. dayes. Then when he had done his pylgrymage he toke forthe his iourney vnto Kayre in Babylone / and when he came to Gasere, whiche standethe at the enterynge of the desartys, he met with many merchantes who were goynge to the iere feast which was holden in the great cyte of Thauris. Then he thought to demaunde of them whether so moche people were goyng, and al in one companye / and he spake to a marchuant of Geanes, & demandid of hym whether \(^9\) so moche people wente together in one companye / for they were to the nombre of .vi. score marchantis chrysten\(^10\) and hethen. \(^11\)Then the marchante sayde / 'syr, as me thynke by you ye are of the

---

\(^{1}\) omitted.  
\(^{2}\) vntill.  
\(^{3}\) goe.  
\(^{4}\) right.  
\(^{5}\) shoare.  
\(^{6}\) vnto.  
\(^{7}\) the.  
\(^{8}\) Fol. cviii. back, col. 1.  
\(^{9}\) men.  
\(^{10}\) hee.
countre of Fraunce, I shall shewe you whether we go; syr, within this viii. dayes the fre feste shalbe at the great citye of Thauris, wher as ther shall come a great nombre of marchantys as well chrysten \(^1\) as Sarasyns, \(^4\) as well by londe as by see / & there is no thynge in this mortal world but there ye shall fynde it / and here of al maner of newes / fro all the partyes of ye worlde. Now I hane shewyd you whether we are 8 goynge, I praye you shewe me whether ye wolde go and whome ye do seke for?' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'know for trouthe I am of the realme of Fraunce, and I do seke for a knyghte who is lorde of Burdeaux, who\(^2\) \(^{12}\) is callyd Huon, and it is long syn I departyd out of my countre, & I coude neuer here any thynge of his lyfe nor dethe.' 'Syr,' quod the Genonoys, 'yf euer ye shall here of hym / yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall go 16 with vs in to the realme of Perce to the fre feste at the citye of Thaurys.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'in a good owre I hane met with you / I shall not lene your company tyll\(^3\) ye come there, to se yf god wyll send 20 me so good a\(^4\) fortune to fynde hym that I seke for.' Then the marchautnis depart\(^5\) and rode\(^6\) to gether tyll\(^3\) they came to\(^7\) the\(^8\) citye of Thaurys / and when they were logyd / they went a bouthe theyr \(^2\) \(^4\) marchandyse where as they lyste / thus Barnarde was viii. dayes in the citye goynge here & there, ener enquyrynge newes for that he sought for; and on\(^9\) a daye he went downe to the porte to\(^7\) the see syde 28 where as many shyppes\(^10\) laye at anere, & \(^{11}\) as he lokyd abouth he saw nere to the see-syde a lytell proper vessell marueylusly fayre / and the nerer he came\(^12\) the fayrer and rycher it semid / for he saw great clerenes 32 and shynynge within it by reason of the ryche stonyss

\(^1\) men. \(^2\) and. \(^3\) vntill. \(^4\) omitted. \(^5\) departed. 
\(^6\) all. \(^7\) vnto. \(^8\) great. \(^9\) vpon. 
\(^10\) and Galleys. \(^11\) Fol. cviii. back, col. 2. \(^12\) vnto it.
that were there,¹ whereof he had great maruayle, and specially bycause he saw within the shyppe but one man clene armyd / he wyste not what to thynke / but he thought² he was chrystenyed; then he aprochyd³ to the shyp and saluted Huon, and sayd / 'syr, god gyue you good aduentre, for me thynke ye be a chrysten man' / 'frend,' quod Huon, 'god saue the.

Me thynke by thy speche that thou werte borne in the good coun tre of Fraunce, by reason² thou spekest frenche, for I haue great joy when I here that language spoken / and frynde I requyre the⁴ shew me where thou wert borne and what thou sekyste for here? 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'syn⁵ ye wyll knowe of my busynes, I shall shew you as he that is ryght sorowefull and heuy, and lytell shall ye wyn therby when ye do know it; but syn⁵ it is your pleasure, I shall shew you the trouthe. Syr, I was borne in the good citye of Burdeaux / where as I haue left my howse and herytage / to seke for my good lorde, sumtyme lorde of the same citye / and he was callyd duke Huon, who went fro Burdeaux to seke for some socours whylles the citye was besegyd / & so it is my lord Huon retournyd not, nor it can not be knowen where he is becom, and bycause the citye at his departynge was besegyd by the emperour of almayne, and the citye but yll furnysshyd with vitayle to mayntayne it longe ; and also it was so sore beten with engyns that y⁶ emperour wan the citye parforce / & slew all those that my lorde Huon had lefte ⁶there excepte .iii.c., the whiche were taken presoners by the emperoure and led into the citye of Magence, with the noble duchesse Esclaramonde, wyfe to⁷ my⁸ lorde Huon, and she is keppe in a strawte prison, where as she vseth⁹ her dayes myserably, wherof

¹ therein. ² that. ³ neere. ⁴ to. ⁶ seeing. ⁶ Fol. cix. col. 1. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good. ⁹ spendeth.
my harte is in suche sorowe¹ that when I remembre ²it
my hart fayleth me'³ when Huon had well harde³
Barnarde he knewe hym wel; but he had no powre to
speke any word to⁴ hym, his harte was so full of ⁴
sorowe ¹for that his cosy[n] Barnarde had shewyd hym, and ⁵²
sorowe was for the trowbyl of his wyfe⁶
Esclaramonde, who was in⁷ parell of deth. Thus Huon
was a great space and conde speke no word for sorow,¹ ⁸
and wyste not what to do. ⁸Also he sawe hys cosy[n]⁹
Barnarde, who had taken great payne to serche for
hym / wherby¹⁰ he had suche petye that the terys fell
fro his eyen. ⁹if when Barnarde behelde¹¹ that the ¹²
knyght gaue hym none answere / & saw vnder the
ventayle of his helme the terys of water fell downe fro
his eyen, he was therof so¹² abasshild that he wyst not
what to saye. Then he sayd, 'syr, me thyn[k]e¹³ ye ar ¹⁶
a chrystyn man / and bycause I se and parseyue in you
that ye ar a man that hathe bene in many placys and
cuntrees, therfore I desyre you to shewe me yf ye harde
euer any maner of speakinge of my¹⁴ lorde Huon duke of ²⁰
Burdeaux / whome I haue sought for in many cuntres,
bothe by londe and by se, & I coud neuer here any
sartayne tydynges of him, wherof I am ryght sorry /
for yf I canne here no worde of hym by you I wyll ²⁴
neuer hope more to haue any knowlege of hym / for¹⁵
I thynke I shulde¹⁶ haue some knowlege by you yf he
be aline / for yf I knowe no thynge by you I wyll
neuer ¹⁷ seke hym further / but I wyll go into som ²⁸
deserte to⁴ some solytyar place, and there to do penaunce
and to praye to⁴ god for my good lorde Huon, and to
pardon me of all my¹⁹ offences / and I requyre you in

¹ and greefe. ²-² them, it neere hand slayeth my heart.
³ and vnderstood. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ cheefest of his.
⁶ the faire Lady. ⁷ great. ⁸ and. ⁹ cosyd in text.
¹⁰ whereof. ¹¹ saw. ¹² dismayed and.
¹³ thynde in text. ¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ shall.
¹⁷ Fol. cix. col. 2. ¹⁸ a. ¹⁹ sinnes and.
the name of our lorde\textsuperscript{1} Iesu chryst\textsuperscript{2} shew me what ye be, and where ye were borne, and fro whence ye come, that hath brought in your shyppe so great rychesse / for I knowe sartaynly that in all France can not be founde the value of so great a\textsuperscript{3} ryches. Nor the pusaunte Charlemagne coude neuer assemble together suche a\textsuperscript{3} ryches as ye haue in your shyppe.' when Huon harde Barnarde, he sayde / 'frend, I haue great maruayle of that I here you saye / for in my shyppe I knowe nother golde nor syluer nor none other thynge but my body and myne armure.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'beware what ye saye / for ye\textsuperscript{6} ryches that I see in your shyp, ye ye wyll selle it ye maye fylle agayne your shyppe with money ; if ye wyll blyeue me the treasure and ryches that ye haue brought in your shyppe, the valur therof can not be estenyd' / when Huon harde that he had great maruayle, and was ryght joyful / then he lokyd downe into the botome of the shyppe and sawe the ryche stonyes there lyyng amonche ye grauell, the whiche he neuer toke hede therof\textsuperscript{4} before / for when he dyd caste it in to hys shyp he thought all had bene but grauell to balayse his shyp withal that it myght sayle the more suerlyer. Then Barnarde sayde, 'syr, I pray you hyde it not fro me / wher haue ye had this great treasure, and in what countre ? all the stonyes that be there I knowe the vertue of them all / for syn I came out of my countre I was a hole yere with ye este lapidary and knower of stones that was in all the world / and he taught me his seyens ; syr, suerly the place wheras ye had them in is of great dygnite.' 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'I shall shew you the trouth / fortune brought me by the goulfe of Perse, where as I sufferyd moche Payne & troubyll / but thankyd be god / I scapyd fro that hard aduenture, the force of the

\textsuperscript{1} and sauiour. \textsuperscript{2} to. \textsuperscript{3} omitted. \textsuperscript{4} of. \textsuperscript{5} Fol. cix. back, col. 1.

CHARL. ROM. VIII. G G
wynd that cam out of the Goulfe draue my shyppe out of the streme / to the lande / and when I sawe I was so nere the londe I went out of the shyp, and toke a scopet & ther with\(^1\) dyd cast in of the grauell\(^2\) by the see syde to balayse ther-with\(^3\) my shyppe/ not knowinge that any presyous stonys had bene amonge the grauell; and when I thought I had caste in suffycient I enteryd agayne into my shyppe, and so saylyd forthe more 8 suerlyer then I dyd before / there I had these stonys that be in this shyp, the whiche ye say be of so great value.' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'I pray you wherfore serueth yonder fote of a great fowle or beast that I se 12 hang yonder in your shyp, I can not tel whether it be of a fowle or of a dragon / for it is a ferfull thynge to beholde.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'anone I shall shewe you / but fyrste I praye you shewe me what vertue & 16 bounte ar in these stonys the whiche ye have so moche praysyd / and also to shewe me to\(^4\) whome this noble citye partaynethe?' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'this citye is callyd Thauris, wherof is lorde a ryche admyrall, who 20 is lord of all Perce and of Mede, who when he shall be aduerteydsyd of your comynge hether, he wyll hane of you trybute as he hathe of other marchaunts / and as for your stonys, two of them that I se yonder, yf ye 24 gyue them for your trybute he shall be well contente / and, syr, I shall ayde you in youre mar\(^5\)chandyse to the best of my powre / the admyrall is a noble man in his lawe, and of great credence.' 'Frend,' quod Huon, 28 'I thanke you for the curtesy that ye shew me / but, syr, I praye you shew me the stones that be of\(^6\) moche vertue, I wold haue the best layde aparte fro the other.' when Barnard harde howe Huon desyryd hym 32 to shewe the vertue of the stonys / then specally he shewyd Huon .vi. stonys, and he drewe them out

---

\(^1\) I.  \(^2\) that lay.  \(^3\) therwith after shyppe.  \(^4\) vnto.  \(^5\) Fol. cix. back, col. 2.  \(^6\) so.
fro the reste and layd them vpon Huons shylld, and so chase out xxx. other / and shewyd them all to Huon, and sayd, 'syr, these xxx. stony that I haue layd on your shylld ar of so great value that there is nother kyng nor emperoure that can paye the value of them, and specyally of v. of them.' when Huon harde that he was joyful. Then he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe After Barnard had sorted the stones, Huon takes off his helmet, and reveals himself.

18 When Huon do of his helme / the whiche he kepe on all that season bycause he wold fyrst know of Barnarde some tydyngys or he wold be known to hym / for he knewe Barnard well ynoughe at his fyrste comynge to hym.

Barnard recognizez Huon when he removes his helmet.

How Huon of Burdeaux and Barnarde his coozyn knowlegyd themselfes eche to other & shewyd theyr aduenture. Ca. C.xxv.

Hen Barnarde sawe Huon do of his helme he becam as ruddy as a rose, and was so rauysshyd that be wiste not what to saye or thynke, and sayde, 'syr, I can not say trewly what ye be / but ye resemble so lyke Huon, whom I seke for that I can not tel whether ye be he or not.' 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'come hether to me and embrace me, I am he whome ye do seke for, / so they embracyd eche other in suche wyse that of a longe space they coude not speke one to another / at laste Huon sayd, 'my ryght dere cosyn, I praye you shewe me all the newes that ye knowe of Burdeaux syn my departynge.' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'I shall shew you that I wolde fayne knowe my selfe, but fyrst, syr, I praye you shew me the aduentures that ye haue had syn my departynge

Barnard begs first to know

Huon inquires anxiously for news from Bordeaux.

1 vnto. 2 vpon. 3 and. 4 put. 5 his coozen. 6 the discourse of. 7 Fol. ex. col. 1. 8 much. 9 your.
fro Burdeaux.’ ‘Cosyn,’ quod Huon, ‘yf I wolde shewe you all the adventures and fortunes that I have had syn my departynge fro you, it shulde be ouer long to shew it / but breuely I shal declare it / when I was in the see a tempest rose vpon vs, the whiche enduryd y space of .x. dayes with out sease / and then Huon shewed hym howe he was in the Goulfe, and what perel he was in there, & how he spake withe 8 Iudas; and howe he aruyd at the castell of the Adamant, and how his company there dyed for famyne; and howe he enteryd into the castell and slewe the serpente, and shewyd hym of the beaute and adventures that were in the castell / and howe he was borne to a rocke by a gryffon / and how he slew the .v. yonge gryffons, and after great gryffon whose fote was in the shyp, the whiche he shewyd to syr Barnarde, and declaryd of the fountayne and gardayne, and tree of youth; and of the shyppe, the whiche they were in / and howe he founde it by the ryuer / and how by the voyce of the aungell he enteryd into the shyppe / and after he shewyd what payn and parell he sufferedd in passyng the gulfe of Perse, and how he was parforce dreuyn a londe, and there he cast in ye stonyes, thynkynge it had bene but grauell / and how he was as then come and aruyd at the great citye of Tauris in Perce.

when Barnarde had well harde Huon, he embracyd hym and sayd, ‘a ryght vertuous knyght to whome in prowes and hardynes none can be comparyd / of your comynge I ought to be ioyfull, & thanke god of the grace that he hathe sent you’ / ‘cosyn, quod

1 should.  2 would.  3 rehearse.  4 vnto you  
5 vpon.  6 great.  7 continued.  8 ceasing.  9 by.
10 vnto.  11 afterward.  12 discoursyd.  13 Fol. ex. col. 2.  14 shoare.  15 omitted.  16 and understood.  17 deare and.  18 I.  19 oure lord.  20 syr.
Huon, 'I ought greatly to thank our Lord Jesus Christ, in that I see you in
dwell and now I pray you to show me what hath fallen in the country of
Burdeaux you departed thence.' Then Barnarde, all weeping, shewed him every thing as it had fallen, and
shewed to Huon the manner how ye good city of Burdeaux was taken, and of the death of Gerames
and his company / and of the taking of the sixth duches of Esclaramond, how the emperor held her in prison
in the city of Magence in great poverty and mystery; and of his daughter Claryet, how he had
brought her to the abbey of Cluny, and set her in keepynge there with the abbot her cousin. ¶ when
Huon vnderstode barnarde, he made great sorrowe, & sayd, ye god wold ayde hym he wolde cause the
emperor to dye an yll dethe / 'syr,' quod Barnarle, 'weyl ye apace your selfe; ye ye haue trust in our
lorde god, desyre his ayde and socoure, and let the whole of fortune rynde and ye ye do thus, and take it
a worth any thing that is fallen vnto you ye shall not fayle, but ye shall com to your desyre, / thus with
such wordys Barnard apaysyd Huon his cousin / thus they deuysyd together of dyuers thyngis / 'cousyn,'
quod Huon, 'I praye you shew me the vertue of these precious stones that ye haue layde aparte / 'syr,'
quod Barnarde, 'the .v that lyetheth by themself hathe great vertue / this stone is of suche vertue that
he that bereth it vpon hym can not be poysond / also it is of suche dygnyte that who so ever do bere
it may go & come through the fire without felyng of any herte though he were in a brennyng ouen / also ye

1 good. 2 to. 3 from. 4 vnto. 5 the old. 6 noble. 7 the faire. 8 and. 9 well. 10 in his heart. 11 and helpe. 12 euill. 13 of him. 14 in. 15 Fol. cx. back, col. 1. 16 aside from the other. 17 there. 18 great. 19 and woorth. 20—20 hot burning.
a man fell in the water hauynge this stone abouth hym can not synke nor drowne / syr, this is ye vertue of this fyrst stone.' Then Huon toke it and kepte it for hym selfe. Then Barnard toke vp a nother & sayde / 'syr, here is a nother stone of suche vertue / that a man berynge it abought hym can haue no hunger / no thruste / nor cold, nor shal not wax elder by semynge nother in body nor vysage / but he shal 8 euer apere of the age of xxx. yerys, nor fastynge shall not enpayre hym' / then Huon toke that stone and put it in his bagge, and sayde he wolde kepe ye stone for hymselfe / 'well,' quod Barnard, 'syr, here is another of suche bounte and vertue that he that bereth it can not be hurte in armys, nor vanquesshyd by his enemies, and ye any of his kyn were blynde and touche his eyen with this stone incontynente he shall se agayne / and ye the stone be shewyd to a mans eyen he shall incontyntent be blynd, and ye a man be woundyd tourne this stone in the wounde, and incontyntent he shol be hole' / when Huon hard that he was ioyfull, and sayd that he wolde kepe wel that stone / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'here is a nother, the whiche hath the so great vertue, that ye a man or woman be neuer so syke, shewe them this stone, and incontynent they shall be hole of any maner of maladye / and also ye a man were closyd in pryson in chaynes and fetters, handys and fete, touch them with this stone and the chaynis shal breke / and also ye a man haue any cause to be pleyd in any court before any Iuge, be his mater ryghtful or wrongfull, he shal wyn his cause, whether it be for londis or goodys, and also ye a man haue this stone in his hande and close it, he shal be inuysble, and may go wher as he lyt, and shal not

1 to. 2 he. 3 and. 4 neither. 5 omitted. 6 seeme to be. 7 that. 8 but. 9 vnto. 10 doe but. 11 right. 12 Fol. cx. back, col. 2. 13 any.
be sene. As ye shall see the profe' for as he had the stone in his haude he closyd it, and incontyment he was inuysyble so that Huon coude not se hym, wherof he was not content, for he feryd lest he had lost his cosyn Barnard for euer, and sayd 'a, good lord, thou hast geuyn me the grace to fynde my cosyn Barnarde / who shulde haue kept me company tyll I had retournyd into myne owne countrie, and nowe I se well I haue lost hym' / when Barnarde hard Huon, he laughed, and Huon who hard hym / groypyd all abought with his armes abrode / tyll at laste he embrasyd hym, and helde hym fast / and when Barnard felte that he openyd his hand, and then Huon sawe hym agayne, wherof he was joyfull / and blyssyd hym at the vertue of that stone, and toke it and layd it vp amonse the other in his bagge, and sayde how he wolde kepe that stone for specyallye. Thus Barnarde dyd chose out the stonys one fro another / & there were so many good stonys that the value of them could not be estemyd / then he tournyd vp the botom of the grauell to seke out the best / and there amonge other he dyd chose out a carbounce / the whiche cast out suche a lyght as though two torches had bene lyght / Barnarde toke it and deluyerd it to Huon, and sayde 'syr, be sure who so euer bere this stone vpon hym / may go dry foytd vpon the water as sure as though he were in a vessell / and also yf a man go in the darke nyght he shall see as well as though he had the lyght of vi. torches / and yf a man be in batayle, haugynge this stone on hym, can not be ouer come nor hurte, nor his horse wery nor faynte, nor hurte, nor woundyd, / when Huon hard that he smylyd, and toke the stone
and put it\(^1\) amonge the other. Thus as they were
deuysynge together there came to\(^2\) them dyuers ma-
chauntys, Sarasyns, who with great maruayle behelde
this lytell shyp\(^3\) they sawe it so fayre and rych, and so\(^4\)
wel garnysshed with precious stonys / that they thought
al the marchaundyse that was there in the hauen was
not \(^4\) to the \(^4\) halfe \(^5\) valewe \(^6\) of that they saw there;
then\(^7\) they aprochyd to\(^2\) the shyp and salutid Huon, and 8
sayd / 'syrs, is it your pleasure to sell vs any of your
stonys / we are here dyuers marchauntys that wyl be
glad to bye of them\(^8\)' / 'syrs,' quod Huon, 'as for me
as this day I wyll sell none tyll\(^9\) to morowe in the 12
mornynge,\(^10\) / therwith the marchauntys helde theyr
peas and spake no more; but there cam so many
Sarasyns and paynynts to behelde the shyppe, that
maruayle it was to be hold them; so that y\(^e\) newes 16
therof spred abrode in the citye / & the admyrall was
aduertysed therof / who incontynente, accompanied
with his lordys, came to the porte syde wher as this
shyppe laye at \(^4\)an\(^4\) ancre.

\(^7\) when he\(^11\) was come thether he behelde the
shyppe, the whiche he thought fayre \(^12\);and ryche; and
how that there was neuer kyng nor emperour that euer
sawe\(^13\) any such, and it shone so clere by reason of the 24
stonys, that the Admyrall and all such as were with
hym thought it had bene the sonne shynyng in the
myddys of the day / then he aprochyd to\(^2\) the shyp
and founde there Huou and Barnarde: the admyrall 28
salutyd them, and sayde / 'syrs, it aperethe wel\(^14\) ye be
chrysten men / it is conuenyent that ye paye me the
trybute that is coustomyd to be payed in this citye' /

1 into his bagge amonge the other. 2 vnto. 3 and.
4-4 omitted. 5 the. 6 and woorth.
7 then then in text. 8 if yee please. 9 vntill.
10 and then if it plase yee, you shall haue of them.
11 the Admirall. 12 Fol. exi. col. 2. 13 behelde.
14 that.
of the admiral of tauris.

Huon gives him two of the precious stones.

The admiral does much pleazed, as he knows the virtues of the stones, which can preserve their owner from many perils; he gives the travellers permission to enter the city.

He promises to protect them in his own realm as well as in that of Persia and Media, and asks what strange adventure brought them hither.

The admiral knows their language,

The reason that we paye you as we ought to do / syr, here be two stonyes the whiche I gyue you, and I desire you to take them and sayd / 'frynde, nowe ye maye go and come into this citie to make your marchaundise at your pleasure to your most profyght / for the gyfte that ye haue geuen me is to me more agreable then ye had geuen me yº value of .iii of the beste citeyes of this countre / ryght joyfull was the admiral for he knewe well the vertue of the stones: one was of suche value that the berer therof coude not be poysonyd nor no treason coude not be done nor purpensyd, in the presence of hym that berethe this stone but incontynente the doer shuld fall dede / and the second stone had that vertue and dygnyte that the berer therof coude never be perysshid by fyre nor water / nor dysstroyed by Iron, for thoughe he were all a daye in a brynyngynge furnays he shuld not lese one here of his hede / nor perysshe in the see. 'frendes,' quod the admiral, 'the courtesye that ye haue done to me shall be rewardyd, I wyll that throughe out my realme, as well of Perse as of Mede, ye shall go at your pleasure to sell your marchaundise; and no man shall lette nor trouble you / but one thynge I wolde desyre of you to shewe me what adventure hathe brought you hether / and of whens ye be, and of what countrie / and in what place ye haue found these stones wherof ye haue so great plente / howe be it I understond ye your language, therby I knowe ye be frenche-men / longe agone I was in fraunce, and dwelte there,

1 good.  2 is.  3 in.  4 and gaine.  5 acceptable.  6 in all.  7 bountie and dignitie.  8 no no in text.  9 purposed.  10 downe.  11 other.  12-12 burning in a hot ouen or.  13 vnto.  14 this day.  15 well.  16 and command.  17 that.  18 Fol. exi. back, col. 1.
for he has served in Charlemagne’s court.

and servyd in the courte of kynge Charlemayne / & was neuer knowne / I haue maruayle where ye haue founde so many goodly stones / it is nere a .C. yerys syn I was gyrt with a sworde ; but I neuer saw so ryche stones here before.

How the admerall of Perce dyd great honoure to Huon of Burdeaux, and led hym into his palays, where as he was receyuyd withe great ioye and myrth.

Hen Huon of Burdeaux vnderstode the Admeral, he regardyd hym moc / bycause he was a fayre old man, and seymyd to be a noble man, 1 said, ‘syr, bycause I knowe and se aparaunte in you great noblenes, trouthe, and fredome, I shall shewe you at lengthe all myne aduentures without hydynge of ony thyng fro you. Syr, know for trouthe my name is Huon, and I am borne of the countre of Fraunce in a city namyd Burdeaux ; and I departed thenee abought two yerys past, synne the whiche tyme I haue sufferyd moche payne and pouerte. 4 when I departyd then, I hadde with me .vii. knyghtys and my chapelayne and a clarke to serue hym, and we toke our shyppe at Burdeaux, and we saylyd downe the ryuer tyll we come in the mayne see / then the wynde rose contrarye to vs, and so contynuyd a longtime space, so that our patron knew not where he was / so at the last we 28 came to a porte, where we founde many shyppes of strang[e] countres / and there we gote vs a newe patron ; and as shortlye as we myghte, we wente forthe

1 and. 2 great. 3 hand. 4 vnto. 5 triumph. 6 Fol. cxi. back, col. 2. 7 had well heard and. 8 was. 9 in. 10 from. 11 vntill. 12-12 against. 13 as.
on our Journey. But when we were comyn agayne into the hye see, a tempest arose so great that we were hand all perysshyd / this tempeste enduryd .x.

4 dayes, so that we were fayne to abandone oure shyppe to the wynde. And on the .xi. daye, we aryuyd on the perelous Gulfe, wher as we founde Iudas, who betrayed our lorde Iesu christ: we were then in suche fere that we lokid for nothynges but when we shulde peryssh he and end our lyfe. But god alwayes his seruauntis and suche at byluethe in [his holy lawe] wyll euer kepe and preserue them / he sent vs a wynde y
drane vs fro that perelous Gulfe, and brought vs to the castell of the Adamant / and there he shewyd the admyrall at lenthe the beautye of that castell, and howe there aryuyd a shyppe with Sarasyns, who were robbers of the see, and howe they fought together, and also he shew[ed] hym all ye adventyres of the castell that he had there, as well of his men that dyed for famyn as of them that be lefte there, & also he shewyd howe he came by vetayles. And also he shewyd howe he departyd thence, and was borne awaye by the Gryffon, and howe he strake of one of his legges when he fought with hym, after the gryffon had set hym on the rocke, the whiche legge he shewyd to the admyrad[ll] wherof he had great marauyle. Then also he shewyd hym howe he fought with the v. yong Gryffons, and slewe them / and also of the olde Gryffon / and also of the fountayne wherin he baynyd himselfe, and of the fayre gardayn, and of the tree of youth that stode by the fountayne: and of the vertu of the frute therof / and howe he dyd gather therof, and a storm arose lasting for ten dayes.

On the eleventh day they arrived in the perilous Gulf, where they saw Judas, and were like to end their lives; then God in his goodness sent a fair wind, which drove them thence to the castle of Adamant. Huon describes to the admiral the beauty of the castle, and shows all the adventures that he and his men met there.

20 Then he tells how he departed, and was borne away by the griffin to a rock, and how in fighting with the beast he struck off one of its legs, and this he showed to the admiral. He then tells how he fought with the five young griffins and slew them, and of the fountain and the fair garden, and of the tree of youth by the fountain. He, knowing its virtue, gathered some of the fruit,
more wolde haue done but that he was defendyd\(^1\) so
to do by an aungell sent fro god / but before I was
commandyd\(^2\) the contrary, I dyd etc\(^3\) both of the
frute and dранke of ye water of the fountayne, wherby 4
I was\(^4\) incontinent\(^5\) all e hole of\(^6\) the great woundinges
that the Gryffon had geuen me.\(^7\) And, syr,' quod
Huon, 'knowe for trouthe that of this tree I gatheryd
apples, by the commandemente of the aungell, and 8
haue kept them suerly / then the aungell shewyd me
the waye howe I shulde go fro that rocke, and vnder
y\(^e\) rocke syde I founde a\(^8\) fayre ryuer, and there I
founde this shyppe that we be nowe in, and enteryd 12
into it. Then there\(^9\) came a wynde\(^10\) and draue my
shyppe so faste that a byrde coude not ouertake\(^11\) it.
Then he shewyd\(^12\) vnto the Admyrall how he passyd
by the goulfe of Perse, & what tormentis he sufferyd 16
there, and howe he was there .x. dayes, and how he was
dreuen to the londe,\(^13\) wher as he founde those precyous
stones,\(^14\) wenyngye to hym it were\(^14\) nothyng but grauell,
and he purposyd nothyng elles but to balays\(^15\) therwith
his shyppe, that y\(^e\) shyp myyth sayle the more suerlyer /
and he sayd, 'syr, god, on\(^17\) hom I\(^18\) byleue, so aydyd\(^19\)
me that I am scaped\(^20\) thence in saugearde.'

14 when the admerall\(^21\) vnderstode Huon / he 24
maruylyd greatly,\(^22\) for he, neuer hard before of so
great 23 maruyles,\(^23\) and was sore\(^24\) abasshyd, and sayd,
'Frynde, I haue great maruayle of that I haue harde you
say, for it is nere hand .vi. score yere syn I came fy rst 28
in to this worlde / and I neuer harde that euer any man

---

\(^1\) forbidden  \(^2\) to.  \(^3\) ete after both.  \(^4\) whole.  
\(^5\) of.  \(^6\) omitted.  \(^7\) when I swele them.  \(^8\) great.  
\(^9\) Fol. cxii. col. 2.  \(^10\) [quoth he].  \(^11\) haue ouertaken. 
\(^12\) discoursed.  \(^13\) shoare.  
\(^14\) and he thought it had bene.  \(^15\) that.  
\(^16\) ther with in text.  \(^17\) vpon.  \(^18\) stedfastly. 
\(^19\) and socoured.  \(^20\) from.  \(^21\) had well heard and. 
\(^22\) had great maruayle.  \(^23\) and wonderfull adventu res. 
\(^24\) dismayed and.
Huon's escape proves his trust in God, and God's love for him.

In awe of this testimony of God's love and power, the admiral wishes to be christened, but fears his lords and men would slay him if they knew of it. Huon answers that he will give him one of his three apples, and if he eats it believing firmly in our Lord God Jesus, he will straightway become young again—of the age of thirty years.

When ye were of that age / there is not so olde a man nor so crokyd, yf he ete of this frute / and byleue farmely in our lorde Iesu chryst / but he shall become as lusty as he was of xxx. yeris. 'Freud,'

28 quod the admyrall, 'yf it be so that by the etynge of this apple, I shal becom yong agayne as I was of y° age of .xxx. yerys, what so ever come of me

1 vppon. 2 stedfastly.
3-3 all men that stedfastly and vnfainedly beleene in his holy lawes, and keepe his commandements and.
4 and vertue. 5 in. 6 but hee loueth you well.
7 deliuered. 8 for. 9 vnsto.
10 Pol. exii. back, col. 1. 11-11 and saumour.
12 omitted. 13 and vnfainedly. 14 yong and as.
15 of age. 16-10 as yong and as lusty. 17-17 at.
I will be chrystenedyd and byleue in ye lawe of Iesu
chyst, the fere of dethe shall not let me to do it, for to
longe I haue blyenyd in this false lawe and detestable
of Maconet / for ye I had sene nor harde no more
then ye haue shewyd, I ought yet to blyeue in your
lawe / and I shall do so moche that I truste I shall
cause all my realme to blyeue in the same / 'syr,'
quod Huon, 'and ye do as ye saye, ye shall be sauyd, 8
and I shall geue you the apple / the whiche ye shal ete
in the presence of al your lordis & men. And when
they shall se you wax agayne yonge, knowe for trouthe
maruayle therof shall cause them to blyeue of Iesu
chyst, and to renounce theyr false macomettis lawe / 'frend,' quod the admyrall, 'I blyeue well
as ye saye / and I shall vse my selfe after your
aduyse / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande &
wenteth outside of the shyp; and Huon lefte Barnard there to kepe it / moch people was come
theretho to see the shyp, and also for the great marauyles
that they had harde fallen to Huon; they behelde Huon
and had great marauyle of ye honour that ye
admyrall made to hym / for he led hym styll by
the hand tyll he came to his palays; as they passed
throug the citye they were greatly regarded of men of
sondry nasyon / for Huon was so fayre a knyght that
none coude be founde as then that myght compare with hym in beaute; when Huon was come to the
palays the admyrall made huon great fest and chere,
and the tables were set vp, & they sate downe to

1 lawe after detestable. 2 neither. 3 vtto me.
4 yet after blyeue. 5 yonge before againe.
6 in our Lord. 7-7 and detestable. 8 of Mahomet.
9 that which. 10 many. 11 Fol. exii. back, col. 2.
12 vtto. 13 and. 14 vtill.
15 in his visage, and so valaunt. 16 in stature.
17-17 bee compared vtto him.
18 whereas hee was honourably receiued with great joy.
19 him.
diner; of theyr seruyse and metis I wyll make no longe rehersayle. 1 when diner was done, the admrall commandyd carpenters to make a great scaffold of 4 tymber before ye palays / ye which was coueryd with ryche clothes of golde and sylke, & thether was brought a rych standarde of golde with other thyngys; 2 then he commanded throughout the citye that all his barons 8 of his realme that were come thether to 4 his fre festes, that they shulde all come to 4 hym at an owre apointyd, the which they dyd; there cam so many strangers and other that there were mo assembelyd together then 12 a .C. & .L.M. men. when they were all there together, then ye admrall, holding Huon by the hand, mounted vpon ye rych stage, & dyuers other great lordis with hym; 3 when they were there the admrall stode vp 16 and sayde with a hye voyce to 4 the lordys and to the people / syrs, ye that be com hether by my commandement, know for trouth / the great lone that I haue had to 4 you and haue / moneth me to saye and 20 to shew you the waye how that I and all you may come to eternal saluacon, for yf we dye in this case that we be in, we shall all 5 be dampnyd and loste by the false and detestable 6 way that you and I do hold / 24 therfore I comayse and praye you for the lone that ye haue longe borne vnto me, that ye wyl lene 7 the lawe of Macomyte and byleue in 8 our sauyour and redeemer, Iesus chryst, who is worthy and holly, as ye maye se by 28 the euydente myracles that he hathe shewyd for his poyer knyght that ye se here by me. 9 then the admrrial shewyd to 4 the people all the maruaylous adventyres that had fallen to 4 Huon / that is to saye, how he had 32 bene at the castel of the Adamante, and how the Gryffon bare 9 hym 10 thence, whome he slewe, and

Carpenters were commanded to make a scaffold of timber in front of the palace, and to decorate it with cloth of gold and silk. By command, at the hour appointed, all the admiral’s barons came there, and many strangers and others besides.

The admiral, holding Huon by the hand, mounted upon the stage, and tells the lords and people in a loud voice that he is going to show them how they may come to eternal salvation, by leaving the law of Mahomet and believing in Jesus Christ, whose worthines and hollines is proved by the miracles he has worked for Huon.

The admiral then shows the people all the marvellous adventures of Huon.

1 but. 2 and. 3 Lordes and. 4 vnto. 5 all after be. 6 Fol. cxii. col. 1. 7 with me. 8 the Law of. 9 did beare. 10 from.
and how
such things could
not have been
without the aid
of Jesus Christ.

He then tells how
if he firmly
believe in Christ,
the apple of
Huon’s gift will
make him young
again.

The people
answer that if
they see proof of
this, they also
will be christened,
but that of such a
miracle they had
never heard.

How the emperour, by reason of the apple 20
that Huon gaue hym 11 to ete, he became
of the age of .xxx. yeries / wherby he and
all the people of perce and Mede were
chrystenyd, and of the great honoure that 24
the admyrrall made to 4 Huon. Ca. C.xxvii.

[Illustration: t.]

Huon, right
joyful to learn
that all the lords
and people were
willing to believe
in Jesus Christ,

1 brought in text. 2 and helpe. 3 and Saviour.
4 vnto. 5 in. 6 at that time. 7 shall.
8 all after be. 9 vppon. 10 wonderfull.
11 Pot. cxiii. col. 2. 12 hadde well heard and. 13 the.
14 omitted.
sayde to 1 the admyrall / 'syr, ete of the appyll that I have geuyn 1 you / and then ye people that be here assemblyd shall see what grace our lord god shall 4 send you.' The admyrall toke the apple and began to ete therof / and as he dyd ete he began to chaung coloure / his here and his berde, ye which were whyght, began to chaunge and waxed yelowe / or 2 the apple was 8 clene eten, he was clene chaungyd, & his beautye and strente he as he was when he was but of .xxx. yerys of age. Then generally all the people that were there with one voyce cryed & requyryd to be chrystenyd, 12 wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyfull, bycause they saw the good wyll of the people was to receyue chrystendome / when the admyrall felte hymselfe agayne youge 3 the ioye that he had at his harte 16 can 4 not be declaryd, the people also were ryghte ioyfull / the admyrall, who was a goodly prynce, toke Huon by the hande and sayde / ' my ryght dere freynde, blyssyd be the owre that ye came hether for me and 20 my people, ye haue brought vs into the way of saluasyon and delyueryd vs out of darkenes, therfore I wyl fro hensforth that in all my realme ye shall haue your parte as well as 5 my selfe, and I wyll 6 ye be so 24 obeyed 7 / then he enbracyd and kyssed Huon mo then .x. tymys, seyenge / 'frynnde, blessyd be the our that euer ye were borne, and happy was that woman that bare you in her body' / the paynyms and Sarasyns that 28 were there, seyenge the great beaute that the admyrall was of / and also the 7 great myracle that they had sene, sayde one to another, how they neuer had hard of suche a myracle, and how that fro thenceforth they 32 that wold bylune on 8 mahound were acursyd & vnhappy / for they sayde 9 his bylune / his lawe / 10 his

tells the admiral to eat the apple.

As he ate, his white hair and beard waxed yellow, and when he had finished, he was in beauty and strength as a man of thirty years.

Then all the people cried out that they wished to be christened, whereof the admiral and Huon were right joyful.

The admiral offers Huon a share of his realm,

and embraces him ten times.

Having seen the miracle,

the people declare that all who believe in Mahomet are accursed and
doctrine / was of no valour / then they cryed with a bye voyce, 'O ryght noble and pusant admyrall / desire that noble man that is there with you, that he wyll cause vs to haue\(^1\) chrystendome.' And as then in 4 the citye there was a bysshop of Greece who was come thither in bassade\(^2\) to the admyrall fro the emperour of \(^3\) constantyne the noble,\(^3\) who, herynge the wyll\(^4\) of the people, was ryght joyfull / and he cam to\(^5\) the admyrall 8 and to Huon, and sayde / 'syr, it shall be no daunger for you to be chrystenyd / for, syr, I am here redy to do it.' Then incontyennent there was brought forthe .xl great vesselles full of clere water / the bysshop dyd 12 halow them, and cristenyd the admyrall and gaue\(^6\) hym 7 to name\(^7\) Huon, bycause Huon was his godfather. Then after\(^8\) all the lordis & people were chrystenyd and receyuyd the law of our 9 lorde 9 Iesu Chryste. when 16 they were all chrystenyd, the admyrall with great tryhumphe\(^9\) retournd to 5 his palays ledyng Huon by the hande,\(^10\) great ioye and feast\(^12\) was made that day in the citye / and spesyally of the chrysten marchauntis 20 that were there, amonge the which there 13 was a 13 .xv. prestes, and they all ayyd the bys\(^14\)shop to chrysten the people / the nombre can\(^15\) not be declaryd of the men, women and, chylde that reseyuyd that daye 24 chrystendome / the admyrall buyng in his palays makyng great ioy and fest\(^12\) to 16 ye noble duke Huon of burdeaux, sayd to\(^5\) hym / 'frynde, well ye ought to render thankynges to our lorde Iesu chryste, syn\(^17\) by 28 you these two realmes, that is to saye, Perce and Mede, are reducyd and brought to\(^5\) the chrysten faythe and law, and I wyll\(^18\) ye knowe that ye maye well saye that

\(^1\) receive. \(^2\) ambassage. \(^3\)–\(^3\) Constantinople.
\(^4\) and desire. \(^5\) vnto. \(^6\) named. \(^7\)–\(^7\) omitted.
\(^8\) afterward. \(^9\)–\(^9\) Sausiour and Redeemer. \(^10\) and ioy.
\(^11\) and. \(^12\) feasting. \(^13\)–\(^13\) were about.
\(^14\) Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2. \(^15\) could. \(^16\) with.
\(^17\) seeing. \(^18\) that.
in these two realmes ye maye commaunde\(^1\) at your pleasure without fyndyngge any parsonye to do or say to ye\(^6\) contrary of your wyl and pleasure / and to the entent that ye shall suerly byleue what great loue\(^2\) I bere vnto you, I wyl that myne all only daughter ye shall haue to your wyfe, so that ye be not bound to none other; syr, know for trouthe the great desyre that I haue to haue you tary stylly here with me mouethe me thus to do / I haue none other eyre but my daughter / wherby after my deth ye shall be lord and heyre of the realmes\(^4\) that I holde / and in the meane season I wyll that the moyte of the reuenewe of thes realmes\(^4\) shall be yours, for your company pleaseth me so well\(^5\) that I wolde neuer haue you to departe\(^6\) hens.'

16 Of the complayntis that Huon made to the admerall of Perse on the emperour of almayne / and of the socours that the admyrall promysyd to Huon. Ca. C.xxviii.

Hen Huon\(^8\) vnderstode ye\(^e\) admyral, he sayd, 'syr, knowe for trouthe that it is .iii. yerys past syn I was maryed to a noble lady who passeth in beaute al other that be alyue in thes dayes, & when I remember her all my body and harte trymbelethe for sorowe / when I thinke of the trowble / dyspleasure / and pouerthe that she is in / & therfore, syr, I thanke you of the great honoure and curtseye that of youre bountye ye do offer me.' 'I praye to god that he may rewarde you, Huon;' quod the admyrall; 'syn\(^11\) it is so that ye haue a wyfe, I hold and that he may demand aught that he pleases; to prove the great love he hears him, the admiral offers Huon his daughter in marriage, provided he has not already a wife. The lady is the admiral's only child, and on his death the marriage would make Huon lord of the realmes; meanwhile, the admiral offers him half the revenues of his kingdom.

Huon replies, that four years past he was married to a noble lady of surpassing beauty, that when he remembers her it is with great sorrow, for she is now in trouble and poverty, and thanks the admiral for the great honour he offers him.

1 anything. 2 and affection. 3 vnto. 4 and Dominions. 5 entirely. 6 from. 7 vpon. 8 had well. 9 Fol. cxiii. col. 1. 10 omitted. 11 seeing.
The admiral demands of Huon, why his wife is in such distress, and what
Christian prince is so bold as to trouble him. Huon tells how
he left his city of Bordeaux besieged by the Emperor of
Germany, who had taken the city, and cast his wife into prison.

The admiral bids Huon take comfort; he will come to
his aid, and make war on the Emperor with all his forces,
and oblige him to make full restitution.

But Huon desires not to shed Christian blood,
but to visit the holy sepulchre, and then, on returning to his own country, to
rescue his wife from danger.

His wife was the daughter of Gaudys, the admiral of
Babylon and Egypt.

you well excusyd. But I praye you shew\textsuperscript{1} me for what cause youre wyfe is in suche case / or what chrysten prynce is so hardy\textsuperscript{2} to troubyll you or\textsuperscript{3} do you any dyspleasure? 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'when I came out of\textsuperscript{4} my countree I lefte my citye of Burdeaux besegyd by the
emperour of Almayne / who hath taken my citye and slayne my men, and some\textsuperscript{5} kepeth in saryauge, and
my wyfe set\textsuperscript{5} in pryson, and there kept in great synte and mysery / the whiche when I remembre,
sorowe\textsuperscript{6} so\textsuperscript{7} grypethe my harte, that all my membres\textsuperscript{8} trymbelythe for\textsuperscript{9} dyspleasure / 'Huon,' quod the admiral, 'I praye you\textsuperscript{3} leue your sorowe and dys-
plesure and cast it fro you, and take Ioye and comforte / for by the holy lawe that I haue resseyuyd, I shall so
ayde and socoure you, that the emperoure who hath
done\textsuperscript{1} you so many dyspleasures, I shall make hym\textsuperscript{16} suche warre, that whether he wyl or not,\textsuperscript{10} the
damage and losse that ye haue had,\textsuperscript{11} I shall constrainyde hym to
make full restytucyon / for I shal lede with me in your
company such nombre of people, that all the valeys and 20
mountaynes shall be coueryd withe people.'\textsuperscript{12} 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of the curtesye & socours that ye offer me
I humblye thanke you / but yf it please our lorde\textsuperscript{13}
Iesu Chryste, who hathe aydyd me out of many 24
parelles / I hope he wyll so ayde me that I shall not
nede to make\textsuperscript{14} warre and to dystroye\textsuperscript{15} the chrystene
blode / but, syr, fyrrste I wyll\textsuperscript{17} go to the holy sepulture /
& then I wyll retourne into my countre / and do what 28
I can to get my wyfe out of daunger and of\textsuperscript{15} the
payne that she is in / syr, the wyfe that I haue
weddyd was doughter to the admyrall Gaudys who
helde as then Babylon and all the realme of Egypte.'\textsuperscript{32}

Then Huon shewyd hym all the mater howe he came

\textsuperscript{1} vnto.  \textsuperscript{2} as.  \textsuperscript{3} to.  \textsuperscript{4} hee.  \textsuperscript{5} put.
\textsuperscript{6} and greefe.  \textsuperscript{7} sore.  \textsuperscript{8} and raynts.  \textsuperscript{9} with.
\textsuperscript{10} for.  \textsuperscript{11} and receiued.  \textsuperscript{12} them.  \textsuperscript{13} and Saviour.
\textsuperscript{14} any.  \textsuperscript{15} omitted.  \textsuperscript{16} Fol. cxiii. col. 2.  \textsuperscript{17} shall.
by the fayre Esclaramonde / wherof the admyrall was
sore abasshydde for the great maruaylls that he\(^1\) hard
Huon declare, and so were al other that harde it,
and sayde one to another, that without that\(^2\) Huon
had bene welbelouyd with\(^3\) our lord Iesu chryst, he
could neuer haue scapyd the deth with one of the lefte
adventures that he had shewyd vnto the admerall.

8 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the Emperoure of almayne hath
taken my cite and my wyfe, and destroied my men /
and hathe taken in to his handys all my lordys and
sygnoryes / but by the grace of god I shall do so
12 moche to get them agayne / and yf I can not attayne
thereto, then I shall retourne agayne to\(^4\) you to haue
your socoure and ayde.' 'Huon,' quod the admerall,
'put all melancholy fro you / for yf ye gyue me know-
16 lege that ye canne not haue your wyll of this Emperour /
I shall brynge you people innumerable / that all
chrystendom shall tryamble for fere of you / and I\(^2\)
shall render to\(^4\) you your wyfe and all your londis,\(^5\)
20 and your men that be in pryson or in saruage, &
I shall put the Emperour into your handis to do with
hym youre pleasure, elles I shall not lene in all his
lande neyther cite nor towne standynge vpon the
24 erthe.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke you
hartely / but, syr, I muste worke another waye fyrste /
for\(^6\) when I scapyd fro the goule of Perce I promysyd
to\(^4\) god, that or\(^7\) I went into m[y]ne\(^8\) owne countrie to
28 go and vyset the holy sepulture in Ierusalem, and to
make warre vpon the sarasyns, or\(^7\) I made any warre
vpon any chrystyn men / but, syr, yf I may get of the
emperour by fayre speche my londe and my wyfe,
32 I shall serue hym with good\(^9\) harte; for as long as I
leue, I shall make no war against any chrystyn man yf

Huon relates how he came by the fair
Esclaramonde, and all who heard it marvelled greatly.

\(1\) hadde.  \(2\) omitted.  \(3\) of.  \(4\) vnto.
\(5\) and Signories.  \(6\) Fol. cxiii. back, col. 1.  \(7\) before.
\(8\) mone in text.  \(9\) all my.
I may haue ryght and reason shewyd to me / 'syr,' quod the admerall, 'of this that ye say I can you good thanke / but by the grace of god I shall go with you the vyage to the holy sepulture, and take with me 4 l.M. men to make war agaynst the paynyms and sarasyns suche as bylenethe not in god, and I shall put to my payne with all my powre to exalte and encrease the law of Iesu chryste.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'ye haue 8 sayd nobeyle; yf ye do thus great grace and glory parpetuall ye shall deserue / wherby ye shalbe crownyd aboue in the imperyal heueyn.' Now leue we to speke of this mater.

How the admerall of Perse assembelyd moche people, and he & Huon, with all his armye, toke the see and came to the port before the citye of Angory, whereas they founde a great nombre of paynyms & sarasyns redy to defende the porte.

After that the admerall and Huon had deuysid to gether of many thyngys / the admerall sent out his letters and breves commanodygethrough Perse, and made men of warre to be redy; and gaue them a day to be redy to go with hym, sertefyenge them that his nauy of shyppes shulde be redy for the transportynge of hym and of them / the whiche was done, and euery man came at the day that was assyngnyd. in the mean season Huon and Barnard wente often tymys together and vysytyd the citye of Tauris, where as moche

1 vnto. 2 giue. 3 thus do. 4 out. 5 Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2. 6-6 and Media. 7 omitted.
honoure was made to them / wherof Huon and Barnard oftentymys thankyd god of the good ad-
venture that he had sente them. Thus as ye hau
had the admiral of Perce assembelyd great nombre
of people, and made hym redy & enteryd into his
shyp, and all other in to dyuers shypys, and shypyd
theyr armure and horsys; Huon, who desyryd to ples
the admyrall, toke hys owne lytell shyp and dys-
chagyde it, and toke all the presoyse stonys & dyd put
them into another shyp, the whiche ye admyrall had
delyueryd to serne hym. then he sayd to the admyrall,
syr, I know wel4 the lytell shyppe that I came in
hether is not to serue in the warre, & therfore, syr, as
it is, I do gyue it you / wherof the admyarH had
great ioye, for in al the worlde ther was none such
of beautye nor of ryches. Then Huon gau the
admyrall a busheU of the stones, and to the lordys
together, and they thankyd Huon of his curtesye
and larges / of all the stones he kepte to his owne vse but
and gaue awaye all the resydewe. Then he
enterid into the shyp that was apoyntyd for hym / and
then euery man enteryd in to theyr shypys, the
whiche were well furnysshyd and vytylayd / then ye
admyrall toke leue of his daughter, & theyryd vp
anes and lyft vp the saylys, and they had suche
good wynde that a none they were far fro the porte ;
a goodly syght it was to behold the nauy / for at theyr
departying, they made such noyse with trompettys and
tabours & horns that all the see rangethe rherof /
great ioye had Huon & Barnarde of the grace that god
hadde sent them / so longe they saylyd with wynde
and sayle, that they enteryd in to the great see of

1 vnto. 2 a. 3 and. 4 that. 5 for the wars. 6 his. 7-7 who pitifully wept at her Father's departing. 8 then they. 9 hoyesed. 10 Fol. cxv. col. 1. 11-11 Drummes. 12 did ring. 13 and gladnesse. 14 good.

Huon, to please the admiral, discharged his own
little ship, took out of it all the precious stones, and
put them into another ship, which the admiral
gave him.

To the great joy of the admiral, Huon gives him
his beautiful boat.

To the admiral and the lords Huon gives a
bushel of the precious stones, keeping for his
own use but three hundred. He entered the
ship appointed for him; all the rest like-
wise embark.

The admiral takes leave of his
daughter; the anchors are
weighed, the sails
spread, and a fair
wind drives them
quickly from the
port.

The departure of
the ships was a
goodly sight.
They enter the Caspian Sea, and see afar off the city of Angore. Its admiral was powerful and rich, and, seeing from one of the towers of his palace, so vast a navy advancing, wondered greatly. He knew the Persian ships by their banners, but he saw in the forecastles banners of white with red crosses.

He gives orders that every man in the city should arm and prevent the Christians from landing. The noise and confusion in the city was so great that the admiral of Persia and Huon, and all with them, could hear it.

The admiral sees they will meet great resistance at their landing. Huon enquires what people possess the city.

Caspy, & then they saw a fare of a citye stondynge by the see syd, callyd the citye of Angore, wherin there was an admiral ryght pusaunt and ryche / and the same tyme he was in one of the towres of his palays, when he sawe so pusaunt a nauey come saylynge towards his citye / he had great maruayle / for he knewe well the shyppis were of Perce by the penons and baners that he sawe waunge in the shyppis, and on the other parte he saw in y toppes and forecastelles baners stondynge, all of whyght, and therin red crosses / then he sayd to his lordis that were abought hym / syrs, I am greatly abasshyd what meanethe the yonder great flete: syn this citye was won by Reyngnalte of Mountaban / there came neuer chrysten man here / and I haue more maruayle to se the baners and arme of Perce which thes chrysten men do bere in theyr shyppis / then he went downe and pulpysshyd in the citye that every man shuld arme them and go to the port to defend that the chrysten men shuld not londe there / then the crye and larum began in the citye so great and orryble, with the noyse of hornes and busyns, trumptetts and tabours so that the noyse of them range vpon the see, so that the Admyral of Perse, and Huon, and such as were on the see myght well here them / Then the admyrall sayd to Huon / syr, I se well at our londeynge we shall haue great batayle and resystence / syr, quod Huon, I pray you what people be they that haue that citye in gydyng, and who is lorde thereof? Syr, quod the admyrall, knowe for trouthe this citye is

1 faire. 2 dwelt. 3 his. 4 and, 5-5 and perceiued such a. 6 omitted. 7 so fast. 8 and was sore dismayd and abashed. 9 vpon. 10 vnto. 11 dismayd and. 12 seeing. 13 the Admyrall. 14 it. 15-15 Trumpets and Drummes, Hornes, and Basons. 16 and perceiue. 17 that. 18 Fol. cxv. col. 2.
great and well peopled / they bylue ne in god / and a\^1 .xx. yeris passyd, this citye was wonne by a lorde Fraunce callyd Reyngnalte of Mountaban, and he made it to be chr[y]stenyd; and then at\^1 .viii. yeris after, it was wonne agayne vpon the\^2 chrysten men by the admvrallis son: the which admvrall was lord therof when it was won. And nowe agayne they be all paynyms and Saraysyns as ye maye se vpon the see syde, they ar redy to abyde for vs and to defende theyr porte.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘we ought greatly to thanke our lorde Iesu chryst of this fayre adventure / when we se before vs the enemyes of our chrysten faythe / & by the grace of \^3 Iesu \^4 this daye we shall do so moche that the citye and the inhabytauntes therin shal be in our handys to vse them at our pleasure’ / ‘syr,’ quod the admvrall / \^5 ‘god’ gyue\^7 grace that it may so be\^8 / great grace our lorde god shall do to\^9 vs, yf we maye wynne this citye.’ Then the admvrall causyd his men to be armyd / \^10 then they sawe halfe a lege fro the citye a porte or haunyn / the which was not kept nor defendyd, bycause the admvrall of Angory wold not Issue out farof fro his citye, tyll\^11 he sawe what countenaunce the chrysten men wolde make. Then the admvrall of Perce and Huon auanmsyd them selfe so forwarde, that they caste out they[r] ancrees and launycz out theyr botys well garnysshyd with men, archers and crosbowes, so that they lonyd at this porte\^12 without any danuer. Then the shyppys drewe to the londe & \^13 vnschyppyd theyr armure and horses, & so every man lonyled excepte suche as were syngned\^14 to keepe the shyppes / then every man lept\^15 on\^16 theyr horses and ordanyd iii. batayles / the fyrbste was led by duke\^2 Huon, and

\^1 about. \^2 omitted. \^3 our Lord and Sauior. 4 Christ. \^5 I beseech almyghtie. \^6 to. \^7 vs the. \^8 be so. \^9 vnto. \^10 and. \^11 vntill. \^12 in saugard &. \^13 Fol. cxv. back. col. 1. \^14 assigned. \^15 mounted. \^16 vpon.
With hym. xx.M. men of hault and hye corage; the second was led by a great lorde of Perce, who was marshall of the hoste / the thyorde, gydyl the admyrall of Perce / who rode fro ranke to ranke, admonesshyng 4 his men to do theyr deouers valyauntly; then a soft pase they drew in batayle towards the citye.

† How the admerall & Huon toke the porte and fought with the admyrall of Angorie, 8 and discomfytid hym, and toke the citye / and how after2 Huon went in to the desertys of Abillant to sorche adventures.

Ca. C.xxx. 12

When the admiral of Angore saw that the Christians had lanted, he divided his men into four parties.

The two hosts met together with such force that the bright sun waxed dark.

And many a knight was killed under the horses' feet.

When the admiral of Angore saw that the Christians had landed, he divided his men into four parties. The two hosts met together with such force that the bright sun waxed dark, and many a knight was killed under the horses' feet.

Hen the admiral of Angore saw and parsayuyd that the chrysten men had taken londe, and were readly to gene bataile, and were comynge towards the citye, he ordanyd and rengyd his bataylis, & denydyd them in four partys, and set them to be led and gydyl by such as he thought best; then he auau??cyd forwarde and was to the nombre of 20 L.M. men / when these .ii. hostis saw eche other, there was none of them but that feryd the dethe / the day was fayre & clere, & so they aprochyd, and al at a frusshe of both partyes dasshed together in suche wyse, that by reason of the powder & dust that rose by theyr horses, the sonne that was fayre and bright waxed darke, and the shote of both partyes flew so faste and as thicke as thoughe it had snowed / at theyr fyrste metynge, many sperys were broken, and many a knyght borne to the erthe, so that they could neuer releue after, but laye on the ground amonge the horse fete, and there dyed in doloure / there were manye

1 endeauours. 2 afterward. 3 Fol. cxv. back, col. 2. 4 to. 5 rush. 6 on. 7 did rise. 8 be releueed.
horses rynynge abrode traylynge theyr brydel after them, and theyr maysters lyeng in the blude & myre / great slaughter there was made on bothe partyes / and 

4 Huon, who went brekinge ye great presses, where as he slewe so many paynymys that every man feryd hym, he sawe where the admryall of Angoryes nephue was who had slyne a christen knyghte / they ran eche at other 

8 so freslye, that the paynym brake his spere vpon Huon; and Huon faylyd hym not, but gaue hym so marueylous a stroke that his spere passed thruinge his body, and so fell to the erth and dyed / then Huon 

12 ran at another and gaue hym suche a stroke that 

he persyd thrughe his shylde and body / and with drawynge out of the spere, he fell to the erth, and neuer relyuyd after / and so the iii. and iii. he saruyd in 

16 lyke maner, and dyd so that he slew .viii. or his spere brake, then he drewe out his good sword / therwith he dyd suche dedes that it was ferefull to beholde hym / he cutte legges and armes, and rasyd of 

20 helmes so that none of his enmyes durste aproche nere hym / but they fledde before hym. as ye byrde dothe before the hauke, he brake asonder the thyke presses; he dyd so to be feryd that his enmyes left 

24 hym / for he neuer stroke man with a full stroke but he was slyne. Also with hym was Barnarde his cosyn, who euer folowyd hym & dyd meruaylous in armes, for he was a sharp and an eger knyght. 

Also the admryall of Angory enforsyd hym selfe to do domage to ye christen men / he sawe were the admryall of perce was slynyge of his men / and came and ranne at hym; and the admryall of perce sawe hym & 

Huon encounters the nephew of the admiral of Angore, and slays him. 

After Huon had slain eight of the paynims, his spear broke, but he did fearefull deeds with his good sword. 

Barnard followed Huon, and worked marvels in the fight. 

The admiral of Angore attacked the admiral of Persia;
each bore the other to earth,

but they were separated by their men.

The force of the Saracens was so great that the admiral of Persia could not remount, and was obliged to fight on foot.

He was rescued by Huon and Barnard.

Huon kills the admiral of Angore,

encounteryd with hym by such force\(^1\) that eche of them bare\(^2\) oder to the erth / then q\([u]\)ycly they releuyd them\(^3\) with theyr swerdes in there handes, wylylynge eche\(^4\) of them to slee\(^5\) other / y\(^6\) whiche had 4 bene done in dede, &\(^6\) there men had not come and socouryd them / but theder came so many of\(^7\) bothe partyes that the .ii. admiralles had no power on\(^8\) them to towche\(^2\) other ; weth great force came theder Paynyms 8 and Sarasyns so that the cristen men coude not remount vp agayne the admiral of Perce / but was fayne to fyght a fote / and had bene in great iopandy\(^9\) and\(^6\) Huon and Barnarde had not come and rescuyd 12 hym ; they came theder hastely when they harde the showtynge and cryenge that was made aboute the admiral of Perce / and they brake a brode\(^10\) the great prese of the paynyms. And when they sawe Huon 16 aproche nere\(^11\) them they were sore afrayde /\(^12\) they knewe hym \(^13\)well, and departyd,\(^14\) and sperclyd\(^15\) a brode, and durste not abyde / and Huon, seynge y\(^e\) admyrall of Perce a fote amonge his enymyes with his 20 swerde valyauntly defendyng e hymselfe, whiche shulde but lytyl anaylyd yf he had not bene quyckly socowryd /\(^12\)when Huon sawe hym he sayd : ‘ O ryght pusaunte Admyral, haue no doute’ / then Huon toke a spere out 24 of the handes of a paynyme whome he had slayne / and there with he ranne at y\(^e\) admiral of Angory, and gaue\(^16\) so horroryble\(^17\) a stroke that the spere passyd thorowe his body more then a fote / and so\(^18\) fell downe dedde 28 amongst his men / wher of y\(^e\) Paynyms were sore\(^19\) abasshyde when they sawe theyr lorde lye dedde on\(^20\) the erth; \(^12\)then Huon quyckly toke the admiralles

\(^1\) and puissance.  \(^2\) the.  \(^3\) selues.  \(^4\) both.  
\(^5\) each.  \(^6\) if.  \(^7\) on.  \(^8\) one of.  \(^9\) and danger.  
\(^10\) asunder.  \(^11\) vnto.  \(^12\) and.  \(^13\) Fol. cxvi. col. 2.  
\(^14\) parted.  \(^15\) spread.  \(^16\) him.  \(^17\) and so vehement.  
\(^18\) hee.  \(^19\) dismayed and.  \(^20\) vppon.
horse by the rayne\(^1\) and came to\(^2\) the admiral of Perce, where as he was fyghtyng a fote / and sayd, 'syr, \(^3\)lepe on\(^3\) this horse, for the payynyns and Sarasyns ar desconfyed' / 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'blyssed be the oure that\(^4\) ye were borne / for by your excellente prowes I am sawyde and all myn hoste, and haue\(^5\) ouer come myn enemyes, / then the Admyrall mountyde on\(^6\) y\(^e\) good horse, wherof he was ioyful; and so he and Huon and Barnarde delte suche strokes among the Sarasyns / that they were constrainyd to fle and turne there backes / \(^7\)then they were chasyd by such force that they enteryd in to the citye one with a noder / then the christen men slewe the payynymes and Sarasyns, men, women, and chyldrene, that\(^8\) pyte it was to se them lye dedde on\(^6\) heppes in y\(^e\) stretes / so that the bloode of them that were slayne, ranne in the stretes to the horse pastours; fynally by the hey prowes of Huon and by the pusaunce of the admyrall of Perce, the payynyms and Sara\(^9\)syns were discomfyted in the citye of Angory. when the sleynge was sessyd, and that the admyrall and Huon sawe how they had overcome thyr enemyes / they sessyd sleynge of the pepyll / \(^7\)they wente in to the temples, tours, & palysses, where in many payynyms & Sarasyns were withdrawn / they were take to vertue,\(^10\) promysyne to saue thyr lyues yf they wolde leue the\(^11\) law of Macomyte and byleue in\(^12\) Iesu chryest / and so many were chrystenyd, and such as wold not were slayne / when the admyrall and Huon sawe that the citye was become chrystenyd / then th[e]y sette thyr offecyers, prouostis, and baylyes to gouerne the citye, and with them ii.M. persons to kepe y\(^e\) citye. Thus they taryed ther\(^13\) viii. dayes, and mounts the admiral of Persia on his riderless horse.

---

\(^{1}\) of the bridle, \(^{2}\) vnto, \(^{3}\) 3-3 mount vpon, \(^{4}\) euer.
\(^{5}\) vanquished and, \(^{6}\) vpon. \(^{7}\) and. \(^{8}\) great.
\(^{9}\) Fol. cxvi. back, col. 1. \(^{10}\) mercie.
\(^{11}\) false and detestable. \(^{12}\) our Saviour and Redeemer.
\(^{13}\) by the space of.
made ready to depart.

They set forth, leave the Caspian Sea, enter the Euphrates river, and thence pass into the great sea. They coast the desert of Abylante in bright weather and a fresh wind.

Huon and the admiral talk over their adventures, and praise God for their success. The admiral has great desire to see the Holy City. Huon hopes to reach it, but the chief object of his voyage is the destruction of all unbelievers.

The travellers meet with no adventure for eight days.

Huon laments the fate of Esclaramonde.

1 then they made redy to depart, and trussyd & newe wyttelyd theyr shappe / 1then they enterlyd in to theyr shappe, 2 trompetes, and 3 busyns, & tabours made 4 noyes, 5 the mareners weyd vp theyr anres and 4 hyssed vp theyr sayles, & sayled so longe that 5 they were out of great see of caspus, and enterlyd in to the great floude of eufrates / the whiche dissendeth in to the great see / when they were passed the ryuer / they 8 costydd the desertis of abylante / the sesone was fayr and clere, and the wynde freshe. Thus 7 they sayled by this great see, the admyrall and Huon stode at the borde syde of theyr shuppe and demysed 8 of 12 theyr aduentures, & laudyde 9 god of his grace 10 that he had done to 11 them. 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'great desyre I hane 12 to se the holy cytie wher our lord god was crucifyyede and layed in sepulture.' 'syr,' 16 quod Huon, 'by ye grace of god we shall ryght well 13 come theder, & I hope he shall do 14 vs 14 greater grace 15 as to ayede vs to conquere and to 16 dystroye them in our way that blyeneth not on our holy law / for that is 20 the chef 18 entent of our vyage.' Thus they deyssed togydder the space of viii. dayes withoute fyndyng of any aduenture; 1 so on 19 an euynnynge Huon all alone stode lenyng over the shuppe bord / beholding the 24 see, ye which was playne and peasable, then he remembre ye duches Esclaramonde his wyfe / therewith the teres fel 20 downe his vysage, & sayd, 'a, ryght noble lady, when I remembre in 21 what 22 danger I left you in, 28 and in what pouer & mysery ye be in, 23 I hane no 24 membre but that trymblyth for the dysplesure that I

1 and, 2 and the. 3 omitted. 4 great. 5 vntill. 6 the. 7 as. 8 demysed in text. 9 prayed. 10 for. 11 vnto. 12 I hane after admyrall. 13 and shortly. 14 farre. 15 yet. 16 Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 2. 17 all those. 18 cheefest. 19 vpon. 20 ran tenderly. 21 omitted. 22 peril and. 23 nowe. 24 ioynt nor.
am in, and for fere left ye false emperoure cause you to dye or my retoure; then he begane to make great sorwe / than Barnarde, who was not farre from hym, sayd / 'A, syr, ye know well that in all the fortunes and adventures that hath come to you god hath ayed you and sende you from the peryll of death / therefore take comfort to yourself, and laude and pryse god for that he sendeth you / and doute not if ye have perfyte hope and trust in hym he will ayed and comfort you / he never forgeteth them that with good harte serueth hym.' Thus with suche wordes Barnard comforted Huon / then the admyral came and lent downe by Huon / and dyuede togyder of dyuers thynge / the same tyme there rose vp a wynd and a tempest so great and so horryble that the sayles were broke in dyuers places, & some masts brake and flye ower the bordes of the shyppe / the see begane to be wode and furious / so that euery man though[i] to haue bene peresshyde: the fortune of this tempest was so horryble / every man / devoutly called vpun our lorde god to saue them fro that peryll. 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shewe me what countrie is yonder that I see before me, we were happy and we myght aryue there and cast our ancrs vnder the rocke that I see ther' / 'syr,' quod y Admyrall, 'we are aryued at an yll port, for we be nere to the deserts of abylante; on yonder mountayne that ye see is conversant an enemy, who hath causyd many a shyppe and vesseyll to be drowned in this see, wherby we be all in great adventure to be lost / for none can aproche to this rocke / but that he is slayne & stranglyd by the

---

1 ere. 2 and greefe. 3 but. 4 vnto. 5 saue. 6 good. 7 and. 8 about. 9 and sundrie. 10 omitted. 11 rough. 12 as. 13 the. 14 and danger that they were in. 15 Fol. cxvii. col. 1. 16 fortunate if. 17 euil. 18 vpou. 19 daunger. 20 slayne after stranglyd.
Every man is much afraid, and the admiral is anxious to withdraw from the place.

Huon must have speech of this enemy; if he displeases him he will strike off his head. The admiral declares that 500 Huons could not resist him.

Huon is determined to visit him;

the admiral tries to dissuade him, but in vain.

Barnard wishes to go with Huon;

enemy that ys there, / then every man was in great fere, and the Admyrall sayd to¹ ye mareners / 'syr, I pray you if it may be let vs draw out of this quarter' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'me thynke ye are to sore² abasshyd / ⁴ for by that lorde that made me to his semblance, I shall neuer haue ioye in³ my harte tyll⁴ I know why that enemy causethe them to perysse ⁵ that pas⁵ this waye / I shall neuer rest tyll I haue spoken with ⁸ hym, and yf he do any thynge contrary to my pleasure, I shall styrke of his hede.' 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'I haue great maruayle of that ye do saye / for yf there were .v.C. suche as ye be / within an owre ye shulde ¹² all be dede and strangelyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'dought not⁶ that / for thoughe I shuld dye in the quarrell, I wyll go se hym and know the cause why he letteth or troublelethe this passage / or⁷ it be .iii. dayes ¹⁶ to an ende I shall go and speke with hym ⁸ what soeuer fortune.'⁸ 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'in you it is to do your owne wyll : ⁹ syn it pleseth I must be content / but yf ye wold beleue me ye shulde not ²⁰ take on¹⁰ you that vyage.'¹¹ 'Syr,' quod Huon, all smylynge, 'I haue my hope¹² in¹³ god ¹⁴ and in ye vyrbyn Mary his mother,¹⁴ who hathe ¹⁵ hether vsyn to¹⁵ sauyd me,¹⁶ and so I hope they¹⁷ wyll do¹⁸ yette / for it is a ²⁴ comune prouerbe sayde,¹⁷ whome that¹⁴ god wyll ayde¹⁹ no man can hurte.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'I praye to¹ our lorde god to defende you fro all yl / and ²⁰ gyue you²¹ grace to retourne agayne in saucarde' / ²⁸ 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you.'²² Then Barnarde rose vp & sayd, 'dere cosyn, I requeyre you²⁰ let me go

¹ vnto. ² dismayed and. ³ at. ⁴ vntill. ⁵ for. ⁶ you. ⁷ before. ⁸ syn it pleseth. ⁹ what fortune soeuer commeth therof. ¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ and enterprize. ¹² and trust. ¹³ almighty. ¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ heretofore. ¹⁶ from death. ¹⁷ he. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxvii. col. 2. ¹⁹ and succour. ²⁰ to. ²¹ the. ²² heartily.
with you' / then the admiral said / 'syr, I desire you\(^2\) to be contente that I and Barnarde maye keep you company, and we shall haue with vs for y\(^e\) more sauegard of our parsones .CCCC. hardy knyghtys' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'by goddys grace I wyll go alone, none shall go with me but my selfe and Iesu Chryste, and his blyssyd mother, in whose sauegard I commyt my selfe' / when Barnard hard that he had great sorowe at his harte, and so had the admryall, when they sawe\(^3\) they coude not tourne hym\(^4\) fro his\(^5\) vyage.\(^6\) Then Huon armyd hym\(^7\) and toke leue of the admryall and of the other lordys, and of Barnard, who made great sorow for his cosyn Huon, who all alone wold go in to the desertes\(^8\); when Huon had taken his leue, he was sette a londe,\(^9\) and made the syngne of the crosse on his breste. Then he mountyd vpon the mountayne, but or\(^12\) he was the halfe waye / a great wynde arose on the see / so that the tempeste was great and orryble / \(^{13}\) so that\(^{13}\) the cordys and cables of the shyppys with the admryall brast asonder / so that\(^{14}\) parforce they were fayne to take the see and sayle at adventure as wynde and wether wolde serue them / \(^{15}\) so that parforce\(^{15}\) they were cast out of that great se, wherof the admryall and Barnarde, and all the other lordys had great fere, and greatly complayned for Huon, who alone without company was mountid on the mountaine; and as he was goynge he lokyd downe into the see / and saw the marueylous tempest that was in the see, so that of .CC. shyppes that he had lefte there with the admryall, he coude then se no more but .ii. together, for al the rest were separate one fro another in great peryll\(^17\) / then he began\(^18\) to wepe

\(^{1}\) and. \(^{2}\) to. \(^{3}\) that. \(^{4}\) Huon. \(^{5}\) dangerous. \(^{6}\) and enterprize. \(^{7}\) self. \(^{8}\) to seke adventures. \(^{9}\) shoare. \(^{10}\) a. \(^{11}\) vppon. \(^{12}\) ere. \(^{13}\) 15—13 whereby. \(^{14}\) omitted. \(^{15}\) 15—15 whereupon. \(^{16}\) Fol. cxvii. back, col. 1. \(^{17}\) and danger. \(^{18}\) pitifully.
He began to weep for his wife Esclaramonde, whom he thought then never more to see. He prayed to God to aid him in his need, and to cause Barnard to reach a haven in safety, and to allow Huon to see his friends again.

and complayne for his wyfe Esclaramonde, whome he thought then neuer more to se, bycause he was in that deserte, and saw the shyppes dreuyyn fro the londe in great fere of lesyng. Then he knelyd downe and held vp his handys to heuen, requyryng our lorde god of his petye and grace to ayde and to gyue hym conforte so that he myght scepe thence alyue / and to saue the shyppes and to bringe them agayne in sauegard to the place fro whence they departyd. Then petuously he complaynyd for his wyfe and doughter, & sayde, 'a, ryght noble lady Esclaramonde, when I remembre the paynes, and dolours, and pouerties, that by my cause ye suffer and haue sufferyd / all my body sweteth for payne & doloure / Alas, I had thought in short space to haue ayded and socuryd you / but now I se well our departynge is come for euermore / in yonder 16 perelous see, I se my cosyn Barnard and dyuers other lordys, that by my cause are in the way of pardyssyon without god to ayde them, whom I humbly requyre to sende them that grace that they may alyue at some porte, and that I may ones see them agayne to the entente that I may fyght agaynste the paynyns and sarasyns in exaltynge the law of Iesu chryst.' Thus Huon of Burdeaux made his prayers to our lorde Iesu chryste.

\[Ca. cxxxi.\]

\[13\] How Huon wente so long in this deserte that he founde Cayine and spake with hym a louge season, and howe he begylid Cayine and departid. Ca. cxxxi.

1 the faire. 2 more after se. 3 vnto. 4 omitted. 5 from. 6 greuously. 7 by. 8 that. 9 doe. 10 and succour. 11 good. 12 once after them. 13 Fol. cxvii. back, col. 2.
After that Huon had thus made his prayers to our lorde god, he rose vp & blyssyd him with ye syngne of ye crosse recommaundynge hym selfe to our lorde god, & so came to the heyth of the mountayne; when he was there al his body trymbelyd with trauycle, so 8 that he was faynte, and feble. Then he lokyd all abought, and saw in a fayre medow a clerke fountayne, thether he went to refresshe and to reste hym / then he layde hym down on the gras to refresshe hym or he wolde drynke, he was so hote / and when he was well colyd he came to the fountayne and dranke a lytyll and was hyshyd his handys and fase / then he went further into the foreste and coude fynde nother towne nor castell, gardayne, nor trees with frute, wherof he was sorowfull, and so serchyd all day to fynde som man or woman, but all was in vayne / & when he saw that the sonne went to rest and coude fynde no creature, 20 he was sore anoyed / he chose out a tree & there layd hy[m] downe & slepte; & in the mornyng when he saw the sonne ryse, and that his beamys spred abrode on the erthe / then he arose and blessyd hym / and so wente forth in to the deserte and found nother man nor woman / beste nor byrde, wherwith he was sore dyspleasaunt / deuoutly he callyd vpon our lorde god Jesu chryst, and on his blessyd mother the vyrgyn Mary, prayenge them to haue in theyr tuissyon his body and sowle / and that he myght yet ones see his wyfe and chylde. He went so long in this

On reaching the top of the mountain, Huon was fainted, and fell down.

He refreshed himself at a clear fountain, and, going further into the forest, could find neither town, castle, gardens, neither were there men nor women.

He was sore annoyed, and laid him down to sleep under a tree.

At sunrise he arose and went into the desert, but met neither man nor woman, beast nor bird. He called on our Lord Jesus Christ and the Virgin Mary to let him see once again his wife and child.
At last he reached a plain, where he saw a tun of oak bound with iron, which rolled about in the circuit of the plain, and beside it, lying on the ground, a great mallet of iron.

As the tun passed by him, he heard a piteous voice within complaining.

He approaches near, and asks who lies within it.

No answer comes forth.

Huon conjures the voice to reply to him.

He who is in the tun replies that Cain is there who slew his brother.

deserte that at last he cam to a playne of a
shote large, and in ye myddes therof he sawe a tonne made of the hart of oke, bound all abought with bandys of Iron / and it euer1 tournyd and rollyd in the playne, and neuer passyéd out of the cyrcuyte of the playne / and besyde the tonne he sawe where there lay the grounde a great mall of iron / great maruayle Huon had3 when he sawe this tonne thus4 rolle abought 8 without sease lyke a tempestes, and as it passyéd by hym5 he hard a petuous6 voice within the tonne sore complaynyngue, and when he had hard it .ii. or .iii. tymys he aprochyd nere to the tonne, and sayd, 'thou 12 that art in this tonne / speke to7 me & shew me what thou art or what thyng thou nedyst8 of, and why thou art put there' / Then when he that was in this9 tonne harde Huon,10 restyd styl & spake no word.11 when 16 Huon sawe that it wold not speke,10sayd / 'what so euer thou art, I conjure ye by hym that creatyd all the worlde, and by his sone our lorde Iesu chryst, whom he sende downe to suffer dethe and passy[n] on the tre of 20 the crosse to redeeme his frendys, who by the synne of Adam and Eue were in lymbo, and by his glorious resurrection, and by his angells and archangels, Cherubyns and Seraphyns, and by all his holy sayntys, 24 I conjure thee to shewe me what thou arte, & why12 thou art set here in this tonne?' when he that was within the tonne hard how sore he was coniuryd, he answeryd and sayde / 'thou that hast coniuryd me, 28 thou doeste great yll13 to cause me to shew the ye temperate / knowe suerly that I have to name Cayme, and sone I was to7 Adam & Eue,14 and am he that slew my brother Abel by false and cursid enuy that I 32

1 omitted. 2 vpon. 3 had after maruayle. 4 thus after abought. 5 Huon. 6 pitifull. 7 vuto. 8 hast neede. 9 the. 10 he. 11 and. 12 and for what cause. 13 euill. 14 Fol. cxviii. col. 2.
had to hym, bycause his oblacyons and dymes that he made to god were exaltyd, and the fume therof went vpwarde to heuyyn / and tho that I made the fume 4 wente downe warde / and when I sawe that, I slewe & monderyd my brother Abell, wherfore, and for the great syn that I haue commyttyd, I am dampnyd to be and to suffer this merterdome with in this tonne 8 wherein I am closyd brynnynge and with serpentys, and todys here within deuouryth me, and yet I can not dye / and here I shall be vnto the day of Iugemente, and then my payne shall be doubelyd / Nowe 12 have I shewyd the thy demand, wherfore I repute the but a folc / when thou art so hardy to enter into this deserte where as neuer man enteryd and departhyd without dethe / for knowe for trouthe hether repayreth 16 .ii. enemyes, fendys of hel, who shall sle the and bere thy sowle into hel without thou wylte do as I shall shewe the frende, quod Huon, ‘I pray the shewe me what it is that thou spekest of, or what thynge 20 thou wylte that I shulde do, and I shall do it to the entent that I may departe hense / there is no thynge in the worlde but I shall do it for the, so thou shewe me the way how I maye departe hens ’ / frede,’ quod 24 Cayme, ‘I shall shew the what thou shalt do: thou shalt take this malle of iron that thou seest there & stryke therwith so long vpon this tonne tyl thou breke it, to the entent that I myght issue out / & 28 when I am deluycryd I shall set ye in saugard in Ierusalem or in fraunce, or in what contre thou wylte wysshe / ye thou do this that I haue sayd, & deluyner me fro this tournement, I shall set ye whersoever thou 32 wylte be, in any lond chrysten or hethen / and ye thou

and is therefore condemned to suffer this martyrdom until the day of Judgment.

None depart from this desert alive,

for it is inhabited by two fiends of hell, who will slay Huon unless he does as Cain shows him.

Huon will do whatever Cain asks him, if only he will show him how to depart thence.

Cain tells Huon to take the iron mallet and strike upon the tun till he break it.

Cain will then be delivered, and will set Huon in whatever country he may wish.

1 vnto. 2 those. 3 burning. 4 deuouring. 5 vntill. 6 as. 7 that. 8 will. 9 from. 10 hast broken. 11 may. 12 soeuer. 13 Fol. cxviii, back, col. 1.
do not this that I haue sayd, or it be nyght I shall cause the to dye with great tormentes, for anone thou shalt se come heder .ii. deylys of hell, fowyll and howdeous to behold, and they shall strangle the & bere thy sowle into hell.’ 2. O, verye god,’ quod Huon, ‘humbely I reynyre the to saue me fro this tourmente/ Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘thou spekyste fayre and sayeste as thou lyste, but I wyll not delyuer the out of this 8 tonne tyll fyrst thou shewe me how I may departe hence’ / then Cayme sayd, ‘yf thou wylt promyse me by thy faythe and by thy parte of paradise to delyuer me out of this tonne / I shall shewe the the maner howe thou shalte scape fro hense.’ ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘haue no dought, and that I promyse the to kepe my faythe / so thou shew me the maner how I may depart out of this deserte, I shal delyuer the out of thy tourmente.’ Then Cayme sayd / ‘thou shalte go by this lyttll pathe that thou seest here by on thy ryghte hande / the whiche shall brynge the strayte to the see syde, the whiche is not far hense / then goe 20 downe the mountayne where as thou shalt fynde a shyp, and therin but one man / but or thou enter into the shyppe, blysse the thre tymys, for he that thou shalte fynde there is a fende of hell / and shewe hym howe thou art Cayme scapyd out of the rollynge tonne, and byd hym to pas the ouer; and saye howe thou wylte go and dystroye the chrysten men that be in the worlde & brynge thyer sowlys into hell / and when he hereth the say thus, he wyll pas the ouer in saucyte / for it is longe synne that he hathe taryed for me / by cause he thynketh I shulde scape out of this tonne. But thou must take with the this mall of 32

---

1 before. 2-2 Ah, good Lorde. 3 and beseech. 4 mee. 5 vntill. 6 from. 7 vpon. 8 and. 9 doest. 10 vnto. 11 that. 12 slay all. 13 Fol. cxviii. back, col. 2.
Iron on thy necke to the entente that he shall the
better byleue the.' 
4 quod Cayme, 'I pray the is this of trouth that thou hast sayd?'/ 'frend,
He is to fasten the iron mallet on his neck, that the man shall the better
believe him.
Hoon is doubtful if this is true; but Cain never
lies.

How Hoon departid fro Caym and passed
28 the see in a veseyle gydyd by the deyull,
who byleuid it had bene Cayme / and
Huon aruyyd at a citye callid Colanders,
where as he found the admiral of perse

---

1 vpon. 2 and surely he will then passe the ouer.
3 seeing. 4 out of this paine and torment. 5 to.
6 from. 7 excepte. 8 vndoe. 9 which. 10 euils.
11 cuil. 12 sure.
and Barnarde his cosyn, who had layd sege to the citye.

Hen Cayme\(^2\) vnderstode Huon, he sayd, 'A, thou false traytoure, by whome I am begylyd and mockyd / thou arte not worthy to be byleuyd in any thyngle that thou sayeste, thou lyest worse than a dogge.' 'O thou false pariuyrd traytoure, thou hast yll kept thy promys, thou art not worthy to be byleuyd, Cayme,' quod Huon, 'other good getteste thou none of me / for thou arte not worthy to be harde, when thou haste slayne thy dere brother by false enuy and cursyd treason wherof thou arte ful / go thy waye, traytoure, to moche yll\(^3\) can not be done to the / be contente with the tonne that thou arte in / thou nedyste not fere of any fresshyng nor of more fourtheryne for me, well hast thou deseryyd it, but within short tyme thou shalt haue worse payne and sorowe.' 'A, traytoure,' quod Cayme, 'and false lyer, thou hast loste thy parte of paradys.' 'Thou lyeste,' quod Huon / 'to the, ought to be kepte nother faythe nor promys, bycause thou haste slayne Abell thy brother, wherfore thou arte nowe poneysshyd, and well hast thou deseryyd it' / 'A, false lyer,' quod Cayme, 'suptylly thou haste deseyuyd\(^5\) me by thy false wordys and subtyltyes / I see well thou shalt\(^6\) go hense and leue me stylly in this payne.' 'Sartayneley,' quod Huon, 'that I promysed the was but to begyle the / for as by me thou shalt not come out without he commaunde it that set the here' / 'well, Huon,' quod cayme, 'knowe for sertayne that in all thy lyfe thou were neuer better counseylyd, for yf thou haddest deleyuede me out in contynente I wolde haue strangled the.' 'A, false

---

\(^1\) Fol. cxix. col. 1. \(^2\) had well. \(^3\) euill. \(^4\) vnto. \(^5\) and mocked. \(^6\) wilt. \(^7\) from. \(^8\) Fol. cxix. col. 2.
fende,' quod Huon, 'yet thou hast no repentance of thyn e yll that thou hast done / I wyl ye my wyne, and thou shalt abyde here styll 2 for euer in 3 payne & 4 tormente' / there with Huon departyd and toke the mall on 4 his neke and enteryd in to the leyll wyne that Cayme had shewyd 5 hym.

"Now we wyll leue spekyng of Huon and speke 8 of the admryall of Perse and of his armuye on 4 the see. On 4 the seconde day the tempete sessyd and the see 6 calme and fayre / then the shyppes drew agayne togyder as it pleysede god, and arnyd at a noble citty, 12 the whiche was as then in armanye called colanders, a great and a fayre citty / but after it was dystroyd by the noble duke ogyer y e danoyse, he went in to ynde / the admryall 7 greatly compleyned for Huon 16 whom they had so lost / they though neuer to se hym more, and Barnarde his cosyn made suche sorowe that 3 pytte it was to se hym; y e Admyrall and all his lorde wepte 8 sore 9 for Huon, they thought ne[ u]er 10 to se hym 20 agayne. But he that oure lorde Iesu crystye wyll haue sauyd can not peryse, for Huon the same tyme came downe the mountayn to come to 5 the porte where as the veseyll laye and the deuyll with in it / when Huon 24 saue the veseyll and the fende with in it, who was so howdeous and horrable to regarde 11 that it was maruayle to se; he semyde well to be the deuyll of hell, his hede was as great as an oxe hede / his eyne more 28 redder then ii. brynynge 12 coles, his tethe greate and longe, and as rought as a beyre, he caste fyre and smoke oute of his gorge lyke a forneyse, 13 it was no meruayl though Huon doutyd hym / for when he saw 32 him so fowle, he had great fere / and so lent hymselfe

1 cuill, 2 for euer after tormente. 3 great.
4 vpon. 5 vnto. 6 waxed. 7 and his companye, 8 and pitifully complayned. 9 sore before wepte.
10 nener in text. 11 beholde. 12 burning.
13 Fol. cxix. back, col. 1.
and made the sign of the cross.

The enemy did not perceive the sign.

Huon entreats God to counsel him how to deal with the fiend;

if he remains in the ship Huon will surely be slain.

If Huon escapes from this adventure, he will go to the Holy Sepulchre and make war on the Saracens.

Then Huon takes heart,

and calls on the fiend to give him passage over the sea.

The fiend refuses to let him go farther, and will certainly slay him and bear his soul to hell.

Huon, in no way abashed, says he is Cain;

to a roke the better to behold hym / then he blyssed hym with the synge of the crosse, recommaundyng he hymselfe to the same garde of our lord Iesu chryst / it fortuned so the same terme that y e enemy sawe hym not. 'A, 3 very god,' quod Huon, 'I praye and requyre the humbly to conseyl me in what maner I shuld trust in this fowle fende who is fereful to beholde, I haue merneyll how I myght be aquentyd with hym, wheder I myght trust to be in the shyppe with hym / sertaynly I haue great dought that he wyll cast me in to the see or elles slee me on the other syde of, y e se I wote not what to do / for I most be faye to trust hym, or elles retourne in to the deserte, where as I shall dey for rage, and neuer se wyfe nor chylde. But syn it is thus I shal aduenture myselfe with hym / and yf I may escape fro this aduenture, I shall go to the holy sepulture wher as our lorde Iesu chryst was quycke and dedde / and then I shal make ware vpon the Saracyns / then duke Huon toke on hym herte and corage, and with y e mal on his neke he marchyd forth fersly / then he callyd the enemy and sayd / 'O thou that kepest this wessell and passage, passe me in contynente ouer this see and sette me a londe on the other syde / when the denyll sawe Huon with the mal on his neke and spekynge so fersly, he sayd, 'what arte thou, wheder wylt thou go, or what dost thou seke for here, or how art thou so bolde to come heder, thou shalt neuer go ferner. But I shal cast the in the see or strangell the, and then bere thy soule in to hell.'

when Huon hard hym, he began to trymeble, but he was no thinge abasshyd / for yf he had fayntyd or taryed to haue made answere he had incontynent be

1 and, 2-2 god, but, 3-3 good Lord, 4 to, 5-5 with famine, 6 more, 7 seeing, 8 vpon, 9 Fol. caix, back, col. 2, 10 beene.
dystroyed and slayne / but lyke a hardy knyght ful of
great prowes, & ferme in the sayth of Iesu chryst, sayd /
'hold thy peace, thou folke / for I am Cayme for whom
4 thou hast taryd here so longe / I came ryght1 now out
of the rollyng tonne vpon the mountayne : hast the
and passe me oner this armes of the see / for I shall
fynd nother man nor woman / that hylceth on2 Iesu
8 chryst but I shall sle hym to the entent that hell maye
be fyllyd with theyr sowles3 / when the fende harde
Huon say so he had great ioye, and sayde / 'Cayme,
whyc haste thou made me tary here so longe as I haue
12 done, I am ioyfull of thy comynge / for I coud never
haue departhyd out of this place without thou haddest
bene delyuerid out of the tonne, theryore, Cayme, come
on thy waye, enter into this shyppe3 / and I shal
16 bryngye the where as thou wylte be / gladly I wyll passe
the oner the see to the ententye that thou shalldest sle
chrysten men and Sarasyns / to haue theyr sowles into
hell / Then Huon enteryd into the shyppe com-
20 maundynges 4 hymselfe to our lorde Iesu chryste : and
sayd, 'quyckley pass ye oner' / or5 Huon thought
that he had bene gone but ii. legys, he was oner on the
other syde, wherof Huon had great maruayle that he
24 was so sone oner, and thankyd our lorde god that he
was out of that daunger : then he toke lene of the
enemy, and sayd, 'farewel, I wyll retorne againy
shortely, within these thre dayes thou shalt heere
28 tydynges of me' / 6 then the fende answered shortly
and sayde, 'Cayme, go thy waye quyckely, & hast the
7 to the entent that when thou retournyst into hell, thou
shalte have good chere of our maysters, who greatly
32 desyreth thy comynge7 / then Huon departyd quyckely /
the fient must
give him passage, and then will
Cain slay all
Christians.

The fient joyfully
invites Cain to
enter the ship:
he will gladly
take him over
the sea.

Very quickly the
ship arrives at
the land on the
other side of the
sea, and Huon thanks
God for his
deliverance.
He takes leave of
the fient,
promising to
return in three
days.

Huon departed
quickly, and
approached the
city of Colanders.

1 even. 2 in. 3 presently. 4 recommending. 5 Before. 6 and. 7 Fol. cxx. col. 1. 8-8 and he.
and in the evening entered it with the mallet on his neck.

The Saracens marvelled to see him come alone on foot, and armed,

and demanded of him who he was.

He is Cain, come to destroy all who believe in the law of Jesus Christ.

callyd Colanders / glad was Huon when he had loste the syghte of the spryghte and in the eymynge he entryd into the citye of colanders with the mall on his necke / the paynims and Sarasyns within the citye had great maruayle when he cam alone afote clene armyd into the citye / and amonge other there was one demaundid of hym what he was and why he wente so alone armyd / then Huon answeryd hym fersly to abasshe hym therwith, and sayd, ‘I am Cayme who by myne ylnes slew Abell my brother, wherwith god was angery with me / but or it he longe tyme I shall take suche vengaunce that as many men, or women, or chyldren, as I fynd byleuynge in the lawe of Iesu chryst, I shall dystroye them all in such wyse that the paynysms and Sarasyns shal haue no dought for any yll that they shall do to them / for I shall dystroye and sle them all, nother sparynge olde nor young’ / when the paynysms harde that they were joyfull / and that nyght saruyd well Huon and made hym great feste, bycause they trustyd that he shulde dystroye all chrystendome, and sayd amonge them selues that he was as then welcom thether bycause the citye was besegyd the day before by the admyrall of Perce / thus Huon had great ioye & feaste made to hym; and after supper he was broughte to a ryche chambre wherein he laye and slept the nexte mornynge.

¶ 14 How Huon had great ioye when he sawe the admyrall of Perce before Colanders where he foughte with the Sarasyns.

Ca. C.xxxiii.

1-1 euill Spirit. 2 vpon. 3 that were. 4 before. 5 euill. 6 vnto. 7 right. 8 well after Huon. 9 as then after that. 10 into. 11 faire and. 12 soundly. 13 vntill. 14 Fol. cxx. col. 2. 15 of Bourdeaux.
After that ye admiral of Perce had lefte Huon in the deserte of abylaunt & how he had a great storme on ye see, & at ye last there shyppes assemblyd togyder & aryued at the porte before the ceyte of colanders, in the whiche ceyte huon was in / who was ryght 8 joyous when he knewe that ye admricular was come theder to laye sege to the cete, and the admericall was sorowfull bycause they had lost huon, and speseally barnard hys cosyn, for he though neuer to haue seen 12 hym agayne. But he had shortly tydynges of hym as ye shal here after / when the admericall was aryuyd at ye porte, they armyd them & ordeyned there men as well as they myght to assayll the ceyte of colanders. 16 They issuyd out of there shypys & came marchyng towards the ceyte, and made a great assault / then ye payynys armyd them on all sydes and went to the defences / then the chatelyne of ye toune came to 20 huon, and sayd, 'come on forth, cayme, it is tyme for you to shewe what ye can do / for here with out ar the cristene men assaylynge the ceyte / I pray you spare them not, we haue great trust in you' / 'syr, quod 24 huon, 'syn I am in this ceyte ye nedde not to fere any parson, anone ye shall se what I can do' / 'cayme,' quod the capetayne, 'I pray you go on before, and we shall folowe you' / 'well,' quod huon, 'with this mall 28 I shall astone them all' / the paynymes had great joy of his wordes, wenynge surely it had bene cayme / then huon armyd hym / and he hadde a good horse brought to hym, where vpon he mountyd / then he 32 and the paynymes Issuyd out of the citty and found as then the admricular of Perse and all his companie rey
Huon takes no part in the fight, because he had been so kindly welcomed in the city.

He thanks God that once again he beholds the admiral and Barnard, and hopes, with the Lord's aid, to see his wife and child.

The admiral set on his enemies; the slaughter on both sides was great. The men of the city were worsted, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.

The admiral set on his enemies; the slaughter on both sides was great. The men of the city were worsted, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.

When he sawe that the Sarazyns were issuyd out, he set on them fersly, and Huon, who was ioyfull of the adventure that was fallen to him, he stepte out aparte to behold the batayle, and wolde not medyll bycause he had bene so well reseyuyd and feastyd in the citye by them of the towne. And he well parsayuid that the assaultes were of the realm of Perce, and how the admyrall & his cosyn Barnard were there / wherof he hadde suche ioye that he wepte for gladnes, and thankyd god of ye good fortune that he had sent hym, and sayd: O very god, ye ought greatly to be laudyd, for ye neuer fayle them at tyme of nede that serveth you / now I may well saye that with your grasyous ayde yet I shall ones se my wyfe & my chylde / thus Huon sayd to himselfe beholdynge bothe batayles fyghtynge.

Howe the citye of Colanders was taken by the admyrall of perce after he had wonne the batayle, and of the great ioye that was made to Huon when he was knowne by the admeral of Perse and by his cosyn Barnarde.

The admiral set on his enemies; the slaughter on both sides was great. The men of the city were worsted, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.

1 rengyd in batayle. And when he sawe that the Sarazyns were issuyd out, he set on them fersly, and Huon, who was ioyfull of the adventure that was fallen to him, he stepte out aparte to behold the batayle, and wolde not medyll bycause he had bene so well reseyuyd and feastyd in the citye by them of the towne. And he well parsayuid that the assaultes were of the realm of Perce, and how the admyrall & his cosyn Barnard were there / wherof he hadde suche ioye that he wepte for gladnes, and thankyd god of ye good fortune that he had sent hym, and sayd: O very god, ye ought greatly to be laudyd, for ye neuer fayle them at tyme of nede that serveth you / now I may well saye that with your grasyous ayde yet I shall ones se my wyfe & my chylde / thus Huon sayd to himselfe beholdynge bothe batayles fyghtynge.

2 made. 3-3 Ah, good Lord, thou oughtest. 4 prayed. 5 thou. 6 faylest. 7 thee. 8 more. 9 vnto. 10 Fol. cxx. back, col. 2. 11 vpon. 12 made. 13 and Sarazins.
they were constraynedyd to graunt the vyctory to theyr
enemies / the paynymes 1 tourned theyr backes 1 and
fled towards theyr citeye / & the admiral and Barnarde
4 with theyr company chasyd them 2 and slew them, 2
that it was pety to se it / fyually the admiral opressyd
them so sore, that he entryd in to the citeye with
them, and Barnarde & his company / and slewed and bet
8 downe the Sarasyns, that maruayle it was to see / the
blud that ran in 3 the strelys / when the admiral sawe
how 4 he had the vyctory / then he commauadyd to
sece the 2 slayne / and that all suche as wold byleue
12 5 6 on god Iesu chryst, 6 theyr lyues shuld be sanyd and
theyr goodes / and so all such as wold not be christenid
shuld be slayn incontynent and none sparyd, the
which was done / many 7 receuyyd chrystendome, and
16 such 8 as wold not were 9 slayne / thus as this citeye was
taken; then Huon, who 10 enterid into the citeye with
the admiralles men, came to the palays, where as
he sawe the admiral and all the barons, & Barnarde
20 his cosyn / Huon had styl his malle in 11 his necke /
12 when he came into the hal he dyd 13 of his helme and
salutyd the admiral & all the other that were there;
when the admiral and his lordys sawe Huon, the 14 ioye
24 that they had no man 15 can tel. ' O ryght 16 vertuous
knayght,' quod the admiral, ' your comyng doth so
reioys me that I can not tell whether I dreme or not,
ye ar moche bounde to 17 god that he hath theuen you
28 y 6 grace to saue you fro perell / ; then the admiral /
enbracyd Huon ; and ye may well knowe that Barnarde,
his cosyn, had great ioye, & so had all the other / 12 then the admiral sayd to 17 Huon, ' syr, I pray you
32 shew me what adventyres ye have had syn ye departyd

1-1 retired, 2-2 omitted, 3 through, 4 that.
5 Pol. cxxi. col. 1. 6-6 in our Lorde God. 7 of them.
8 as many. 9 receive were all. 10 was. 11 vpon.
12 and. 13 put. 14 great. 15 tongue.
16 deere and. 17 vnto
fro vs ’ / then Huon shewyd them all as ye haue harde here before, and how he scapyd / when the admiral and other vnderstode Huon they were neuer so1 abasshyd in all theyr lyfe / of that he was so scapyd fro the 4 handys of the deuyll, and sayd how2 he was moche bounde to3 god ; they were al glad4 of the comyng of Huon, and speyally Barnarde / then the capetayne of the citye, who had newly receyuyd chrystendome, came 8 to3 Huon, and sayd / ’syr, I requyre you5 desyre the admiral to be my goode lorde6 / for I promyse7 faythefully to abyde here in this toune as his good and trew seruaunt, kepyng 8fermely the chrysten faythe, 12 the whiche I haue newly receyuyd ’ / when Huon saw the capetayne who had receyuyd hym in to his house at his fyrste comyng in to the citye, he wente to3 the admiral, and sayd / ’syr, I requyre you to gene the 16 kepyng of this citye to3 this noble man &6 to holde it as his owne, and to do homage to3 you for it’ / ’syr,’ quod the admiral, ’al that ye wyll I am agreable vnto ; I graunt it hym for the loue of you ’ / Then Huon 20 thankyd the admiral / the capetayne, seynge the great and ryche gyfte that the admiral had geuen3 hym for the loue of Huon, he had great maruayle of ye7 great larges and courtesy that was done to3 hym by meanes 24 of Huon / 10then he knelyd downe before them and thankyd them, and dyd homage to3 the admiral in the presence of all the lordys,11 and promysid trewly to kype the citye agaynst all men that wold do any 28 domage therunto, nor neuer to yeld it vp to3 any parsone but alonly to the admiral or to3 hym that shall haue his comyssyon / thus12 ye8 citye of Colanders was taken.

1 amazed and. 2 that. 3 vnto. 4 and right ioyfull. 5 to. 6 and Maister. 7 promised. 8 Fol. cxxi. col. 2. 9 he. 10 and. 11 and barons. 12 as yee haue heard.
How the admiral of Perce and Huon of Burdeaux, and all their hoste, passyd by Antyoche and by Damas & came to the citye of Ierusalem to the holy sepulture, & was nobly receyuid be the kyngle of Ierusalem / and how the Soudans messenger came and defied the admyrall of perce.

Ca. C.xxxv.

Hen the admiral and Huon sawe this citye thus wonne and brought vnder their obeysaunce, and had stablysshed there a newe lorde and capetayne, and set prouostis, and baylyffes, and other officers / then they toke aduyse together and determinyd, syn they were alone, to send backe agayne theyrr nauey of shyppes into Perce / & they to go by londe to the citye of Ierusalew / for they had fro thence as they were but x. 3 journeys unto antyoche / and so to pas by that citye, and then to Damas, & then to Ierusalew, and there to do theyrr offerynge; and yf by aduenture they founde in theyr waye other kyngis or admyrallis that wolde let or trouble them in theyr passynge, they sayd they were of pusans suffycient to resyste agaynste them / and then they sayde how fro Jerusalem the admyrall myght retourne by lond into Perce / vnto the ryuer Eufrates / and there his nauey to mete hym, & so to conuay hym to his citye of Tauris /

They themselves were of sufficient might to resist any kings or admiralis who should trouble them in their way.

From Jerusalem the admiral could returne by land to Persia; his navy could meete hym at the river Euphrates and conveye hym to Tauris, and Huon could returne to France by water from Jaffa.

The admiral and Huon determine to send back their ships to Persia, and to go by land to Jerusalem through Antioch and Damascus.

They concludyd to do / the which aduyce was laudyd of all the lordys of the hoste; afther this conclusyon thus taken / the admyrall

1 Fol. cxxi. back, col. 1.  2 omitted.  3-3 dayes journey.  4 vnto.  5 so.  6 that.  7 and praised.
8 and Barons.
9 Fol. cxxi. back, col. 2.

CHARL. ROM. VIII.
The ships, after setting ashore the things necessary for the journey by land, are discharged, commanded his shypis to be dyschargyd of all thynge necessary to be caried by londe / the whiche was done dylygently1 / theyr horses were sette a londe, and theyr tentys and pauylyons trusyd vpon mulys, & 4 Coummelies, and Dromedaryes / the which caryag semyd a great host, there were so many together / the noyse and brute that they made semyd to be a newe worlde / when al the shyppis were dyschargyd, the patrons & maysters of the shyppis toke theyr leue of the admyrall, who commanded them expressly to abide for hym in the ryuer of Eufrates / and so they dyd.3 Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them and turne to 4 ou[r]5 fyreste 6 mater. 7 When these shyppis were departyd & euery thynge trusyd / then ye 8 admyrals commanuyd thrughe 7 all the countrie that all marchantis and other able to do it shulde sende after his host brede, wyne, 16 and flesche, and bysket to vytell his host / and the charge to se this done was genyn to the newe admyrall of 8 Colanders / the whiche he dyd dylygently / when the admyrall of Perce saw 9 tyme to departe, he made it 20 to be cryed 10 thrughe 7 the city by a trompent 11 euery man to 12 make hym redy to depart ye next mornyng to go whether it pleasid ye admyrall; this was done, so that 13 an owre before the next day there was great 21 brute & noyse made in the remouynge; then ye admyrall & Huon made them redy, & mountyd on 14 theyr horsis & issued out of the citye and enterid into the feldis / then the hole hoste toke ye way towards Antioche; 28 of theyr iournys I make no reherasale: they 15 did 15 so that they passyd by low Armanye & by the hye 16ermynye, and so on 14 a mondaye they came before Antycohe / where as they logyd that nyghte a longe 17 32

1 according to his commanuement. 2 and, 3 accordingly. 4 vnto. 5 out in text. 6 former. 7 out. 8 the citie of. 9 his. 10 proclaimed. 11 that. 12 should. 13 at. 14 vpon. 15—15 road forth. 16 Fol. cxxii. col. 1. 17 by.
the ryuer\(^1\) without that any parsone of the citye made any semblaunt to trouble or to let them / but they brought out of the citye into ye host brede, flesshe,\(^2\) and wyne, and othe[r]\(^3\) thyngys necessary for theyr meny\(^4\) / wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght Ioyous,\(^5\) and coude\(^6\) them great thanke / and for that courtoysse the admyral wolde not suffer that any of his hoste shulde do any hurte or domage to\(^7\) any parsone of the citye / then the next daye when they had dyuyld, they toke theyr waye toward the citye of Damas / and as they wente thetherwarde they toke sartayne townes 12 and castelles, and brought them vnder theyr obey-saunce / and such as were taken parforce and wolde not blyene in our 8 lorde god\(^8\) Iesu chryste incontynent\(^9\) were\(^10\) slayne.\(^11\) Thus wastynge and dystroyenge the 16 countrie in theyr waye, at laste they came before the citye of Damas; when they came theyr logyld about the citye in the gardaines and subbarbes, and constraynyd them within the citye to brynge them 20 vtyayles / ye whiche they dyd for dought of the dystroyenge of theyr gardayns and frutys there; they laye one nyght, and the nexte daye they toke the way to Ierusalem, and had dyuers batayles by the waye / 24 but they were of so great a pusaunce that none coude resyst\(^12\) them; so longe rode this chrysten host that they came and logyld before Napelous, and there lefte theyr hoste, then the next monnynge the admyrall and 28 Huon, and dyuers of the great lordys\(^13\) of Perce,\(^14\) departyd fro Napelous, to the nombre of foure thousande\(^15\) knyghtis to accompany\(^16\) them into the citye of Ierusalem / thether they came abought none, where and encamped by the river, supplied with food by the men of the city.

In gratitude for this, no man harmed any person of the city.

The next day they went towards Damascus, and on their way took possession of certain towns and castles.

At Damascus they lodged in the gardens and suburbs, and obliged those within the city to furnish supplies.

The next day they set out for Jerusalem, fighting many battles by the way, but none could resist their power. They next lodged before Nablous, and Huon, the admiral, and about 4000 of the great lords of Persia, reached Jerusalem at noon on the next day.

---

\(^1\) side. \(^2\) flesshe after wyne. \(^3\) othem in text. \(^4\) companie. \(^5\) Ioyfull. \(^6\) gane. \(^7\) vnto. 
\(^8\)–\(^8\) Sauiour and Redeemer. \(^9\) they. \(^10\) all. 
\(^11\) and brought to vttre ruine and destroyed. \(^12\) against. 
\(^13\) and barons. \(^14\) accompanied with them. \(^15\) valiant. 
\(^16\) guard. \(^17\) Fol. cxxii. col. 2.
They were joyfully received by the king, and the patriarch, and the arch-priest.

They made their offerings to the Holy Sepulchre, and when they had accomplished their holy pilgrimage, all were splendidly feasted at the palace.

As they sat at dinner, a Saracen entered;

he was a messenger sent by the sultan to challenge the admiral to battle between Rame and Jaffa.

as they were receyuyd with great joy of kyng Thibault and of the patryarke & arche pryst, who as then were in Jerusalem / whom ye emperour Constantyne had lefte there and orderyd for the kepyng of the citye; when the admyrall of Perce, and duke Huon, & Barnarde, and other went and offeryd to the holy sepulture / then they went to the temple of Salamon and to the holy temple of Symeon, where as they made their offerynges / and the next day they dyd their other pylgremages to all the holy plases in the citye with great deuosyon and reuerence; when they had accomplisyed their holy pylgremages, they retournyd to the paleyse of the kyng of Jerusalem, where as they were greatly festyd and honerably receyuyd, of their seruyce I wyll make none acontyte / but one thynge I dare well saye, that there was neuer admyrall nor kyng better seruyd / and as they sate at dyner / there enteryd a sarasyn fowle and blacke, callyd Trampoyngnyfle, the whiche is as moch to say as Balaach. Then he sayd ahye before the table / the same god that made the fyrmament, and that downe to vs he sent his holy profyt Mahomet to teche vs his holy law / he saine and kepe Saphadin ye sowdan of Babylon and of Egypte, & may confound them that be his enemyes / to the admyrall of Perce & of Mede; the sowdan sendeth the worde by me / that wro[\text{n}]g­fully and without cause thou goest & dystroyest his countre & his people without geuyng hym any knowlege why thou dost soo / & therfore by me he sendeth ye word by me that am his secrete messenger, that he wyl assyng to ye day of batayle, that is a thursday nexte comyng, betwene Rame and Iaffe / whares there is a playne countre / and he wyll thou

1 the Citie of. 2 vnto. 3-3 omitted. 4 Admyrall after kyng. 5 not. 6 vpon. 7 Fol. cxxii, back, col. 1. 8 that.
knowyst for sartayne that ye he take the, thou shalt be hangyd & flayne all quycke,¹ and all other that I see here settynge at this table.'

4 "Of the answere that the admiral of Perce made to² the sowdans messanger / and of the report that he made to² his mayst[er].

Ca. C.xxxvi.

Hen the admiral had well harde³ the sowdans messenger, he begane to smyle, and sayd ⁴ to the messenger, 'go and say to ⁴ thy mayster that I sett no thynge by his thretenynge nor by no thynge that he can do, nor I wyll not leue for all his sayenge to distroye, and to take his townes and castelles, and to sle all them that wyll not byleue in Iesu Chryst, and saye vnto hym that I am not in mynd to recule⁵ backe / but by the ayde of god my creature, I shall go⁶ and mete with hym so that he shall not need to tary for me, and I shall fyght with hym my pusaunce against his to shewe ⁷ hym how they can do that bélieth in Iesu chryst / go thy waye & saye to² thy mayster that he shall not fynde me flynge for any fere that I haue of any man blyeuynge in the false & detestable faythe of mahomet.' Then the admiral commaundyd to gyue to the messenger mete & drynke, and .xl. florencis; the messenger refusyd it not, but toke it, and thankyd the admiral / & when he had dynd he taryed not nyght nor day tyl⁸ he come to the citye of Gasere, where as he founde the sowdan & all his army, the whiche was a great nombre, for they were mo than⁹ a .C.M. men, and all they thretenyd the

---

¹ and never see faire day more. ² vnto. ³ and understoond. ⁴-⁴ Tell. ⁵ retire. ⁶ come. ⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vntill. ⁹-⁹ omitted.
deth of ye admiral of Perce / but it is a comune sayng that many thingis lacketh of folysshe thoughtis, & so dyd they / when ye messenger was ariuyd at Gasere, he came before the soudan & made his reporte what 4 answere the admiral had made hym / & when the soudan vnderstode the messenger, he had great maruayle of the great outrage that he thought to be in the admiral of Perce in that he durste abyde hym, & 8 sware by his lawe that yf he myght haue the vper hand of the admiral that he wolde flee hym quiche. Then he commaundyd his hoste to dysloge & to take the way towards Escalonne / ye whiche they dyn. 12

How the admyrall of perce sent his men that laye at Napelous & causyd them to drawe towards Rames, and how they departyd fro Ierusalem; and how he wente to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulum .C.xxxvii.

After that Trampognifle, the messanger, was departyd fro Ierusalem and retournyd to his mayster the sowdan / then the admyrall of Perce and Huon of Burdeaux, who were in the palays with the kynge of Ierusalem / thether they callyd all theyr counsayle; and when they were al assembelyd, the admyrall sayd / syrs, I pray you counsayle me what maner I shall vse myselfe to go and mete with the enemies of the chrysten faythe, the whiche are come agaynst vs, therfore I desyre eche of you to shew me your opynyons what is best to be done.' Then Thybaulte, kynge of

1 had well heard and. 2 with drawe. 3 Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. 4 everyone. 5 in this case.
Ierusalem, arose\(^1\) and sayd, 'syr admyrall of Perce and Mede, we thynke ye shulde not abyde them here / but rather ye ought to departe and to go agaynst your 4 enemyes / for yf ye abyde for them in this citye ye shal do great damage to this countre, for we haue trueth with the Sowdan for .v. yerys, the which with our honour we can not breke / for yf we wolde haue made 8 warre agaynst hym, we coude not a\(^2\) resystid agaynst hym / and also we ar far of fro Fraunce to seke for socoure & ayde there.' Then\(^3\) the kyng spake no more. Then duke Huon of Burdeaux sayde / 'syr 12 admyrall, y\(^4\) kyng of Ierusale\(\text{m}\) hath shewyd you the trouthe / for yf we shulde abyde here, it shulde be alwayes to our reproche\(^4\) yf this holy citye shulde be lost, the which was wonne by two noble emperours 16 as of Rome and of Grece, for the kyngge that is here his honoure sayd and the suertye of his countre, maye not breke the truse that he hath taken with the Sowdan of Babylon / and therefor myne aduyse it\(^5\) that as sone as 20 we may commaunde your men that be at Na\(\text{p}\)elous hastely to dyslode and to mete with you at Rames / and then when ye haue somwhat refresshyd your hoste, then set forwarde towardys your enemyes / as the 24 kyngge of Ierusale\(\text{m}\) hath sayd / for it were foly to gyue them leyser to come to far forward / yfyrst let them know how the swordys and sperys of the Percye\(\text{s}\) and Medye\(\text{s}\) can stryke / who somtyme dyd maruayles 28 in armes, wherfore it is reason that they folowe nowe theyr predecessours' / when Huon had fynysshyd his reason / the admyrall and all the\(^7\) lordys that were there laudyd,\(^8\) and helde that comsayle good that was 32 purposyd by the kyngge of Ierusale\(\text{m}\) and of Huon / and then they departyd and retourmyd to theyr\(^9\)

\(^1\) vp. \(^2\) hauë. \(^3\) thus. \(^4\) and shame. \(^5\) is. \(^6\) Fol. cxxiii. col. 2. \(^7\) other. \(^8\) praised. \(^9\) Chambers and.
The admiral follows this counsel,

takes leave of the king of Jerusalem; Huon and Barnard do likewise.

On arriving at Rames they found the host ready lodged, and the next day the host sets out for Escaloune, to the great joy of Huon.

The admiral arranged his army thus: the first division under Huon and Barnard; the second led by the marshal of Persia; and the third by the admiral himself.

He exhorts all to do their duty valiantly, and specially puts his hope in the strength and prowess of Huon.

logynge. Then the admiral commaundyd hastily his hoste to drawe towards rames, where as he wolde tary for them / the whiche thynge was done dylygently / the host restyd not tyll they came to Ramys, where as they founde redy ye admyrallles herbygers, who had redy apoyntyd thayr logynges. Thus after that ye admyrall had wryten to his marshallles of his hoste, he toke then his leue of the kynge of Ierusalem, and in lyke wyse so dyd Huon and Barnarde his cosyn, without knowlegyng of hymselfe to the kynge of Ierusalem. Then they departyd fro ye holy citty, and rode so llonge that they came to the towne of Rames, whereas they founde theyr host redy lodgyd. Then they restyd them there vnto the nexte daye / then the admyrall commaundyd to dysloge and thake the waye towardys Escaloune. A goodlye syght it was to se the hoste dysloge / Huon had therof great ioye / for he desyryd rather to sise the paynymes then to be in chambres with ladies & damosellis; when they were all in the feldys the admyrall ordayneyd his batayles / the fyrrst 20 gydyd Huon of Burdeux and Barnard his cosyn, he had with hym .xx. M. Persyans ferse and hardy / the seconde batayle led the marshall of Perce with .xx. M. men of good men of warre / the thryd batayle led the 24 admyrall of Perse and of Mede, and with hym .xxx. M. men of the most valyantys men of his hoste / when eueri thyng was ordayneyd as it aparteyned, he went and vysyted, exortyng them to do well theyr 28 deuoyre / then he came to Huon and sayde. 'O, rytgh vertuous knygth, garyssshed and replete with all prowes / all my hope I put in your strenthe and vertue of your armes and body / therfore I desyre you 32

1 and. 2 vnto. 3 alreadie. 4 then after haste. 5 omitted. 6 vntill. 7 them. 8 to make them ready to. 9 Fol. cxxiii, back, col. 1. 10 and prayinge them to quit themselves valiantly. 11 deare and.
this day to shew out your great vertues wherof ye be garnysshed / for specyally for ye loue of you and for your bountye I have taken & receuyd the holy 4 baptym, wherof I laud our lord god of his grace that he hathe done to me / thethere I desire you this day to shewe to the sarasyng that your sworde is to be feryd / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'god gyue me grace to be 8 such one as ye saye, and to parfoure in me that lacketh / and, syr, I truste in me it shall not be let but that this daye our enemyes shall haue no cause to praise nor to make bost; 5 therfore, syr, let vs ryde forth 12 suerly / for by the grace of god I haue hope that this daye we shall gyue our enemyes so moch a do that they shall haue seante leyser to graunte vs the vctory / and as y admyrall and Huon was thus 16 deuysyng together, they sawe before them a fare of the ayre waxe thycke, and that the sonne lost his clerenes, wherof they had great maruayle, bycause they sawe the sonne shyne so fayre & clere there; as they were 20 anone they parseyuyd that the darkenes rose by reason of the dust rysyng of the horses of theyr enemies, who were hastely comynge towards them to haue taken them in theyr logynge, wherby they came all out 24 of order / trustyng all in theyr great nombre of men, for they were mo then a C.M.; feryfull it was to se them comynge / so faste they rode, that the one hoste myght well se the other / when Huon had well parseyuyd them and sawe theyr demenoure and dysorder, 16 sayde to ye admyrall / 'syr, well ye ought to prays our lord Iesu chryst, for this daye he shal brynge your enemyes into your handis to sle them at your pleasure; 32 therfore, syr, I counsayle that incontynente in

Huon trusts the enemy shall have no cause to boast, and is anxious to ride forward.

As they talked, they saw the sun lose his clearness, and marvelled much;

it was by reason of the dust from the horses of their enemies, who, trusting to their vast numbers, were advancing without any order.

1 wherwith. 2 are. 3 and praise. 4 vnto. 5 a. 6 which. 7 their. 8 and. 9 make. 10 scarce. 11 time and. 12 now. 13 were. 14 a little before. 15 Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 2. 16 hee. 17-17 god. 18 you. 19-19 we hasten and.
Huon advises 
an immediate 
attack upon the 
enemy;

It is easy to 
discomfort them 
while they are in 
such confusion.

The admiral gives 
the word to 
advance.

When the sultan 
sees the host of 
the Persians 
advancing,

he desires to set 
his armies in 
order.

Then steps forth 
the admiral of 
Dorbyre, great 
and horrible to 
behold,

He rode a mare 
with a horn in 
her forehead.

The admiral 
seemed rather a 
fiend of hell, 
and all made way 
as he came to the 
sultan.

The admiral 
advises to meet 
the enemy at 
once, 
he boasts he can 
slay them all.

haste\textsuperscript{19} sette vpon them to the entente that they shal 
haue no\textsuperscript{1} leyser to assemble together to brynge thems-lfe 
in good order / ye we do thus it is no dought, but by 
the grace of god, we shall shortly dyscomfytte them or\textsuperscript{2} 4 
they be assemblid.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'your 
opynyon is good and resonable / let it be done as 
ye haue deuyсид.' / then the admyrall commaundyd ye 
marshalles & capetayns of his hoste to marche forwarde 8 
his batayles agaynst his enemies / \textsuperscript{3}then trompettys 
and tabours\textsuperscript{4} begun to sown, that it was maruayle to 
here them / \textsuperscript{3}then they set on towards thery enemies / 
when the Sowdan and they of his hoste sawe the 12 
Persyans comyng agaynst them redy rengyd in batayle / 
then\textsuperscript{5} he callyd to\textsuperscript{6} hym his kyngis and admyrallys, 
who were .xv. in nombre, and said to\textsuperscript{6} them / 'syrs, it 
were good that our men restyd styll a season, that we 16 
myght order and renge our batayles / for yonder we 
maye se\textsuperscript{7} our enemies comynge.' / Then stepte forthe 
the admyrall of Dorbyre, who was orryble & great to 
behold, \textsuperscript{8}he was .xv. fote of heyghte, and rode on\textsuperscript{9} a 20 
goodly splayed mare, the most fayrest and greatest that 
euer was seene, she had a great horne in her forhede / ye 
she were anythyngse chafyd none dyrste aproche nere\textsuperscript{6} 
her but alonly her kepar / this admyrall was fowle and 24 
great, he rather semyrd a fende of hell then any humayne 
creature / \textsuperscript{3}when he came to\textsuperscript{6} the Sowdan euery man 
made hym way / then he said to\textsuperscript{6} the Soudan, 'syr, I 
haue great maruaile of the that thou art so affrayed for 28 
a small nombre of men / who are comyng towards 
theyr deythe / syr, knowe for trouth that or\textsuperscript{2} ye can 
order your men in \textsuperscript{10} to good\textsuperscript{10} arayye, I shall dyscomfytte 
your enemies and deleyuer to\textsuperscript{6} you the admyrall of 32 

\textsuperscript{1} time nor. \textsuperscript{2} before. \textsuperscript{3} and. \textsuperscript{4} Drummes. \textsuperscript{5} omitted. \textsuperscript{6} vuto. \textsuperscript{7} well. \textsuperscript{8} Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. \textsuperscript{9} vpon. \textsuperscript{10-10} battaile.
Perce other quycke or deede / when the Sowdan\(^1\) vnderstode the admyrall of Dorbrey, he sayd / 'syr admyrall, I put al the conducte of myne hoste into your handys / I haue great affyauence in the vertue that is in you, and in the strenthe of your armys / the whiche ar greatly to be feryd' / then the Sowdan commaundyd all his host to set on\(^2\) theyr enemyes, and sayd / 'syn\(^3\) the admyrall of Dorbrey is with me I fere no man of Perse nor\(^4\) Mede,' & so sporyd his horse without makyng of any good order.

Now speke we of the great batayle that was in the playnes of Raines betwene the Sowdon of Babilon and the admyrall of Perce / the whiche was discomfited by the prowes of Huon of Burdeaux.

Ca. C.xxxviii.

Hen Huon, who led the fyrst batayle of the Perseans, beheld and sawe how the Sarayns came on without any good ordre or conducte, he sownyd his trumpets, exortyng his men to do well,\(^6\) and commaundyd his constables and marshalles to hast\(^7\) forward, and so dyd the Admyrall;\(^8\) his company and they ioynd nere one to a nother to the entente eche of them to socoure other; when Huon saw his enemyes aproche, and that it was tyme to set on\(^9\) he commaundyd his archers and crousbowes to shote,\(^8\) so they dyd, that by reasone of y\(^e\) shotynge of bothe perteyse it semyd lyke a clowde, so\(^10\) that there by and with\(^11\) duste togyther it darked the lyght of y\(^e\) sonne; \(8\) then Huon couchyd his spere and ranne at hym that

\(^1\) had well heard and. \(^2\) vpon. \(^3\) seeing. \(^4\) of. \(^5\) Col. cxxxiii. col. 2. \(^6\) and valiantly. \(^7\) march. \(^8\) and. \(^9\) vpon them. \(^10\) omitted. \(^11\) the.
bare the soudans standler, who was comynge before all the other to cause his compayne to folowe the faster; Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere that he persyde hym thorowe the body so that he fell fro 4 his horse with ye standard, wherof the Sarasyns were abasshed and sore dyspleasyd / then they aprochyd to reyse vp agayne their baner / but Huon and the Perseans encoutryd them fersly so that many were slayne on both parties / he that had sene Huon howe he slewe and bet downe the Sarasyns and paynymes, wolde haue sayde that he was no mortall man / but rather a man of the fayrey, for the great prowes and 12 marayles that he dyd / for he causyd the payynms, whether they wolde or not, to recule backe and to forsake the baner lyenge on the erth / for or he departyd theynse he slewe v. kyngis & ii. admryallis. 

Huon was so feryd that there was none so hardy durst aproche nere to hym / also Barnarde his cosyn was greatly to be feryd, and he euer folowed Huon as nere as he coude / then there ioynyd ye batayles of the 20 marshallys / and the admryall of Perce set vpon the sowdans batayle / then the batayle began so orryble and great that a .C. yerys before was sene none suche; valyantly dyd the admryall of Perce and 24 suche as were in his company / when the Soudan sawe his men so slayne, he was sorowfull, & sayd to the admryall of Dorbrey, I may well curse the daye & tyme that I beleuyd you / for by you I haue lost my 28 baner, and I se my men slayne / for and I had orderyd my batayle before / this myschefe had not happyd / nor that is aparant to fall / then the
Soudan conchyd his spere and strake therwith a knyght who was great mayster of the howse of Perce, in suche wyse that the sowdan ran hym clene thrughe, and so he servyd the second, thyrde, and fourth, and when his spere was broken, he drewe out his sworde and dyd therwith great damage; great cry and noyse was made when the batayles ioynyd / there myght ² bene sene many horse rynynge abrode in the felde traylynge theyr brydellis after them, and theyr maysters lyeng in the felde a monge the horse fete, and ³ orryble thynge it was to se and to here y ⁴ playntys and cryes that the woundyd men made amonge y ⁵ horse fete, hanyng no power to releue themselfe, but there dyed and fynysshed theyr dayes myserably; great cry made the sarasyns and Persyans that fought together, and specyally where as Huon fought & serchyd the rankes, and brake the great presys, he bet downe and confoundyd all that came before hym / so that none dyrste abyde before hym / for by that tym he had slayne vi of the kyngys and .v. admyrallis, besyde many other / so that the noyse and crye cam to the herynge of the admyrall of Dorbrey, who dyd great dystruccyon amonge the Persyans, so that it was an orryble thynge to se / and when he harde how that there was a knyghte that dyd great damage, ⁶ and had slayne dyuers kyngis and admyralles / he said to ⁷ a paynyme who had broughte ⁸ those ⁹ newes / 'go thy waye and shewe me ¹⁰ hym ¹¹ that hathe done vs so great damage' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I shall shewe ¹² you hym ¹³ / but I wyll aproche to hym no nerer then I am nowe; ye may se hym ¹⁰ yonder how he fyghtethe / and makethe our men to recule ¹⁴ backe, ¹⁴ for there is none so

¹ Fol. cxxiii, back, col. 2. ² have. ³ a. ⁴ complaints. ⁵ and behold. ⁶ and hurt among them. ⁷ vnto ⁸ vnto him. ⁹ tidings and, ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vnto me. ¹² him vnto. ¹³ retire. ¹⁴ from him.
When the admiral beheld Huon, he spurred on his mare.

Huon does not refuse to meet him.

The admiral kills Huon's horse, and lifts Huon by his armour on to the neck of his mare, and the admiral, carrying Huon in one hand, fights with the other. Huon, fearing he is lost, asks God to have pity on his wife.

The admiral desires to present Huon to the sultan, but the mare, running among the spears and men that lay on the ground, stumbles, and the giant falls.

Huon, who well parsayuyd hym comynge, feryd hym; howbeit, he refusyd hym not; but cam with his sword in his hand agaynst the paynym, then the sarasyn, who bare a great hache in his necke, sawe Huon comynge, but as god wold, he mist hym, for yf the stroke had lyght vpon hym he had bene slayne; but the stroke lyght vpon the crope of his horse, so that the horse fell downe dede and Huon on his backe; and he was not so sone releyd but that the gyant toke hym by the harneys & caste hym before his sadell as lyghtly as though he had bene but a fether, and so he helde and caryed Huon with one hand and fought with the other hande; when Huon feile hymselfe so taken he cryed our lord god & prayed hym to haue petye of Esclaramond his wyfe, for he saw well his lyfe was determinyed / the gyante who was joyfull in that he had taken Huon who had done the sarasyns so moche damage / he desyryd to fynde the Sowdan to make hym a present of Huon / so that with the hast that he made he strake his mare, and she began to lepe and gaumbaulde, and began to rynne; and, as fortune was, she ran amonge the broken sparys and dede men that lay on the ground so that she stombelyd, so that she knelyd to the erthe / and the gyante thought to haue releyd her / but he coude not by reason of the weyghte that laye vpon her necke / she was

\[\text{\textsuperscript{1}}\text{ vnto.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{2}}\text{ retire.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{3}}\text{ his.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{4}}\text{ and.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{5}}\text{ and saw.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{6}}\text{ then.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{7}}\text{ Fol. cxxxv. col. 1.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{8}}\text{ the Sarazin, and the.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{9}}\text{ vpon.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{10}}\text{ haue it.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{11}}\text{ armour.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{12}}\text{ he.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{13}}\text{ and called.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{14}}\text{ and compassion,} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{15}}\text{ right.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{16}}\text{ and thereby.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{17}}\text{ and by the great swiftnesse of her running.} \]
fayne to fal downe to the erthe / when Huon saw\(^1\) that, he was lyght and quycke, and rose vp on his fete / and when he sawe the gyaunte fallen downe & began 4 to releue / he hastyd hym and lyfte vp his swords with bothe his handys and gane the gyaunt such a stroke on\(^2\) the helme that he cloaye his hede to the brayne so\(^3\) therwith he fel\(^4\) dede to the erthe / and 8 then Huon sesyd\(^2\) the mare by the rayne\(^5\) and lepte vp\(^6\) vp\(^7\) on her and had great ioy, and so had the Persyans / and the admyrall had great ioye, for it had bene shewyd hym how\(^y\) gyaunt had taken Huon / and 12 was scapyd and had slayne the gyaunte / when Huon felt hymselfe on\(^2\) the stronge mare, he dasshyd in among the paynyms\(^8\) and met with the kynge of Olyfarne, whom he gane suche a stroke that he cloaye 16 his hede asonder; then he ran at the admyral of Orcaney, who was brother germayn to\(^9\) ye\(^e\) sowdan, he gane hym suche a stroke on the sholdar that he strake of his arm, so that it fell\(^4\) to the erthe syllyde and all ;\(^10\) 20 when the admyral felte hymselfe hurte,\(^11\) wolde haue fled a waye / but Huou, syttyng on\(^2\) the mare who was the swyffest\(^12\) horse of\(^12\) the world, ran after him, & when Huon had ouertaken ye\(^e\) paynym,\(^13\) he gane 24 hym suche a stroke on\(^2\) the hede that he cloaye it to his tethe, & so\(^14\) fell downe dede to the erthe / wherby the paynyms\(^15\) were so afrayed that after that they durst not assemble together ; this was shewyd to ye\(^e\) sowdan 28 how the gyant was slayne and .v. other kyngis and admyralles, and his brother also slayne / and all by the handis of one knyght / and also he sawe his batayle sore broken and how they began to fle, wherfore he 32 saw well that yf he taryed there longe he shulde be

\(^{1}\) and well perceiued.  \(^{2}\) vppon.  \(^{3}\) that.  \(^{4}\) downe.  \(^{5}\) of the bridle.  \(^{6}\) omitted.  \(^{7}\) Fol. cxxxv. col. 2.  \(^{8}\) and Sarazins.  \(^{9}\) vnto.  \(^{10}\) and.  \(^{11}\) and wounded, he.  \(^{12}\) of pase in all.  \(^{13}\) Sarazin.  \(^{14}\) hee.  \(^{15}\) and Sarazins.
other slayn or taken / then the kyng of Antiopheney, who was nere parent to ye sadowan, came to\(^1\) hym and sayd / ye syr, thynke\(^2\) to saue thy lyfe, for yf thou tary longe here there is none can saue the / for yf the 4 knyght that is with the admyrall of Perce hap to com hether thy lyfe is lost, therfore I coumsayle the to departe and saue thy selfe / elles thou art but dede,' then the sadowan \(^3\)with a\(^3\) .xx. with hym departyd and 8 toke the waye by the se syde to go towards\(^4\) Acre, the whiche as then partaynyd to\(^1\) ye saracyns, and Huon, who was mountyd on\(^5\) the pusaunt mare, betyng downe his enemys so that none durste abyde his 12 strokys; and the admyrall of Perce folowyng him, regardynge that by ye hye prowes of Huon his enemys were confoundyd\(^6\), and sawe well howe\(^7\) there was no humayne body that had any powre to resyst agaynst 16 hym\(^8\) without deth / then he sayd to\(^1\) his lordys and to Barnarde / ye syrs, quod ye admyrall, ye yonder before you ye may se maruayles and thyngis incredeble to be declaryd / for ye may se there is none so pusaunt\(^9\) that 20 can resyst agaynst my frende Huon / \(^10\) wolde to god\(^7\) he were vnmaryed / then he shulde neuer departe fro me, for I wolde then gyne hym my daughter;\(^11\) I shall be so\(^12\) sore dyspleasyd\(^13\) when he shall depart fro me / 24 thus as ye haue herd the admyrall of Perce\(^14\) sayd to\(^1\) his company, and so sleynge and betyng downe the\(^15\) saracyns that fled / the admyrall and Barnard folowyng Huon, but by reason of his good hors he was so\(^28\) far before them that they conde not ouertake hym, for he desyryd nothyng so moche as\(^16\) to ouertake the sadowan, who was fleyng as fast as he myght towards the citye of Acre / when the admyrall sawe that he 32

\(^1\) vnto. \(^2\) how. \(^3\) and about. 
\(^4\) Fol. cxxv. back, col. 1. \(^5\) vppon. \(^6\) and discomfited. 
\(^7\) that. \(^8\) and escaped. \(^9\) and strong. \(^10\) I. 
\(^11\) in marriage. \(^12\) verie. \(^13\) and discomforted. 
\(^14\) and Media. \(^15\) Paynims and. \(^16\) he did,
and Paynims be 19 layntyd. The thou
Fol. 10 n and would. 13 Paynims the seynge whome was shame that slew batayle shuld 3 sarasyns theyr swordys were all 4 tayntyd red; yf I shuld shewe all the hye prowes 5 that was 5 done there that daye, it shuld 6 be ouer longe to reherse / but
8 I dare well saye that by the great prowes of Huon the batayle was vanquesshyd and clene dyscomfytid / the 7 Percyans chasyd the sarasyns and paynyme 8 s and slew an[d] 9 10 but them downe, the chase enduryd more
12 then .iii. legis / and the admyrall had great marauyale that he coud not ouertake nor here no 11 thyng of Huon / who chasyd styll the sowdan & folowid hym so longe that Huon found the sowdan 12 alone / for his men coud
16 not folowe hym so fast for 13 theyr horses wer so wery that they coud 14 ge no 15 further / y[e] sowdan rode on 16 a pusaunt 17 horse / and Huon, who folowed hym on 16 the pusaunt mare, anone ouertoke hym / 18 when he came
20 nere to the sowdan / he sayd, 'O thou 10 sowdan, great shame 20 thou maiest hane when thou fleest thus 21 away all alone without 11 company, tourne thy shy Slate agaynst me or elles I shall sle the fleynge.' when the sowdan 22
24 harde Huon he had great 23 fere 23 / for he knew well it was he by whome he had 24 so great losse, 25 and by whome so 15 many kyngis & admyrallis had bene slayn, and thought to hymselfe yf he tournyd 25 not 27 he
28 shuld be slayne, wherfore he toke corage to hymselfe, seynge that Huon was alone as well as he, and also he

1 great. 2 and behold them. 3 Paynims and.
4 all after taynted. 5 - 5 and maruailous deeds that were.
6 would. 7 Fol. cxxv. back, col. 2.
8 Paynims before Sarasyns. 9 add in text. 10 did.
11 any. 12 all. 13 because. 14 not. 15 omitted.
16 vpon. 17 and a goodly. 18 and. 19 traitorous,
20 and reproach. 21 thus after away. 22 had well.
23-23 marauyale and was greatly feared. 24 received.
25 and damage. 26 returned. 27 that.

CHAL. ROM. VIII.  

I. L.
thought that it shulde not be longe or 1 he were socourid with some of his men that folowyd hym, & therfore, lyke a hardy knyght, he tournyd his horse hede towardis Huon / who fersly ran together 2 & gaue 4 eche other great strokys, but it had bene 3 but a 4 small profyght 5 to the sowdan and 5 he had not bene rescued by his men, for 6 Huon had elles 4 slayne hym / but thether came a 7 .x. knyghtys sarasyns, and they al ran 8 at Huon / who was sore 9 abasshyd when he saw hym selfe so enclosyd with his enemyes; howbeit he myght haue sanyd hymselfe welynowe yf he had lyst to ha[ue] fled awaye / but for any fere of them he wolde 12 not fle, but 9 he delte suche strokys 10 amonge them that there was none so hardy that durste aproche nere 11 hym, so sore they fyrd hym / for he strake none with a full stroke but that his hede was clouen to the Brayne 12 / 16 when they sawe 13 they coude not take nor sle hym, they were 14 sorrowful 15; then the sowdan cryed and sayd, 'syrs, on 4 vpon hym, great shame it is to 11 you all when by the body of one man ye are so put backe, and 20 ye se wel 13 he hathe no socoure / go and sle the mare that he rydethe on 16 with sperys and dartis / then he shall be some overcame / and ye know well 13 it is he by 4 whome I haue sufferyd al my great 17 damage / it is 24 he that hathe slayne my men, and by hym I haue lost the batayle / yf he scape 18 you ye ought neuer to be sene in any prynces court / when the paynyms 19 vnderstode theyr sowdan, they then 20 sore opressyd Huon, who 28 dyd 21 merneyles 22, but his pusaunce and vertu shulde 23

They run fiercely together, and had not the sultan been rescued by his men, he would have perished.

Huon, sore abashed, will not flee, and deals his strokes among them; great slaughter follows.

The sultan tells his men to slay Huon's mare, for then he will be overcome.

If they let Huon escape them, never more ought they to be seen in prince's court.

1 before. 2 one at another. 3 vnto the sowdan.
4 omitted. 5—5 if. 6 if they had not come when they did. 7 about. 8 dismayed and, 9 and.
10 Fol. cxxvi. col. 1. 11 vnto.
12 or to the teeth, so that they needed after no Surgeon.
13 that. 14 right. 15 and angrie. 16 vpon.
17 losse and. 18 from. 19 and Sarazins had well.
20 then after they. 21 great. 22 in armes.
23 but.
lytell aumayle hym yf he had not bene shortly socoryd / and also by reason of the riche stonys and perles that were on hym / then the Sarayns, who of .xl. were lefte aumay but .xxviii., they saw well they could not haue Huon without fyrst they slyve the mare that he rode on ; theryfore they cast at her dartys & iauleyns in suche wyse that fyually they slyw her 8 vnder hym, wherof Huon was sorrowful, and was then in fere of his lyfe / then he callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryst to haue pitye of his sowle, for he saw that his lyfe was at an ende, & sayd, ' dere 12 lord Iesu chryst, I pray the by thy swete marcy to haue compassion of my wyse who is in great parle and pouertye for the loue of me without any deserte of her part, and also I recommende into thy sauegarde my 16 lytell daughter Claryet.' After that Huon had made his prayer to our lorde god, he toke his shyl and his sword in his hande afote, and he saw where there grewe a bushe, he went thither and set his backe therto that the Sarasyns shuld not come behynde hym, so he stode at a baye lyke a wylye bore baytyd with houadis, there was not so hardy a paynymme that ourst assayle hym / they cast at hym sperys and dartis, but they coude nothe hurte his fleshe, he coueryd hymselfe so well with his shyl that nothynge could touche hym. The sowdan, sayng that no thynge coude hurte hym / he sayd to his men, ' a, ye false 13 28 vntrewe cowardis, of mahomet be ye cursyd, when ye can not slee nor take one man alone' / then the sowdan approchyd Huon and gau hym a great stroke Huon did marvels, but his power would have availed little, had he not been succoured by the precious stones he had on him. The Sarayns cast their darts at Huon's mare, and finally slywe her under hym. Huon, in fear of his life, calle on our Lord Jesus Christ to have pity on him, and recommends his wyfe and little daughter Claryet into God's safe keeping.

1 hauy anauled. 2 ayded &. 3 vpon. 4 Paynims and. 7 first after mare. 8 ryght. 9 and sore displesed. 10 as. 11 great. 12 and compassion. 13 pytayn. 14 Escleremond. 15 vnto. 16 Fol. cxxxvi. col. 2. 17 and Paynims. 18 and. 19 or Sarazin. 20 and so surely. 21 pierce.
and broke his shield into two pieces.

Looking behind him, the sultan perceives the admiral of Persia with twenty thousand men coming to Huon's aid.

The sultan then decides to leave his enemy, who cannot be vanquished by force of arms. Near them was the sea, about a league from Jaffa, towards Surrey, a galeys was there, sent from Escalon, and thither rode the sultan. Huon, right weary, could not have borne up so long save for the precious stones about him.

The sultan and his men enter the galeys, and leave their horses on the sea shore.

so that he brake his shild in two peces, wherof Huon then was in fere of dethe / then the sowdan drew backe and lokyd behynde hym into the playues of Rames wheras the great batayle had bene / and then he sawe comynge the admyral of Perce with.xx. thousande men, and they came to seke for Huon / when the sowdan sawe that socours were comynge to Huon / the whiche he knew by reason of the great baner of Perce / then the sowdan sayd to his men / syrs, let vs leue this enemye, who by force of armys can not be vanquesshid / let vs saue our lynes, for yonder I se comynge the admyral of Perce / for ye we tary longe here we are all dede & dystroyed.' Nere to them was y e see syde abought a lege fro Iaffe, the way towardis Surrey / there was reedy a galey the whiche the sowdan had sent thether fro the citye of Escaloune / the sowdan rode thether; and his men lefte and forsoke Huon, who was ryght wery and could not longe haue enduryd, nor had not enduryd so longe but for the vertue that was in the rych stones that were abought hym. The sowdan to saue his lyfe he and his men dyd so moch that they came to the place where as the galey was / and enteryd in to it in great haste for sauegarde of their lynes, & forsoke their horses on the see syde.

¶ How the admyral of Perce found Huon, where as he hadde foughhte with xl. men sarasyng, and howe the sowdan fled to 28 acre / and how the admyral of Perce

1 great, 2 and, 3 vnto, 4 overcome nor.  
5—5 shalbe all slaine, 6 did for sake.  
7 Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 1, 8 and pearles. 9 as.  
10 as they could by any meanes. 11 the. 12 they.  
13 vpon, 14 and Media.
besegid hym there; and of the

The admiral of Persia comes to

the admiral marvels at the

He weeps for joy at seeing Huon,

and sings his praises;

then the admiral asks if Huon has

received any hurt.

Huon disclaims any merit in himself;

the success came from God alone.

1 strange. 2 the. 3 and Media. 4 lying.
5 omitted. 6 great. 7 sore. 8 and valiant.
9 be compared. 10 comfort. 11 vertue and.
12 report. 13 hartely. 14 to. 15 or daunger.
16 Fol. cxxvi. back. col. 2. 17 vnto. 18 that.
19 and. 20 him. 21 compassion.
HUON OF BURDEUX.  [Ca. cxxxix.

and 1 ioye that he had founde his cosyn Huon in sauegarde, and came and kyste hym 2 .x. tymes, and sayd / 'my ryght dere lorde, 3 well ye 4 ought to 4 thanke 5 god 6 and the blyssyd vyrgyn Mary his mother 6 who 4 hathe sauyd you fro so many parellous 7 aduentures, wherof I thanke our lorde Iesu chryst that hathe geuen you such grace' 8 then he was of all the barons greatly festyd, and they had 9 maruayle of the parells and 8 aduenture that Huon had scapyd, wherfore they sayd they ought greatly to lawde 10 god in that Huon was aryuyd in theyr countre, by whome they were reducyd 11 to 11 the fayth of Iesu chryst. Thus deuysyd the 12 lordis 12 amonge themselfe 12 and behelde the dede men that lay abought Huon 8 when they had bene there 13 a season and sawe that y e sowdan was fled, then a horse was brought to 14 Huon, and he montyd 15 / then 16 they departyd 16 thence and came to 14 y e place wher as y e batyle had bene, whereas they founde .lxxiii. thousande men dede, 17 besyde them that were slayyne in the fleynge in y e chase, whereas there were slayne 20 .xii. M., 18 besyde the presoners great goodes 19 wan ther 19 the Parsyans, 20 the whiche was departed 21 to such as it aפרטained, so that they were all made ryche / then the admyrall 22 and Huon departed fro the playns of Rames, 24 23 then they went and logyd in the towne / and in the mornynge they determynyd to tary there thre dayes to refresshe them / and on 24 the fourthe daye they departed bycause it was shewed them how 25 y e sowdan 28 was departed fro Sayre and gone by see with a small

1 for, 2 more then, 3 and Maister, 4 may, 5 our lord, 6-8 for his goodnesse alwayes towards you, 7 and dangerous, 8 and, 9 al great, 10 and praise, 11-11 and brought to beleene in, 12 and Barons, 13 for, 14 vnto, 15 vpon him and, 16 from, 17 vpon the earth, 18 men, 19-19 wan ther after Medians, 20 and Medians, 21 and diuided, 22 Fol. cxxvii. col. 1, 23 and, 24 vpon, 25 that.
companie to the citey of Acre. Then the admyrall and Huon drew theyr host towards Napolens, and there taryed two dayes 1 fro thence they wente to 4 Iene and so to the citey of Nasareth, and visyted that holy place, whereas the aungell brought the salutacion angelyke to the vyrgyn mary. Then fro thence they went to the castell of Iaffet and toke it with assaulte, 8 and slewe all them that were within 2 excepte suche as wolde bylyne in our lord Iesu chryst. 1 Then fro thence they went and logyd within halfe a lege of Acre, & there pyght 3 vp theyr tentis and panylyons / 12 and when they were all logyd / ther foragers ran abrode and brought to the hoste great plente of vytyayles / oftentymys they skyrmysshed before the cete of acre / But they kowde nener 4 fynde man nor 16 woman that durst issu out to do any dede of armes; there they lay .viii. dayes and no man dyd them any domag, for the 5 sarasyuns wer so affrayed for the great los 6 that they had sufferyde, that they durste not 20 stere 7 / And the sowdan, who was within, wrote letters into al his countres, as wel in to Arrabey / Egypt / and 8 Barbarye / & Europe, and 9 to al 10 hys frendys, that they wolde come and socoure hym in 11 his nede; 24 he sent dyuers messengers bothe by londe and by see, also he sent in to anthyoche & in to Damas, & to al other places where as he thought to hane any 12 socoure / and on 13 a day two foragers of the admirallis 28 14 went forthe on 13 the see seid, and they found by the way trampoignifle the sowdans messenger / they toke and brought hym in 8 to the hoste 8 to the Admyrals tent, and ther he was examynyde and hys letters taken 32 fro hym, the which were sene and red before the

On the fourth day the admiral and Huon draw their host towards Nabouen, where they tarry two dayes. Thence they go to Iene and the city of Nazareth.

They assaulted and took the castle of Iaffet.

They put up their tents and pavilions half a league from Acre; foragers brought food to the host.

They skirmish before the city, but the Saracens are too frightened to venture out for deeds of arms.

The sultan wrote letters to all his countries, as well as to Arabia, Egypt, Barbary and Europe, for aid.

Messengers are sent by land and sea, even to Antioch and Damascus.

Two foragers of the admirals find the sultan's messenger by the sea-side, and bring him to the admirals tent.

1 and. 2 it. 3 pitcht. 4 neither. 5 paynims and. 6 and dammage. 7 nor make any semelance. 8 omitted. 9 as. 10 other. 11 at. 12 any ayd or. 13 vpon. 14 Fol. cxxxvii. col. 2.
admyrall and huon / the whiche when they herde yt and the content therof, ther by they knew sumwhat of yᵉ sowdanys counsayle / then they toke the messanger and brought hym before the citey of Acre, and made there 4 a payre of galowes, and hangyd vp the messanger in the syght of the sowdan and of them 2 within the citey / the same day the admyrall assemblyd his 3 barons in his tente, & sayde to 4 them / 5 syrs, all ye that be 8 here assemblyd, knowe that I haue great desyre to knowe what thynge is 5 to be done, and how we shall vse our selfe in this warre that we haue begonne / ye knowe wel the victory that, by the grace of 6 god 6 and 12 by the 7 proves of Huon, that 8 we haue 9 obtayned and haue here our enmye enclosyd, who can not fle without 10 it be by the see / therfore I desyre you all that eche 11 of you wyll shewe your aduyse what is to 16 be done / and that to morowe at 12 this owre 13 to gene me an answere /, then al the lordis 14 adnysyd together, and so among them was dyuers opinions and reasons, howbeit they departyd eueryman to his 15 owne logyng, 20 bycause they had daye of answere; 16 the nexte day folowyng / thus ye daye passyd without any thynge done, and at nyght euery man wente to reste / excepte suche as had the charge of the wachc that nyght / who 24 went not to bed, as is the 17 custome of the warre. Huon taryd all that nyghte in the admyralles tente, and aboughte the owre of mydnyght Huon dremid in his sleepe, & thought 18 that he was at Mayence in 28 presone, and saw the emperoure of Almayne take Esclaramonde his wyfe out of presone / and she semyd to 4 hym pale and lene and yl coloryd / and how she was in her kyrtyl, and her her ye myghte anse the soule.
sholders / and .x. men ledynge her out of the towne to be brente\(^1\) / and he thought\(^2\) she made petuous compleynites for Huon her husbaynd and for claryet her 4 doughter. 3Also he thought he saw passe through y\(^e\) stretes .ccc. gentyll men who had bene takyn at Bordeaux when the cytye was takyn / and he thought\(^2\) he sawe dyuers galowes made, and how the Emperoure 8 had sworne to hange them all / so that he thought he was\(^4\) sorrowful\(^5\) to se that company ledde to\(^6\) the 7 deth warde\(^8\) / for in his slepe he thought verely all this had bene trewe, and that he coude not helpe it. Thus 12 as Huon was in this payne slepyng, he gaue an horryble crye / so that y\(^e\) Admyrall and Barnarde awoke therewith in hast / thynkyng it had bene theyr enemyes\(^2\) had enteryd to haue slayne them / then they herde 16 Huon say, ‘O good lord, I pray the\(^9\) by thy pyte and grace to socoure & conforte my good wyfe / for sertenly I can not tell, but my harte Iuggyth\(^10\) / that the false emperoure wyll cause her to dye and all y\(^e\) other 20 presoners.’ Then the Admyrall and Barnard rose vp and came to\(^11\) Huon, and had well harde his complayntes, and sayd / ‘A, syr, dyscomfort not your self nor gyne no fayth nor credence to dremes / 24 for the emperoure wyll neuer do suche a velany as to put to deth so noble a lady / it is nothyng but your thought and remembrance that ye haue dayly, the whiche in the nyght representyth before you slepyng\(^7\)/ 28 ‘A, syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I can not beleue\(^12\) but that my wyfe hath sumwhat to do / Alas, to longe\(^13\) I tary\(^13\) here / but yt your warre were at an ende I volde gladly go my way / for I shall neuer haue ioye at my 32 harte tyll\(^14\) I maye knowe the trought.’ Then they 1 burnt. 2 that. 3 And. 4 right. 5 and sore greeued in his mind. 6 towards. 7 their. 8 omitted. 9 even for thy Sons sake and. 10 thinketh. 11 vnto. 12 Fol. cxxvii. back, col. 2. 13—13 hau I taried. 14 vntill.
The council assembles in the admiral's tent.

The marshal announces they will say not a word until Huon shall have given his opinion.

The admiral begs Huon to show what he thinks it best to be done.

Huon gives his advice.

arose, for it was day, and then everyman arose and the our come that all the counseyll assembled togyther in the admyralles tente / And every man sat downe on benches well coeryd with cloth of golde and other ryche clothes of sylke / when they were there assembled / the marshall rose vp, he was a ryght sage and a wyse man, and sayd / 'Syr Admyrall, we haue comonyd togyther and debatyd ye mater at leng, and we have had dyuers opynyones, but we be all concluydyd to say nothynge tyll thay Huon, who is therby you, hath fyrst shewyd his opynyone what he thynkethe to be done / for it is resone that he be harde fyrst to speke' / then the Admyrall beheld Huon, and sayd / 'my dere frende, ye here what my lorde hath concluyd togyther / and how they all resteth vpon you that fyrst ye shall say your aduyce, wherfore I requyre you for the louve of god shew me what I ought to do as ye thinke best."

How Huon of Burdeaux counseylyd ye admyrall of Perce to reyse vp his sege before acre, for dyuers resones, and to retorne in to Perce.

Ca. C.xl.

Hen Huon had well vndersto?nd the Admyrall, and that he had hard the lorde that theyr opynyons was that they wolde not speke till he had fyrst shewyd his opynyone, then he sayd to the Admyrall, 'syr, yf it be youre plesure I owght not to be gyn fyrst, this reason for ye haue

1 and the appointed houre was come before & everyie man.
2 Lords of the.
3 should assemble.
4 vpon.
5 and.
6 for.
7 omitted.
8 vntill.
9 first after shewed.
10 is best.
11 good.
12 first after to speke.
13 and Barons.
14 our Lord.
15 to.
16 well.
17 aduise and.
18 Fol. cxxviii. col. 1.
19 vnto.
many lordis can better speke in this matter then I, but syne\(^1\) it is youre plezure and thers, I shall shewe\(^2\) yow shortly myn aduyes, and as I wold do if I where 4 as yowe be;\(^3\) then\(^4\) Huon of Burdeaux sayd / 'syr admyrall of perce & of mede, it is a lounge season sin ye departed fro youre contre londys and synguoryes, and not without great travaile and great\(^5\) payne, and that 8 god haue done you that grace that with\(^6\) an armeri\(^6\) al ye haue passed, & taken castes, & haue slayne and dystroyed the cou[n]treys & men of the sowdans of babylone and\(^7\) egyp / and haue bene at the holy cetye 12 of Ierusalem, the whiche is in the myddes of his contre / and after that the sowdun hath fought with you with people innumerable, whom ye haue dys- countfyted, and slayn\(^8\) all they that were with hym. 16 And also god hath gyuen you grace that ye ar sauely skapyd with lytyll losse\(^9\) / and none ye haue in this ctye before vs besegyde and inclosyd in \(\gamma\) sowdan your enmy / who nyght and day doth emagen how he 20 may recouer his losse, as ye may well knowe by his letters sent by his messyngers / \(\gamma\) whiche ye haue sene and red the contynue\(^10\) of \(\gamma\) same. And, syr, ye may well thynke that he hathe sente dyuers other 24 messengyrs as well by londe as by see to his frendys to seke for socoure and\(^11\) ayeyd, in the entencyon to be reuengyde of you, wherfore I counseyll you, syn\(^12\) ye be so farre of fro your contre, as shortly as ye can 28 to departe fro thence\(^13\) and to reyse your sege and retorne in to your owne contre / your men be wery and sore trauelyd /\(^14\) the Sowdan is in his owne contre / and\(^15\) he wyll alwayes assemble\(^16\) great nombre of 32 peopell / and alwayes he may haue socoure and vyteyelles,

\(^1\) seeing that. \(^2\) unto. \(^3\) are. \(^4\) Duke. \(^5\) much. \(^6-6\) one armie. \(^7\) of. \(^8\) almost. \(^9\) or dammage. \(^10\) contents. \(^11\) for. \(^12\) seeing. \(^13\) hence. \(^14\) and. \(^15\) omitted.
whereas the Persians can have neither.

They can return in the spring if they wish.

As long as they stay in these parts, Huon will not forsake them, though he greatly desires to return to France.

the whiche ye can not do nor haue / for here with\(^1\) great payne ye shall \(^2\) fynde any\(^2\) vyteyll / for the countre is sore fowlllyd and opressyd / & ye can haue no socoure fro any parte, wherfore of necessyte ye most \(^4\) deparde / the whiche ye may do without any losse. For ye may passe y\(^e\) ryuer of eufrates or\(^3\) his pepill be assembled to do you any damage / & when the sprynyng\(^4\) tyme of y\(^e\) yere cometh, yf it be your \(^8\) plesure, ye may retorne with such nombre of men as ye shall thynke best / for ye are of pusaunce so to do. Syr, this that I say is for nothyng that I wold forsak or leue you as longe as ye be in this parts; I had rather \(^12\) dye / thought it be so as ye well knowe / that the thynge that I ought most to desyre is to deparde to go in to \(^5\) france,\(^5\) where as I haue left my wyffe, my daughter, and my countre in great pouerte and danger \(^16\) of deth and dystruccyon.'

How the admryrall of Perce agreed well to the counseyll of Huon of Burdeaux, and pryesed his saynge; & of y\(^e\) fayr offer that \(^20\) y\(^e\) admryrall of Perce mad to\(^6\) Huon of Burdeaux.

Hen the Admyrall had\(^7\) hard\(^6\) Huon, he behelde his lorde, and all wepyng, \(^24\) sayd, 'syrs, all ye that be my men, ye haue\(^9\) well herd Duke Huon, who hath shewyd his aduyce,\(^10\) and therfore I \(^11\) commaunde and desyre you all to shew me what ye \(^28\) thinke by the sayenge of Huon' / then they all with one voyce sayd / 'syr, a more noble nor\(^12\) profytable

---

\(^1\) without. \(^2\)\(^2\) haue no. \(^3\) before. \(^4\) spring. \(^5\)\(^5\) my owne countre. \(^6\) vnto. \(^7\) well, \(^8\) and understanding. \(^9\) all. \(^10\) and opinion. \(^11\) Fol. cxviii. back, col. 1. \(^12\) or.
counsayle can\(^1\) no mortal man gene for your welth and suerte of your parson and of vs all / there was neuer man speake better, & therfore all we pray and counsayle you to vpholde the counselye that he hathe geuen you\(^2\) / then the admyrall, seynge\(^2\) al his lordis agreed to the counsayle that Huon had geuen hym / he sayd / 'syr, as for me, syn ye are agreed therto, I am redy to 8 byleue all good counsayle / there was neuer a heygher counsayle geuyn to\(^3\) any kynge or prync\(^4\) / when the admyrall had sayd how\(^5\) he wolde byleue the counsayle that Huon had geuen hym / he callyd then Huon to\(^6\) hym, and sayde / 'syr Duke of Burdeaux, the pyller / shylld, and sword of the chrysten faythe, and the defender of the Perseans / and Medyens / we\(^5\) knowe well that by ryght I oughte not to kepe you / for\(^6\) reason is\(^7\) that ye retourne thether where as ye were borne, and to ayde & comforte your trew spowse and wyfe / for whom ye be in great anoyaunce,\(^8\) and not without cause / and therfore for ye\(^e\) goodnes and honoure 20 that we have founde in you, we offer to go with you in our owne proper parson with al our armye, and mo to the nombre inestymable, and to ayde to reuenge you of the false emperoure of almayne who hathe done you so moche yll and damage, or elles yf ye wyll retourne to\(^3\) vs in to Perce at this nexte spryngynge\(^9\) tyme we shall deleyuer\(^9\) you suche pusaunce, and my selfe to go with them in to almayne, so that ye\(^e\) valeyes and mountaynes 28 shall be full of people / and we shall do so moche by the grace of our lorde god that we shall de\(^10\)liuer the emperour in to your handis to do with hym\(^11\) your pleasure.' when Huon\(^12\) vnderstode the admyrall\(^13\) who 32 offeryd hym so great an offer,\(^14\) sayde / 'Syr, of the

---

\(^1\) can after man. \(^2\) that. \(^3\) vnto. \(^4\) and. \(^5\) I. \(^6\) it is good. \(^7\) omitted. \(^8\) discomfort. \(^9\) spring. \(^10\) Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 2. \(^11\) at. \(^12\) had well heard and. \(^13\) Persia and of Media, \(^14\) hee,
Huon thanks the admiral for his great offer, but first intends to try peaceful means with the Emperor. If he is unsuccessful, then Huon will ask the admiral's aid and that of all his friends.

If there is need, the admiral will stand by the offer he has made.

Curtoys that ye offer me I thanke you with a good harte: god forbede that I shulde be the causer of dystruccyon of chrysten blode / fyrst I wyll assaye with all swetenes and reasonable offers as moche as in me is posyble to do to present & offer the emperour / to ye entent that I myght atyne to his loue and to haue pease, the whych thyng I desyre, and wyll do with all my harte; And yf it be so that he wyll not inclyne nother to ryghte nor resone, then H. will come to you and to all other that I knowe or thinke to be my frendis, and then desyre you al of ayed & conforte.'

If howe huon take leue of the admiral and of the lordys of Perce & wente and toke shypynge at the porte of thesayre, and how he ariuyd at marsell without fyndyng of any strange aduenture.

Ca. C.xl.ii.

Ifen the admrall understode Huon, he sayde, 'my ryght dere frend, I can you thanke of that you saye / ye maye be sure yf ye haue any pode & that ye can make none apoyntment with ye emperoure, the offers that I haue made you, I shall vpholde and socoure you in myne owne parsone / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you, for I am moche bounde to you, wherfore I am yours / then the admrall toke Huon by the hande, & sayde, 'syr, I se well we two muste departe, the which greueth me

1-1 all my. 2 vnto. 3 may. 4-4 will and desire to. 5 Huon. 6 thinke before knowe. 7 of. 8 of your courtesies for. 9 succour. 10 Duke. 11 of Bourdeaux. 12 his. 13 all. 14 other. 15 Fol. cxxxix. col. 1. 16 had well. 17 and wel-beloued. 18 gine. 19 good. 20 that. 21 most harte.
sore / but synne it is thus I must suffer it, 1 I knowe well 2 ye thinke longe tyll 3 ye be gone / the seruys that ye haue done 4 me, I can not recom pense it / for our 4 two wayes ar contrary, yours is by water and myne is by lond; And, therfore, at ye 6 porte of the sare 5 there is a ryche shyp / the whiche was wonne vpon the sowdans men, I gyue her to you, enter into her at your pleasure, 8 and therwith I gyue you .x. somers chargeyd with golde, & other chargeyd with clothes of golde and sylke / and ye maye take with you all the Frensshe men that be in this host, such as folowed vs when we 12 departyd fro Ierusalem / let them go with you in to theyr countre / and after that ye be 6 departyd I shall rayse my sege and retorne into Perco 7 / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of your gyfte and of your courtysy I thanke 16 you.' Then the admyrall sente these somers to the porte of the sare, 5 and there al that 7 rychesse was 8 put into the shyppe that was 8 geuen 4 Huon / 1 then he deleyueryd vnto Huon to serue hym at the pylgremes 20 that were there of France; and the admyrall gau e them ryche gyftys, wherof they were 9 joyfull 1 of the fayre adventure that was fallen to 4 them / for they hadde 10 more moneye at theyr departynge then they 24 hadde when they came out of theyr ow[n]e countre, wherof they thankyd the admyrall / and promysyd to do trew seruyce to 4 Huon, and not to leue hym tyll 3 he had awched all his busynes / Then Huon made 28 hym redy, & toke with hym the great Gryffons fote / 1 the admyrall, & his constables and marshallys, and the other lordis of the hoste, lepe on 11 theyr horses and connaied huon and his companye to the porte of the 32 sare, 5 where as his shyppe was redy furnysshyd with vyteyle and other thyngys parteynyng therto / then

1 and.  2 that.  3 vntill.  4 vnto.  5 The sayre.  
6 are.  7 the.  8 were.  9 right.  
10 Fol. cxxix. col. 2.  11 vpon.
Huon,\(^1\) wepyng, toke\(^2\) leue of the admyrall and of the other\(^3\) barouns / for whose departynge they were\(^4\) sorowfull, and so retournyd to theyr hoste before Acre / deuysynge of the great valure, prowes, and courteysye \(^4\) that was in Huon. Then the admyrall commandydyd pruely the nexte mornyng to dysloge and to\(^5\) departe / the whiche was done.

"Thus the admyrall departid fro the citye of \(^8\) Acre and toke his waye towards Perce / and he founde on\(^6\) the ryuer of Eufrates all his shyppis, and so with them he saylyd into his owne countre / And Huon and barnarde his cosyn, and dyuers\(^7\) knyghtis and squyers \(^12\) of Fraunce, \(^8\) when they were in theyr shypp / they wayed vp theyr ancers and made sayle. Then they passyd the Goulfe of Sathale / and then passyd by the rodes and by sardayne / and so longe they saylid \(^16\) without daunger or let that they came and arynyd at the porte of Marsyele / \(^8\) there they \(^9\) toke londe\(^9\) with great ioye / and dischargyd the shyp, and then he\(^10\) gaue the shyp to the patron that had brought them \(^20\) thether, wherby y\(^6\) patron was rych & thankyd Huon / when they were al a lond, they \(^11\) conueyed all theyr baggage in to theyr lodgyng in the towne, wheras they restyd an \(^19\).vii. dayes. Nowe let vs leue to speke of \(^24\) Huon and of them that were with hym, and let vs speke of the abbot of cluney.

How the\(^13\) abbot of Cluny layde a busshe-\(^-\)ment of men of armys betwene Mascon \(^28\) and Tournous agaynste the Emperours\(^14\) nephue, who was there slayne, and all his men / wherof the emperoure was so sore

---

\(^1\) all, \(^2\) his, \(^3\) Lords and, \(^4\) right, \(^5\) omitted. 
\(^6\) yppon, \(^7\) other, \(^8\) and, \(^9-9\) went a shoare. 
\(^10\) Huon. \(^11\) Fol. cxxix. back, col. 1. \(^12\) about. 
\(^13\) good. \(^14\) of Almaines.
troubléd that he toke the duches esclaramond out of prison to haue brent² her, & the .iii.e. prysoners of Burdeaux to haue hangyd them all.

Ca. C.xliii.

e haue well harde in this hystory / how Barnarde departyd fro yᵉ abbey of Cluny to go³ serche for his nephue Huon / and the abbot, seynge that he coude here no newes of Huon nor of Barnarde his cosyn, who was gone to seke for hym / he was⁴ sore⁵ displeasyd that he coude haue none other knouledge; but the thynge that causyd hym to pas yᵉ mater the more esyer, was by cause of Claryet, Huons daughter, whome he kepte, and she was all his comforte / she was so fayre and so swete that none was lyke her in beauty nor⁶ in good vertues, and agayne when he rememberyd the duches her mother, Esclaramond, whome he knewe was in great pouerte and mystery, he was therwith so sore dyspleasyd that al his membres trymbelid. So on⁶ a day it was reportyd to⁷ hym by a notable man that as he cam fro saynt Iames and by Burdeaux, howe that a nephue of the emperours shoulde go fro Burdeaux to the citye of Mayence, to his uncle Tharry the emperoure of Almayne / & howe he shuld haue with hym a great nombre of the burgesses of yᵉ citye of Burdeaux as presoners, bycause on⁶ a daye they spake of Huon theyr naturall lorde / and also how⁸ he shuld cary with hym the trybute and money of the rentys and reuenuues of the countre of Burdeleys, and suche moneye as every man was bounde to pay to⁷ the emperoure: when the good abbot of Cluney was aduerteysyd of the comynge of the

1 vexed and. 2 burnt. 3 and. 4 right sorrowfull and. 5 Fol. cxxix. back, col. 2. 6 vpon. 7 vnto. 8 that.

CHARL. ROM. VIII. 529
Thereupon the abbot assembles a number of men, and chooses the lord of Vergier to be captain. He learns through spies which road the Emperor's nephew will take, and commands the lord of Vergier to lie in ambush.

When the Germans pass, the lord of Vergier's company issues from the ambush, and in a short space slay or take prisoner all their enemies.

Emperours nephue, whom he reputyd as his enemy / he assemblid a great nombre of noble men, the most part partieynyng to the duke of Burgoyne, who as then was father to Gyrard of Rousayllo, who as then was but .iii. yere of age / when y° abbot had assemblyd a good nombre of men / he chose the lorde of Vergier to be capetayne and leder of that company / & then he sent out his spyes to knowe the sartayne which waye the emperours nephue shuld come; at last he had sartayne knowlege that he was logid at mas'scou, and that the nexte daye he shulde departe to Tournous / then the lorde of vergier and dyuers other by the 12 commandaunent of the abbot of Cluny went and layd theyr bussheymet betwene mascou and Tournous, in a valey / so that by their spye, who laye on a mountayne, saw the Almayns comynge, abought the nombre of .ii. M. horses / and the lorde of vergier had in his company aboue .iii. M. horses defensably aparaylyd / they were joyfull when they harde by theyr spye that theyr enemies were comynge; then they aparaylyd 20 themselfe to abyde theyr enemies / who were come so forwarde that they were past theyr fyrst enbussheymet and were enteryd into the valey / when they of the fyrst enbussheymet and they of the seconde enbusshe-ment sawe theyr tyme, they issuyd out & brake vpon theyr enemies, and made a great crye, so that in a shorte space theyr enemies and the most parte of them were slayne, not one that scapyd, but other he was slayne or taken / they coude not saue themselfe by cause on the one syde the mountayne, & on the other syde the ryuer of some, and before and behynde theyr enemies were they them selfe / the same tyme

---

1 vnto. 2-2 being at that time. 3 and. 4 great. 5-5 certainly. 6 the. 7 Fol. cxxx. col. 1. 8 omitted. 9 vpon. 10 they. 11 right. 12 within.
the emperours nephue was slaine, who was a goodly knyghte / and ye emperour had before sent hym to Burdeaux to gouerne the londe and countre of Burdeloys, and had bene there the space of iii. yeris / of whose dethe the lorde of Vergier was sory, for he had rather he had bene taken presoner / then they toke his body and buryed hym in the chefe churche of Tournous, where as they lay all nyght with theyr presoners, who were to ye nombre of viii. c.; they of Burdeaux that were taken as presoners were2 joyfull, when 3 they were4 scapyd the handys of the almayns.

12 ¶ After this discomfiture they retournid Cluny, where as they were receyuid with great ioye of the abbot and of the couente / then the lorde of Vergier shewyd the 6 maner of the 6 dyscomfyture / and then the botye was 7 departyd to 7 them that had wonne it 8 / then 9 all the men of warre departyd excepte a .M. men whome the abbot retaynyd styll 8 for the sauegarde of the towne of Cluny / who made many scyrmysshis with the emperours men. 9 After this dyscomfyture the newes therof were 10 broughte to the citye of Magence to ye emperoure Therry, who was ryght sorrowful for ye dethe of his nephue, who was his systers sone / by reason of the sorowe & 11 dyspleysure that he had, 12 he was thre dayes after or 13 he wold come out 14 of his chambre / and on the fourthe day he sent for all his lordys and counsayle / & to the[m] 15 he made his complayntis, how by the occasyon of duke Huon of Burdeaux, he had loste iii. of his nephues, & his bastarde sone / & sayd, 'I ought greatly to be anoyed 16 when I can not be reuengyd of Huon / I thynke he shal neuer retourne agayne / but syn 17 it is

1 that. 2 right. 3 Fol. cxxx. col. 2. 4 thus. 5 to the abbey of. 6 whole discourse of their. 7-7 deuided amongst. 8 omitted. 9 and. 10 was presently. 11 great. 12 for. 13 before. 14 forth. 15 then in text. 16 greeued. 17 seeing.

The Emperor's nephew, a goodly knight, was himself slain, and buried in the chief church of Tournois.

The men of Bordeaux that were prisoners were glad to have escaped the hands of the Germans.

They returned to Cluny, and were joyfully received by the abbot.

All the men of war departed except a thousand retained to guard the town of Cluny.

The news of this defeat was brought to the Emperor Thierry at Mayence; he was right sorrowful for his nephew's death.
so that I can take of hym\textsuperscript{1} no vengance, I shall take it vpon his wyfe Esclaramonde and vpon the CCC, presoners that I brought out of Burdeaux / but by the same lorde that made and fourmyd me to his semblance, I shall neuer haue ioye in\textsuperscript{2} my harte, nor drynke\textsuperscript{3} nor ete tyll\textsuperscript{4} I haue sene Esclaramonde brente\textsuperscript{5} in a fyre, and y\textsuperscript{e} CCC. presoners hangyd and strangelyd, and I wyll that eche of you knowe that he that speketh to me fyrst to the contrary I shall hate hym ever after\textsuperscript{'} / when the lordis\textsuperscript{7} harde the emperoure make that promyse, there was none so hardy that durst speke one worde / then the emperoure in hast\textsuperscript{8} commaundid 12 great plentye of thornes to be caryed out of the citye vnto a lytell mountayne there besyde / and therby to be rerid vp sartayne galous to hang theron .iii. C. presoners; all this was done as he commaundyd / 16 for mo then .x. lode of thornes were caryed out to brenne\textsuperscript{9} the noble lady Esclaramonde / and she was sent for out of pryson by .iii. hangmen, and the presoners with her were brought into y\textsuperscript{e} citye, and all 20 to\textsuperscript{10} beten by the wyae / when the noble lady sawe how she was delte with all,\textsuperscript{11} petuously she complaynyd for her good husbande Huon, and for her daughter claryet, and sayd / 'a, my ryght swete lorde & husband Huon / 24 at this tyme shal be the departurie of vs two'; then she callyd vpon our lorde god\textsuperscript{12} Iesu chiryst, prayenge hym by his grace and petye to brynge her sowle into paradise / thus cryenge and complaynynge the noble 28 lady was led thrugh the towne / then ladyes, and burgesses, and maydnes of the citye ran to theyr wyndowes and dorys / and behelde the dolorous and petuous\textsuperscript{14} company ledynge towards theyr deethes ; then 32

\textsuperscript{1} of hym \textit{after} vengance, \textsuperscript{2} at, \textsuperscript{3} drinke \textit{after} etc, \textsuperscript{4} vntill. \textsuperscript{5} burnt. \textsuperscript{6} Fol. exxx, back, col. 1. \textsuperscript{7} had well, \textsuperscript{8} in hast \textit{after} commaundid. \textsuperscript{9} burne, \textsuperscript{10} bee. \textsuperscript{11} shee \textit{before} petuously. \textsuperscript{12} and. \textsuperscript{13} omitted, \textsuperscript{14} pitiful.
they sayde ahyghe / A, ryght noble lady, where is become the great beautye that ye were wonte to be of / for now your vysage is pale and dyscolouryd that was wonte to be so fayre, and now so lothely and disfiguryd / where is become your fayre herys, that nowe be so blake and ruggyd for the great povertry that ye haue enduryd / Alas, noble lady, great pety we have to se you in this estate ye we coude a mende it / thus as this lady was led thrugh y e towne she was bemonyd of them that sawe her / the iii. C. ientylmen also were led forthe / and the emperour Thyrry and his lordis rode after them / for his desyre was to se the lady brente & the presoners hangyd / he made haste because of the sorowe that he had for ye dethe of his nephue and of his men, who were newly slayne by the

As the procession went out of the city, duke Hildebert, a kinsman of the Emperor, was coming in, and seeing how roughly they dealt with Esclaramonde, he bid them desist till he had spoken with the Emperor.

Esclaramonde begs Hildebert have pity on her.

purches of the abbot of Cluney / when they were issued out of the citye of Magence / duke Hyldebert, a nere kynsman of the emperours, was comynge into the citye the same tyme that the lady was led fourth, and sawe how rudely they delte with the lady / when he sawe her he knew wel it was Esclaramond / when he sawe her at that poynyt, the water was in his eyen, and syyd to them that ledde her / Syrs, go not so faste tyll I haue spoken with the emperoure / the whiche they dyd gladly ; when the noble lady Esclaramonde vnderstode the duke / she had a lytell hope, she tournid her eyen towards hym, and syyd / A, ryght noble pryune, hane petye and compassyon of me, for I haue done no thynge wherby I shulde deserue to dye / when the duke haarde her he had suche petye that he coude speke no worde, his harte was so full of sorowe / then he rode as fast as he myght to mete with

1 loathed. 2 and compassion. 3 Fol. cxxx. back, col. 2. 4 were also. 5 burnt. 6 other. 7 means. 8 and. 9 that. 10 the faire Ladie. 11 but. 12 he. 13 ynto. 14 vntill. 15 had well heard and. 16 some. 17–17 had well understood.
He entreats the Emperor to respite their lives till after Easter.

Surely it is sufficient to have chased her from her country and signories, and to have taken her revenues for himself;

but if all the men in his empire and all the priests preached to him for a year, the Emperor will not give way, neither will he eat nor drink till Esclaramonde be burnt, and the other persons hanged.

_ye_ emperoure, and passyd by the CCC. presoners, and had great pety_1 of them / and so he came to_2 the emperour all wepyng, he_3 sayd / 'A, ryght noble emperoure, I requyre you in the honoure of the passyon_4 of our lorde Iesu chryst, haue petye and compassyon of this dolorous company that ar lykely to dye this daye / remembre howe_4 it is nowe in the holy tyme of lente, wherefore I requyre you_5 respyght theyr lyues vnto_6 it _S_ be past Ester / and, syr, humbely I requyre you for all the ser_7uyce that I and myn haue done_2 you, grant me_8 this request for my rewarde, the whiche is_9 resonable and iust / great wronge ye do to reuenge your 12 iyre_10 upon this noble lady / ye haue chasyd her out of her countre_11 and syngnoryes, the whiche you hold in your handes, and take the renumys & profyghtes therof / yf ye be not suffyced with this, I dought me_12 16 that our lorde Iesu chryst wyll be sore dyspliesyd with you' / when the emperoure had_13 herde the duke his cosyn, he stode styll and spake hastely, and sayd, 'fayr cosyn, I haue well herde you, & therfore I 20 answere you in breue wordys / how that _yf_ _al_ the men that be in myn empere, and all the preestes and freers were here, and dyd preche to_2 me an hole yere desyrynge me to respyght this ladyes deth and the other 24 that be with hyr, I wolde do nothyng for all them / and therefore speke to me_14 no more in that mater / for by the berd that hangeth at_15 my chynne, syn I can not haue Huon hyr husbaunde at my wyll, I shal never eete 28 nor drynke tyll_6 I haue seen hyr brente_16 and the other personas hangyde. For when I remembre the deth of myn nephues and of my dere sone, the whiche hath bene slayne by Huon, there is no membre in my body 32 but that trymbleth for sorowe and dyspleasure.

1 and compassion, 2 vnto. 3 and. that. 5 to. 6 vntill. 7 Fol. cxxxi. col. 1. 8 but. 9 both. 10 anger. 11 landes. 12 omitted. 13 well. 14 to me after more. 15 vnder. 16 burnt.
when the good duke hyldeberete understode the
emperoure, he had great sorowe, and departed without
any wordes spekynghe and without any leue takynge.

But retornyd fro thence he came full of iyre and
dyspleasure / then the emperoure thyrry cryed with a
hye voyce, and sayd how he wolde shortly dispache
the mater to se the lady brente, and led to y[e] hyll
where as the fyre was redy / when the lady perseyued
y[e] place where as she shulde dye in / she cast out a
great crye & made a petuose complaynte to our
lord Iesu chyst, and sayd / ‘A, ryght swete lorde
Iesu chyst, thou knowest that for the loue of the
I am chystened to byleue in thy law, wherein I wyll
lyue and dye / I se well my dayes ar but shorte / and
thou knowest well there is no cause wherein that
I haue deseruyd deth / therfore I requyre the hombly
to haue pyte of my soule and to kepe and preserue
my husbande Huon and my daughter claryet.’ Thus
as ye haue herd the noble duches Esclaramonde made

hyr complayntes, hyr handes fast bound, and knelyng
on hyr kneyes before the stakes, abdyngye y[e] our
of hyr deth / Now leue we to speke of this noble
lady tyll we retorne agayn, and speke of the noble
kynge Oberone and his compayne.

How Oberon sent .ii. of his knyghtes of the fayery, that is to saye, Malabron and Gloryande, to delyuere the duches
Esclaramond, who shulde haue bene brente, and .ccc. presoners who were delyueryd by the sayd knyghtes.

Ca. C.xliii.
Ow seweth the story that ye same daye that the duches, ye fayre Esclaramonde, shuld hane bene burnt, kyng Oberone of the fayre was in his pales of mummur, wheres he had holden a great courte and a sumptuoys for his mother; the lady of the pryue Isle was there / and also the noble quene Morgan le fayre / & the 8 dameysell Transcelyne hyr nese, with dyuers other luyyes of the fayre, and dyuers knyghtes of the same, makyng great ioye; kyng Oberon was syttyng in a ryche trone garnysched & borderyd with fyne golde and precyous stones / and as he satte he fell in a great study / and therwith the dropes of water fell out of his eyene, & began to wepe so sore as though he shulde haue drowned in drops of water / when these quenys, ladyses, and damysels sawe hym make suche sorowe, they had great merueyll there was Gloryande, the good kynght of the Fayre, and Malabron, who were ryght preuy and wel-belonyd with kyng Oberon / when they sawe the kyng make such sorowe they were abasshed, and syr Gloryand sayd / 'Syr, what man is lyuyenge in this world that hathe dyspleased you or done any thygne against you?' / 'Gloryand,' quod ye kyng / 'the dyspleasure that I haue is for the fayre Esclaramonde, wyffe to Huon of Burdeaux / my frende / she is as nowe led out of the cytye of Maience & brought to a fyre, wherin ye Emperoure therry wyll Byrne her / and other .CCC. poore presoners to be hanged / and I maye not socoure them / and I am sory therof for the loue of Huon / who is as now passyd the see, and is in the waye retournyng home.

1 Historie. 2 burnt. 3 Morgne.
4 Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 1. 5 he. 6 and complaine. 7 with. 8 and. 9 sore dismayed and. 10 Ladie. 11 vnto Duke. 12 vere good. 13 vnto. 14 great. 15 ayd nor.
warde / and he hath had suche adventurs that there is no humayne body coude suffer nor bere the payns and trouelles that he hath endured, nor the meruelous aduentures that he hath borne; he hath had so many bateylles that it were meruyl 3 to here them rehersyd, and nowe where as he thought to haue had rest & to haue founde his wyfe, the fayr Esclara-

and if he finds Esclara-

8 monde a lyue, who shall now be brent 5 without she be shortly socoured, & then I am sure he shall dye for sorowe.' when Gloryand and malabrone 12 knele 14 kynge Oberone / they kneled downe before this kyngge and sayd / 'syr, we desyre you to socoure this noble lady for the loue of her good husbond, your 15 frend Huon' / 'Gloryand,' quod the noble kyngge Oberon / 'that wyll I not do, but I am well contente that lastely ye go and delivery the good lady and the other presoners that be with her / and saye on 16 my behalfe to the Emperoure therry, that he be not so hardy 17 to do any yll to the lady or to any of her compayne / but saye that I wyll 18 that he respight theyr lyues tyll 19 the holy feeste of Eester be passyd / and that the lady & all 8 ye other presoners he cause to be retorned agayne 16 to the citye of Maience, and that 24 ye lady be set in a chambre at her lyberte and pleasure, & let her be bayngned 20 and wesshyde and new arayed, and let her haue .iii. noble ladyes to serve and accompaynye her, & that she haue meet and drynk as good & as plenteful 21 as though she were his owne propre daughter / in lyke wyse let the other presoners be seruyd / & saye that I wyll 23 he do this vnto 24 the Huon, after enduring many pains, is returning to his own hand,

does return and if he finds Esclara-

9 and griefe that he will hane at his heart, 12 had well.

13 and vnderstode. 14 Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 2. 15 deare.

16 in. 17 as. 18 and commaund. 19 vntill.

23 and commaund that. 24 Doe thus vntill.
Then Gloryand and Malabron wish themselves in the place where the lady was,

and they come through the air with a noise as of thunder, but invisible to all but the lady,

and cast into the fire the men who would have burnt the lady.

The knights release the lady, tell her who they are, and bid her be of good comfort.

It is not the first time Oberon has aided Esclaramonde and Huon.

In a short time Esclaramonde shall see Huon again.

Esclaramonde rejoices greatly at the good tidings.

tyne that Eester be passyd / and shew him that he be not soo hardy to breke or trespass my commandement / then Gloryand & Malabron take leave of the Kyng and of all other that were there / then they wysshyd them selfe in the place wher as the lady and the other presoners where / the lady as then was on her kneys before the fyre sore wepyng, abydyng the oure of her deth / the which had bene nere to her yf she had not shortly bene socouryd for they were aboute to haue bounde her to the stake / when Gloryand & Malabron came braynge in the ayre lyke thanther / and they were not seyne of no person but alone of the lady / when they were come & saw ye fyre akynedlyng, they toke ye x. rybawdis that wold have cast the lady in ye fyre, they toke them & dyd cast them all in ye flamyng fyer, whereas they wery shortly bren / and besyde them there wher dyuers other bren, whereof suche as were there had greate feer that none durst a byd there / then ye ii. kynghtis cam to the lady and lousid hyr, and sayd, dame, be of good comfort, we ar ii. kynghtis sent hether fro kings oberon to socour and to brynge you out of the daunger that ye be in / syrs, quod the lady, yt ys not the fyrste tyne that the noble kyng Oberon hathe socouryd vs, bothe me and my husbonde / god of hys grace rewarde hym / dame, quod gloryand, be mery and make ioye, for your good husbonde Huon is come on this syde the se, whome ye shall see in shorte tyne / when ye good lady vnderstode gloriaand she had suche ioye that of a great spase she coude speke no word, she was so rauysshyd; at laste she sayde, syr, I ought greatly to loue you to brynge 32

1 against. 2 and. 3 where. 4 vpon. 5 and complayning and. 6 vnto. 7 been shortly. 8 Fol. cxxxii. col. I. 9 villaines. 10 to. 11 omitted. 12 burnt. 13 so. 14 Madame. 15 perill and. 16 within. 17 had well. 18 but. 19 for bringing.
me suche tydynges' / 1 then they sayd to 2 hyr, 'Dame, 3
rest you here a seson tyll 4 we haue deluyeryd the other
prisoners, whom we see yonder ledying to 5 the dethe
4 warde, 5 and shortly we shalt retourne to 6 you. there
with they departyd fro the lady, and lefte hyr on 7
hyr knees holdyng vp hyr handys 2 to the 2 heuen,
1 devoutely re[n]dering thankis to our lord Isu chryste
8 of 8 the socoure and ayed that he had sent hyr. then
gloryand and malabron came to y e galous, & there
lowsyd y e CCC. prisoners, and slew dyuers of them
that were sent thethere to do execucyon, wherof all
12 they that were ther 9 , had great merueyl 1 0 when
they saw there compeyny slayn & coude not se them that dyd
it / but they thought there were a thousande knyghtes
by reason of y e 11 brute & noyse that 12 y e .ii. knyghtes
16 of y e fayry made / wherof they had suche fere that
they fled away and ran to the emperoure, who was sore
13 abasshed of that auenture / for it was also shewyd 2
hym / that the lady was reskewyd, and they coude not
20 tell by whom; But that they sayd they herde 14 great
brute & tempest 15 / then also the emperoure saw how
the people came rynnyngge toward hym, fleyngge fro the
galous, and they shewyd 16 hym all that they had sene
24 and hard, wherof y e emperoure & all his lordes had
great fere & were sore abasshed. 'A, syr,' quod the
duke of Austrych, ' it had bene better for you to haue
beleyd duke Hyldbvert, your cosyn / know suerly 17 ye
28 haue greatly displeased our lord Isu chryst syn 17 ye
wolde do suche cruell Iustyce in the holy tyme of
lente' / thus after these .ii. knyghtes of the fayry had
reskewyd the good lady and y e other prisoners, he 18
32 toke them and the lady & brought them to 2 the

1 and, 2 vnto, 3 Madame, 4 vntill.
5-5 toward their deaths. 6 again vnto, 7 vpon.
8 for, 9 present, 10 and did woonder thereat.
11 great, 12 Fol. cxxxii, col. 2, 13 dismayed and,
14 a, 15 noyse, 16 to, 17 that, 18 they,

She devoutly renders thanks to
our Lord Jesus Christ.

The knights
deliver the 300
prisoners,
and slay their
executioners.

All the spectators
marvel greatly,
thinking there
must be a
thousand knights,
so great is the
confusion.

They flie to the
Emperor,
and describe to
him what has
taken place.

It would have
been better for
the Emperor to
have given heed
to Hildebert's
request.
Then the two knights brought the lady and prisoners to the Emperor, and made themselves visible to all. The Emperor, seeing only two knights armed on horseback, sets little account by them, and asks what they mean by such boldness, and declares he will hang them also.

Gloryand repeats to the Emperor the things Oberon has commanded him to do.

emperoure, and shewyd them selues openly / ¹ when they were in the presence of the emperoure, and y⁶ presoners with them / ¹ the emperoure saw that there were but .¹. knyghtes armyd on² horse back, he set ⁴ lytyll by them, and sayd / ¹ how are you so bold and so hardy to deleyuer and to take out of my mens handes they³ that are condemned to dye by Justyee, and beseyd, that ye haue slayne⁴ of my men / and⁵ brynge ⁸ them in to my presence whome I haue condemned to dye / wherfore I wyll⁶ ye⁷ knowe that or⁸ I eete or drynyke you and all they shal be hanged, and the lady Esclaramonde brente,⁹ nor I shall not departe¹⁰ hence ¹² tyll¹¹ I haue sene you all dye¹² / then Gloryand and Malabrone lyft vp theyr wessers and shewyd theyr faces / and they semdyd to¹³ all them that sawe them that they neuer saw before .¹. so¹⁴ fayre knyghtis in all¹⁶ theyr lyues. Then Gloryand sayde to¹³ the emperour / syr, of you nor of your thretenynges we make ther of¹⁵ lytell acounte. But, syr, know for trouthe / that the noble kynge Oberon commaundeth you by vs in as ²⁰ moche as ye fere your lyfe / that ye be not so hardy any forther to do any yt or injury nor commaunde to be done to¹³ this noble lady that is here present, nor to these other prysoners / vntyll Eester day be past. ²⁴ And also kynge Oberon commaundeth you that ye¹⁶ kepe this lady in your house clothyd and apareyled and as well gouernyd, & to be accompanied with ladys and damoselles to serue her honorably as well as¹⁷ she ²⁸ were your owne proper daughther, and that in lyke wyse these presoners to be newly aparelyd¹⁸ and orderyd as well as other knyghtis of your house / & syr, we warne¹⁹ that in all²⁰ this that we haue sayd that ye do ³²

¹ and, ² vppon, ³ those, ⁴ many, ⁵ nowe, ⁶ that, ⁷ well, ⁸ before, ⁹ burned, ¹⁰ from, ¹¹ vntill, ¹² the death, ¹³ vnto, ¹⁴ Fol. cxxxii. back, col. ¹, ¹⁵ but, ¹⁶ doe, ¹⁷ if, ¹⁸ arrayed, ¹⁹ and charge you, ²⁰ omitted.
not the contrary for any thyngen that maye fall / for yf ye do other wyse / there is no mortall man shal saue your lyfe: thus commandeth you1 to do the2 noble kyng Oberon, who is souerayne lorde3 of the fayry' / when the emperor Therry4 harde these knyghtes of ye fayry thus spoke to5 hym / and saw how they were arrayd with theyr swordis in theyr handys tayntyd

8 with the blode of his almayns, he had great fere, & beheld his barons, and sayde / 'syr, I praye you gyue me som good comnseyle in this6 besynes / ye7 haue well hard mocch spekyng of kyng Oberon and of

12 his great actis and dedys, wherfore I fere hym moche / ye may se what .ii. of his knyghtis haue done / they haue rescued them that I had condempnyd to dye / and slayne dyuers of my men. Also ye here what

16 worde he sendeth me by his two knyghtis, that I8 shulde kepe this lady and the other presoners honorably / and that I shuld not be so hardy to put them to any daunger tyll9 Eester were10 passyd.' Then

20 an aunsyent knyght sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe that kyng Oberon is pusant and wyse / for there is nothyng in the world but that he knoweth it, and also as often as he lyst, he can be where as he wyll

24 wysshe hym selfe,11 with as great nombre of people as he lyste /11 therfore, syr, blyeue suerly yf ye do otherwyse then he hathe commaundyd you to do these two knyghtis of his that be here present hathe suffyeyent12

28 puasance to dystroye you, and kyngg Oberon to syt styl at home / therfore, syr, myn aduyse is that ye answere these .ii. knyghtes, that all that kyngg Oberon hath commaundedyd you to do by them, that ye wyll do

32 it suerly' /11 then all the other lordis gau the emperour

Ca. cxliv.] HOW THE EMPEROR IS SOR{AFRAID OF Oberon. 541

1 commandeth you after Oberon. 2 right.
3 and Governer of all the Realme. 4 had well. 5 vnto.
6 serious. 7 we. 8 Fol. cxxxii. back, col 2.
9 vntill. 10 be. 11 and. 12 after puissance.
the same counsayle / when the emperour had\(^1\) hard\(^2\) his lordys\(^3\) he retournyd\(^4\) hym to\(^5\) the ii. knyghtys of the fayry, and sayde / ‘syr ys, ye shall salute me to kyng Oberon, and say that as for me I shall do euery thynge as he hathe commaundedyd me to do to the best of my power’ / ‘syr Emperour,’ quod Gloryand, ‘if ye\(^6\) do as ye saye the kyng wyl take you for his frende / and therupon we commaundedyd you to god’ / 8 thus the ii. knyghtys departhyd, so that the emperoure nor none other parson\(^7\) coude tell\(^8\) where they were become, wherof euery man hadde great maruayle and were sore abasshyd. 8 Thus Gloryand and Malabron 12 within a whyle came to\(^9\) Momnuere, where as they founde kyngy Oberon, to whome they shewed all that they had done. ‘wel,’ quod kyngy Oberon, ‘as now the lady Esclaramonde and the other presyoners ar 16 at theyr case and well seruyd / but or\(^10\) a moneth be passydyd they shall derely abye the case that they be in nowe / for the emperoure hateth them so sore bycause of the maleys that he berethe to\(^5\) Huon\(^12\) / he 20 wyll set them all agayne into preson in great\(^13\) mysery / and when Easter is past / he wyll brenne\(^14\) the lady\(^15\) and hange vp\(^16\) the presyoners without they be rescued\(^17\)/ ‘syr,’ quod Gloryand, ‘I can not bylue the that 24 emperour dare do it or thynke to do so.’\(^18\) ‘Gloryand,’ quod the\(^19\) kyng, ‘know sueryly that the great hate that is rootyd in the hart of the emperoure shal constreynd\(^20\) him thus to do.’ now let vs leue spekyngse of\(^21\) kyng 28 Oberon, and speke of the Emperoure.\(^22\)

\(^1\) well, \(^2\) and understood. \(^3\) and Barons. \(^4\) turned. \(^5\) vnto. \(^6\) will. \(^7-7\) knew not. \(^8\) and. \(^9\) the City of. \(^10\) before. \(^11\) Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1. \(^12\) of Bourdeaux that. \(^13\) pouerlie and. \(^14\) burne. \(^15\) Esclaramond. \(^16\) all. \(^17\) againe. \(^18\) so to doe. \(^19\) noble. \(^20\) and vrge. \(^21\) the noble. \(^22\) Tityre.
Howe the emperoure made the lady esclaramonde to be well seruyd and aparaylyd, and all the other presoners but a\textsuperscript{3} iii. wekys after he made the noble lady & the sayd presoners to be put agayne in to pryson, where as they were in great mysery.

Howe the emperoure\textsuperscript{1} made the\textsuperscript{2} lady esclaramonde to be well seruyd and aparaylyd, and all the other presoners / but a\textsuperscript{3} .iii. wekys after he made the noble lady & the sayd presoners to be put agayne in to pryson, where as they were in great mysery.

Ow sheweth the hystory that after these\textsuperscript{4} .ii. knyghtis of ye fayry were departid and vanysshid away out of the presence of the emperoure, and that the emperoure was retourned into the citye of Magence with the lady Esclaramond and with the other presoners, wherof the monde and the other prisoners, wherof the monde and the other prisoners, were joyfull of theyr good aduenture / the emperoure had them into his palays and delyuerid to them chambers well drest and hanyd, as it apartheyd,\textsuperscript{8} and the lady\textsuperscript{9} had .iii. ladys to serue her / and she was baynyd\textsuperscript{10} and stuyd,\textsuperscript{11} and new aparaylyd as wel and rychely as though she had bene the emperours proper doughter, so that within a shorte space she came agayne to her beautye,\textsuperscript{15} and in lyke wyse so dyd all the other presoners who were kepte in chambers and new aparayled, and had theyr case as other knyghtis of ye emperours courte had / but as sone as thre wekys was passyd / the great hate that the emperour had to the\textsuperscript{2} lady and to the presoners constrayned hym to take fro them theyr\textsuperscript{4} joy and ease that they were in,

Ca. C.xlv.

The Emperor returned to Mayence with the lady Esclaramonde and the other prisoners. All rejoice to see them.

The lady is treated just as though she was the Emperor's own daughter, so that she regained her beauty.

The other prisoners were treated as knights of the court.

At the end of three weeks the Emperor's hate returned.

\textsuperscript{1} Tirrey. \textsuperscript{2} noble. \textsuperscript{3} about. \textsuperscript{4} the. \textsuperscript{5—5} had great joy. \textsuperscript{6} and. \textsuperscript{7} vnto. \textsuperscript{8} thereunto. \textsuperscript{9—9} noble duchess Escleremond. \textsuperscript{10} bathed. \textsuperscript{11} washed. \textsuperscript{12 as. \textsuperscript{13} Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2. \textsuperscript{14} owne. \textsuperscript{15} and to be as faire and well fauoured as euer she was. \textsuperscript{16—16} also in faire and rich. \textsuperscript{17} and pleasures. \textsuperscript{18} other.
and tournyd the same to wepynges and sorowe. And the emperour swore that for all kyng Oberon or for any thyng that he coude do / he wolde neuer be in peas in his harte tyll he had set all that company agayne into pryson / and besyde that, he swore that Eester shulde no soner be past but that ye lady Esclaramond shuld be reburnt and all the other presoners hangyd / and on them to take vengance in the syte of Huon of Burdeaux, who had done hym so much trouble that he coude not forget it / then he commandyd to take agayne the duches Esclaramonde and to put her and all the other presoners in the preson agayne / ye which was done. Then the duches Esclaramonde and al the other presoners were ryghte sorrowful, and were in great fere, and sayd eche to other, 'Alas, now our dethe aprocheth.' and when the lady saw that she was set agayne in pryson, she began sore to wepe and complayne for the duke Huon her husband, and sayd / a, dere lorde and husbonde / to longe ye tary, for I se none other owre but that my dethe aprocheth / for ye shall not come in tyme / well may I curse the owre that I was borne / for in all my lyfe I haue had but sorow, and heuynes, and dolours in portables / better it had bene for me to haue ben ded then to vse my lyfe in this derke presone / ryght devoutly she called on our lord Iesu chryste to haue pyte of her / thus was this noble duches set agayn in presone, and also the presoners, where as they sufferyd great fayme and pouerte / for other thynges had they not to lyue by but barly brede &

1—1 into pitifully weepinges and great lamentations.  
2 vntill.  
3 the.  
4 burnt.  
5 vppon.  
6 according to his commandement.  
7 that.  
8—8 omitted.  
9 quoth she.  
10 way.  
11 euer.  
12—12 insupportable.  
13 Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 1.  
14 spend.  
15 and compassion.  
16 famine.
Ca. cxlvi. OF HUON'S ARRIVAL IN FRANCE.

clere water. Now we wyll leue to speke of them and spoke of Huon, who was aryued at Marcyll.

How Huon departed fro Marcyll and came to his vnclle, the abbot of cluny, in habyte dysgysed / & to hym dyscouered hymselfe, wherof the abbot had great joy, & so had Claryte his daughter. Ca. C.xlvi.

S ye haue harde here before, how Huon was at Marcyll, and after that he had soiorned .iii. dayes, he made hym redy to departe, and brought mules and horse for hym & for barnard, and for his company / and then he chargyd his summers / and vpone one of them he trussyd the greffons fot, y which was great and horryble, & coueryd it bycause every man shulde not se it / when he was redy and every thynge trussyd, he departed fro Marcyll / and rode so by his iornyes that by Provence and came to Masconos, and on a thursday at nyght, he aryuyd at the towne of Tornous. And when they had suppyd, he callyd Barnard his cosyn, and sayd / 'cosy[n], I praye you abyde me here / for I wyll go se myne vnclle the abbot of Cluny and Claryet my daughter, whome I sore desyre to se, & shortly I shall retouerne agayne to you, I wyll go preuely dysgysed to ye entent that I wyll not be knowen' / 'syr,' quod Barnard, 'syn it is your plesure we must be content' / then they went to bed, & in the mornynge Huon rose vp and aparelyd hymselfe lyke a pylgryme, with a stafe, and a bage abought his necke / with great botis on his legis;

---

1 Duke. 2 Marsellis. 3 good. 4 vnto. 5 journed there. 6 selfe. 7 Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2. 8 vpon. 9 cosyd in text. 10-10 to stay. 11 to. 12 seeing that. 13 and.

CHARL. ROM. VI. N N
he had a great beard and long here, wherfore he semyd well a pylgrime \(^1\) come \(^4\) fro a far countre, \& so he had done in deede / when Barnard \& his company saw hym so aparayyl, they laughed \& said / 'syr, it apereth \(^4\) well by your maner that ye ar scapyd out of some good place / it semeth to vs / that yf ye wyll shake your stafe ye wyll make the money to a voyde out of mens purses, ye ar so bold a begger \(^7\) / when Huon harde \(^8\) hym he laughed, \& toke leue of them and departid al alone with his bage aboute his nekke / so a fote he went tyll \(^3\) he came to \(^4\) Cluny / \(^5\) then he came to \(^4\) the abbey gate \& callyd ye porter, \& sayd / 'frend, I pray ye let me enter.' \(^8\) he openyd the weket \& beheld Huon, who semyd to hym to be a tall \& a goodly man, \& sayd / 'pulgryme, enter when you plese' / \(^\circ\) Then Huon enterid in at the weket, and sayd to \(^4\) ye porter / \(^16\) frend, 'I com strayt fro beyonde the great see, and haue kyssed the holy sepulture, \& I \(^10\) haue sufferyd moche payne and pouter / and bycause or \(^11\) this tyme I haue bane here with ye abbot of this place, therfore I 20 thought \(^12\) I wolde not pas by without spekynge with hym ; I pray ye shewe me that courteys that I may speke with hym / for he wyll sone know me.' 'Syr,' quod ye porter, 'it semeth \(^13\) by your maner ye seme to be a man of a good plase : therfore I gyne you leue \(^7\) go into the house at youre pleasure / and ye shall fynde our good abbot in his halle, where as he is comonynge with his bretherne / serteynely I knowe well ye shall be welcome to \(^4\) hym yf he have of you any knowleage, for a more noble man courteys and large \(^14\) ye shall not fynd on \(^15\) this syde \(^16\) the see.' 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'your courteys may auayle you.' Then Huon went \(^32\)

---

1—1 that came out. 2 them. 3 vntill. 4 vnto. 5 and. 6 vnto hym. 7 to. 8 then. 9 Fol. cxxxiiii, col. 1. 10 omitted. 11 before. 12 that. 13 vnto me. 14 liberall. 15 vpon. 16 of.
into the hall, wheras he found the abbot with his bretherne / 1 then he saluted the abbot and all his counte. 'Frendy, quod ye abbot, 'ye are welcome; I pray you2 shew me fro whence ye come?' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall shewe you the trouthe / I come now fro beyonde the see fro the holy citye of Jerusalem, where as I haue kyssed ye holy sepulture3 where as4 I am com hether to se you is this, I found there a yonge knyght of myne age namyd Huon of Bardeaux, 12 and he 6 saythe6 he is your nephue / and when he saw that I wold depart7 thence to come into this8 countre, he humply prayed me to recommaunde hym to9 you / and thercfere, syr,3 I am com to9 you to do this8 message / for he and I haue bene together in 10 dyuers bataylis / & great amyte11 betwen vs' / when the good abbot12 harde13 the pylgryme, 14 great dropis14 fell fro his eyen15 when he harde his nephue Huon namyd / 20 and sayd, 'frendy, I pray you yf it be trewe as ye saye, to shew me the trouthe ye haue sene my nephue Huon / for it is he that I loue best in all this worlde, and desire moste to se hym / I pray you shewe9 me what 24 is his mynd, other to retourne hether or elles to abyde styl16 there; 17 wold to god18 I were in det to pay a .M. marke of golde so that he were as nowe here in this hall.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of youre nephue whomse ye desire so moche to se, 19 or it be past a moneth19 he wyll20 be here with you, and, syr, he shewyd me at my departying fro hym that he hath a doughter whom Huon found the abbot, saluted him, and in answer to his inquiry Huon describes himself as a pilgrim from Jerusalem, who had met with a young knight named Huon of Bordeaux, Huon prayed the pilgrim, since he was coming into this country, to deliver a message to the abbot.

In a month Huon will arrive here,

1 and. 2 to. 3 omitted. 4 Jesus christ. 5 why. 6—6 said that. 7 from. 8 his. 9 unto. 10 Fol. cxxxiiii. col. 2. 11 haue bene. 12 had well. 13 and understood. 14—14 many tears. 15 and trickled downe his cheeks. 16 there stil. 17 I. 18 that. 19—19 before a moneth be past. 20 (by the grace of God).
and also he charged the pilgrim to see Clarlet, for Huon knows not if she is alive or dead.

The abbot will summon Clarlet into the hall.

Huon is most joyful.

The abbot sends a noble knight, Sir Emery, to fetch Clarlet.

Sir Emery salutes her;

she returns his salutation, and demands his news.

A pilgrim has come from beyond the sea with tidings of Huon, her father; the abbot desires her to come and speak with him.

Clarlet and her damsele enter the hall.

ye haue norryshed and brought vp and he charged me greatly that I shulde desyre of you to se her or I deportyd fro you, he knoweth not whether she be a lyne or dede / I wolde gladely se her yf it were your pleasure.' 'Frende,' quod the abbotte, 'ryght gladly ye shall se her. I shal cause her to come hether, and then ye maye se her at your ease / and I dare well saye to you that in all the world ye shall not fynd no 8 fayrer nor a sweter creature, nor more wyser of her age nor better lemyd, & yet she is but .x. yerys of age.

¶ When Huon vnderstode the abbot, ye maye well know that he had great ioye at his harte peuely, & thankyd our lord Iesu chryste. Then the abbot callyd to hym a ryght notable knyght, namyd syr Emery, and commaundyd hym to go & feche thether his nece Claryet. ye knyght went into the chaivmbre wheras the fayre lady was with other iii. noble ladyes, who had brought her vp / then Syr Emery saluted the lady and the other that were with her / when the yonge lady parseyued syr Emery, she rose vp and renderyd to hym his salutacyon, & ryght humbly saing, 'syr knyght, I am ioyous of your comyng, I pray you shew sum of your newes / 'sertynly, 24 fayre lady,' quod ye knyght / 'hether is come a pylgryme, who is come fro beyond the see / and he hath shewyd the abbot your vnclc tdynges of your father, duke Huon, therfore your vnclc desyreth you to 28 come and speke with hym.' when the lady harde spekyng of her father, with all her harte she desyred to know sum sertynne tdynges / she and her damseles departed out of ye chambre and came in to the hall to 32 the abbot her vnclc, accompanyed with .ii. notable

1 before. 2 vnto. 3 omitted. 4 Fol. exxxiii. bacc, col. 1. 5 ioyfull. 6 to. 7 mee. 8 and tidinges. 9 and then.
knuyghtes; when\(^1\) she entered into the hall rychely aparalyd / no man coulde dyscreyne her beaute,\(^2\) she was so well formyd \(\text{that}\) \(^3\) god and \(^3\) nature\(^4\) coude not amende her / her skynne was as whyte as ye\(^e\) flour in the mede\(^5\) / & colouryd lyke the red rose / her hanche low and her pappys sumwhat resynge, her throte smoth and clere / her chyne vaunted / her mouth as vermeyl\(^8\) as a rose / her tethc small & well rengyde, and whyte / her face whyte and well colouryd, meddelyd\(^6\) whyte & red / her eyene smylunge, her chere amorous to behold, her nose strethe / her forehed whyte / her here yelow / her ceres gentyll and close, I can not denyse the .x. parte of her excellent beaute / none coude regarde her\(^7\) but that praised and louyd her / all her beaute and her swete demenor, and great humelyte that was 16 in her / yf I shulde\(^8\) dyscreyne it / it shulde\(^9\) be ouer long to rehers; when Huon had\(^10\) sene his daughter\(^11\), who was so faire / he gladly beheld her with / \(^{12}\) out makyng of any knowlidge / then ye\(^e\) abbot toke his nese 20 by the hande & lede her to \(^{13}\) Huon, and sayd / 'pylgryme, howe say you by\(^3\) this damysell / ye maye well parsaynde by\(^3\) her she hathe not bene sore trauelyd nor moche come in the sonne / I haue kept her a long space\(^{14}\) / 24 and yf she be garnysshed with beaute / in lyke wyse so she is withe wytte and bounte / she is daughter to\(^{13}\) Huon of Burdeaux / the man in the worlde that I moost loue / \(\text{that}\)\(^{16}\) wold to god\(^{17}\) I dyd se hym as I do 28 you\(^{18}\) / but ye\(^f\) god send me lyf\(^{19}\), this lady shall be rychely maryed, I shall\(^20\) gyue her of my\(^3\) goodes that she shall be rychely and pusantice. ' syr,' quod Huon, 'I pray to our lorde Iesu chryst to gyue her good

\(1\) then. \(2\) for. \(3\) omitted. \(4\) herself. \(5\) meadow. \(6\) mingled. \(7\) nor looke upon her. \(8\) heere. \(9\) would. \(10\) well. \(11\) clariet. \(12\) Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2. \(13\) vuto. \(14\) time. \(15\) Duke. \(16\) I. \(17\) that. \(18\) nowe. \(19\) and helth. \(20\) will.
fortune / & that she may be so maryed that her blod may therby be lyft vp and exalted / then the fayre lady Claryte sayd to Huon / 'syr pylgryme, I pray you shew me yf ye know any tydlynges of my father, 4 duke Huon of Burdeaux? / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'he and I togethre haue bene a longe space beyonde the see / and companyons together / and we fought the sowdan of babylon that now is / it is not he that was 8 set there by Huon after that he had slayn ye great Admyrall gaudes, it is a norder who syn that tyme conqueryd ye cytye & ye countre of Egypt / many aduentures Huon and I sufferyd, but at the end we dyscumfyted the sowdan and his men slayne / 'pylgrym,' quod Claryte, 'I requyre you shewe me yf ye know that my dere father wyll retorne hether agayn / the whiche is the thyng in the world that I most desyre / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'I answere you or .ii. monethes be past ye shall se hym here in good helth / 'I praye it may be so,' quod the lady / 'that he maye deluyer my mother out of pryson, where as she is in great pouerete and mysery.'

† When Huon harde his daughter, he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe / but sayd, 'my ryght dere daughter, or 17 august be past I shall deluyer her or dye in payn, for I shall moue suche warre agaynst yemerourre Thierry, that yet or I dye I shall stryke of his hede what so euer fall therof /' when the lady harde Huon how he sayd that he was her father, she 28 changed colore and blussyd as Rudy as a rose, and thought to herself by the wordes that he spake that he was her father, where of she was 20 joyfull, & sayd /

1 vnto. 2 to. 3 time. 4 bothe. 5 haue. 6 are. 7 and destroyed. 8 the fayre Ladie. 9 whether. 10 or no. 11 that before. 12—12 vnto our lord. 13—15 quoth the Ladie, it may be so. 14 Fol. cxxxv. col. 1. 15 had well. 16 and understood. 17 before. 18 make. 19 from his bodie. 20 right.
How Huon Discovers Himself to His Daughter.

‘A, syr, I praye you yf ye be duke Huon of Burleanux, my father,\(^1\) shew me.’ / ‘my ryght dere doughter, byleue it suerly, for I wyll no lenger hyde it’ / when the lady hard that he was her father she cleppyd hym, and .xx. tymes kyssed hym. Then the abbote came and embraessd hym, and sayd / ‘my ryght dere neephew, the ioy that my harte desyreth\(^2\) your comynge is to me so agreable\(^3\) that I can not tell whether I dreme or not that I se you’\(^4\) / then agayn\(^5\) embraesd hym, makyng the greatest ioy in the worlde. Also there was Claryet his doughter, who embraessed and kyssed hym / then all that were in ye\(^6\) howse came thethere to make\(^6\) chere and feeste\(^7\) / ‘fayre neephew,’ quod the abbote, ‘I am sore abasshed that ye be returned with so small a company.’ ‘fayr vncl, quod Huon / it coude be none other wyse; I have had suche fortunes on\(^9\) the see that the moost parte of my men ar dede and perysshed, and sum by malady, and sum ar returned to theiyr owne countrees / and specaely they that went with me ar abydyng at the rokke of the Adamant, and there al be dede for\(^10\) fayme, and they that were my gydes to haue brought me to\(^11\) enphame ar in lyke wyse dede there’ / then\(^12\)\(^13\) Huon began to shewe\(^11\) the abbote all the aduentures that he had syn he departed fro the noble cytye of Burdeaux / there were sum that hard it that toke it for a mock, & al ye he shewyd of so many great meruaylles / they thoughe\(^14\) the moost part of them were lyes /\(^15\) one sayd to an nother, ‘great auantage hath these vacaboundes to lye, bycause they fynde no man to say them naye / & yf any man say nay, theiyr answere is rudie to saye go and se’ / then the abbote sayd, ‘fayre neephew, yf I were of ye

---

1. to.
2. hathe of.
3. acceptable.
4. heere and.
5. hee.
6. great.
7. feasting.
8. good.
9. vppon.
10. by.
11. vnto.
13. Foi, cxxxi, col. 2.
14. that.
15. and.
If the abbot were younger, gladly would he go with Huon to destroy the Emperor, but he will pay with his own treasure a number of men of war who shall aid Huon.

As the abbot is one hundred and fourteen years old, he will abandon all his treasure to Huon, who can take as much as he pleases.

Age to bere harneys,1 gladly I wold go with you2 to destroy this Emperoure who hath done you so myche yll; I shall sende for suche a nombre of men of warre and pay them with my tresoure, the whiche I haue4 longe tyme gatheryd togyther, and shal ayed you to make such warre that it shall3 be ever3 had in remembraunce / or elles I wyll dye in the payne, and all they that shulde go with me / and to cause hym to make you amendes of al the ylles and damages that he hath done to4 you / yet sumwhat I haue done all redy / for it is not long5 that one of the Emperours nephews was slayn by my men, and all they that were with hym slayn or taken / for, nephew, I haue gatheryd togyther as6 great tresoure that I may therewith wel7 entetayn a .C. M. men for .ii. yere without sellynge or laynge to plegge any fote of londe pertenynge16 to my churche / but as nowe I am so olde that I can not ryde out, for I am a .C. & xiii. yere of age / and therfore syn8 I can not go with you / I shal abandone to4 you all my treasure; 9 take therof as moche as it shall please you / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye make me so great an offere that ones or I dye I truste to rendere to4 you the doble10 by the grace of god.'

11 How duke Huon of Burdeaux shewyd to 24 his vncele, the abbote of Cluny, all the adventures that he had syn he departed fro the12 cytye of Burdeaux / & how he gaue ye abbot ye appyll of yought, wherby 28 ye good abbot became agayn to his beaute that he had when he was of .xxx. yere of age.

Ca. C.xlvii.

1 armour. 2 to ayde you. 3—2 always be. 4 vnto. 5 since. 6 a. 7 omitted. 8 seeing that. 9 and. 10 value. 11 Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 1. 12 noble.
When Huon of Bordeaux vnderstod the abbot his vnkle, and sawe the fayr offere and servyce that he had offerde hym, sayd / 'syr, of your curtesie and largesse, and all the good that ye haue done to me and to my daughter claryet, god rewarde you for it / trewe it is after that I had fought with the gryffons; I came to a fayr fountayn, & there by was a tree growynge charged full of fayr fruyte, the tree was called the tre of yought, of y which I gaderyd .iii. appyls, wherof ye shall haue one and shall eete it, and as sone as ye haue eten thereof wherby ye shal become as yonge, and as stronge and lusty as ye were when ye were of the age of .xxx. yere.' Then there was a monk in the howse callyd dan Johan saumet, who began to laugh, and hasted hym to speke, & sayd / 'A, syr, what is it that ye saye / thys .ii.M. yere there was neuer man at the tree of yought, therfore this tale is not to be byleuyd' / when Huon harde the monke he waxye rede for angre, & lyft vp his staffe and wolde haue styken therwith the monke, and he had not skept backe, and sayd / 'A, thou false monke, thou lyest falsly / I haue bene there, and that thou shalt se the profe there of whether I say trewe or not' / then the abbot came bytwene them and stoppyd the stroke / and sayd to Huon / 'A, my ryght dere nephew, apayse yourself' / and then he sayd to the monke / 'A, thou gloutone, by the faythe that I owe to my lorde saynt bennet, thy wordes shall be sore punysshyd' / then he causyd the monke to be set in presone / and then the abbote sayd to Huon / 'syr, I pray you be no lenger dyspleasyd' / then Huon toke

---

1 Duke. 2 had well. 3 good. 4 vntryo. 5 he. 6 Saluuet. 7 and. 8 if. 9 Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 2. 10-10 rude groome. 11 for. 12-12 thou shalt.
one of his appyls and toke to his vnclle the abbote, and sayd / to syr, take this appyl, y whithe I gaderyd of the tree of yowght; I gaderyd .iii., and one I gau to the admyrall of Perce, and a nother I kept for myself, the which I gyue you / I wolde haue gaderyd mo but I was defended by an anugell sent fro our lorde Iesu chryst / & syr, knowe for trought that the admyrall of perce or I gau hym ye appyl he was of 8 the age of .vi. score yere & more / but as soone as he had eeten therof / he became as fayr and as stronge as when he was .xxx. yere of age, & he is as nowe one of the fayrest pryncys of the worlde; By the whiche 12 myracle he and all his people of his realme forsoke the law of macomete and toke on then the byleue of our lorde Iesu chryst, and were chrystenyd / & they that wold not were hewen al to peses / and after that for 16 the loue that he bare to me, he passed the see with me with great pusaunce, and we enteryd in to ye sowdans land / where as we dyscumfyted hym in playne batayll / when the abbote harde his nephew he had great 20 ioy, and toke the appyl / & made therof the synge of ye crosse, and dyd eete it vp euery dele, wherby incontynent in syght of all them that were there present, he became in to his fyrst youth as he was 24 when he was but of ye age of .xxx. yeres, his whyte berd fell away & a new berd come / his iowes that were lene & pale, ye flesse grew again new quycke flesse, so that he became a fayre man & wel fornysyd of 28 body and membres / a farer man can no man se, nor lyghter, nor lustyere / wherof he had suche ioye at his harte that he ran and enbrasyd Huon, and kyssed hym

Huon tells how the Admiral of Persia ate one of the apples, and straightway became fair and strong as a man of thirty years, and how, on account of this miracle, all the men of his realm became Christians.

Then the abbot, making the sign of the cross, took the apple and ate it, and at once became as a man of thirty years.

In great joy he embraces Huon.

1 gaue.  2 good.  3 therof.  4 and.  5 forbidden.
6 before.  7 in.  8 did forsaie.  9 false and detestable.
10 vpon.  11 vnto mee.  12 had well.
13 and vnderstood.  14 thereon.  15 whit.  16 the.
17 Fol. cxxxvi. col. 1.  18 young.  19 could.
more then x. tymes / when they that were present saw the great merueyll, they were greatly abasshed, & sayd one to a nother / that Huon was worthy to be byleued / for out of suche a prynces mouthe neuer Issuyd a ley / there was moche ioy made / the tabels were set & they went to dyner / there sat the abbote and Huon, and claryet his daughter / of there seruyee and meetes I wyll make no retherosall, for they were rychely seruyd; after they had dyned & grace sayd / all ye monks of the convent came & knelyd downe before Huon, and humbly requyred hym of pardone for dan Johan salmet, who was to hasty to speke, & all was but throghe nyglycence of yught and yll aduyseyd / when Huon saw all the monkes before hym on their knees desyryng hym to pardon the monke of his folly. He sayd to them, 'syr, I am content to fullyll your desyers' / for I am not come hether to troble any man' / when the abbote harde Huon pardon his monke, he thanked hym, and sayd / 'syr, by saynte bennet, yf ye had not pardonyd hym, he shuld not haue come out of presone this yere' / then the monkes went to the pryson, and they shewyd the monke that was in pryson what meruaylles was done in his absence / and how theyr abbote, who was a .C. and .xiii. yere of age, was become of the age of .xxx. yeres / 'syr, quod he, 'I am glad of my delyuerance, but I can not byleue it be so as ye say, nor I wyll not byleue it tyll I se it' / then he went in to the hall whereas the abbote and Huon was togyther / and when he sawe the abbote yonge agayne / then he knelyd downe and cryed Huon mercy / and requyrd hym of pardon / ye whiche Huon granted. Then there

They dine, and are well feasted. After dinner, the monks of the convent humbly ask Huon to pardon John Salmet. Huon grants their request; the abbot thanks him. They show the monk what marvels have taken place in his absence. He will not believe them until he sees them, but when he saw the abbot young again, he cries Huon mercy, and asks his pardon,

1 there. 2 that. 3 (quoth they). 4 Saluuet. 5 omitted. 6 vpon. 7 vnto. 8 good. 9 had well. 10 his Nephew. 11 now. 12 Fol. cxxxvi. col. 2. 13 vntill. 14 were.
Huon of Burdeaux. [Ca. cxlvi.

was great ioy / then the abbote sayd / ‘nephew, send for men of warre on all sydes / & I shall pay their wages to the nombre of .xx.M. men / for I haue golde & seluer inought / and let vs send for all our frendes, and we shall be a great nombre of men able to fyght with ye Emperoure, who hath wrongfully, without cause, dysheryte you, & kepyth your wyfe in prysone, wherof my hart is so sorrowfull that I can no lenger endure it’ / 8

‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘yf I may fynde any other way to come to passe with the Emperoure / then by spere and sheylde and no man slayne / then2 I wold thynke I had well spede / for yf I myght do so much with the 12 Emperoure that he wolde render to me my londes and synnyres, & my wyf & men / and that therby I myght become his lege man / I5 thynge I had made then an honorable ende / for I haue done him great 16 damage’ / ‘fayr nephe,’ quod the abbote, ‘I wolde fayne knowe by what maner ye coude bringe this mater aboute’ / ‘uncle,’ quod Huon, ‘this nyght I wyl study on7 ye mater, ye which I trust to our lord 20 god9 to brynge to a good10 end.’

How Huon of Burdeaux departed fro Cluny & went to ye noble cytye of Maience upon a fryday, & how he came nere to the 24 Emperoures oratory. Ca. C.xl.viii.

Huon wrote a letter summoning his men lying at Tournous to come to the abbey of Cluny.

11

1 after that Huon and the abbot had denysed togyther of dyuers thynge / Huon wrote a letter to his men beyning at tornus, that they shulde come to hym to the abey of Cluny; he sent a gentylman of the abey to

1 and. 2 then after thinke. 3 that. 4 vnto. 5 would then. 6 then before thinke. 7 vppon. 8 in. 9 Iesu chryst. 10 and prosperous. 11 Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 1. 12 good.
feche them / when he was come to tornus and had delyueryd his letters to Barnarde / they made them redy, and trussyd theyr sumners and departed thence / and they rode so longe that they came in at the gates of the abey of Cluny / ye same tyme Huon and the abbot were lenyng out at a wyndowe / the abbot sawe .xv. summers chargyd, & .vii. mules and mulettes / wherof he had great merueyll of whence they were, and sayd to Huon, 'fayre nephew, can ye tell to whom parteneth thes summers, or what be they that bryngeth them?' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'know for 12 trouthe I haue conqueryd them and they ar myn, and yonder is Barnarde that doth conducte them / who hathe had moche payne and trouble or he coude fynde me' / 'fayre nephew,' quod ye abbot, 'great joy I haue at my harte that he hathe songhe you so longe to fynde you at last / nor I coude not haue sent a more noble man ye ought greatly to loue hym / and also he is our kynsman / and alwayes he hath bene to you 20 good and trewe' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'in hym I haue founde all that ye say / and syr, the great summer that ye se yonder with the .ii. great coffers well bandyl'd / they be full of presyous stones and 24 iowelles, more worthe then .iii. good cytyes; I wyll lene them here with you to kepe for the marriage of my daughter,' and with those wordes he kyst her / 'downe nephewe,' quod the abbot / 'and bysyde that ye wyll 28 guye her I shall departe with her large of my treasure / therwith thother came Barnarde and all the other of his company / when ye abbot persseyued Barnard he came to hym with his armes abrode and 32 cleppyd and kyssed hym / and made hym great feest Led by Barnard, they reach the abbey, with all the sumpters-horses.

The abbot sees them from a window, and marvels to whom they can belong.

Huon has conquered them; they are his, and Barnard is conducting them.

The biggest sumpter-horse bears two coffers full of precious stones and jewels.

Huon leaves them in the abbot's keeping for his daughter's dowry.

1 and, 2 vnto, 3 from, 4 appertaine, 5 that, 6 before, 7 the, 8 omitted, 9 and faithfull, 10 good, 11 Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 2, 12-12 after Barnarde, 13 right joyfully.
The abbot made a great feast in Barnard's honour.

The sump'ter-horses are discharged, and all the coffers opened.

The abbot thinks Huon has riches enough to buy the whole realm of France.

Huon gives Clariet a rich necklace of gold and precious stones.

She humbly thanks her father.

Huon apparels himself as a prince of high degree, and was fair to look upon.

On the ninth day Huon secretly departs, accompanied by Barnard.

Only the abbot knows of their going.

and chere to hym and to all his company / then duke Huon and ye abbot abd Quart his daughter went in to theyr chambre and dyscharged the summers and openyd every coffer / when the abbot had sene the ryches that was in them / he was neuer so abasshed, and sayd / 'A, Huon, fayr nephew, I thynke ye haue broughe hether ryches to bye therwith the hole realme of france / then Huon toke a color of golde full of 8 precyous stones, that the clerenes of them illumyned all the howse / Huon dyd put the color abought his doughters neke, & kyst her in the mouth, & sayd / 'my dere doughter, I gyue you this ryche coler, I neuer gane you any thyng before / it is so rych that the stones therin ar worth a realme or a duchy' / when the lady sawe the rych coler, she was joyfull, and knedly downe before her father and thanked hym humbly / then Huon shewed all his treasure to his vncle the abbot / when all had bene sene and awenyd, ye abbot dyd put them in to coffers / then Huon aparyll hymselfe with a ryche aparilly / then he semyd to be a prynce of hye degre, he was so fayre to behold that all such as sawe hym had pleasur to behold hym / there he made good chere the space of .viii. dayes / & on the .ix. daye in the mornyng he departed thence pryuely, and toke Barnard with hym, without knowlage of any parson except the abbot, to whom he sayd / 'vncle, I and Barnarde wyll departe, and I requyre you lat no man lyuynge know of my departynge as long as ye can kepe it secrete tyll ye here fro me sum newes / ye shall be done,' quod the abbot / 'and I commend you

1—1 omitted. 2 good. 3 his vncle. 4 the faire Ladie. 5 Duke. 6 and. 7 and louing. 8 right. 9 humbly before thanked. 10 vnto. 11 then. 12 great. 13 and feasting for. 14 vpon. 15 the. 16 Faire. 17 to. 18 Fol. cxxxvii. col. 1. 19 vntill. 20 tidings.
Ca. exlviii.]  **How Huon Visits the Emperor in Disguise.**

To the saucgard of our lorde Iesu chryst, then Huon and Barnarde departed or any man were resyn, and they toke theyr waye, to Maience & restyd not tyll they came to Coloyne, and the nexte mornynge they rode tyll they came within a lege of Maience, then they enteryd in to a wode, & there they lyghted, then Huon aparaled hymselfe lyke a pilgrym in habyte, and he toke an herbe and rubbed therewith his vysage, so that he somydle that he had bene in the same x. yere, so that he was vnknowyn, so that Barnard that was with hym coude not knowe hym by the face, then Barnarde lawghyde, then he toke hys stafe and skryp, and sayd to Barnarde, 'syr, go ye your waye before in to the cete with our horses, and take none aquantence of me though ye so me, and take vp sum smal loggyng, so Barnarde wente on before, and Huon fayre & easly went after, and so enteryd in to the cytye; And he had with hym the xxx. ryche stones in his bosume: when he was enterid in to the cytye, he restyd not tyll he came to the palyes, and as he went vp the stayres, he mette the stewardes of the Emperou[r]'s howse, to whom he sayd, 'syr, I praye you in ye honoure of our lorde Iesu chryst, and of the blessed vyrgyn mary his mother, to gyue me sum meet, for I am soo hungry that I can skant go on my leges, nor I haue no mony to bye me a morsell of brede' when the steward hard the pilgryme, he behelde hym well and saw how he stafe shakyd in his hande, the which he thought had bene for feblenes and pouerte, and of hym great pyte, and demaunded fro whens I and I besiech him humbly that you may haue peace with the Emperour Tirrey.

1 and 2 before. 3-3 towards the Citie of. 4 vntill. 5 the Citie of. 6 and. 7 in such sort. 8 vnto. 9 omitted. 10 him. 11 scarce. 12 vpon. 13 had well. 14 and ynderstood. 15 with. 16 and compassion. 17 of him.
he came / 'syr,' 1 quod Huon, 'I come streight fro the holy sepulture, and I haue endurdy moch pouerto' 2 / 'frende,' quod the stewarte, 'I pray you 3 tary 4 me here a lyttel seassone / tyll 5 I have bene in ye 6 presone 7 to bere 8 meet to 9 ye 10 duches Esclaramond and to 8 other presoners, who cryeth out 9 for fayme 9 that they ben in / for ye they be longe in this casse that they be in, 10 they can not long 11 endure 12 / for the Emperoure hath 8 takyng se an inwarde hate to 13 her and to 13 them that be 14 in presone with her / that he hathe made promyse that as soon as Ester be 15 past, the lady shall be brente 16 and the other 17 al hangyd / and 12 this day is sher 18 thursdaye, so 19 they haue to lyue but .v. dayes / and I am ryght sory for ye 10 noble lady that our Emperoure wyll put her to dethe without 20 cause' / when Huon 21 hard that / he had no membre 22 but that 16 trymbelyd, and he cast downe his vysage and began sore 23 to wepe, & sufferyd the stewarte to passe and spake no worde 24 / but returned in to the towne and went & logyd in ye 10 towne ryght heuy and sorowfull; 20 how be it he was ryght joystfull 25 that his wyfe was alyne, for he 26 feryd 19 she had bene dede; he logyd in a notable burgesse howse, who receyued hym well for the loue of god, but what so euer he had there he coude 24 nother eet nor drynke for sorowe 27 that he had at his hart / then he sayd to 7 his host, 'syr, to morowe is good fryday, the which day I thynk the Emperoure wyll gyue great almys' / 'frende,' quod his hoost / 28 'ye may suerly bylene that the Emperoure wyll gyue as to morowe great almes, he wyll gyue of his goodes so

1 Fol. cxxxvii. col. 2. 2 and miserie. 3 to. 4 for. 5 vntill. 6 carie. 7 vnto. 8 the. 9—9 through famine and rage. 10 now. 11 omitted. 12 it. 13 against. 14 are. 15 is. 16 burnt. 17 Prisoners. 18 Shroue. 19 that. 20 a iust. 21 had well. 22 nor ioynt. 23 pitifully. 24 vnto him. 25 in. 26 greatly. 27 and greefe.
largely to\textsuperscript{1} all poor men \textit{that} \textsuperscript{2} commeth to\textsuperscript{3} hym that day\textsuperscript{3} shall be\textsuperscript{4} satisfysed / ye shall not fynde a prynce \textsuperscript{5} of\textsuperscript{5} greater almes / & of one thyng I advertyse you / the Emperoure hathe\textsuperscript{6} one coutume, that the first powuer pylgryme that cometh to\textsuperscript{1} hym to morowe shall be happy / for there is no thyng in ye\textsuperscript{e} world, be yt neuer so dere, \textsuperscript{7} yf he demaund it of the emperoure it shall not be denied hym: it must be at the same owre that the emperour goeth to\textsuperscript{1} his chapel to say his orysons’ / when Huon\textsuperscript{8} vnderstode his hoste / he began to reioyce, and thought in\textsuperscript{9} hymselfe\textsuperscript{10} yf he coude in any wyse he wolde be the first that shulde demand almes\textsuperscript{11} / but that shulde be nother golde nor syluer, it shulde be his wyfe and his men that he hathe in pryson; and also yf he may he wyll axe therwith his londe\textsuperscript{12} / Then the hoste went to his reste / & Huon abode in his chambre alone and slepte not of al the nyght, but thought how he myght delyuer his wyfe / and the presoners that be\textsuperscript{13} with her; and all nyghte he was in\textsuperscript{14} his prayers\textsuperscript{15} de-syrynge\textsuperscript{16} god to engayle and ayde hym to recouer his wyfe.\textsuperscript{17} Erly in the mornynge he rose and made hym redy, and toke his scrippe and stafe and wente strahte to the palays, and sat on\textsuperscript{18} ye\textsuperscript{e} greses wheras the emperour shuld pas / at whiche tyme the emperour was\textsuperscript{19} rysen vp /\textsuperscript{20} there were many other pylgrymes that were there abydyng for ye\textsuperscript{e} emperours comynge, and every man couetyd to haue the fyrste gyfte / but Huon dyd so mocch by his subtilyte that he was the fyrste that enteryd into the chapells, and none other parseuyd hym / and he dyd hyde hymselfe\textsuperscript{21} in a corner nere to\textsuperscript{1}

\textsuperscript{1} vnnte. \textsuperscript{2} if they come vnnte. \textsuperscript{3} they. \textsuperscript{4} all. \textsuperscript{5} that doth giue. \textsuperscript{6} Fol. cxxvii. back, col. 1. \textsuperscript{7} but. \textsuperscript{8} had well. \textsuperscript{9} within. \textsuperscript{10} that. \textsuperscript{11} of the Emperour. \textsuperscript{12} and Signiores. \textsuperscript{13} were. \textsuperscript{14} at. \textsuperscript{15} humbly. \textsuperscript{16} our Lord. \textsuperscript{17} Escleremond. \textsuperscript{18} upon. \textsuperscript{19} newe, and. \textsuperscript{21} closely.
and in a corner awaits the Emperor's coming.

the emperours oratory, and there he sate style without any wordes spekyng, abydyng\(^1\) the comynge of the emperour.

\[\text{Ca. cxlix.}\]

How Huon dyd so moche with the em- perour Therry, that he had peas\(^3\) / & his wyfe renderyd to\(^4\) hym and all his londys\(^5\) / and howe the emperour brought hym to\(^4\) the Abbey of Cluny, where as they found 8 the good abbotte in harnays,\(^6\) not know- ynge\(^7\) of the peas that was made.

The Emperor came into the chapel, and made his prayers before the altar.

When he was ready to go into the oratory, Huon drew out a rich stone of such virtue, that its corner could not be overcome by his enemy, or drowned, or burnt.

The stone cast such a brightness in the chapel that

1 there for.  2 Fol. cxxxvii. back. col. 2.  3 with him.  4 unto.  5 and Signories.  6 armour.  7 any thing.  8 Historic.  9 and.  10 closely.  11 Fol. cxxxviii. col. 1.  12 burnt.  13–15 had such great virtue.  14 omitted.  15 therat.
fro whence that lyght shulde come / then he behelde Huon and Huon helde the stone in his hande, and shewyd it to the emperour / and when the emperoure saw the riche stone he greatly dyd couet it / and annauysyd hymselfe and toke it of the pylgrymes hande / who presentyd it to hym / when the emperour had the stone in his hand, he had great joy at his hart, for he was cunnynge in the disceryuyng of stones, and sware to hymselfe that the pylgryme shulde neuer haue it agayne for any thyng that he coude do / but he thought if he wold sell it, he wolde gyne hym as moche golde & syluer as he coude resonably demaunade / or elles be thought to kepe it styll what so euer fell therof / then the emperoure sayd to Huon, 'pylgryme, I pray the shewe me where hast thou get 16 this ryche stone' / 'syr, quod Huon, 'I haue brought it fro beyonde y see' / 'frend, quod the emperour, wylyt thou sel it, and I shall gyue the for it what so euer thou wylyt haue; and to be suertye to bere awaye my gyfte that I wyll gyue thee for it, I shall cause the to be conductyd into thyne owne countre wheresoever it be / 'syr, quod Huon, 'I wyll gyue it you with a good hart: so it be trew that myne host hathe shewed me this daye / for he hathe shewed me that your costume is that y fyrst parsone pylgryme that comethe to you on this day, good friday, should haue of you a gyfte such as he wolde demaunad after that ye hane made your prayers to our lorde god' / 'pylgryme,' quod the emperoure, 'he that shewed the that said trouth and therefore what so euer thou demaundeste other boroughge towne or citye, or what thyng so euer it be / I promyse to gyue the who so euer be dyspleasyd the Emperor knew not whence the light came. Huon shewed the Emperor the stone, and the Emperor, who was cunning in precious stones, desires to buy it of the pilgrin for gold and silver, or even to keep it happen what might; he asks Huon how he came by it. Huon will give the stone to the Emperor if, according to his custom, he will grant the first pilgrin any request he may prefer. This the Emperor agrees to do.

1 did holde. 2 vnto. 3-3 desired to haue. 4 out. 6 within himself that. 6 and. 7 to. 8-8 thou hast gotten. 9 and bountifull. 10 the more. 11 Fol. cxxxviii. col. 2. 12 vpon. 13 being. 14-14 that which is true.
Huon wants neither gold nor silver.

Whatever it be, the Emperor will hold by his promise.

Huon then demands pardon for the trespasses and ill deeds that he or his men have done against the Emperor; and that all men and women belonging to him shall be delivered to him; that all his towns, boroughs, and castles shall be rendered him.

therewith I grant it\(^1\) the / therfore demaund what\(^2\) thou wylt ’ / ’syr,’ quod Huon, ‘of your grace and fayre gyfte I\(^3\) thanke you / therfore, syr, with a good hart, I do\(^4\) gyue you that stone that I delyuerid to\(^5\) ye right\(^6\) now in the recompense of the courteous and gyfte that ye haue grauntid\(^5\) me, the whiche shall be nother golde nor syluer, and, syr, bycause I know sartaynly that the renome is ouer al the world that ye be\(^7\) a just and a trewe noble man, and that\(^8\) ye promyse ye wyll vpholde and\(^9\) neuer swarte fro your promys / and by cause\(^10\) I knowe suerly that the promys that ye haue made\(^5\) me, ye wyll vpholde of what so euer gyfte I\(^12\) desyre to have’ / ’frende,’ quod the emperour, ‘I wyll\(^10\) you\(^11\) know that yf ye demaund .iii. of my best cityes, I shall gyue you them syn\(^19\) I haue made\(^10\) promys, and\(^13\) god be pleasyd I shal not go fro\(^14\) my promyse / for I\(^16\) had rather\(^10\) one of my handys were cut of then I shulde be found false of my wordys / & therfore demaunde and suerly ye shall haue your demaund withet all any refuse.’\(^15\) ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I\(^16\) thanke you’ / and\(^20\) wolde haue kyssyd his feete / but the emperour wolde not suffer hym, but toke hym vp / ’syr,’ quod Huon, ‘fyrste, before all other thynges, I desyre of you pardon / of all the yll dedis and trespasses that I or my men haue\(^24\) done agaynst you ; and yf ye haue in your preson other men or women partaynynge to\(^5\) me or of\(^17\) my lynage that ye wyll delyuer them all to\(^5\) me ; and also yf ye haue any thyngyn of myne other towne\(^18\) / borowe / or\(^23\) castell / I requyre you by ye promyse that ye haue made\(^5\) me to render them to\(^5\) me quyte / syr, any other thyngyn I demaunde not.’ / ‘pylgrym,’ quod the emperour, ‘make no doubt to haue that\(^8\) I haue\(^32\)

\(^{1}\) to. \(^{2}\) so euer. \(^{3}\) most harteely. \(^{4}\) omitted. \(^{5}\) vnto. \(^{6}\)–\(^{6}\) but euyn. \(^{7}\) are. \(^{8}\) which. \(^{9}\) kepe and. \(^{10}\) that. \(^{11}\) well. \(^{12}\) seeing. \(^{13}\) if. \(^{14}\) for in text. \(^{15}\) deniall. \(^{16}\) harteely. \(^{17}\) Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 1. \(^{18}\) or Citie.
promysyd\(^1\) / therfore I grant al your desire / but I requyre you humbly\(^2\) shew\(^3\) me what man ye be, & of what couetre, and of what lynage, syn\(^4\) ye have desyred 4 of me suche a gyfte’ / ‘syr,' quod Huon, ‘I am he that sumtyme was duke of Burdeaux, whome ye haue so moche hated, I come nowe fro beyonde the se, wheras I haue endurid moche payne and pouerte. I thanke 8 our lorde Iesu Chryst that I haue done so much that I am nowe agreyd with you, and I shall haue agayne the duches Esclaramonde, my\(^5\) wyfe and my men and\(^6\) landes\(^7\) yf ye wyll holde\(^8\) your promyse’ / when the 12 Emperoure\(^9\) vnderstode Huon / all his blode began to change and\(^10\) was a great space or\(^11\) he spake any worde, he was so\(^12\) abasshed,\(^13\) at\(^14\) laste he sayde, ‘A, Huon, ar you he by whome I haue sufferyd so many yllys and 16 domages, and haue slayne so many of my nephues and other of my men / I wolde not haue thought that ye wolde haue ben so hardy to haue shewed your selfe before me, nor to haue com into my presence, ye have 20 well overcom me and enchaunted me; I had rather haue lost .iii. of my best citeyes, ye and all my couentre bren\(^15\) and destroyed / ye\(^16\) and my selfe banysshyd out of myn owne countre for .iii. yere rather than ye shuld 24 haue thus come to my presence / but syn\(^4\) it is thus knowe for trouthe that\(^17\) I haue promysyd\(^3\) you I shall vpholde\(^18\) / and fro hence forthe in the honour of the passyone of\(^19\) our lorde Iesu Chryst, and of this good 28 daye on the whiche he was crucyfied & put to dethe. I pardon you all myne yll wyll and good wyll, I shall not be pariyrid, your wyfe and your londis,\(^7\) & your men; I shall render them into your handes / speke

\(^1\) vnto you. \(^2\) to. \(^3\) vnto. \(^4\) seeing. \(^5\) louing. \(^6\) my. \(^7\) and Signiories. 
\(^8\)–\(^9\) be as good as your word and vpholde. 
\(^9\) had well heard and. 
\(^10\) hee. \(^11\) before. 
\(^12\) sore. 
\(^13\) but. \(^14\) the. \(^15\) burnt. 
\(^16\) omitted. 
\(^17\) which. 
\(^18\) and keepe. 
\(^19\) Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 2.
Huon thanks him, and desires to be forgiven.

The Emperor kissed Huon in token of peace.

The Emperor shall have a double reward.

He asks of Huon his adventures.

Huon will relate them after the divine service has been read.

The Emperor led Huon with him into the oratory, and all the lords marvel who the pilgrim can be to whom the Emperor does so much honour.

The Emperor and Huon dine together, and afterwards Huon relates his adventures; how he had spoken with Judas;

therof who lyste / otherwyse shall it not be, nor I wyl neuer do the contrary / then Huon knelyd downe before the emperoure and thanked hym, and desyred hym to forgene hym all his trespasses / 'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'god forgene you, and as for me, with a good harte, I do pardon you' / then the emperoure toke Huon by the hande and toke hym vp and kyste hym on the mouth in token of good peas and amyte / 'syr,' quod Houn, 'great grace haue I found in you synne ye kepe your promyse / but, syr, if it maye please our lorde god / your guerdon shall be double' / 'Huon,' quod y e emperour, 'I requyre you shewe me of your newes and aventures that ye haue had' / 'syr,' quod Huon with a good wyll, 'after that your deynye servyce be done, and the passyon of our lorde Iesu Chryste red' / 'Huon,' quod the emperour, 'I can you thanke for that you saye' / then the emperour toke Huon by the hand and led hym into his oratory with him / wheras they harde the deynye servyce wherof many lorde and knyghtes were sore abasshed, and hade maruayle what pylgreme it was that y e emperoure dyd so moche honoure vnto. After that the deynye servyce was done, the emperour returned into his paleis holdynge Huon by the hande / the dyner was made redy, they wasshed their handes and sate downe to dyner / and when dyner was done and the tables taken up, then in the emperours presence and in all the lorde there, Huon shewed all his 

[Fyrste he shewed howe he had passed the Goulfe and spoken with Judas / and after howe by fortune

1 right humbly. 2 thee. 3–3 verie kindly. 4 seeing. 5 and vpholde. 6 to. 7 since you departed from the Citie of Bordeaux. 8 is. 9–9 giue you good thanks. 10 and Lordes. 11 great. 12 and. 13 of. 14 other. 15 Fol. cxxxix. col. 1. 16 afterward.
of the se he aryued at the castell of the Adamante, and howe his company dyed there for famyne: and shewed of the beaute of that castell and of the great ryches therin / and after how he was borne there by a gryffon to a great rocke, and howe he slewe .v. yonge Gryffons and the olde Gryffon that brought hym thether, wherof he had left at Cluny the fote of the same / then he shewed of the fountayne and of the tree of youth, and how he gathered therof three fayre apples, and more he wolde nauc gathered but that our lord god commaunded hym by his aungel that he shuld not be so hardy to gather any more, and after that he shewed how he had passed the Goulfe of perse in great parell / and sayd, furthermore, 'syr, when I was passed that Goulfe I gathered many precious stones; that I haue geuen you was one of them, the whiche stone is of great vertue / then I came to the great city of Thauris in Perse, whereas I founde a noble admyrall, an olde auncyent knyght; and he shewed me great courtoyses, and I gane him one of myne apples to ete; and as sone as he had eten therof he became as yong as he was when he was but of yere of age / and I thynke hether can not be founde a fayrer prync; and he was before of a score and .vii. yeres of age / and, syr, because I desyre with all my harte to haue youre good grace, and that good peas and ferme maye be had betwene you and me, I wyll gyue you the thyrde apple which I kepte for my selfe, by the whiche ye do ete it ye shall become agayn as yong and as lusty as ye were when ye were of the age of yerys.' The emperoure when he harde that the apple that Huon wolde geue hym to cete how he had visited the rich and beautiful castle of Adamant; how he had slaine the griffins, and brought to Cluny the foot of the old griffin; how he gathered three apples of the tree of youth; how he passed the Persian Gulf, and gathered there many precious stones; how the admiral of Persia became young again by eating of one of the apples. Huon will give the third apple to the Emperor.

1 by. 2 declared. 3 the. 4 afterward. 5 carried from. 6 as. 7 that. 8 and daunger. 9 which. 10 and. 11 to. 12 to be. 13 omitted. 14 Fol. cxxxix. col. 2. 15 and as stronge. 16 but.
The Emperor is joyful at the thought he will be young once more, and offers Huon two good cities and 60,000 men to aid him in war. shulde cause hym to retourne to his yonge age agayne /
he was so joyful that he never made suche chere before
in all his lyfe to any man as he dyd then to\textsuperscript{1} Huon /
and sayde howe\textsuperscript{2} he wolde be his frened for euer, and 4
never fayle hym, and sayd, 'frend, I abandon my body
and my\textsuperscript{3} goodes at your pleasure / and I geue you two
good cityes to encruse your syngnorye / and besyde that
I promise you if ye have any busynes to do, I shall 8
socoure you with .lx.\textsuperscript{4} thousande men, and shall ayde
you as ye father shulde do the sone. Therwith Huon
wolde haue kneled downe to haue thanked the emperour,
but he wolde not suffer hym: \textsuperscript{5}then Huon toke the apple 12
out of his bage and delyuered it to\textsuperscript{1} the emperoure, the
emperoure who was sore desyrous to knowe yf he shuld
waxe yong agayne by reason of etinge of the apple; he
callyd to\textsuperscript{1} hym his lorde\textsuperscript{6} to the entent\textsuperscript{2} they shulde 16
se that maruayle / \textsuperscript{5}when the emperour had the apple
in his hand he put it\textsuperscript{7} to his mouthe and dyd eat it
every dele,\textsuperscript{8} and as he was etyngy therof his age
chaunged in to yuoth, and by that tyme he had eten 20
all the apple / his whyght berde fell of and the skynne
chaungyd lyke a man of .xxx. yeres of age / and also
his face and all his body that before was all ryuyled\textsuperscript{9}
and rugged and pale, became then as whyght and\textsuperscript{10} 24
ruddy, and felte hymselfe as lyght and fresshe & as _
quycke to do any thynge, and as stronge as he was
when he was of the age of .xxx. yeres / wherof all that
were\textsuperscript{11} present had\textsuperscript{12} great maruayle and were\textsuperscript{13} joyful of 28
that adventure that was fallen to\textsuperscript{1} the emperoure whom
they lousyd / then they sayd, 'a,\textsuperscript{3} syr, suche a gyfte was
neuer geuen to any emperoure or kynge / well ye ought
to praise our lord god, what so euer losse ye\textsuperscript[e]\textsuperscript{14} have 32
had / that euer ye were aqaynted with duke Huon.'

\textsuperscript{1} vnto. \textsuperscript{2} that. \textsuperscript{3} omitted. \textsuperscript{4} fortie. \textsuperscript{5} and,
\textsuperscript{6} and Barons. \textsuperscript{7} in. \textsuperscript{8} whit. \textsuperscript{9} wrinkled. \textsuperscript{10} as. \textsuperscript{11} there.
\textsuperscript{12} Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 1. \textsuperscript{13} right. \textsuperscript{14} yt in text.
How the emperour made good cher to 1
Huon of Burdeaux.

Hen the emperour saw hymselfe waxe
yonge agayne, he was so joyfull that he
wyste not what to do; then he clyppyd
and kyssed huon more then x. tymes,
sayenge, 'my ryghte dere frende, I
praye you 3 forgeue me all the ylles 4 that I haue done 1
you, and for the sorowe and payne 5 that I haue caused
your noble wyfe and men to suffer 6 / then the emperoure
called to 1 hym two of his lorde, and sayd 7 syrs, I
wyll that all the pover people that be in my chapell
this day be newly aparyled, and to haue mete and
drynke suffycyte, for the loue of the passyon of our
lorde Iesu chryst, who this day hath done me that grace
that I am retourned 8 fro age to youthe.  'syrs,' quod they,
'your commaundemente shall be done 6 / they went
& executed his pleasure. Then Duke Huon aprochyd
to 1 the emperoure, and sayd, 'syrs, I desyre humbly
your grace to deluyer my wyfe 7 and my men out of
preson.'  'syrs,' quod the emperoure, 'it is good reason
that I do it 7 / then he sente for the gayler who had the
lady and the other presoners in his kepynge, and com-
maundyd hym that the lady Esclaramond & the other
presoners shuld be brought into the hall / the gayler
went to the preson, & Huon with hym 9 when they
came thether / Huon wente to the dore & cryed out
aloude, and sayd, 'A, my ryght swete syster, I byleue
ye 10 haue bene here 11 but yl loged; I haue great fere that
by reason of ye paynes that ye haue endurid ye can not
long contynue / sartaynely yf ye dye I shal neuer haue

1 vnto. 2 Duke. 3 to. 4 and dammages. 5 payne before sorowe. 6 then. 7 Esclaramond. 8 Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 2. 9 and. 10 that. 11 here after lodged.
The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voice before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she faint for very joy. When she revived she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde. Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance;

The lords revive them,

---

The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voice before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she faint for very joy. When she revived she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde. Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance; the lords revive them,

---

The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voice before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she faint for very joy. When she revived she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde. Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance; the lords revive them,
together / and Huon sayd / 'fayre lady, I requyre you\(^1\) pardon me\(^2\) that I haue taryed so longe fro you, & haue lefte you in suche pouerte / payne / & parell\(^3\) of 4 deth. I\(^4\) haue scapyd,\(^5\) the which I\(^6\) thanke\(^7\) god of his grace / 'syr,' quod she, 'we ought greatly to thanke\(^8\) god, when he hathe sente vs that grace to se eche other & to come together\(^9\) / and that ye haue 8 peas with ye emperour' / then the gayler went to all ye presons, and toke out al Huons men, and brought them to\(^10\) hym, who had great ioye when they saw theyr lorde and mayster in sauegarde, and thankyd our lord 12 god, and humblye saluted Huon, and sayd / 'a,\(^11\) syr, blessed be the oure of your comynge, wherby we ar delyuered fro the paynes, traunayles / and pouertes / that we haue bene in.' 'My ryght dere frendes,' quod 16 Huon / 'thus goeth the worlde; you and I ar bound to thanke\(^7\) god of that he sendeth to\(^10\) vs' / then the emperour toke Huon by the one hande and Esclaramond by the other, and led them into his palays, where as 20 the tables were sette / and there sate downe to gether the emperour and Huon and the duches / and al the presoners at another table / and were all rychly seruyd / of theyr metys and servyces & ioye that they made, I 24 wyll make therof but small rehersayle. And when they had al dyned, the emperour ordayned ladyes & damoyselles to serue the duches Esclaramond, and ordayned chaumbers for ye duke and for\(^11\) her, & for all 28 the other / they were\(^12\) sarued of all thynes that they desyre / and they had newe aparayle acordynge to theuyr desgres / anone ye newes\(^13\) was known in the citty of the peas\(^14\) betwene Huon and the emperour, & how\(^15\) he 32 had his wyfe\(^16\) renderyd to\(^10\) hym, & his men delyuered

and Huon asks his wife's pardon for having tarried so long from her. The gaoler releases all Huon's men, who rejoice greatly to see him.

The Emperor sits down to table with Huon and the duchess; the prisoners are at another table, and all are richly served.

Chambers are prepared for them all, and the news of the peace between the Emperor and Huon is spread through the city.

\(1\) to. \(2\) in. \(3\) daunger. \(4\) and. \(5\) for.
\(6\) humbly. \(7\) our Lord. \(8\) almightie. \(9\) againe, \(10\) vnto. \(11\) omitted. \(12\) there. \(13\) and tidinges.
\(14\) made. \(15\) Fol. clx. (xl), col. 2.
\(16\) the Duchess Escleremond.
Barnard hastens to the palace.

The lady knew him at once. She owes him great love that he has sought her lord and brought him hither.

Barnard tells of Huon's sufferings.

At the end of eight days, the Emperor announced his intention of conducting duke Huon and the duchess to Bordeaux to set them in possession of their lands. Ten thousand men are to accompany him.

They depart from Mayence, and reach Cluny.

The abbot, having heard no news of Huon, had

out of preson / wherof Barnard, as he was in y° towne harkenynge for newes, was ryght ioyfull / & wente in hast to¹ the palays, wheras he found Huon in his chambre, with his wyfe y° fayre Esclaramond /² as sone 4 as he saw the duches, the water fell fro his eyen for ioy; then he saluted Huon and the duches /² y° lady knew hym incontyment, and sayde / 'a, syr Barnard, wel I ought to lone and to cherysshe you / that ye haue so 8 sought for my lorde and husbonde as ³ to bryng³ hym hether.' 'Madame,' quod he, 'I haue done no thyng but that ⁴ I was bounde⁵ to do / ⁶ great payne & trauayle⁷ my lorde hath suffered' / ² then he shewed 12 suche newes as he knewe, wherof many great lordes and knyghtes had great ioy to here hym for the meruaylles that he shewed⁸ / Thus,⁹ when they had bene there the space of .viii. dayes, and that theyr men were 16 well refresshed / then¹⁰ the emperour assembelyd¹¹ his lordes, and sayd / 'syrs, it is my wyll to lede and conducte duke Huon & the duches to Burdeaux, to set them in possesyon of theyr londes and sygnoryes. ²I 20 wyl haue .x. M. men to go with me and them, and to bryng me agayne hether to Magence: acorlynge to his commaundement the men were made redy / & when the emperour had ordeyned for Huons estate as it 24 aprateyned for hym & his wyfe & his men, & when every thyng was redy, they¹¹ mounted on¹² theyr horses, & the duches had a ryche lytter / then¹³ they departed fro¹⁴ Magence / & seyd not tyll they came within .ii. ²⁸ leges of the abbey of Cluny / the good abbot, who knew nothyng of the agrement betwene the emperour & Huon, had gathered together of men of warre a¹⁵ .xx. M. &

¹ vnto. ² and.
³—³ that now at last through your tedious trauail ye haue found him, and brought.
⁴ what. ⁵ in duty. ⁶ I am sory for the. ⁷ that.
⁸ discoursed vnto them. ⁹ Then. ¹⁰ omitted.
¹¹ all. ¹² vpon. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ the Citie of. ¹⁵ about.
they were logyd in the toune of Cluny; and the abbot was aduertysed of the emperours comynge into those partyes, and he hard no newes of Huon, wherof he was sorowfull and thought that the emperoure had taken Huon presoner: then he issued out of the towne, and renged his men in good order of batayle without the town in a fayre playne, there abydyng for ye emperoure, whome he sawe comynge.

How the emperour aryuyde at Cluny, and how the abbot set on hym and of ye pease that was ther made, and how the emperour conveyed Huon to Burdeaux, & renderyd to hym al his londys, and of the partia=c=age of the emperour, and how Huon made his prouysion to go to kyng oberon.

Ca. cli.  

Hen the emperour saw the town of Cluny, he demaunded of Huon to whome partayned that towne / syr, quod he, it is belonginge to an vnkle of myne, who is abbot there,

& we must pas that waye, and also I must nedes speke with hym or I go to Burdeaux / the same tyme the abbot, who was on a pusaunte courser well armed at all peces, sawe the emperoure comynge towards Cluny / then he sayd to his men, syrs, thynke this day to do well / for yonder before vs we may se ye emperour our enemye comynge, wherfore we cannot scape without batayle; I am sure he hath taken Huon

1 Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 1.  2 right.
3 and sore displeased.  4 vpon.  5 them and.
6 if he could tell him.  7-7 belonging.  8 of.
9 before.  10 then mounted.  11 and strong.
12 points.  13 and.  11 and valiantly.
my nephue, but by the faythe that I owe to my lord
saynte Benet, my patron / that takyng shalbe derely
bought.' then they couched theyr spers and sporyd
theyr horses, & com rynnynge towards the emperour; 4
and when the emperour saw them, he called Huon,
and sayd / 'syr, yonder ye maye se mea of warre
all armed come rynnyng agaynst vs / I wote not what
they thynke 3 to do / but they seme to be oure enemyes 8
as far as I can parseyue / 4 they be a great nombre; 5
they are to be doughted and feryd / 'syr,' quod Huon,
'it is myne vnclé the abbot of Cluny, who hath reysed
vp his men to socoure me / for he is not aduereteysed of 12
the peas made betwene you and me, 6 he thynketh 7
ye haue taken me presoner.' 4 therewith the abbot
dashd in among the emperours company, and the
fyrst that he mette he ran hym clene thurgh with his 16
spere / and so he servid the second, thyrde, and
fourth / and when his spere was broken, he drewe out
his sworde / wherwith he bet downe the Almaynes,
that it was maruayle to behold hym / and then came in 20
his men / and they dyd suche dedys of armes that
parforce the almayns were fayne to recule, 8 & many
were slayne 9 and cast 10 to the erthe, when ye emperour
saw that he was in a 11 great rage, and sayd to 12 Huon / 24
'syr, ye are greatly to blame to suffer your vnclens men
to sly meyne / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am ryght sory
of 13 that they have done / I am reley to make you
amendes in what 14 wyse 14 it shall please you': ther-
28 with duke Huon rode to 12 the 15 abbot his vncl / and
in great dyspleasure sayd, 'vncl, ye haue done 16 ryght
yll.' 15 when the abbot 17 parseyued Huon, he was ryght
ioyous 18 / and he enbrasisd hym and sayd / 'fayre 32

1 and to. 2 Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 2. 3 meane.
4 and. 5 and therefo. 6 surely. 7 that.
8 retire backe. 9 and destroyed. 10 downe.
11 omitted. 12 vnto. 13 for. 14-14 so ever.
15 good. 16-16 great euill and. 17 saw &. 18 ioyfull.
nephue, I thought the emperour had taken you presoner, & wold hane put you to deth / I knew not that ye had peas with hym. then he made his men to retraye backe fro the almayns; then he and Huon together come to the emperour; then the abbot saluted hym, and sayde / syr, I pray you pardon me in that I haue thus come agaynst you / for sartaynly I had thought ye wolde haue hanged & slayne my nephue, duke Huon of Burdeaux, nor I knew not that there was any peas betwene you / therfore, syr, I re quyre you pardon me / and I offer my selfe to make 12 to you a mendes at the deuyce of your cunsayle / syr,' quod the emperour, 'I pardon you for the lone of Luke Huon, whom I take as my specyall frende.' Thus as ye haue hard the peas was made betwene the 16 emperoure and the abbot of Cluny / Then they rode together ty they came to Cluny, where ye emperour was receyuyd with great ioye / when the good abbot had receyuyd the emperour and logyd hym in the 20 abbey, then he came to ye duches Esclaramond, and enbracid and kyssed her, and sayd, 'my ryght dere nese, your comynge hether is to me greatly agreeable, well I am pleasid to se you hole and in good 24 poynt, & I am sore dyspleased for the great ylles and pounertes that ye haue endured, yf I myght a mended it / but syn it is the wyll and pleasure of our lorde Iesu chryst, bothe you and we all ought to be content, 28 blessed be his name / 'fayre vncler, quod the duches / greatly we ought to thanke and to cherysshe you / for ye haue bene father and refuge of my daughter Claryet, whome I desyre greatly to se / then ye abbot led the 32 duches into the chambré wheras her daughter Claryet

The abbot thought the Emperor had taken Huon prisoner, and seeing him alive and safe, the abbot withdraws his men, and he and Huon go and salute the Emperor. The abbot asks the Emperor to pardon him, and for love of Huon the Emperor does so.

The abbot received the Emperor with much joy at Cluny, and welcomes most joyfully the duchess Esclaramonde.

The duchess greatly desires to see her daughter.
was, who came and knelyd led 1 downe before her mother / 2 when ye duches 3 saw her / it was no maruayle though she was joyfull at her harte, for when 4 she saw her so fayre and so well endroctryned 5 / 4 ye may well thynke that her ioy excedyd all other / she enbraced and kyssid her more then .xx. tymis, and said, 'my dere daughter, synne I saw you laste, I haue endured great 6 mysery / but thankes be geuen to our S lorde Iesu cryst and to his swete mother / your father and I ar come together, 7 and haue peas with the emperour' / then they went into the chambre wheras there dyner was aparyled 8 redy for them, and there 12 dynd together with great consolacyon, and all that dyner tymes the duches coude not cast her eyen fro ye 9 regardyng of her daughter Claryet / for the great beautye that she saw 9 in her 10 and when they had 16 dynd, the lorde and knyghtes and squyres cam to se the ladyes as they were accustomed to do ; and as they were there deuynges, 10 Huon enteryd into the chambre, and 11 his vnclle the abbot 11 with hym, and they said to 12 20 the duches, 13 'lady, ye muste come to 12 the emperour and brynge your daughter with you, for he desyreh greatly to se her.' then the lady, who was redy to do her husbandes commandement, whente into ye 16 hall, 24 and her daughter with her, where as they founde the emperour, who receuyyd them with great ioye / and toke the young lady Claryet in his armes & kyssed her swetely, and sayd / 'my ryght dere daughter, your 28 comyng hether is to me ryght agreeable 14 / god parforme in you that 15 fayleth ; 15 as for beaulte ye fayle 16 not ? / ' Huon,' quod the emperour, 'great graces 17 ye ought

---

1 so in text. 2 and. 3 her mother.
4 Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 2. 5 educated. 6 pouertie and.
7 in saugard. 8 prepared. 9 and perceived.
10 together. 11–11 the good abbot his vnclle. 12 vnto.
13 Faire. 14 acceptable. 15–15 which wanteth.
16 want. 17 thanks.
to render to 1 our lorde Iesu chryst, that he is so
fryndely to 1 you as to sende you such a chyld as
this lady is here before me, for I thynde that of beauty
4 this day there is no lady nor damosel 2 leuing in this
world that may 3 compare with your 4 daughter 1 / ' syr,' quod Huon, 'I pray to 5 god to parfourme 6 that 7
she wantethe 8 / great pleasure had the emperoure to
8 regarde 8 the damoysell, and so had all other 9 that were
there present / thus as ye haue hard, the emperoure was
reseyued at Cluny / & was greatly feasted by ye abbote
there, for as some as the emperoure was come thether,
12 the 10 abbote sente ouer all the cuntre for ladys and
damosels to feste the emperoure / 11 there they were a 12
.iii. dayes with great justis and sportes / 11 when they
departed there was nether lady nor damoysel but that
16 the emperoure gave her some gyfte / the fourthe daye
after that the emperour had hard mas, 13 and his 14
caryage redy, then he and duke Huon, and the duches
Esclaramonde and Claryet her daughter, departed fro
20 Cluny, & with them the good abbote who brought them
to 15 Burdeaux / for he louyd so moche 16 Huon and the
Duches and Claryet whome he had brought vp, that he
wolde not abandon them so sone; Huon sent barnard
24 before to 1 17 Burdeaux, syngnyfyenge 1 them of the city
of the emperours commyng and his, and of the peas
made betwene the emperour and hym / Barnard
departed and was wel receyuyd at Burdeaux; then he
28 assembelyd together all the burgesses of the citye, and
shewed 1 them of ye emperours comynge thether, and
withe hym duke Huon and the duches Esclaramond
and claryet theyr daughter, and of the peas that

1 vnto. 2 that is. 3 is able to. 4 Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 1. 5 vnto our Lord. 6 in her. 7 which. 8 behold. 9 Lords, Ladies, and Damsets. 10 good. 11 and. 12 omitted. 13 Service. 14 baggage and. 15 vnto the Citie of. 16 well. 17 the citie of.

CHArl. ROM. VIII.
was made betwene the emperour and 1 Huon / thes newes were sent incontinent to Blaye and Geronyll-
and ouer all the countrie of Burdeloys / 2 then all noble
men as well as burgesses came hastily to 3 Burdeux for 4
to receyue theyr ryghtfull lorde, duke Huon. 2 when
they were there assembelid, they mun4ted on 5 theyr
horses and rode forthe to mete the emperour and duke
Huon theyr naturall lorde / they were together a 6 .vi. 8
thousande horses / when they aproched nere to 3 the
emperoure, they saluted hym, to 3 whome the emperour
sayd openly / 4 al ye syrs, noble men & burgesses that
hathe before this time made to 3 me feaulte and 12
homage / I deluyer you quyte in to the handes of your
ryght naturall lorde, as ye hanu bene before tyme / and I
quyte clerely your homages & feaulties done to 3 
me' / then they all thanked the emperour of his good 16
iustyce and reason that hanu always done to 3 them in
the seson whyles they were vnder hym / the emperour
was 7 ioyfull that they so prizesd him before duke
Huon ; 2 then they cam to 3 duke Huon and to the 20
duches 8 and to Claryet, 9 & dyd to 3 them theyr
reuerence acording; thus they cam to 3 the citye of
Burdeaux, wheras they were ioyfully receyued, & a
clothe of estate was borne ouer 10 the emperour, vnder 24
the which he rode, sty1 holdynge Huon by the hand,
tyll 11 they came to 3 the paleys / the stretes were
strawed with grene herbes and russels, and hangyd
rychely / the wyndowes garnysshed with ladyes and 28
damoysels, burgesses / and maydens, melodously
syngyngge / wherof the emperoure was 7 ioyfull / the
children rynnynge in the stretes 2 cryenge nowell 12
for 13 ioye 14 that they had of the comyng of theyr 32

1 Duke. 2 and. 3 vnto.
4 Fol. clxi. (xli.) back. col. 2. 5 vppon. 6 about.
7 right. 8 Escleremond his wife. 9 their Daughter.
10 before. 11 vntill. 12 noel. 13 the great.
14 and mirth.
lorde & lady; when they were come to the palayes / they alyghted and wente to theyr chaunbers redy apoynted for them / yt I wolde reheere ye ioyyes and 4 sportes and solemnytes that was made at Burdeaux it shulde be noyfull and ouer longe to declare it / for the feaste was suche that no man as then leynghe had sene any suche, the which endured .viii. dayes / 8 duringe the whiche tyme the emperoure declared to them of that countre the pease that was made betwene hym and duke Huon, and howe he wolde delyuer all his londes in to his handes, and clerely akyte 

12 euery man of theyr feaulte & hommage to hym made, whereof euery man was ioyfull / & on the .ix. daye that the emperoure shuld depart, he called duke Huon to hym, and sayd, 'my ryght dere frend, he that 

16 I loue best in this worlde, if any warre or busynes hap to fal to you / let me haue knowleage therof / and I shall send you .xl. M. men of armes and myselfe in parson to come and ayde you' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 

20 'of ye courteys that ye offer me, I thanke you, and always I shal repete myselfe as your trewe seruant & feythfull frend.' Then the emperoure went to the duchess and toke his leue of her, and of Claryet her 

24 doughter, and kyssed them at his departynge, and so he dyd all other ladys and damoysellis, and gane eche of them some gyfte; he gane rych gyftes to the duches and to her doughter / then he toke his 

28 leue and mounted on his horse, and so issued out of the towne / duke Huon & the abbot of Cluny conueyed hym a .ii. leges, then they toke ther leue

1 vnto. 2 the noble Citie of. 3 too tedious. 4 and cheere. 5 Fol. exliii. (should be exlii.) col. 1. 6 for the space of. 7 and Signiories. 8 yppon. 9 to. 10 and succour. 11 hartely. 12 Escleremond. 13 the faire Ladie. 14 embraced and. 15 the. 16 euery one. 17 and. 18 citie of Bourdeaux and. 19 good. 20 about. 21 of the Emperour and of his Lords and Knightes.
and returned to Burdeaux / then after that duke Huon had sojourned there an viii. days, he rode to Geronyl and to Blames, and to all other towns and castles, where he was receyuyd with great ioy, and set offycers in them / then he retorned agayn to Burdeaux to the duches his wyfe / & after that he taryed there a monethe / duke Huon denysed with his wyfe in the presence of the abbot his vnclle, & of 8 Bernarde, & sayd, 'my ryght dere wyfe, he that rememberethe not the goodnes done to hym, may be reputed as vn courtoys;' I say it bycause ye know well that kyng Oberon hath done vs great good, & hath delyueryd vs out of many great parells of deth, and as ye sawe but late by the i. knightes that rescued you fro the dethe and fro the parell that ye were in / and ye knowe well the last tyme that kyng Oberon went fro Burdeaux, he gane me all his realme of the Fayry / & the pusaunce that he hath there / and he made me to promyse that after that iiii. yeres were passed that I shulde come to hym, and that he wolde then put me in pocsyson of his realme / and he sayd that yf I fayled my day he wolde vterly dystroy me / ye know what hath fallen to me or this by brekyng of his commandement / and therfore, dere lady and wyf, it is necessary that I go to hym; I shall leue you with Barnarde, who shall haue the kepyng of my londes & of you / and as for my daughter, I wyl leue her with the abbot here, myn vnclle, / who I desyre here before you / that he wyll kepe & gouerne my daughter Claryte / and with hym I wyll leue all my ryches and precyous stones that I brough with me / to the entent to mary her so it be to a man of great

1 vnto, 2 omitted, 3 about, 4 and mirth, 5 vnto the Citie of, 6 Esteremond, 7 good, 8 his Coozen, 9 Fol. cxliii[ii], col. 2, 10 vngratefull, 11 daunger, 12 that, 13 departed, 14 hym, 15 well, 16 before, 17 and.
valure / but I wyll not that she be maried to\(^1\) any
parsone for riches, but a parsone that is worthy\(^2\) I
wolde shuld haue her / for she hath and shall haue
4 ryches ynoughe for her selfe and for a man of great
auctoryte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod y\(^6\) abbot, 'your
goynge shal be to\(^3\) me dyspleasant\(^4\) yf I myght amende
it / yf god wyll no man leuynge shall haue your
8 doughter my nece in maryage, without\(^5\) he be a man of
hye parentage and garnysshed with vertues and good
maners; and as for your ryches\(^6\) she shall not nede to
haue any therof, for I haue treasure\(^8\) ynoughe to mary
12 her noblye.

\[\text{How Duke Huon deuysed with the duches}
\]

\[\text{his wyfe of his departynge / and how she}
\]

\[\text{sayd she wold go with hym, and how he}
\]

\[\text{lefte his doughter and lond\(^9\) in the kepyng}
\]

\[\text{of his vncle, the\(^10\) abbot of Cluny, & of}
\]

\[\text{Barnarde his cosyn.}\]

\[\text{Ca. C.lii.}\]

\[\text{Hen the duchess\(^11\) hard her husbonde}
\]

\[\text{the duke make his deuyses to go to\(^1\)}
\]

\[\text{kynge Oberon, ye maye well bylene\(^12\)}
\]

\[\text{she had great dolour\(^12\) at her hart, and}
\]

\[\text{then all wepynge she kneled downe}
\]

\[\text{before her husbonde, and sayd, 'my ryght dere lorde,}
\]

\[\text{and\(^11\) god wyll ye shall not go one fote but that I wyll}
\]

\[\text{go with you / yf ye take any yll or anoyauence I wyll}
\]

\[\text{haue\(^15\)my part / \(^16\)yf ye haue any good aduenture I}
\]

\[\text{wyll\(^17\) part with you ; \(^18\) for without me ye shall not}
\]

\[\text{\textbf{\(^1\)} vnto. \textbf{\(^2\)} and valiant. \textbf{\(^3\)} vnto after displeasing.}
\]

\[\textbf{\(^4\)} displeasing. \textbf{\(^5\)} except. \textbf{\(^6\)} pearles and Ieweles.}

\[\textbf{\(^7\)} Fol. cxliii[\(\text{ii}\)]. back. col. 1. \textbf{\(^8\)} and ryches.}

\[\textbf{\(^9\)} and Signiories. \textbf{\(^10\)} good. \textbf{\(^11\)} Escleremond had well.}

\[\textbf{\(^12\)} that. \textbf{\(^13\)} and greefe. \textbf{\(^14\)} if.}

\[\textbf{\(^15\)} Fol. cxliii[\(\text{ii}\)]. back. col. 2. \textbf{\(^16\)} and. \textbf{\(^17\)} haue my.}

\[\textbf{\(^18\text{--18} \) omitted.}\]
The voyage will be a hard one, for your longe absence hathe ben ryght harde for me to endure.' 'fayer lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray you to bere your goyng, and abyde here with your daughter, for ye vyage shal be sore for you to do; here I shal leue Barnard and myn vnclé, the abbot, and they shal be to you as faders.' 'syr,' quod she, 'I shal have meny ylles to abyde here without you / I had rather to endure what so ever god do send vs to 8 gether then to abyde here without you.'7 thus, as ye haue hard, for eny excuseasyon or shewynge that Huon kowde shew to the duches, he kowde not torne her fro hyr opynyou, But that she wold in eny wyse go with him. when Huon sawe that, he sayde, 'my ryghte dere lady, syn it plese you to go with me and to be contente what so ever god do sende vs, other good or yll, your companye plesythe me, and I am ryghte iouous therof / when the good abbot and Barnard hard the wyll of Huon and of the duches Esclaramonde his wyfe, they were sore displeasyd therwith, yt they coude in any wyse haue let it / but they coude not turne hym for any thynge they coude do / Then Huon sayd to the Abbot, 'syr, I leue with you my londes and my daughter tyll I retourne agayne / the which shall be as shortly as I maye / But of force nowe I am dreuen of the possessyon of the realme that kyngge Oberon hathe geuen me / therfore, fayre vnclé & cosyn Barnarde, to you I recommende my daughter, whom I loue enterly, and all my londis and syngnoryes, I leue all in your kepynge tyll my retourne / and with you, myne vnclé, I leue my trea-

1 to. 2 my Coozen. 3 good. 4 vnto. 5 sorowes. 6 shall. 7 your company. 8 omitted. 9 heere before that. 10 excuse. 11 reason. 12 his wyfe. 13-13 your pleasure. 14 euill. 15 well. 16 ioyfull. 17 had well. 18 and vnderstood. 19 and pleasure. 20 Duke. 21 them. 22 that. 23 Faire vnclé. 24 Signiories. 25 vntill. 26 and. 27 all.
sure and precious stones for the maryage of my daughter, whome I leue in youre kepynge: 'fayre neplue,' quod the abbot, 'syn it is your pleasure, I shall kepe her as well as thoughe she were myne owne chylde.' 'Fayre vnclle,' quod Huon, 'I pray you that the Gryffons fote that I brought with me, send it fro me to yonge kynge Loys of Fraunce, and salute hym fro me and present it to hym to do therwith his pleasure' 'syr,' quod the abbot, 'or Ester be come your message shall be done' and whiche was done, and the yonge kynge was ioynfull therof and caused it to be hanged in his paleys: and after by kynge Phelyp it was hanged in the holy chappell, where as it is as yette. Now let vs leue spekynge of the Gryffons fote and retourne to our mater.

How Huon toke leue of his daughter and of the Abbot his vnclle, and of Barnard his cosyn, and enteryd into the ryuer of geroune, and the duches with hym, and of the strange fortunes that they had.

Hen the abbot and Barnard had well vnderstonde Huon and had hard his wyll / they answered, that as for his londes and for his daughter he shulde not nede to care / but they sayd it greatly dyspleased them, the vyage that they were in mynd to do / but syn it was his pleasure so to do it was reason that they shulde be content / then Huon ordered that Barnarde shulde make redy a lytel shyppe, aparayled and garnysshed with vytayles and

1 treasure after precious stones. 2 Fol. cxliii. col. 1. 3 good. 4 seeing. 5--5 may be sent vnto. 6 vnto. 7 before. 8--8 that being. 9 omitted. 10 afterwards. 11--11 vntill this day. 12 former. 13 and pleasure. 14 and Signiories. 15 and. 16 he.
other thynges necessary, and that another great shyp shuld be made redy at the mouthe of the see to enter it when they were out of the ryuer of Geroune / the whiche thyng was done / then he toke .vi. knyghtes of his owne and a dozen saruauntes / and when Huon sawe every thyng redy and had shewed his enterpryse to his noble men and to the men of his countrie, and that every thyng was redy, then he toke his daughter in his armes and kyssed her more then .x. tymes, and in lyke wyse so dyd Esclaramond her mother, and her hart was so closed with sorowe that she coude speke no word / for the departynge fro her daughter / ye may well thynke that great was the sorowe there at theyr departynge, for he that had bene there and sene the doloure and petefull complayntes that the lady Claryet made for the departynge of her father and mother with whome she had not bene no longe season, there is not so harde a harte but that nedys must hane taken parte of her sorowe / for there was never sene so heuy a departynge. Then Huon, all wepynge, enbrased 20 abbot, his vncl / who gaue Huon at his departynge a halowed stoole, the which after dyd good saruyce to Huon and to Esclaramond. Also Huon toke leue of Barnard / then y6 duches sayd to the abbot & to 24 Barnarde / syrs, to you two I do recommende my daughter / thus Huon departed / they went to the posterne, and there they founde redy theyr lytell shyp and entered into it / & so made sayle downe alonge the ryuer of Gerund, and when they came to the mouthe of ye see they toke theyr great shyppe and so made sayle and had good wynd, so that shortly they were far of fro any lond, & were in the hye se the space of 32

---

1 Fol. cxliii. col. 2. 2 to. 3 into. 4 of his owne after servauntes. 5 vnto. 6 omitted. 7 fournished. 8 and greefe. 9 he. 10 good. 11 his Cozen. 12 and. 13 for.
OF A MIGHTY STORM.

vi. dayes, and on the vii. daye a wynde arose with suche an orryble tempest that they were dreuen into the great spanysshe see, and were so far fro any londe that they wyster not where they were / and euer the tempeste encrasyd in such wyse that there was neuer none suche sene nor hard before / the waues were lyke mountaynes, and lyke to a swalowed in the shyp / so that som tyme there entered into the shyppe a tonne of water at ones.

How Huon lost all his men, and the shyp braste,5 and howe he & the duches sauyd themselfe on a borde, and came6 and aryued at the castel of the monkes.

Ca. Cliiiii.

Hen7 Huon8 and the duches9 his wyfe sawe 10 this tourment so great & so horryble,10 they were in great fere of dethe / 11 they complayned greatly12 theyr daughter Claryet whom they had lefte at Burdeaux. Then Huon, who had with hym in his bag .ix. of his good13 precyous stones, he drewe out two of them, and knewe the vertue and bounte of them, 14 he toke14 his wyfe one of them and sayde, 'my dere15 wyfe, holde this stone in your hand and haue no fere / for the vertue of the stone wyl not let you perysshe, nor me nother' / he that had hard the cry and lamentacyons that the maryners made wolde haue had petye16 of them, for they sawe well they must be perysshed17 / Huon and Esclaramonde

With a fair wind they sail for six days. On the seventh a great storm drives them into the Spanish sea; they are so far from land, they know not where they are.

but the knight remembers that the virtue of the precious stones in his hand will preserve them.

1 Fol. exliii. back, col. 1. 2 vpon. 3 of. 4 vp. 5 brake. 6 rume in text. 7 Duke. 8 of Bourdeaux. 9 Escleremond. 10—10 these great and suddaine tempests. 11 and. 12 for. 13 deere. 14—14 and gane. 15 and louing. 16 and compassion. 17—17 that they should all perish and.
were on their knees sore wepyng, holding each other by the hand, humbly praying to our Lord Jesus Christ to have pite and compassion of them, and to bring them to sum port in safe garde of their lives. Great and horribl was the tempest, and long endured so that the helme, mast, and saylles all to brast / and when the ship was without a sterne to gyd yt, the great vaues entered in so that the ship was full of water, wherby it was constrained to synke into the see, so that it was all covered with water, & all that were within drowned and perished excepte Huon and Esclaramonde, who sate together on a table flotynge vpon the see / so that by the grace of God and bounty of the presyons stones that was on them they were saued and when they sawe their shippe all to peces and their men drowned, and selfe flotynge on the see / wherof Huon had suche sorowe that petye it was to se hym, and sayde / a, very god, why was I euer borne into this world / when I am so enfortunat that I can have no mans to serue me but at last they ende their lives in my seruyce myserably. A, good lorde, why doste thou suffer me so longe to leue / then the duches conforted hym as moche as she coude, and sayde / a syr, leue your sorowe and pray to God and to your Virgin Mary his mother that we myght aryue at some good porte / thus the duches comforted Huon her husband; how be it she was in as great fere, & not without cause / thus they floted on see greatly bewaylynge

1 vpon. 2 Fol. cxiii. Lack, col. 2. 3 vnto. 4-4 burst all to pieces. 5 to it. 6 in such sort. 7 were. 8 our Lord. 9 by the great. 10 and vertue. 11 and pershedy. 12 and greefe at his heart. 13 great. 14-14 good Lord. 15-15 my God. 16-16 vnto our Lord God for his mercie and his grace, and to haue pittie and compassion of vs. 17 noble. 18 Escleremond. 19 Duke. 20 a. 21 and.
the deathe of theyr men whome they saw perysshe before theyr eyen. Then Huon, as fare of as he myght se, he saw a castell stondyng on a rocke, the which senyld 4 darke & blacke; 2 then he launed 3 god, prayenge hym devoutly 4 to brynge hym 5 thether in saue 6 gard. then the see was peasyble / and the tempest sessed / and the wynd fresshe, the whiche drave them in a 8 short space to 7 y° porte vnder the rocke: and when they were nere to the londe Huon and the duches waded to 7 the londe, holdynge eche other by the hand: when they were on 1 the drye londe they knelyd 12 downe and lyfte vp theyr eyen to 7 the 8 heuen, and made theyr devout prayers to 7 our lord Iesu chryst, desryng hym to haue petye and compassion of the sowles of his 9 men that he 10 sawe drowned 11 / then they 16 rose vp & sawe a lytell pathe 12 to the castell warde 12 ; they entered into 13 the waye 13 / when they came nere 7 the castell they sawe a great ryuer goynge 14 rounde a bought 13 the castel 13 / and saw 15 the castel 16 of a 8 20 maruaylous 17 beautye, thynkynge 15 they neuer sawe no suche before / the towres were couered with gleterynge golde, shynynge so bryghte as thoughe the sonne 15 had shone 18 theron: also they sawe an auncyent church 24 lyonyng to the castell with a goodly steple full of belles / the whiche began to sowne, wherof Huon had great maruayle / for he saw nother man nor woman comyng nor goynge / and when he had well regarded 28 y° castell he came to 7 the gate and saw how 15 there were iiii. breges to pas or 10 he coude enter: when Huon sawe that he sayd, 'O 20 very god, 20 in all my lyfe I neuer sawe so fayre a castell, he that is lorde therof semeth to

1 vpon. 2 and. 3 and praised our Lord. 
4 humbly. 5 then. 6 Fol. cxliii. col. 1. 7 vnto. 
8 omitted. 9 their. 10 they. 11 and perished. 
12-12 way lying straight towards the castle and. 13-13 it. 
14 running. 15 that. 16 was. 17 great. 
15-15 did shine. 19 before. 20-20 good Lord.
be a great man for ye there were within it men to kepe and garnysshed with vytailes, it wold neuer be wonne for any man leuynge' so long Huon behelde this castell that he forgate his sorow, the castell pleasyd hym so well / and sayd to the duches / 'dame, I byleue suery this is the castell of Momur partaynynge to kyng Oberon, we maye well thanke god that he hath brought vs hether / we shall se hym; ye knowe well he hath promysed to gene me his realme and all his dyngnyte' 'syr,' quod the duches, 'I haue hard saye or this that Momure is a great and noble citye, & full of people of all sortes wherfore ye may well parsayue that this is not that citye, it may well be that this castell is his' 'Dame,' quod Huon, 'the kyng hath that pusaunce that he may make citye or castell at his pleasure' 'syr,' quod she, 'I byleue it well' then Huon toke his way to ye gate / and as he wente deuysyng with Esclaramonde his wyfe, he sawe before hym monkes in whyghte apparell / & when they came to hym they sayd 'Syr duke of Burdeaux, of your comynge we are ryght joyfull, for a more noble man came not here of a long season, god bles you and ye duches your wyfe' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'god sane you; I pray you shewe me what ye be and howe hatha shewed you my name, and who is lorde and gouernour of this castell' 'syr,' quod one of the monkes, 'this castell is ours, and here is no gouernour but I and my bretherne / we make none answere to any lorde leuynge / therfore, ye it please you to enter, we shall make you as good chere as we can, and ye it please you to tary here a viii. or xv. dayes, ye shalbe welcome, & when ye departe we

1 and a noble. 2 but. 3 had forgotten. 4 unto. 5 his Wife. 6 Madame. 7 Fol. exliii. col. 2. 8 our Lord. 9 well. 10 before. 11 a. 12 Madame. 13 the Duchesse. 14 to. 15 who. 16 feast and. 17--11 omitted.
shal gyue you to cary with you mete and drynke suffycyent to servue you and your wyfe for xv dayes, & ye shall haue neede therof or ye fynd out kynge Oberon / Huon and his wyfe are led into a hall of wondrous grandeur.

4 'syrs,' quod Huon, 'of your courteysy I thanke you' / then Huon entered into the castell with them, and came into a great hall well garnysshed with ryche pyllers of wyghte marble vauted aboue, and rychly paynted with golde and assure, and set full of ryche precious stones, y which cast a great lyght, for by reason of the six stones at mydnyght it was as bryght as at none dayes / Huon and Esclaramonde thought they neuer sawe so ryche a thynge / 'dame,' quod Huon, 'this place is delectable' / then they were brought into a rych chaumbre whereas the tables were set, garnyssh withe any thyng that a man wold wysshe for.

Huon and Esclaramonde thought they are neuer bene in paradise, for the swetnes of the flowers and frutes uppon euery tre / and they hanle dyuers byrdes synge melodiously / 'syrs,' quod Huon to the monys, 'well ye ought to thanke oure lorde Iesu chyrst that he hathe geuen you suche a place to serve hym in / and, syrs, I praye you when it is

before. 2 Duke. 3 most hartely. 4 and adorned. 5 Fol. cxliii. back, col. 1. 6 precious. 7 that. 8 Madame. 9 and. 10 euerie. 11 coulde. 12 adorned. 13 the. 14 vnto. 15 omitted. 16 at their pleasure. 17 so much as. 18 kind of.
mydnyght awake me, to the entent that I may ryse to go & here your mataynes when ye synge it / 'syr,' quod one of them, 'I shall awake you when tyme is that ye may come and here vs.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 4 'therin shall ye do me great pleasure' / then Huon and Esclaramond were brought to a ryche chaumbre well aparayled with clothes of golde & sylke, wherein was a rych bed, wherein Huon & his wyfe laye in 8 together: the chaumbre was ryche, for all the nyghte it was as clere as though the chaumbre had ben full of torches, by reason of shynyng of the precyous stones / for there was no banke nor poste but that were set ful of ryche stones / the ryches of that chaumbre can not be dyscryued and therein was paynted with gold and asure all the batayles of Troye. In this ryche chaumbre and bed they slepte tyll theoure of mydnyght was come, then all the monkes rose, and the bellis range to matens; then there came a monke to Huon and waked hym, and said / 'syr, it is tyme that ye ryse, it is past mydnyght, make you redy to come and here matens' / then Huon rose and called vp his wyfe / she arose, & thus they made them redy, and wente to the churche, the whiche was paued with a whight marble powdered with flowre delyses of golde entermedelyd with red roses / and the vault was checkered with Ambre and Chrystall, & at every poynyt a ryche stone / wherby there was such clerenes that there neded no candelight; when Huon and Esclaramond monde saw the beautye and ryches of the churche they were sore abasshed, and made the syngye of the

1 Service. 2 doe. 3 the. 4 Duke. 5 in. 6 fournished. 7 and sumptuous. 8 the Duchesse. 9 Fol. cxliii. back col. 2. 10 omitted. 11 faire and. 12 bench. 13 coulde. 14 and. 15 vntill. 16-16 began to ringe to Service. 17 vnto. 18 nowe. 19 for. 20-20 our Service. 21 the Duchesse Esclaramond. 22 then. 23-23 had well scene and beheld the great.
Ca. cliv.] How the Matins Are Said at Midnight.

crosse on¹ theyr forhed for the marueyles that they saw there / ²they entered into the quere and kneled downe before the hye aulter and made theyr prayers to³ god, ⁴desyrynge hym to be theyr sauegarde and to brynge⁵ them ⁶in suertye to⁷ kynge Oberon / then the abbot began ⁸³y⁸e matens,⁶ and red the fyrst lesson ; and when he was in the halfe therof he helde his peas, and ⁸departed clene out of the churche / then the pryour began another lesson, and in lyke wyse lefte it in the myddes and departed out of ⁸y⁸e churche / thus ⁷dyd⁸ every monke one after another, and there were .xxxii. ¹²monkes, and in ⁸y⁸e myddes of every lesson and salme they departed out of the churche one after another. when Huon sawe and hard that he was sore⁹ abasshed, and swreth that or¹⁰ the last monke departed he wold ¹⁶knowe the cause why they dyd so / ¹¹then he went to¹² the last monke, who wolde haue gone out of the churche / and Huon toke the halowed stole that he had in his bosum, & dyd cast it aboute the monkes ¹⁵necke, & helde it fast with bothe his handes / when the monke saw how he was holden he was sorowfull and angery, and dyd what he coude to haue scaped, but he coude not / ¹¹when he saw that he coude not ¹⁵scape, he enbraced Huon, and prayed hym humbly to let hym go after his bretherne : 'sartaynely,' quod Huon, '⁶⁸out of my handes ye shall not scape tyll¹³ ye haue shewed me why ye syngle your ⁶matens⁶ after ²⁸the maner that ye do, & euer to leue the one half vsonge, and why the abbot and the other monkes do departhe one after a nother without any word spekynge to¹² me, and without¹⁴ ye shew me the truth, with my ³²sword I shall stryke your¹⁵ hede to ⁸y⁸e braynes' / then

¹ vpon. ² then. ³ vnto our Lord. ⁴ conduct. ⁵⁸—⁶ surely vnto. ⁶⁶ Service. ⁷ Fol. cxliv. col. 1. ⁸ did after monke. ⁹ dismayed and. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ and. ¹² vnto. ¹³ vntil. ¹⁴ except. ¹⁵ thy.
'syr, I am he that yesternight brought you to your chaumbre, and made your bed.' then Huon, who had his sword in the one hande and the stole in the other hande, sayde, 'without ye show me my demaunde, shortly I shal stryke of thy hede.' when the monke saw that, he lyfte vp his sword in fear, the monke to have stryken hym / but then incontynente the monke ioyned his han3des and cryed for marcy, and promysed hym to shewe hym the trouthe of his 12 demaunde.

How 4 Huon made semblant to have slayne the monke, holdynge hym faste with the stole, to the entente he shulde shewe to 5 16 hym the trouthe.

Hen Huon put vp his sworde, and the monke began to speke, and sayde / 'syr, know for trouthe that al we that 20 be here ar of the yll6 angelles that were chasyd out of paradys with lucyfer, who by his pryde wolde compare to 7 god / he made vs beleue that we shuld be as 24 good as god, 8 & we byleued him / but as for vs that be here in this howse god was with vs displeasyd, and therby we were condempned to be conversante abrode in the worlde amonge men and women when we lyste / 28 and some be in lykenes of beres: 2 some lyke ware-wolues, and thus we shall be vnto 9 the day of judgment, and some other ther be that be tempters of men & women, desyryng to brynge them to dampnacyon / 32

1–1 thou shewest vnto. 2 and. 3 Fol. cxlv. col. 2. 4 Duke. 5 vnto. 6 euill. 7 with. 8 himselfe. 9 vntill.
Ca. clv.] OF THE MARVELLOUS HISTORY OF THE MONKS.

& som ther be in the ayre and foloweth the thonder-ynges and tempestes / and some be on\(^1\) the se and drowne many a man and perysshe the shyppe wherof, but late ye were in ioparly / for ye it had not bene for the great vertue\(^2\) that is in the preecyous stones that ye and your wyfe bereth vpon\(^3\) you both ye & your wyfe had bene perished for ever / and other ther be

\(that\) ar \(^4\) in the botome of hell, whereas they tournent the pouer sowles, and there is Lucifer and they that be most yll\(^5\) with hym, and thoughge they were ones fayre now they be fowle and yll fygured,\(^6\) and they shall neuer departe\(^7\) thesen / but we that be here yet we hope to come to\(^8\) saluacyon. \(^9\) Thus we shall be as longe as it please god \(^1/\) then Huon demaunded the cause why they began the lessons in theyr matens\(^10\) and to leue it in the myddes, and every monke to depart\(^11\) one after another. 'Syr,' quod ye monke, 'our lorde Iesu chryst hath not as yet geuen vs that dyngnyte nor power to make an ende of our deuyne seruyce / but we haue that grace in this world that we haue all our desyres, and to be converters amongethe people, &\(^12\) as well as they of the fayrey / there is nothynge but by wysshynge we can haue it incontynent / \(^13\) when we wyll it is inoure power to make towne or castell set vpon hye rockes closyd with ryuers berynge shyppe / and we haue mynsterels, halles, and chaumbers garnysshed and ordeyned as ye haue sene herewith-in. Also we haue wyne and vytyalle, and fysshe and flesshe at our pleasure; this castell \(that\) ye se and church\(^14\) was yester-nyght made by the fayrey / but one owre before\(^15\) ye came hether / before\(^12\) here was nother towre nor wall nor water nor rocke, but a fayre grene\(^16\)

\(^1\) vpon. \(^2\) and bounte. \(^3\) about. \(^4\) Fol. cxlv. back, col. 1. \(^5\) euill. \(^6-6\) misfigured. \(^7\) from. \(^8\) vnto. \(^9\) but. \(^10\) seruice. \(^11\) so. \(^12\) omitted. \(^13\) and. \(^14\) and church after castell. \(^15\) that. \(^16\) great.

CHARL. ROM. VIII.

Huon and his wife were in great danger from them lately, but the precious stones preserved them.

They still possess many of the marvel-working powers of fairies.

The castle and church in which they now stand, were built in an hour on the previous day.
medow, the whiche ye shall sone parseyue / and, syr, we be tho that hathe the conducte of al the fayrey of the world. Now, syr, I haue shewed\(^2\) you that we be and all our secretes the whiche was neuer shewed before to any mortall man / wherby I shal suffer of our abbot soche ponysshement that there was neuer so yll aduenture that fell to me before / therfor, syr, now I ha\(^3\)ue shewed\(^2\) you every thyng, suffer me to departe 8 to my company.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'I wyll not let the go tyll\(^4\) thou hast shewed vnto me by what maner of way I may go tyll\(^4\) I haue founde kynge Oberon;' thus Huon and the monke talked together 12 tyll\(^4\) it was fayre daylyght / then Huon loked abouth hym and sawe nother castell nor churche, rocke nor ryuer, but he sawe\(^5\) they were in a fayre medow, wherof Huon and Escalaramonde were sore abassed 16 and blessed hem, hauynge great maruayle of that they had sene; then the monke desyred Huon to let hym go, 'monke,' quod Huon, 'to drawe or to strogell can not auayle the / for thou shalte not scape out of 20 my handes tyll\(^4\) thou hast shewed me ye\(^6\) cittye of Momure, wheras kynge Oberon is!' 'Huon,' quod the monke, 'I am content to do it, but fyrst I pray the take fro my necke the stole.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'thy 24 resonynge can not awayle the / for thou shalte not scape fro me tyll\(^4\) thou hast set bothe me and my wyfe nere to the cittye of Momure, for thou shalt go with vs fote by fote' / 'well,' quod ye\(^6\) monke, 'syn it is thus, 28 I am content to fulyll your pleasure / but one thynge I say to you, ye neuer dyd a wyser dede then that ye wolde not let me go awaye / for yf the stole were not wherwith ye do holde me and the presious stones that ye haue on you / elles\(^7\) ye shuld neuer haue departed fro hence / I thoughte to haue begyled you so that ye

---

\(^1\) in. \(^2\) vnto. \(^3\) Fol. cxiv. back, col. 2. \(^4\) vntill. \(^5\) that. \(^6\) about. \(^7\) omitted.
myghte haue let me gone my wayes whether I wolde go.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'yf I can ye shall not departe fro me tyll ye haue fyrste set me & my wyfe within the citye of Momure' / 'syr,' quod the monke, 'that wyll I not do, nor I can not do it thoughe I wolde, but I shall set you both on yᵉ mount of yrecany,' and fro thence ye may well se the citye of 8 Momure and all the countre of the fayrey, and then I wyll retourne to my company, who by this tyme are passe the great see of Tartary' / 'monke,' quod Huon, 'I am contente so thou set me in that plase, wheras 12 I may se the citye of Momure.

How the monke bare Huon and Esclaramond ouer hylles & valeyes in the ayer tyl he came in to the countrye of kyng Oberon.

The monk takes Huon and Esclaramonde in his arms and carries them to a high rock through the air.

They reach the land of king Oberon.
saw a castell newly made, the whiche was so fayre and
1 ryche and stronge that yt I shulde dyseryue it
to the vtter most it were ouer longe to rehearse / then
the monke toke2 leue of huon3 and lefte hym4 in the 4
castell that he had made / Huon sufferid hym to go and
thanked hym of his 5 courtoysye, the monke sodeynely
vanisshed awaye they wyst not whether / 6 then huon
and his7 wyfe entered into the castel and came into a 8
cyhe chaunbre wel apareiled,8 and there they founde
a table set with dyuers metes and drynkes, but there
was no man to speke vnto / then they sate downe at
the table and dyd ete and drynke at theyr pleasure / 12
6 then they went9 thens, and when they were10 a lytell
paste11 they loked behynde them and saw nother towne
nor castel, wherof they were12 abasshed & recommaunded
themselye to13 our lorde14 Iesu chryste,14 then they went 16
forth in15 ye medowe and coude se nother towne nor
castel, house nor villag / nor man to demaunde the
way of: 6 they went so longe that they came to the fote
of a mountayne, wherne they mounted with great payn 20
and traayle ; 6 when they were on16 ye heyght17 of the
hyll they rested them / and then within a lytell season
huon sawe before hym apere a great cytye, and on16 the
one syde thereof a fayre and a 1 ryche paleys / the 24
walles and towers of the cittye & paleys were18 of
whyghte marble polysshed, the whiche stone19 so bryght
agaynst the sonne as thoughe it had bene al of chrostell / then
Huon sayde to18 his wyfe, ' dame,20 yonder, before 28
vs, we may se the21 cittye of Momure, wheras kynge
Oberon is' / ' syr,' quod Esclaramond, ' our lorde god
hath done13 vs a great grace22 that he hathe brought

1 omitted. 2 his. 3 and of the Duchesse Esclaramond his wyfe. 4 them.
5 Fol. cxlvi. col. 2. 6 and. 7 louing. 8 furnish. 9 from. 10 gone. 11 way. 12 sore. 13 vnto.
11—11 god. 15 to. 16 vpon. 17 toppe. 18 all. 19 did shine. 20 Madame. 21 noble. 22 in.
OF OBERON'S SICKNESS.

vs hether in saugarde of our parsons / then they went forth tyll they cam nere to the citye of Momure / and before the citye they sawe a marueylous great ryuer and depe, and two bowe shot in largnes, and was marueylous pleasant to behold / & when they cam to thee ryuer syde they founde there a man with a lytell wessell awaytynge vpoun all them that wold come.

8 the citye to pas them ouer / then Huon and his wyfe entered into the lytel shyppe and saluted the gyder therof, but he wold gene none answere / but merueylously behelde them, & when they wer ouer / the pas-

12 sanger, who was named Clarimodes, and he was sone to a damoyssell of the fayrey / then he demaund of Huon what he and his wyfe were / and sayde, "Me thynke ye be none of the fayrey / wherfore I am not contente that I haue passed you ouer' / then Huon gaue hym none answere, but went forthe and entered into the citye, and as they passid they were greatly regardid of them within ye citye, and sayde one to a nother it is marueyle to se these two parsones to enter into this citye / for kynge Oberon, who lyethe seke in his bed, gaue great charge to Clarimodes that no stranger shuld pas the reuer to enter in to this citye / Huon harde them and was therof ryght sorowfull when he harde that the kynge laye syke in his bed / so he passed forth and cam to the paleys / every man there beheld hym and his wyfe and had great marueyle to se any mortal parsons to enter into that palays, they were therof abasshed & wyste not what to thynke, and the same season Malabron and Gloryand were walkynge together in ye hal they behelde Huon and Esclaramonde enterynge into the hal and incon-

1 vntill, 2 vnto. 3 verie. 4 it. 5 Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 1. 6 Escleremond. 7 them. 8 Marriuer. 9 great. 10 omitted. 11 and. 12 at. 13 saw.
tynent they knew them / and came to\(^1\) them and embraced them / and sayde, 'A, noble duke Huon and duches Esclaramonde, ye ar welcome of your comynge, we are ryght ioyfull' / then Malabron wente fro them 4 and wente into the chaumbre, wheras y\(^6\) kynge laye seke and said / 'ryght dere syr, your good frend Huon & Esclaramond his wyfe are come into your hall' / when 2the kynge harde that Huon and Esclaramonde were 8 come, for the great ioye that he had, he quyckely rose out of his bed. Therwith Gloryand / Huon and Esclaramond entered into the chaumbre where kynge Oberon was. 3 when kynge Oberon saw them he came to\(^1\) 12 them, and sayd, 'My ryght dere frend Huon, and you, my dere lour Esclaramond, of your comyng I am ryght ioyfull' / then he embraced & kyssed them bothe more then x. tymes, and sayd, 'Huon, my\(^4\) dere frend, 16 for the great trouthe & noblenes that I fynde in you I shall make you kynge of all the fayrey, and your wyfe Esclaramonde shall be lady and quene of the same, and besyde that I wyll geue\(^1\) you\(^5\) my dyngnyte.'

When the kynge had well saluted them then he sate downe on\(^6\) a couche & made huon and Esclaramond to sytte downe before hym,\(^3\) then he commanded Gloryand that incontyneyt he shulde feche to\(^1\) hym 24 his bowe, and when he had it in his hand he toke an arrow and shot therwith / then incontyneyt it semen that al the world had aryued in the towne and paleys / ther came thetherward\(^7\) so many knyghtes and ladyes 28 of the fayrey that all the towne and paleys was full / when they were all assembeled together in the paleys kynge Oberon commanded to cary hym into the great hall in his rych couche / then he commanded seylence 32 to be kepte among them all, and then he sayde / 'lordes and ladyes who be here assembeled all, ye knowe

\(^1\) vnto. \(^2\) Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 2. \(^3\) and. \(^4\) right. \(^5\) all. \(^6\) vppon. \(^7\) thether.
that every mortall thyng cannot alwayes\(^1\) endure / I spake it for my owne selfe\(^2\) who\(^2\) am some to a mortall man, and was engendered on\(^3\) the ladie of the preyue 4 He who can\(^4\) neuer dye, bycause she is one of the fairy engendered of a man of the fayrey and daughter to a woman of the fayrey, and where\(^5\) it was\(^5\) so that Iulius Seser was a mortall man, therfore it behoneth me to 8 pas out of this worlde by the commandement of our lorde god, who hathe ordeined that it shulde so be. And bycause\(^6\) duryng the tyme that I haue bene here conuersaunt with you / therfore I wyll not leue you 12 without a lorde / but fyrst in my lyfe dayes I wyll puruey you of one, who shall be duke Huon, whome I loue well and derely, & also I wyll that his wife, the duches Esclaramond, shall abyde with hym / for in no wyse I 16 wyll separate them asonder: therfore I ordeyne that Huon who is here presente be your kynghe and lorde, & Esclaramond\(^7\) quene and lady / and fro hensforthe I put my realme and dyngnyte into his handes / and I 20 wyll he vse it as I haue done in my lyfe tyme / howe be it kynghe Arthur hath sore pressed on\(^3\) me to haue my dignyte\(^8\) & realme, but I wyll that none shal haue it but alone Huon of Burdeaux, who is here present, 24 whom I wyl crowne kynghe in all your presences.

\[ \text{He announces his approaching death;} \]

\[ \text{Huon will succeed him on his throne.} \]

\[ \text{King Arthur has pressed Oberon in vain to bestow the kingdom on him.} \]

|| How\(^9\) kynghe Oberon crowned Huon and Esclaramonde and gaue them his realme and dyngnyte that he had in the\(^{10}\) fayrey, and made the peas betwene Huon & king Arthur. |

---

1 long. 2-2 because I. 3 ypon. 4 Fol. cxlvii. col. 1. 5-5 as it is. 6 of my loue. 7 your. 8 after realme. 9 the noble. 10 land of the.
Hen all the people of the fayrey, and ladies, had well harde and vnderstonde kyng Oberon, they were right syrowfull that he shulde leue them, and sayde / 'syr, syn it is your pleasure and that it is your wyll / of reason we must be content to receyue Huon of Burdeaux for oure kyng, and dame Esclaramonde his wyfe for oure quene' / when the kyng vnderstode hys lorde and people, then he caused to be brought thether .ii. crownes / y one was set on Huons hede and the other on Esclaramondes hede / then Oberon sent for his horne / his napkyn and cup / and the good harnays: he deluyered them to Huon to do with them his pleasure / great ioye and feast was made in the palays of the knyghtes and ladies of the fayry; then kyng Huon loked out at a wyndowe and sawe on a mountayne that he past ouer at his comynge thether, great nombre of tentes and pauylions. then he sayd to kyng Oberon, 'syr, on yonder mountayne I se great nombre of men assemblyd, and many tentes and pauylions pytght vp' / 'Huon,' quod kyng Oberon, 'know for trueth it is kyng Arthur, who wenethe to haue my realme and dynynte, but he comethe to late / for the promyse that ye made me ye haue kept, therfore he faylethe and comethe to late / for yf ye had not com I had geuen hym my realme and dyngnyte / I knowe well he wyll be here sone to se me / he wyll be sorowfull and angery of your comynge hether / but yf I canne I shall do so moche that ye shall be bothe in peas and reste, for reason is that he do obey you.' Therwith kyng Arthure and all his cheualrey entered
in to\(^1\) Monnure, & cam & alghted at ye palays, and with hym his syster, quene Morgan ye eye, and Transelyne theyr nese / they came and saluted kyng 4 Oberon, who receyued them with great Ioye, and sayde / 'syr\(^2\) kyng Arthure ye ye ar welcome, and Morgan your syster, and Transelyne your nese / and syr, I praye you\(^4\) shewe me what fayre chylde is that 8 I se there before your syster Morgan' / 'syr,' quod Arthur, 'he is called Marlyn, & is sone to Ogyer ye\(^8\) dane / who hath wedded my syster Morgan, and I haue lefte hym in my countrie to rule it tyll\(^5\) I returne' / 'syr,' quod kyng Oberon / 'ye\(^6\) chyld shall haue good fortune, he shalbe in his tyme feryd & doughted / for Ogyer his father is a good and a valyant knyght: And syr\(^6\) kyng Arthur, ye ar 16 welcome, & of your comynge I am 'joyous' / I haue sent for you to shew you the pleasure of our lorde 8 Iesu Chryst\(^8\) that I shall departe out of this worlde, and to the entente that ye shulde be contente with\(^9\) 20 that I haue geuen you\(^10\) in the fayry so moche dygnyte and pusaunce, wherther I desire you to be content / syr\(^11\) beholde here duke Huon of Burdeaux and his wylte ye\(^8\) duches Esclaramonde, to\(^12\) whome I haue geuen 24 my realme and my dyngnyte, to vse it as I haue done \(^10\)here before: 10 and therfore I praye and commaunde you that ye wyl obey hym as kyng and souerayne of al the fayry, and you to loue\(^13\) together with good lone 28 and peas / when kyng Arthur hard kyng Ober\(^\circ\)., he answered fersly, and sayd / 'syr, I haue well hard you; and ye knowe well that your realme & dyngnyte ye\(^14\) haue geuen\(^14\) me after your deces, and now I se\(^15\) 32 ye haue geuen it to duke Huon / syr, let hym go into his

\(^{1}\) the Citie of. \(^{2}\) great. \(^{3}\) Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 1. 
\(^{4}\) to. \(^{5}\) vntill. \(^{6}\) noble. \(^{7}-7\) right joyfull. 
\(^{8}\) God. \(^{9}\) in. \(^{10}\) heretofore. \(^{11}\) for. \(^{12}\) vnto. 
\(^{13}\) liue. \(^{14}-14\) gaue. \(^{15}\) well.
He will not obey the new fairy king.

Huon tells Arthur that he will force obedience from him.

Oberon keeps peace between them: if Arthur prove disobedient, he shall be transformed into a werewolf.

Arthur yields to Oberon, and begs forgiveness.

owne countre and to the citye of Burdeaux wheras he hathe lefte his daughter Claryet, and let hym go and marry her, for as here he hath no thyunge to do; I had rather be clene exyled for euer and chased out of my realme / then I shulde obeye hym or do hym homage / for he shall haue no thyunge to do ouer me without he wyn it with the poynete of the sworde' / when duke Huon harde kyng Arthur of Bretayne, he answered fersly and said / 'kyng Arthur, knowe for trouthe for all your wordes and thretenynges, I wyll not spare to say to you that whether ye wyl or not it must behone you to obey and to be vnder me, syn it is the pleasure of my lorde, kyng Oberon, here present, or elles ye may departe and go and dwell in your countre of Bretayne' / then kyng Oberon, seynge apparence of great warre to be moued betwene these two kynges, he spake and sayd he wolde haue theyr yll wyll layd downe & neuer to haue warre betwene them; then he sayd to kyng Arthur / 'syr, I wyll ye holde your peas, for if ye speke one word more agaynst Huon the souerayne kyng of the fayry, that he wolde condempne hym parpetually to be a warwolfe in the se, and there to end his dayes in payne and mysery / but yf he wyll beleue hym he wolde agre them together' / then kyng Arthur stode styll and wolde speke no word / then Morgan and Transelyne fell down on theyr knees and desyred kyng Oberon to haue petye of kyng Arthure, and to pardon hym his yll wyll: after that Morgan had spoken, then kyng Arthur kneled downe, and sayd, 'ryght dere syr, I pray you pardon me in that I haue spoken so moche agaynst your pleasure' / 'Arthur,' quod Oberon, 'I wyll well
that ye know if it were not for the loue of your syster who hath desyred me to pardon you / elles I wold haue shewed you the power that I haue in the fayry / the whiche fro hens forthe I do geue to duke Huon of Burdeaux, & all the dygnyte & pusaunce that I haue vsed all my lyfe.' Then duke Huon ryght humblye thanked kyng Oberon of his curtoysye.

8 Of the ordynaunces that kyng Oberon made before he dyed. Ca. C.lvii.

Hen Oberon had deposed hymselfe of his realme and dyngnyte, and that he had put al his pusaunce into the handes of Huon, then he sayde to kynge Arthure / 'syr, bycause I desyre with all my heart that after my dysces Huon and you shulde leue together in good peas and loue, I geue you all my realme of Boulquant and all the realme that Syble holdethe of me, to do therwith at your pleasure, and of all the fayryes that be in the playne of Tartare / and I wyll ye haue as moche pusaunce there as Huon hath here. Prouyded that here before me ye make homage to hym & to that good peas and loue maye be betwene you / then Arthur, Morgan, and Tran-

24 selyne, and all other lorde\(^{11}\) that were there thanked kyng Oberon, and sayd how they neuer hard nor saw so rych a gyfte geuen before as that kyng Oberon had geuen to Arthur. Then kyng Arthure, in the presence of Oberon, came and made homage & kyssed duke Huon on the mouth / then Oberon and all other had therof great ioye bycause of the peas made betwene thos two kynges, great feast\(^{14}\) and ioye was well after ye. \(^{2}\) omitted. \(^{3}\) vnto. \(^{4}\) in. \(^{5}\) Fol. cxlviii. col. 1. \(^{6}\) ryght humblye after Oberon. \(^{7}\) the noble. \(^{8}\) King. \(^{9}\) that. \(^{10}\) the. \(^{11}\) and Ladies. \(^{12}\) vnto kyngye. \(^{13}\) and. \(^{14}\) feasting.
made in the paleys, for all the moste noble lordees and
ladyes of the fayry were there assembelyd, there was
great solemmpnyte made / Thus as they were in this
great ioye kyenge Oberon,elynge that 1 his laste ende 4
aprocched, 2 he knewe y e oure and day3 / then seynge
that in his lefe dayes4 he had prouyded a kyng for his
realme, he5 thankyd our lorde 6 Iesu chryst6 of the
graces that he had geuen hym in this worlde / then 8
he callid before hym Huon of Burdeaux, and kyenge
Arthur, & Gloryand, and Malabron, and sayd / ' syrs, I
aduertyse that longe I shall not abyde amonge you / therfore Huon, for your bouatyde and noblenes wher-12
with alwayes7 ye haue bene endowed, I haue chosen
you amonge other to haue the kepynge and syngnary /
and the mynystraycon of al y e fayrey as well of
the countre of the8 warwolfes as of other thynges16
secrete, reserued9 to be shewed to any10 men / and also
I haue geuen you my dyngnyte and pusaunce to do11
as I haue done in my tyme; & 12 therfore, syn12 I haue
thus chosyn you / therfore I wyl that13 I depart out of 20
this world / that ye do make a newe abbey of monkes,
the which I wylle be set here in this14 medow15 before
this cyte, bycause al my dayes I haue loued this citye /
and I wyl that in the church of the same abbey ye do 24
bury my body as rychly as ye shall thynke conuenyent /
and I recommaunde to16 you all suche as hathe well
serued me, and I wyl17 ye retayne them into your
seruycé / when18 Oberon had said as moch as plesed 28
hym, Huon answerid and sayd / ' dere syr, of the great
goodnes and honours that ye haue done to16 me, I
thanke you / and all that ye haue ordeyned or wylle do
by the grace of 6 our lorde Iesu chryst6 it shal be done 32

1 Fol. exlviii. col. 2. 2 for. 3 day before houre. 4 tyme. 5 humbly. 6—6 god. 7 always after bene.
8 omitted. 9 and not. 10 mortall. 11 therewith. 12—12 because. 13 when. 14 the. 15 heere. 16 vnto. 17 that. 18 King.
in suche wyse that my sowle shal bere no charge for it at the day of Jucment, 7 when the lordes and ladyes that were theeres assembeled hard the wordes of kynge Oberon / and sawe cleryly how his laste ende aproched nere / ye cries and clamours that was there made was maruel to here, and spesally ther was suche wepynge and cryeng in the cete that pete it was to here, 6 for they wer aduerteysid how king Oberon drewe faste to his laste end, who lay in a rychewe cowche in the myddes of his palayes nakyng his prayers to our lorde Iesu cryste, and holdynge Huon by the hande, and at laste sayde, 'my dere frende Huon, pray for me' / & then he made the synge of ye cros recommending his sowle to god, the which incontyment was borne in to paradyce by a greate multytude of angelles sent fro our lord Iesu chryst, who at ther depertynge made such shynynge and clerenes in ye palays that ther was never none suche sene before / and there with there was so swete a smell that euery man thought they had bene rauysshed in to paradyse, wherby they knewe suerly that kynge Oberons sowle was saued / when kynge Huon, & kynge Arthur, & quene Esclaramonde / Morgan le faye and Transelyne / and kynge Carahew / Gloryand and Malabron / and all other knyghtes and ladyes, when they knewe that kynge Oberon was dede / there is no humayne tonge can tell the cries, wepynges, and complainynes that was made there for the dethe of kynge Oberon / then his body was taken and borne to the plase where his sepulture was deuysed / the which kynge Huon caused to be made ryght rychely / & founde there an abbey as kynge Oberon had deuysed.

Oberon dies.

His soul is borne at once to paradise by a great multitude of angels.

Oberon is buried in the new abbey as he willed before his death.

1-1 well that. 2 Fol. cclviii. back, col. 1. 3 were. 4 great. 5 lamentations. 6 it. 7 that. 8 neere. 9 vnto. 10-19 god. 11 the. 12 hee. 13 right. 14 and. 15-15 omitted.
At the funeral banquet are three crowned kings, and two beautiful queens.

At length kings Arthur and Carahew take their leave, and king Huon and queen Esclaramonde rule over fairy-land.

After the buryall / they returned to ye palays, wher as the tables were set, and there sate .iii. crowned kynges & two excellant quenes ful of great beauty; at the hede¹ of the table sate kyng Huon, and nexte² hym 4 kynges Arthur, and then ³kyng Carahew and the two quenes / & the other ladyses departid and went and dyned in ther chambers / ⁴they were all serued of everie thynge that was nessesary. And after dyner ⁵and grace sayd / kyng Arthur and kyng Carahew toke theyr leue of kyng Huon and of quene Esclaremonde / and so departid every man in to his owne countre / and Morgan and Transelyne taryed a sertayne ¹²space with quene Esclaremond in great joy and solas. Now let vs leue spekyng of kyng Huon and of quene Esclaremonde, who taryed styll in the fayrey, and shal do vnto⁶ the day of Jugemente / and let vs return to ¹⁶our⁷ mater and speke of ⁹fayre Claryet, daughter to² kyng Huon, who was at the⁷ citye of Burdeaux.

Howe the kyng of Hongary & the kyng of Engelond and Florence, sone to² the ²⁰kyng of Aragon, desyred to have in maryage the fayre lady Claryet / and how she was betrayed by Broharté / and how syr Barnarde was drowned, & of the ylles⁸ ²⁴that the traytoure Brohart dyd to² the⁹ lady Claryet / and how he dyed at the laste.  

Ca. C.lviii.

¹ vpper end. ² vnto. ³ Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 2. ⁴ and. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ former. ⁷ noble. ⁸ euils. ⁹ faire.
E haue harde here before how kynge Huon & quene Esclaramonde, when they departid fro Burdeaux they lefte their daughter in the kepyng of the good abbot of Cluny, her vncl / who grew and dayly amended in suche a wyse that when she came to the 3age of .xv. yere, for her excellente beauty her renome was so great in every countre that there was nother kyng nor duke but 4that desyre to haue her in maryage / so that the abbot and Barnard her cosyn had great busines to gue eche of them theyr 12 answere to be contente / one was the kyng of Englund, another the kyng of Hungarye, and the thyrd 5was Florence, some to 6 the kyng of Aragon / But specyally the kyng of Hungarye wold haue had her / the 7 abbot answered the kyng of hungeryes enbassadours and 8to all the other, that vntyll he had harde some worde 9fro 10 duke huon her father, he could not agre to no 11 mariage for her / but yf they wolde retourne agayne by the feast of saynt Iohmn nexte folowinge, then he wolde be contente to holde a daye of communycacyon of maryage in the towne of Blaye / wherto the kyng of Hungarye was contente, and so were all the other enbassadours / and when the day came the good abbot toke his way to 6 Blaye to be there agaynst the comynge of the kynges of Englund and of 4 hungarye / and Florence, some to the kyng of Aragon / the 7 abbot lefte the lady Claryet in the kepyng of Barnarde her cosyn, who enterely 12 loued her / 13when the abbot was come to 6 Blaye, 14the abbot made the towne to be hanged rychely for the comynge of the sayd kynges. And ye 13.iii. daye after the abbot

---

1 the Citie of, 2 sort. 3 Fol. cxlviii. col. 1 (should be xlix.), 4-4 omitted. 5 other. 6 vnto. 7 good. 8 so. 9 newes. 10 for in text. 11 any. 12 entirely after loued her. 13 and, 14-11 hec.

CHARL. ROM. IX. R R
came thether / first came to the towne the kynge of Engelounge, who anone after that he was alyghted and somewhat rested, he lepte on his horse agayne and wente a huntynge into the laundes / then after came the kynge of hungarye in goodly araye; he alyghted at the paleys, whereas the abbot receyued hym with great ioye / then after entered Florence with a noble company. The abbot did salute them all one after another, sayenge howe he and the hole towne were at theyr commaundemente, & they thanked hym. There was a false traytoure borne in Burdeaux, who had harde all the conclusyon that the abbot had taken with these prynces / and that was that they shulde se the lady / and he that pleased her best shulde haue her in maryage / this traytoure that harde that conclusyon thought in hymselfe that he wolde let that mater yf he coude, and haue her hymselfe / this traytours name was Brohart / he departed fro Blaye sore desyryng to atayne to his false enterpyrse; he toke a lytell shyp and sayled incontynent to Burdeaux / then in haste he toke londe and fayned hymselfe as though he had great busynes to do; so he came to the paleys wheras he founde Barnarde 9 and ye lady 9 lenyng in a wyndow deuysynge together. Then Broharte saluted the lady 10 and Barnarde al smyling. ‘Brohart,’ quod Barnard, ‘the mater must be good that I se you come smylynge / I praye you shewe how dothe the abbot of Cluny, and how hath he receyued the prynces that be come to Blay’ / ‘Barnarde,’ quod the traytour, ‘know for trouth that in all your lyfe ye neuer saw suche noblenes as is nowe in ye towne of blay, and therfore, syr, hastely or the mater goeth any further, 32

1 vpon. 2 afterward. 3 Fol. cclviii[ix], col. 2. 4 that. 5 within. 6 vnto. 7-7 went on shoare. 8 the faire ladie clariet. 9-9 omitted. 10 after Barnard. 11 to. 12 vnto. 13 mee. 14 good. 15 before.
the abbot of Cluny, who is vnclle to my lady here presente / he sendethe you worde by me that inconty-
ent as sone as nyght comethe that prouely my lady

4 Claryet be made redy and apareyled and dysgysed lyke a man / and you & I to brynyge her to bley to her
vnclle the abbot of Cluny / and that tomorowe by none ye ordeyne damoysselles to come after and to
brynyge with them all her ryche robes and aparyle

to aray her therin when tyme shall be, and that we
take with vs one of her apareyls to put on her when
she come there tylly all her other apareyle comethe /

12 and the cause why that her vnclle sendeth for her now
so prouely is that she shulde se all them that desyreth
her in maryage, for out of y chaumbre wheras she shal
be in she shal se them all one after another throughe a

16 lateyse wyndowe / when Barnarde hard the vnhappy
traytoure / wenynge he had sayd trouth, bycause he
was a man of credens, therfore he blynyed his wordes.
Alas, why dyd he so, for a more traytoure ther was not

20 fro thense to Rome, his father and his bretherne were
so all / but Barnarde blynyed hym bycause he wente
with the abbot / then Barnarde sayde to Claryet /
'lady, ye must make you redy to departhe as sone

24 as nyght comethe / and ye muste be apareyled as
Brohart hathe shewed, to the entente that ye be not
parseyned tylly ye come to Blaye to your vnclle the
abbot / 'Barnarde,' quod the lady, 'syn it is the

28 pleasure of myne vnclle and of you it is reason that I do
it ' / then she went into her chaumbre and aparayled
her with her proue demoysselles, & they laughed at her
when they sawe her in a mans apareyle / and the yl

32 traytoure dyd so moch that he gote a lytell shyppe and

He tells Barnard, who guards Clariet, that she
is to go with him to Blaye disguised as a man,
and that her maids are to follow the next
day with all her apparel.

She is secretly to see her suitors at Blaye.

Barnard believes Brohart,

and bids Clariet depart.

Clariet is disguised.

1 good, 2 omitted, 3 vnlo, 4 about.
5 Fol. cxviii.[ix.] back, col. 1. 6 some, 7 vntill.
8—8 out at a secret. 0 that all that.
10—10 had been true. 11 vild. 12 cruell.

R R 2
brought it reddy to the posterne of ye paleys, and he had
gote reddy a great stone and tyed therto a corde / then
he came to Barnarde and sayd / 'syr, it is tyme to
departe, that we maye be at blaye or it be mydnyght'/
then Barnarde came to the lady, whome he founde
reddy to departe, and sayd, all smylynge, 'fayre lady, ye
resemble well to be a gentyll squyre' / brobarte put
his sworde aboute hym, and toke the lady by the arme 8
& sayde / 'come on companyon, it is tyme we go' /
Brohart wente on before, and barnarde and the
damoysell went after arme, and so went to the posterne so preuely that no man parseyued them / 12
then Brohart entered in fyreste and toke Claryet by
the hand and led her to the ende of the shyp, then
Barnarde entered / broharte softely let the stone slyp
into the water and held the cord stylly in his hande, and
sayd to Barnard, 'syr, I do this bycause the shyp
shall not go to faste tyll we be paste the medyll of the
streme' / and sayd to Barnard, 'syr, holde you this
cord in your hande tyll we be paste the heye streme /
and then we shall drawe it vp agayne.' Barnarde, who
thought none yll, dyd as the traytour sayd / then they
toke the helme in theyr handes, and so departed along
the ryuer of Gerounde.

Howe the traytoure Broharte drowned
Barnarde, and of theyr adventures / and
howe Broharte was slayne. Ca. Clix.

Hen Brohart sawe that they were fare of fro ye towne, & that ye nyght was
darke, he came to Barnarde & sayde,
'syr, quyckely drawe vp ye stone by
the corde out of the water' / then

---

1 vnto. 2 full. 3 before.
4 Fol. cxlviii[x]. back, col. 2. 5 Ladie. 6 on.
7 to the shippe. 8 and. 9 vntill.
Barnard stowpyd downe lowe to drawe it vp / then Brohart toke barnard by 1 the lege or 1 he was ware, and with all his strengthe he tombelyd 2 Barnarde 3 ouer 4 the 4 bourde into the water, wheras he was drowned, the whiche was great petye / for a more treuer knyght coude not be founde / when the 5 lady Claryet saw that Brohart had cast barnarde ouer the 5 bourde she gaue 8 a great crye, and she came to 6 Brohart and drew hym by the here / when 7 the traytour saw that y 8 e lady tare his here, he toke her by the armes so feresly that he caste her to y 8 shyp botom, 8 & dyd 9 all to 9 bete her, 10 12 & sayde that her cryes and wepynges coude not ayde her, for whether she wold or not he wolde hane his pleasure of her / when y 8 e lady harde the false traytour she was in great fere, & began sore to trymble, making 16 her praiers to our lord 11 Iesu christ 11 & to the vyrgyn mary 9 to defende her fro dyshonour and to brynye her out of the handes of that false traytour her enemy / then the vnhappy traytour came to 6 her and sayde / 20 that it were better for her to fulfyll his pleasure with good wyll and lowe rather then by force, or elles to 12 caste her into the ryuer of Gerounne / ' O false traytour,' quod she, 'as lange as thou leueste thou shalte neuer 24 haue ioye nor pleasure of my body,' / then the false morderer dyd bete the lady, that pety it was to se; 13 so he lefte her lyenge 14 in a maner ded; when he sawe 7 it wold be no better he was wery, and so fell on 15 slepe / 28 the shyp wente forthe by force of the streme, and by that tyme it was fayre daye / so fare the shyp wente that nyght that they were nere to the ende of the ryuer of Gerounne / and y 8 e lady sore wepynghe behelde 32 the traytour how he slepte, and sawe 10 by hym a lofe of

1—1 one of his legges before. 2 Fol. cxlv[1], col. 1. 3 him. 4 ship. 5 faire. 6 vnto. 7 that. 8—8 bottom of the shippe. 9—9 omitted. 10 cruelly. 11—11 god. 12 he would. 13 and. 14 lying after maner. 15 a. 16 lying.
she sees him sleeping with a loaf of bread at his side, of which she stands in great need. She weeps bitterly, and prays to God for aid.

The ship enters the sea, and is carried to a little island. Brohart awakes, and entreats Clariet to yield to him. But he curses God when he perceives that they have reached a deserted island.

Clariet leaves the boat, and runs up the rock. Six thieves lie hid there. 

brede / the famynye that she was in constrainyd her to take and to eat it, for she had suche famynye that she coude bere it no lenger / then she made her prayers al wepyng to our lorde god, requyrynge hym to kepe and defende her virgynyte and to preserue her fro that false tyrant who had betrayed her / so fare wente the shyp that it enterid into the see / the wynde was great, and they had nother helme nor sayle to ayde them selues with all / then the wynde toke them and draue them to a lytell port vnder a hye rocke in a lytell Isle / then Brohart awoke and was glad when he saw they were aryued nere to the londe / for he knew ryght well the countre; then he sayde to the ladye / 'thou seest well thou haste no pusaunce to go agaynst my wyll / the whiche thou must nedes fulfyll / for thou canste not haue any socoure of any man or woman leuyng, nor al thy defence cannot auayle the, thou seest well we be in an Isle wheras the see goth rounde abought it / wherfore I haue great dought that we shall never depart hens: therefor dysmay you not, for as nowe I wyll do the no hurte.' This thefe, when he saw that he was in this Isle, he began to curse god and his mother, and the owre that euere he saw Claryet / for the false traytour saw well that he muste dye there for hunger and rage / for there was no shyp to enter into the see, therfore he had then no wyl to do any yll to the ladye / the which was by the grace of god, who wold not that the ladye shuld be dys- honored / when she sawe that they were so nere the londe, sore wepyng she issued out of the bote, and ran vp the rocke. Now god defende her, the same tyme there was on the mountayne vi. theues who laye to spye the marchauntes / and they had a lytell galey

1 forbeare. 2 Fol. cxxiv[1]. col. 2. 3 and. 4 that. 5 from. 6—6 omitted. 7—7 by famine. 8 for. 9 vpon.
lyynge in a lytell corner of the rocke nere to them, and had couered it with bounts and grene leues; when Brohart saw the damoysell ryne awaye he cryed as loude as he coude, and said, 'by god, dame,' your fleynge shall not awayle, for whether thou wylte or not this nyght I wyll haue my wyll of the' / the .vi. theues who were on the mountayne etynge of ther 8 mete, when they harde Broharte cryenge after the damoysell, they were sore abasshed, and were in great fere that they had bene spied. Then the damoysell, who ran vpon the mountayne, when she sawe them she 12 sayd, 'A, syrs, I pray you haue petye of me and ayde and socoure me agaynst this false traytoure, this nyght passyd he stole me awaye out of the cetye of Burdeaux, I am daughter to noble duke Huon' / when these 16 theues harde the damoysell they rose yp all and thought it had bene some feyned mater to haue begyled them, but when they saw Broharte folowe after the lady / then the mayster of the theuene stepte forth and said, 20 'how is it that thou arte so hardy to come vpon vs / thou arte come hether to spye vs, but we shall never be acused by y' / thou arte but yll come to this brydalle' / when the traytour broharte sawe the .vi. theuene he was 24 sore abasshed, and sawe well how he shulde beayne to defend hym selfe / then he drew out his sworde and strake the mayster thefe so on the hed that he clae hym to the tethe / when the other of the .v. theuene sawe 28 theyr maister slayne they were sorrowful, then they assembeled Brohart on all sydes / and he defended hymselfe so well that or he was stryken to the erthe he slewe .iii. of them, and in the meane tyme whyles 32 they fought / the lady Claryet came to the place

1 Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 1. 2 damoysell. 3 you. 4 pleasure. 5 vpon. 6 did steale. 7 and. 8 that. 9-9 such a blow vpon. 10 right. 11 and angerie. 12 assailed. 13 before.
Clarit finds
food and drink in
the thieves' place,
and eats and
drinks.

The thieves make
Brohart confess
his evil intentions.

Then they bind
his feet, and
hang him by
his feet to a tree;
under his head
they light a fire,
and thus he ends
his life.

The two thieves
who are left alive
learn from Clarit
all her story.

They give Clarit
rich apparel,
and admire her
beauty.

wheras the theues had bene, & there she founde mete
and drynke plente / 1 when she sawe the mete she was 2
ioyfull, and thankyd god therof, & dyd eate 3 and
drynke at her pleasure / and she saw how the theues 4
had cast Brohart to the erth, wherof she was ioyful,
howbeit she knewe not what company she was com 4 to
no[r] 5 in whose handes she was aryued in; when the
theues had cast Brohart to the erth / they made hym 8
to shew where he had taken ye 6 damoysell / and he
shewed them all the mater, and howe he had taken her
to the entente to haue dyshonored her & to haue had
her to his wyfe, and to haue carried her into some 12
strange place vnknownen / when ye theues hard what
Brohart had sayde / they sayde, 'O thou vntrewed and
false traytoure, there is no tourmente in the worlde so
crewel but that thou haste deserued a worse payne, and
therefore by vs thy deserte shalbe rewarded' / then they
toke and bounde fast his fete, and hanged hym vp by
the fete on 6 a tre / then they made a fyer, and vnder
his hede they made a great smoke, & so made hym to
dye in great doloure / 7 thus ended the traytoure
Broharte myserably his dayes / then the two theues
came to the place wheras Claryet was, and they de-
maunded of her estate / and she shewed them all the 24
maner, and how she was taken by ye 6 traytour Broharte,
and she shewed 8 them what she was / then the theues
casted her to put of her clothys that she was in, and
dyd 9 on her other ryche aparayle / 1 when they saw her
so aparayled they thoughte 10 no lady nor damoysell in
the worlde coude pas her in beaute, for she was come
agayne to her beaute, for 1 she thoughte herselue well
assured bycause she was deluynered fro 11 Brohart / 32
when one of these two theues sawe the great beaute

1 and. 2 right. 3 Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 2. 4 in.
5 not in text. 6 vppon. 7 and payne. 8 vnto.
9 to put. 10 that. 11 the false Traitour.
of this damoysele, he sayd to his felawe / this nyght I wyl haue my pleasure of her / the other sayd he wolde not suffer that / and sayd howe he was y e fyrste that ouerthrue Brohart who had stolen her awaye; then y e other drewe out his dager and strake his felawe into the body to the ha[r]te / & when he felte hymselfe streken to the dethe / he toke corage on hym and drew his sworde and stroke the other on the hed to the braynes, and so he fell downe dede / and the other that was wounded to the deth fel downe in lyke wyse by his felaw ded, and so therby the Claryet was there all alone / when she sawe herselfe so all alone in the Ikle wheras was non habytacyon / she began then petuously to complayne, sayeng, 'O very god, I pray the by thy grace to haue of me pety, and I requyre the humbely where so euere I go to saue and defende my vyrgynyte & ayde me to come to sauegard.' Nowe let vs leue spekyng of the fayre Claryet & retourne to speke of the kynges & prynces that were at blaye abydyng the comynge thether of the lady Claryet.

Of the great sorowe that was made at Blaye by the abbot of Cluny and by the prynces of the noble citye of Burdeaux for the fayre Claryet that was stolen away, & of the sorow that was made when they sawe Barnarde brought in dede by .vi. men. And of y e ponysshement that was done to y e lynage of Broharte. Ca. C.lx.
The abbot of Cluny and Clarét's royal suitors at Blaye resolve to send for her from Bordeaux.

The abbot admires the kings, and especially Florence.

The maids and knights whom Brohart had bidden follow Clarét to Blaye, arrive there.

The abbot thinks Clarét is with them;

but when he learns their story, how Brohart took Clarét from them, he swoons.

Hen these kynges and prynces were aryued at Blaye, & had spoken with the abbot of Cluny / they concluyed betwene them...that the lady should be sent for, & he that she wold frely chose shulde be her husband / for eche of them thought themselie moste fayre / & thought there coude not be founde...goodlyer yonge princes then they were / but specyally Florence, sone to the kyng of Aragon, was most fayrest. And y'same tyme that they were determynyd to sende to ye citye of Burdeaux for the lady Clarét, came thether the knyghtes, squyers / ladys and damoyselles apoynted oy Broharte, thynkynge to have found there y's fayre Clarét, and they brought her robes and iowelles to aparaile her withal, as Brohart had denysed / they cam and lyghted at the palays. the abbot of Cluny beynge at the gate, & seynge ladys and damoyselles comynge, thought it had bene his nece, the fayre Clarét; he wente incontynent to them / and demaunded where his nece Clarét was / 'syr,'quod the knyghtes / 'we thynke to fynd her here with you / for yesternyghte late the lady departed fro the citye of Burdeaux to come to you / and Brohart came for her, who with syr Barnarde wente with her, and they commaunded vs that we shulde not fayle to be here with you at this oure' / then they shewed all the maner how Brohart came and had sayde to them / and when the abbot of Cluny hard them / he fell sodaynely to the erth in a swoone, so that all that were there present thought he had bene dede / then at last he renyued and cast vp a great crye, and sayd, 'A, my ryght dere nese, I ought to be sorowful thus to lesy you in suche maner, that...
wold to our lorde that I were under the erth, for I wolde lyue no lenger in this world / a, thou false traytour Brohart, thy kyn dyd neuer good / 4 O Barnard, wher is becom your nobles, yet I can not bylue that ye be anything culpable / anon thes newes were knowen the town, so that all the kynges & princes were aduerteysed of the mater / they came 8 hastely to the paleys wheras they founde the abbot in sore wepynges, whome they had slayne & it had not bene for y° good renowne that they knewe to be in hym / therfore they forbare hym / then euery man 12 mounted on theyr horses & rode toward Burdeaux, wheras they founde the burgesses and the comon people in great cryes and wepynges, bewaylyng for duke Huon & the duches Esclaramonde, and Claryet 16 theyr daughter, who was lost and betrayed by Brohart / when the abbot of Cluny and all the other prynce were entered in to Burdeaux and sawe suche sorowe made there that they all fell to wepyng & as they 20 were in this sorow there came thether vi. men bryng- yng with them syr Barnard dede, whom they had found drownid in the ryuer of Geroune / if y° sorowe was great before, then it was renewed when they sawe 24 Barnard dede ; if I shulde reherse the sorow that was made that daye in the citye of Burdeaux as well of the prynces as of the abbot and comon people, it shuld be ouerlonge to reherse / then the kynges and prynces, 28 well aduerteysed of the lyngnage and parentes issued of y° blode of Brohart, and how always they haue bene full of treason, they were serchid out in euery place in the citye, as well men as women and chyldren there 32 were found out to the nombre of lxx. persons / they

The kings are wrathful with the abbot.

All ride to Burdeaux, where the people are weeping for the loss of Huon, Esclaramonde, and Clariet.

Barnard's dead body, found in the Garonne, is brought into the city.

Brohart's kindred had always been full of treason, and they are all sought out, men, women, and children, to the number of

1—1 god, 2 kindred, 3 iy in text.
4 Fol. cli. back, col. 1, 5 and, 6 if, 7 vpon.
8 the Citie, 9 the noble, 10 his wife, 11 for.
12 omitted, 13 too.
were all taken and caste in to the reuer of Geroune, to the entent that none shulde be lefte alyne of the kynrede, and neuer to be had in rememberaunce / after this done ye kynges and prynces departed out of the citye & rode in to theyr countrees ryght sorowfull and sore dyspleased for the lesynge of the lady Claryet; and the abbot abode styll at Burdeaux and buryed Barnarde, who was sore complayned of all the 8 people. Now let vs leue spekyng of them and retourne to ye lady Claryet who was all alone on the mountayne.

How the lady Claryet all alone cam to the see syde, wheras aryued the kyng of Granad in a ship, who toke awaye claryet / and of other maters.

Ow sheweth the story that after ye theues were slayne & Brohart dede, the lady Claricet abode alone vpon the mountayne with the dede men; she wept petyously, & sayd, 'O very god, in what owre was I borne in / alas what hap & desteny haue I / it had bene better for me neuer to haue bene borne, for I se wel here I must dye / alas, I wote not whether to go, for in this Isle is nether man nor woman to whome I niaye go for any refu.' thus sore complaynynge ye lady went downe the mountayne, and by that tyme the shyppe that she came in was floted awaye / and as she loked into the see she saw a great shyppe comynge towards that porte for fresshe water and for wode / when she sawe that she was joyful, & thanked our lorde Iesu chryst; she

---

1 that. 2 more. 3 was. 4 owne. 5 Fol. cli. back, col. 2. 6 were. 7 for. 8 omitted. 9 faire. 10 vpon. 11 Historie. 12-12 good Lord. 13 ill. 14 Fol. clii. col. 1. 15 the. 16 and.
thoughte they had bene chrysten men / but they were Sarasyns and paynymes / & with them was a kynge who was theyr lorde & souerayne, he was kynge of Granade, and was retournynge into his countre, but he had suche fortune on the see that he was constraynid to come thether; then they cast theyr ancre and toke lond, and the kynge, when he saw the damoysell on

8 y e see syde, he demaunded of her what she was and of what countre / 'syr,' quod she, 'syn ye wyll knowe of myne estate I shall shew you' / then y e yonge lady shewed before all them that were there present how she 12 was doughter to duke Huon of Burleaux, and shewed all the adventure that was fallen to her / when the kynge Sarasyn harde that he was joyfull, and sayd / 'fayre damoysell, it is happy for you that I haue 16 founde you, for I haue no wyfe, ye shall be my wyfe and lye withe me this nyghte / but fyreste ye muste renewe your law and bylue in y e lawe of Mahomet, on whome I do bylue / when the lady harde the 20 paynyme kynge she sayd, 'god forbede that I shuld leue the lawe of Iesu Chryste to bylue Mahomet, I had rather haue all my members drawen one pece fro another with wylye horses then to be wyfe to suche a 24 man as ye be' / when the kynge harde y e damoysel that she set so lytel pryce by hym he had great dyspleasure therat, & lyfte vp his hand and gane her on the cheek suche a blowe that y e blode ran out of her mouthe & nose, so that she fel to the erth, wherof he was sore blamed of his men / and he said to them, 'whye, syrs, hard you not how she dyspysed our lawe and set no more by me then yf I were a boy'; 32 then he commaunded that they shuld take & cast her

1 vpon. 2 Ladie. 3 omitted. 4 Huon, duke. 5 unto. 6 Sarazin kinge. 7 right. 8 deny. 9 faire. 10—10 in the law of. 11 Fol. clii. col. 2. 12—12 did you not hear. 13 had been but.
He bids his men cast her in the sea; but they carry her on board ship. When the ship sails away, the king sees her on board, and threatens to have his pleasure of her.

She kneels before him and begs for mercy. She prays to the Virgin, and a great storm rises to aid her.

into the sea / and he departed fro her in great displeasure that she answered hym so rudely / then the sarasyns came & toke the lady rudely and caried her into the shyp, and so saued her, that\(^1\) the kyng knew \(^4\) not therof / then when the kyng cam agayne to the shyp they hoysed\(^2\) in\(^3\) theyr aneres and made\(^4\) sayle, & had good wynd; then as the kyng walked vp & downe in the shyp he sawe the damoysell within the shyp, wherof he was\(^5\) abasshed, for he\(^6\) had\(^6\) thought that his men had drownid her / then he regarded\(^7\) her and thoughte that he neuer sawe so fayre a damoysell,\(^8\) & so he desired her with all his hart, and sayde to\(^9\) 12 her, 'fayre damoysell,\(^8\) now ye be here your denyall shall not auayle you, for this nyght ye shall lye with me\(^6\) al nakyd\(^16\) / when\(^10\) Claryet harde the paynymye kynge / deuoutly she called on\(^11\) our lorde\(^12\) Iesu chryst,\(^12\) 16 & humbely requyryng hym to preserve her virgyntyte & to brynge her out of the handes of ye\(^6\) sarasyns / 13 then she kneled downe before ye\(^6\) kyng, humbely desyryng hym to haue marcy\(^14\) of her, & said how she 20 was content to folowe his pleasure as sone as he came into his owne contre / 'wel,' quod the kyng, 'whether ye wyl or not ye must suffer my pleasure / for I wyl not depart fro ye tyl\(^15\) ye\(^16\) haue lyen with me\(^17\) one 24 nyght / and that I may holde you in myne armes' / 13 when she vnsterood hym she began sore to wepe, desyrynge\(^12\) the vyrgyn Mary\(^12\) to socoure and ayde\(^18\) her at that tyme / for otherwyse she saw\(^19\) well she was but 28 lost / therwith there\(^20\) rose vp\(^20\) so great a wynde and so horruble that the see that was calme and peasable began to ryse\(^6\) and swell\(^6\) so marauylously that the

\(^1\) but. \(^2\) drew. \(^3\) vp. \(^4\) hoysed vp. \(^5\) sore.

\(^6\)–\(^6\) omitted. \(^7\) looked vpon. \(^8\) Ladie. \(^9\) vnto.

\(^10\) the faire Ladie. \(^11\) vpon. \(^12\)–\(^12\) god. \(^13\) and.

\(^14\) pittie. \(^15\) vntill. \(^16\) I. \(^17\) you.

\(^13\) aide before succour. \(^19\) Fol. clii. back, col. 1.

\(^20\)–\(^20\) arose.
wawes were as hye as mountaynes, and the wynde\(^1\) so
great \textit{that} whether the sarayns wolde or not it behoned
them to abandon theyr shyp to ye wynde \(^2\) and
wether,\(^3\) wherof they were in suche fere that the
kyng and all other had great doute of the \(^4\) dethe;
theyr sayle was all to torne with ye wynd, \(\&\) nere
hande the shyp perysshed, they cryed\(^5\) vp on theyr god
8 Mahomet for socour and ayde; the kyng was in such
fere that he had\(^6\) no lyste to desyre the fayre\(^7\) Clar yet
of her loue, who was sore afraide \& pale for fere / this
tourmente and tempeste endured all the nyghte / \&
12 they were dreyen the same nyght be yonde valence ye
great / and in the mornyng they sawe ye twone of
Tours, to the whiche porte the wynde draue them /
when the paynyms saw \textit{that} they were aryued there
16 they were\(^9\) sorowfull, for they knew well\(^10\) the twone
was christened / they saw no maner how to eschew it,
but they had rather to be as sclaues all theyr lyues
then to be drownyd in the see / the same tyme ther was
aryued at the same porte a noble knyght namyd syr
Peter of Aragon; \(^8\) when he saw the other shyp
comyng to the porte by constrainyte of the wynde, and
sawe well without it were socoured the shyp shuld be
24 perysshed agaynst the rocke, wherby they within and
all the ryches shulde be perysshed and drowned \(\text{then}
he cryed to the Galeyes that laye in the porte to
go and socoure the straung shyp / \(^8\) then the maryners
28 wente to the see and came to the shyppe.
\(^{11}\) if when the Sarayns sawe that they were in fere
to be slayne, then there came two paynyms to the
damoysell to haue taken her and to haue cast her into
32 the see. Then she toke the mast of the shyppe in her
armes and helde it so faste that they coude not drawe

\(^1\) was. \(^2\) omitted. \(^3\) their. \(^4\) for.
\(^5\) and called. \(^6\) now. \(^7\) Ladie. \(^8\) and. \(^9\) right.
\(^10\) that. \(^{11}\) Fol. clii. back, col. 2,
The Arragonese enter the ship and see her struggling with the men.

Peter asks the Saracens how she came there.

In anger at their cruelty, he and his sailors slay all the Saracens except the king.

The king tells Peter how he found Clarit.

Peter replies that he must accept Christ or die.

The king refuses to abandon Mahomet.

her fro it / then the Aragonyse began to aproche to the shyppe, and cast their hokes to ioyne to gether. The lady in the shyppe had great fere / the whiche was no maruayle / howbeit she was ioyfull when she knew they that came were chrystened / then the Aragonoyes by the cordes and ropes enterid into the shyppe / 2when Peter of Aragon & his company were entered into the shyp he sawe the damoysel3 sore wepynge / 8 then he demaunded of the Sarasyns where they had get4 that prynces / 'ryghte nowe5 I sawe howe ye wold haue taken & cast her into the see and6 I had not come hastely' / then one of them sayd / 'syr, we be of 12 Granade, and fortune of ye see hath dreuyn vs hether, we be redy to be your sclaues or els to pay raunsome at your pleasure.' 'Payynms,' quod peter, 'all the golde in ye worlde shall not save your lyues / none of 16 you shal scape' / then he commaunded that they shulde all be slayne, and that none shulde7 scape alyue, the which was done incontynente / all were slayne excepte the kyng, of whom Peter of Aragone de- 20 maunded whyle he wolde haue drowned that noble damoysell, and where they8 founde her / 'syr,' quod ye kyng, 'we knowe her not / nor what she is, for we founde her all alone vpon a rocke in an Isle within the 24 see. And when I sawe the great beaute and bountye that was in her I couetyd her, and caused her to be put into my shyppe, thynkyng to ha[ue] hadde my pleasure of her, but she wolde9 in no wyse suffer me / wherfore 28 I was displeasyd withe her' / 'well,' quod Peter, 'ye shall be slayne and go after your men with out ye wyl byleue in Iesu chryst and renounce the lawe of Mahomet' / 'syr,' quod the payynyme, 'I had rather10 be 32 slayne all quycke then to leue my holy law and to take

1 that. 2 and. 3 Ladie. 4 gotten
5 (quoth hee). 6 if. 7 shall. 8 had.
9 Fol. cliii. col. 1. 10 to.
that byleue that ye ar of' / when Peter hard hym saye so he gane hym with his sworde suche a stroke on\(^1\) the hede that he claue it to the tethe, and the kyngge

\(^4\) fel downe dede, wherof ye\(^e\) lady Claryet was\(^2\) iojful. Then Peter came to\(^3\) her and demande unde what she was and where the paynyms\(^4\) founde her / 'syr,' quod the damoysell,\(^5\) 'I was borne in a parte of fraunce in a towne named Nauntes, in bretayne.\(^6\) My father was of Lisbon, and he had great desire to se his frendes, so he entered into a shyp and two of my bretherne and my selfe & dyuers other marchauntes together, & when we

\(^12\) had thought to haue entered into ye\(^e\) hauen at Lysbone, a great horrably wynde toke vs so that we wereayne to abandon our shyp and to let it go by the grace of god and at the wyl of the wynde and wether / then

\(^16\) we passed the straytes of Marocke, and then our shyppe ran agaynste a rocke & brast\(^7\) all to peces, so that my father and all that were in the shyppe were drowned / and by the grace of god I sate on\(^8\) a sacke of wolle and

\(^20\) helde me faste, & then the waues brought me to the lond syde, wherof I thanke god / and within an owre after this heten kyngge aryued there with his company by fortune of the se, and so they toke me into theyr

\(^24\) shyppe / and the kyngge sore\(^9\) enforced hymselfe to haue had his pleasure of me / and then by fortune of another tempest we aryued here, wheras ye haue slayne hym and all his.\(^10\) \(^11\) fayre damoysell,' quod

\(^28\) Peter of Aragon, 'ye maye thanke god that ye be come into myne handes' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I knowe well\(^12\) ye ye had not bene I had bene loste for euer / & therfore, syr, as longe as god\(^13\) hath genen\(^13\) me lyfe I wyll be

\(^32\) gladde to serve you as the moste lowest chauniberer\(^11\) in

\(^1\) vpon. \(^2\) right. \(^3\) vnto. \(^4\) had. \(^5\) Ladie. \\
\(^6\) and. \(^7\) burst. \(^8\) vponon. \(^9\) omitted. \(^10\) men. \\
\(^11\) Fol. cliii. col. 2. \(^12\) that. \(^13\) shall giue. \\
\(^14\) Chamberlaine.

**CHARL. ROM. IX.**

---

\(^1\) She offers to serve Peter, who has saved her, as a maid of his household.
your house, and put my body and honeste into goddes handes and youers’ / ‘fayre damoysell,’ quod Peter, 
‘as long as I lene. ye shall not lacke / for by the grace 
of god your body and youre honourle shall be well 
saued / and peraduenture maye haue such a husband 
that ye shall thynke your selfe happy / our lorde 
dyd you a great grace when ye fell into my handes.’ 
Then Peter of Aragon toke the damoysell by the 
hande and commaundyd to hoyse vp the sayles, and to 
returne to Taragon, a citye betwene Barselone and 
Valence the great / whereas then was the kyng of 
Aragon / so longe they sayled nyghte and daye that at 
the laste they sawe the towers of Taragone, wherof 
they thanked god / and as they aproched the 
the kyng of Aragon was in his palais lokynge out at a 
wyndowe / then he sawe comynge in the see. vi. galeys 
and a great shyppe, wherof he was abasshed, and 
marrayed what it myght be / for he knewe them not 
bycause of the great shyppe / then they that knew 
them came to the kyng and sayde how it was his 
cosyn, Peter of Aragon, the which is comen home in 
saetye, thanked be god. Then the kyng and his 
lordes with hym wente downe and wente to the see 
syde, where as they founde the noble man, Peter of 
Aragon his cosyn, and all his companye with hym. 
Then the kyng embraced hym and sayd, ‘cosyn, ye are 
ryght hartely welcom, I am joyfull of your good 
aduenture. I pray you, cosynne, shewe me where 
haue ye get this great shyppe that semeth to be so 
ryche’ / then peter shewed hym all the adventure, 
and how he rescued the damoysel out of the handes of 
the Sarasyns / and he shewed her to the kyng, and 
sayde / ‘syr, I byleue in this world there is not a

1-1 you shall. 2 right. 3 god. 4 vnto.
5 and. 6-6 neere to. 7-7 who.
8 Fol. cliii. back, col. 1.
fayrer, swetter, nor more gracious,\(^1\) nor none that
semeth more to be extrane of a hyc lynage' / the
kyng behelde the damoysell, and she kneled downe
4 before hym / 'fayre damoysell,' quod the kyng, 'I
praye you shewe me what ye be and of what lynage /
and fro whence ye come? / the damoysell,\(^2\) who was in
great fere to name herselfe trewly / for fere lest she
8 shulde be in yll handes / \(^3\)then she\(^3\) caste downe her
hede\(^4\) and began to wepe so that the teres fell fro her
eyen, and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you desyre no suche
thynge of me at this tyme, for I know not who is my
12 parente nor of what lynage I am of' / when the kyng
vnderstode the damoysel and sawe how she wepte
he had great petye of her, and comforted her as moch
as he myght\(^5\) / then Peter shewed\(^6\) the kyng al that
16 the damoysell had shewed hym / before, a[n]\(^7\)dowe\(^8\)
'she was founde by the sarasyns,\(^8\) whome I hane slayne,
she was happy that she fell in\(^9\) my handes / for by the
grace of god I shall se her well maryed and set forthe' /
20 then the kyng and Peter wente fro the shyppes into y\(^e\)
towne, & causid the damoysell to be brought after
them with two Ientylmen in to Peters logynge, and as
she passed thurgh the towne she was regarded with
24 ladyes and damoyselles, and they ai prayed her
beautye, sayeng one to another that there was neuer a
fayrer\(^2\) borne / nor more lykely to become of a noble
blode. \(^10\)Great feast\(^11\) was made in the citye for y\(^e\)
and there is great feasting made.
28 comyng home of Peter of Aragon, and of the damoy-
sell that he had brought with hym; the same tyme
Florence y\(^e\) / kynges sone had bene on\(^12\) hontyng, &
cam home, and when he was in the towne and saw
32 the stretes hanged and the ladyes & damoysels & other
makyng so great ioye and feast\(^11\) / he was abasshed,

\(^1\) creature.  \(^2\) Ladie.  \(^3\)\(^3\) omitted.  \(^4\) presently.
\(^5\) could.  \(^6\) vnto.  \(^7\) ayd in text.  \(^8\) (quoth he).
\(^9\) to.   \(^10\) Fol. cliii. back, col. 2.  \(^11\) feasting.  \(^12\) a.
and demanded of a burges yf there were any newe weddynge / and what they were that the people made so great ioye and feast / 'syr,' quod the burges, 'the feast that is made nowe and the ioye is for the comyng home of Peter of Aragon, who hathe bene so longe out, for that god hath sent hym good adventure, for he hath wonne and conquered the great shyppe of Malyke, wherein was y e kynge of Granade, great ryches he hath wonne, and he hath slayne all the sarasyns that were in the shyppe.' Then Florence restid not tyl he came to his cosyn, Peter of Aragons logynge, & made hym good chere, and said, 'cosyn, ye are welcome home, and I am ryght ioyous of youre good adventure' / 'syr,' quod Peter, 'I thanke god I haue had good hap / & syr, I shall shewe you one thynge that I haue wonne wherof I am moste ioyfull.' then he shewed hym the damoysell who was sober and sad, and shewed hym how he wonne her / when Florence sawe the damoysell his harte sprange for ioye / and y e more he beheld her the more fayrer she semyd. And the damoysell behelde hym ryght humbely / & she thoughte she neuer saw so fayer a yonge man before, nor better made nor formed of all his membres. Florence that behelde the damoysel, by reason wherof the darte of loue strake hym to the harte / wherof the wounde coude not lyghtely be helyd / I maye well saye that in all the worlde in that tyme coude not be founde agayne such two parsones, for the great beaute wherwith they were garnysshed coude not be dyscryued / for god & nature had no thynge for goten in fourmynge of them / swetely they regarded ech other / at that tyme yf Florence had knowen that she had bene the fayre Clariet of Burdeaux he wolde haue maryed her

1-1 wherefore it was. 2 Maliga. 3 ioyfull. 4 fortune. 5 that. 6-6 a fayrer. 7 so. 8 Fol. cliii, col. 1. 9 such. 10 nothing after forgotten.
Ca. clxi.] OF THE MEETING OF CLARIET AND FLORENCE.

incontynent; she was greatly taken in the loue of Florence, and so was he with her, then he desyred with all his harte to knowe what she was / for his hart gaue hym that she shulde be come of some noble blode, and sayd to hymselfe that he desyred moche to know it, and that in all the world ther was no thynge he loued so well, & thought that without her loue he coude not longe endure / thynkyng to desyre her to take hym for her louer, and that ye if she refuse hym that shorte shulde be his lyfe / but he thought to be so bold as to speke to her. Thus Florence, taken with ye fyre of loue, toke the fayre damoysell by the lylly whyght hande & caused her to sit downe by hym / then he drewe her a lytel aparte to the entent that none shulde here hym / then he sayd, 'fayre damoy-

shewe me what ye be, and of what lyngnage' / 'syr,' quod the damoysell, 'lytell shal you wynne when ye know the sartayne what I am / but synne it pleaseth you to knowe it I shall shewe you / syr, know for trouthe I am daughter to a pouer honest man of the countre, and in dayes passed was one of the chaumberers with the duches Esclaramond of Burdeaux; And, syr, by great treason I was stolen awaye / wherby syn I haue suffered moche pouertye, so that ye fayre god & this noble man, Peter of Aragon, had not rescued me I haue bene loste for euer / & therfore, syr, synne I am pouer and desolate / I requyre you in the honour of our lorde that ye wyll not requyre me of any velany of my body and honeste nother in dede nor worde / and, syr, I byleue suerly no more ye thynke to do / for I had rather be hewen al to peces then any creature shulde haue pleasure of my body without I were maryed' / 'fayre damoysell,' quod he, 'I swere by god that me

1 vnto. 2 omitted. 3 and. 4 to. 5 Fol. cliii. col. 2. 6 god.
Florence promises to protect her from all dishonour.

If his father were dead he would marry her.

Clarét begs him to dismiss such a thought.

She secretly regrets that Florence does not know her true rank.

Florence begs her to take him for her servant, and confesses his love.

created that of me nor of any other leuyng man ye shal not be desyred agaynstr your honoure / for I knowe no man leuynge that wolde requyre you of any dyshonour or saye any thynge that shulde not be agreable to you, 4 but I shall make hym to dye of an yll dethe / and I wyll that ye know1 fro hensforth I wyll be your trew louer / and none shall make departure of vs two / and yf it were so that my father were dede I wold neuer haue other wyfe but you / 'syr,' quod the damoysell,2 'I pray you forbere spekynge of any such wordes / for it were not mete for the sone of a Kyng so to lowe3 hymselfe as to set his loue vpon so pouer a mayd 12 as I am / ye set your harte in to lowe a place5 / for yf ye kyng your father(parseyue any thinge that ye shuld set your loue on6 me, he wolde sone put me to dethe/ therwith she caste downe her hede and sayd to her selfe/ 16 'O very God,'7 yf this yong prynce knew suerly what I were, yt myght well be that he wolde haue me in maryage / as yet in all my lyfe I neuer set my loue vpon any parson but this yonge man whome I neuer 20 saw before,8 maketh me to thynke that9 I neuer thought before / so10 that it maketh my blode and all my membres to tramble / I am in worse case for his 11loue then he is for me' / therwith she began sore to 24 wepe / when Florence sawe her he was ryght sorowfull, & sayd, 'fayre damoysell, I requyre you to take me for your trewe and faythfull seruaunte / otherwyse I can not se how I shulde leue longe' / 'syr,' quod 28 she, 'I am wel content to graunt you my loue / for13 that your dede and thought be vpon goodnes and honour / for yf I may parseyue in any maner that your thoughte be otherwyse ye haue loste my loue for euer.' 32

1 that. 2 Ladie. 3 debase. 4 beware how. 5 to loue. 6 vpon. 7-7 good Lord. 8 it. 9 which. 10 omitted. 11 Fol. cliii. back, col. 1 12 shall. 13 so.
Howe the kynge defended\(^1\) his sone Floren-
ence that he shuld not be so hardy\(^2\) to fal aqauynted withe the fayre damoysel\(^3\) Claryet / and how Florence promysed the kynge, his father, to delyuer into his handes the kynge of Nauerne\(^4\) presoner, in case\(^5\) he wyl\(^6\) be content at his retourne that he may\(^7\) haue the new found damoysel / the which thing the kynge promysed / but he dyd it not, for he made the damoysel to be taken, and had drowned her if Peter of Aragon had not bene, who rescued\(^8\) her.\(^9\)

Hen Florence had long deuyed with the damoysell / he toke\(^11\) lene of her and of Peter of Aragon his cosyn, and then he retourned to the kynge his father, and the nexte day he wente agayne to the damoyselles lodgynge / so ofte he resorted thether that\(^12\) brute ran in the palays and also in \(^{12}\) towne how that Florence was amorous of the damoysell that Peter of Aragon had brought thether / \(^{13}\) mater at the last was shewed to kyng Garyn his father / wherwith he was so sorrowfull that he was all

---

\(^1\) forbad. \(^2\) as. \(^3\) Ladie. \(^4\) Nauarre. \(^5\) that. \(^6\) would. \(^7\) might. \(^8\) and saued. \(^9\) from the death. \(^10\) Fol. cliii. back, col. 2. \(^11\) his. \(^12\) great. \(^13\) and.
The king, his father, learns the rumour, and angrily swears to slay Clariet if it be true.

Florence confesses his visits to Clariet to the king.

The king warns the young man to avoid her.

Florence pleads that it is the part of youth to love.

in a rage, and sayde to\(^1\) hymselfe / 'a, good lord, this new founde damoysell shall\(^2\) wynne my sone yf she can and get hym fro me; I knowe well by reason of the great beautye that is in her my sone shall\(^2\) be enamoryd of her, but by the lorde\(^3\) I beleue on\(^4\) yf I se that my son other go or come to\(^5\) her, as it is sayd he dothe, that aquayntauns shall be derely solde\(^6\) / for with myne owne handes I shall sle her' / ryght sory \(^8\) & angryy was kynge Guaryn with his son Florence and with the damoysell / \(^8\)she sente for his sone / & when he was before hym, the kynge demaundd hym fersly for whense he came / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I haue bene a sportynge in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons house / and haue passed the tyme there with the newe come damoysel / the moste fayresthe that enuer was borne, and\(^9\) the moste ientylest and best taught, ryghte fayre \(^10\) and swete ar her deuyses.' 'Florence,' quod the kynge, 'I charge the in as moche as thou fereste my dys-pleasure, that thou come no more at her, beware that thou fallest not\(^10\) in amours with\(^10\) her / yf thou do thou werte neuer so yll aquainted with any loue, nor there neuer came so yll adventure to the damoysell yf she draw the to loue her / for yf I may knowe that thou goest thether any more I shall set her in suche \(^16\) a pryson wheras I shall cause her to ende her dayes myserably' / 'father,' quod Florence, 'me thynke ye do great wronge to let\(^11\) vs to playe &\(^12\) to deuyse\(^12\) together in all goodnes & honour, god forbede\(^13\) that I shuld\(^28\) entende any wayes to\(^14\) haue her and\(^11\) discyue her; dere father, remember\(^15\) ye haue bene yong, therfore suffer that youthe may pas the\(^16\) tyme in goodnes and honoure with vs as it hathe done with you / now ye \(^32\)

\(1\) within. \(2\) wyll. \(3\) god that. \(4\) vpon. \\
\(5\) vnto. \(6\) bought. \(7\) Fol. clv. col. 1. \(8\) then. \\
\(9\) and and \textit{in} text. \(10-10\) enamoured of. \(11\) forbid. \\
\(12-12\) sport. \(13\) defend. \(14-14\) omitted. \(15\) that. \\
\(16\) their.
are a¹ .iii. score yere or more ye ought to thinke of no thynge but to serue god, and eat, & drinke, and slepe; it ought not to trouble you thoughg our youthe pas the tyme in good warke / ye ought to be content that we loue by amours as ye haue done or² this / for to the damoysell I bere all honoure, ³I wyll loue her how so euer yt be taken fayre or fowle / ther is no man leuynge shall let me as longe as lyf is ⁴in my body / she is fayre and ientyll / and it is sayd how⁵ I am fayre, and ⁶how⁷ that it were a mete copyll of⁸ vs twayne⁹ to be ioyned together in maryage, ³therfore, father, I praye you blame no more me nor the damoysel, for in all that I can⁹ I am ¹⁰hers¹⁰ and she is myne.'

⁹ when the kyng¹¹ understode his sone, in great yre and displeasure he sayd, 'O thou ungarcious lad,¹² lytell thou praysest or honourest me in that thou wylte do thus agaynst my wylle; knowe for sartayne yt I may lyue¹³ tyll tomorowe in y¹⁴ mornynge I shall make a departure of your two loues' / when Florence hard his father, he sayde / 'my dere lord and father, and¹⁴ god wyll ye shall not do as ye haue sayd / for yt ye do with myne owne handes I shall sse my selfe, for I wyll not lyue one day after' / when the kyng hard that he was¹⁵ sorowfull for fere of lesyng of his sone / & studied in¹⁶ hymselfe what to do / then he sayde, 'fayre sone, take thyne armure and go and seke adventures as I haue done in my tyme, then I shall mary the to some wyfe, suche one as thou canste finde in any countre, thoughg she be neuer so great or noble I shall cause the to haue her / yt thou wylte leue¹⁷ & forsake this newe founde damoysel / for by her no welthe nor honoure can come to¹⁸ the / it shulde be a as all old men have done when young.

He loves Clariet honourably, and begs his father to favour their union.

The king is very angry at his words.

If aught happen to Clariet, Florence will slay himself.

The king loves him too well to put his life in peril, and bids him go abroad and seek adventures.

¹ about. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. clv. col. 2. ⁵ that. ⁶—⁶ omitted. ⁷ for. ⁸ two. ⁹ doe. ¹⁰—¹⁰ her Louer. ¹¹ had well. ¹² Son. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ if. ¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ within. ¹⁷ leue after forsake. ¹⁸ vnto.
great yl\(^1\) to\(^2\) me\(^3\) that after my dayes it shuld be said that a new found damoyssell shuld be lady & quene of my realme / thou knoweste well howe thyne vncl, the kynge of Nauerne,\(^4\) maketh me great warre / for a debate that is lately fallen betwene hym and me / I know wel now at this moneth of Apryl he wyll come & inuade my realme / therfore, fayre\(^7\) sone, seke for some other wyfe and let thys foley pas; then I shall make thee a knyght, and then helpe to ayde & defend my realme agaynst the kynge of Nauerne\(^4\) thyne vncl / thou arte byg and stronge ynough to defend my loude.' 7 'Father,' quod Florence, 'speke no more to\(^2\) me, for I wyl neuer haue\(^8\) other wyfe but this fayre damoyssell, whome I loue enterely.' / 'sone,' quod the kynge / 'thou abaseste thy selfe ouer lowe, nor there is no frende nor kynne\(^9\) that thou haste that wyll kepe any company with thee, but they wyll clene fle fro the; therfore, fayre\(^7\) sone, put away fro the this foly / beware in as moche as thou thynkest to haue my realme after my diseas, and on\(^10\) theayne to be banysshed\(^11\) take not her agaynst my wyll.'

Then the kynge called to\(^2\) hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, and charged hym that yf Florence his sone came any more to his logynghe that he shulde incontynent\(^12\) shewe it hym\(^12\) / for I promyse\(^13\) by the faythe that I owe to\(^2\) our lorde\(^14\) Iesu chryst,\(^14\) yf he come thereth any more I shal cause the damoyssell that is in your howse to be slayne.' Florence was ryght\(^28\) sorowfull when he hard the pleasere of the kynge his father; thus as the kynge rebuked his sone there came in a knyght and kneled downe and sayd: 'syr, I haue brought you yl tydinges, for the kynge of Nauerne\(^4\) 32

---

1 euill. 2 vnto. 3 thee. 4 Nauerre. 5 and. 6 Fol. clv. back. col. 1. 7 good. 8 no. 9 kindred. 10 vpon. 11 out of my Countrey. 12-12 tell him of it. 13 (quoth hee). 14-14 god.
is entered into your realme, and settesthe all your countre in flambo and fyre, and nere to your citye they be to the nombre mo then .xxx.M. men, besythe the great
4 batayle that cometh after, wherin ther is a\textsuperscript{1} .ix.M.
men / they exyle your countre, 2 they sle men, women
and chyldren; they spare nother yonge 3 nor olde, it is
4 nede that ye make haste & to brynge your men
8 together to resyste your enemie\textquotesingle s / when kyng Gauryn
hard the messanger he was 5 sorowful; then he called
to 6 hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, who was his chefe
constable, and sayde, \textquotesingle syrs, make redy our men to
12 resyste our enemie\textquotesingle s / then he called to 6 hym Florence
his sone, & sayd / \textquotesingle fayre sone, take thyne harnays 7 and
shewe thy vertue agaynst thyne enemie\textquotesingle s who wasteth
my realme. 2 Take on 8 the chefe charg and lede myne
16 host / for I haue no pusaunce nor streth to do it, for 9
the great age that I am of; I haue leued so longe that
I can no more ryde / therfore defende thou the londe
that thou shalte holde after me, and then doest thou
20 10 wysely 10 / \textquotesingle father,\' quod Florence, 11 \textquotesingle not and god
wyll I shall put my harnayes 11 on my backe to defende
your lond without 12 ye wyll geue me in maryage
ye fayre damoysel 13 in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons
24 house / ye wyll do me that courtoysye and promyse
me to do it / I shall deluyuer into your handes your
enemie as presoner to do with hym your pleasure,
otherwyse loke not that I shall do anythyng. 1 \textquotesingle when
28 the kynge saw that his sone wold none otherwyse do 14 /
then he commaunded all his other men, evry man, to
arme him 15 & go and resyste his enemie\textquotesingle s / the which
they dyd incontynent; 2 they issued out into the fieldes
32 mo then .x.M. men, & 16 Peter of Aragon had the ledyngo

\textsuperscript{1} about. 2 and. 3 Fol. clv. back, col. 2. 4 great.
5 right. 6 vnto. 7 armour. 8 vpon. 9 because of.
10\textsuperscript{10} as a wise man should doe.
11\textsuperscript{11} by the grace of god I will put no armour. 12 except.
13 that is. 14 do after wold. 15 self. 16 Sir.
They meet the army of Navarre, and although they fight bravely are forced to retire.

The men of Navarre pitch their tents outside Tarragona.

Florence is advised again to lead the army; and on his refusing, unless his request be granted, the king falsely yields to him.

The king intends to drown Clarlet while Florence is fighting.

of them, and they were not out of the towne two leges but they encountered their enemyes / there were many spere broken and many a kyght beten to the erth & slayne, ¹theyr bodyes lyenge without sowles amonge ⁴the horse fete / ryght valyauntly ²barye hymselfe that day² Peter of Aragon.³ But he [h]ad⁴ not strenthe⁵ suffycyent, but⁶ this enemyes encreasid, wherfore he was constrayned to recule⁸ backe towards yᵉ city / ⁸howbeit or⁹ he entered he dyd great¹⁰ domage to¹¹ his enemyes / when the Nauernoys saw the Aragonoys reculed⁸ into the citye, then they pyght vp theyr tentes and panylyons aboute the towne / ¹when kyng Gauryn ¹²sawe his men retournyd, then he called his sone Florence and sayde / ‘sone, take thyne harnays¹² & go ayde and¹³ defend the londe, the which partayneth to the after my dysses¹ / ‘syr,’ quod Florence, ‘that shall¹⁴ I neuer ¹⁶do without fyrst ye promyse me to gene me the fayre damoysel in maryage, by that covenant that I shall delyuer into youre handes as presoner myne vncl the kyng of Nauerne’ / when the kyng²⁰hard hym he ¹⁷mused a lytell, and sayd /¹⁶’sone, I graunte the thyne desyre so that thou wylte delyuer me thyne vncl the kyng of Nauerne to do with hym at my pleasure / therofter take thyne armure & make the redy, thyne ²⁴armure is good and thy sworde is with the best, and yf thou canst do as thou sayste thou shalt haue yᵉ fayre damoysell’ / howbeit he sayd to hymselfe preuely that he had rather¹³ lese one of his handes / then a straunger ⁲⁸shuld be quene after hym, for as sone as my son¹⁷ shall be issued out of the citye I shall cause the damoysell to be drowned in the see / for I wyll not suffer her to lyue though I shuld be disherited for it. Then Flor-

¹ and. ²–² did Sir. ³ behaue himselfe that day. ⁴ gad in text. ⁵ ynoough. ⁶ for. ⁷ Fol. cli.[lvi.] col. 1. ⁸ retire. ⁹ before. ¹⁰ losse and. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² Armour. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ will. ¹⁵ his father. ¹⁶ My. ¹⁷ (quoth hee).
ence, herynge his father promysynge hym to haue the damoysell, he was ryght ioyfull. But he knew not the
inward yll wyll of his father, then he sayd / 'syr, then
4 I reuoyre you¹ sende for my louer hether / to the
entent that she may gynde about me² my sworde, 
wherby I shall be the more bold & hardly when I
come into the batayle / ye kyng ³ dyd as his sone
8 reuoyred, but the sone knewe not the fathers thought;
ye kyng sente two knyghtes for the damoysell /
when she came there she was greatly regarded of all
them that were there / for they had neuer sene a fayrer,
12 nor one that semed to be extrauate of a lyge generacyon/
when Florence saw her in the palays his harte rose vp,
and ⁵ ran ⁶ and clippd ⁷ and kyssed her, and the
damoysell ⁸ suffered hym with ⁹ good wyll / wherwith
16 the kyng had at his hart suche sorow that he had
ner ¹⁰ ronne vpoun them, but he forbare it bycause
he sawe his sone redy to go agaynst his enmyes /
¹¹ he then ayded ¹² to arme his sone rychely, and in
20 lykewise so dyd the ¹² damoysel / when kyng gauryn
had made his sone redy the damoysell ¹³ gyrt ¹⁴ aboute
hym ¹⁴ his sworde / then the kyng drewe it out of the
shethe and therwith made hym knyght / ⁴ then his hors
24 was brought to ¹⁵ hym / and he lepte lightly vpoun hym /
¹⁶ his spere in his hand and helme on ¹⁷ his hede, and
shyld aboute his necke. Then Florence sayd to ¹⁹ the
kyng his father / 'syr, I leue with you my louer ¹⁸
28 whome I loue best in all this worlde. I leue her
in your kepyng, for if our lord god gene me that ¹⁹
grace that I maye retourne, I shal brynge to ¹⁵ you myne
vnele, the kyng of Nauerne, as a presoner.' The
32 kyng graunted to ¹⁵ his sone all that he wolde desyre /

¹ to. ² about me after sword. ³ Fol. cli.[lvi.] col. 2.
4 and. ⁶ he. ⁹ vnto her. ⁷ embraced. ⁸ Ladi
⁹ a. ¹⁰ hand. ¹¹—¹¹ then he helped. ¹² faire.
¹³ did. ¹⁴—¹⁴ after sworde. ¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ with.
¹⁷ vpon. ¹⁸ Loue. ¹⁹ the.
but he shewed not the inwarde intencyon that he was
purposed to do. Then the kyng commaunded .x. of
his knyghtes to se the gydynge of the damoysell and
to honoure her as moche as they myghte / tyll his sone
were out of the cetye / and then to drowne her in the
see, to the entente that neuermore tydynges shulde be
harde of her.

How florence wente to fyghte with his 8
enemies / and howe Peter of Aragon retournd
towards the towne to brynge thether presoners, and how he rescued the
damoysell Claryet fro drownyng, and how a
defter kyng gauryn made the damoysell
to be closed up in prison. Ca. C.lxiii.

Hen Florence was armed and mounted
he toke vp his horse fresly before ye 16
damoysell and blessed hym and toke leue of the kyng and of his louer /
and so departed and rode to the gate,
and all that euer saw hym sayd how they neuer sawe
so goodly a knyghte, nor more semynge to be fered /
then he issued out of the gate and yode towards the
tentes of his enemies with .x.M. good knyghtes and
hardy: the ladyes and damoyselles went to the walles
of the cittye to beholde the newe knyghte / when the
Nauernoys sawe hym comynge / ther cam agaynst hym
mo then .xv. M. men: & they came downe in a valey
by couerte: to haue cut hym the waye betwene the 28
hoste and the towne / but the valyaunt knyght, Peter
of Aragon, who was with Florence / spyled them / and
so made haste to be afore them: and when he sawe

1 knewe. 2 vntill. 3 Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 1.
4 Sir. 5 faire. 6 afterward. 7 caused. 8 a.
9 his. 10 Loue. 11 omitted. 12 roade. 13 young.
tyme to set on his enemies. Florence, who was sore desyrons to fulfyll his promyse to the kyng his father, toke his sperre and incounteryd with a knyght with suche vertue that he ran hym clene thrugh, and 4 with drawyngge out of his sperre the Nauernous fell downe dede / then Florence sayd / 'god hath geuen me a good begynnynge' / then he drewe 3 his sworde and 8 strake another on y e helme that he claue his hede to the tethe / and the thyrd & fourth he made doulourously to dye, 4 he neuer sessed tyll 5 he had slayne x. of his enemies / thus under y e medowes of Courtoys 12 was on 6 horyble batayle betwene y e Nauernois & Aragonys / where there was on 1 both partyes suche slaughter that it was 7 marueyle to behold it / anone Florence sworde was well knowen, for by the forse of his armes 16 he brake the great presses, for on wymo so ewer his stroke light he was other slayne or cast to the erth, every man fered hym so 8 that none dyrst abyde nor aproche 9 to 10 hym / the same tyme that Florence was 20 in the batayle doyng of marueylous the fayre damoysell Claryet was on 1 the walles of the citye with other ladies and damoyselles / regardynge the hye prowes that Florence dyd in the felde, & the ioye that she 24 had therof was sone retouren11 vnto sorowe a[n] 12 wepynges / for kyng Gauryne who coude not for gette the mortall hate that he had to the damoysell. 13 he 13 called to 10 hym x. knyghtes of them that were secrete 28 with hym, and sayd, 'syrs, this new founde damoysell withe whome my sone Florence is in hote amours / she dyspleasethe me so moche that I can not fynde in my harte to loke on her. My sone thynketh to haue 32 her in maryage at his retourne / but as long as he leueth he shall neuer se her more what soever fal

Florence fights valiantly.

He kills ten of the enemy.

None whom he meets escapes his sword.

Clarlet watches him from the walls of the city.

The king of Arragon calls ten knights to him,
and bids them cast her in the sea.

The knights, with heavy heart, visit Claret.

She demands their will.

They tell her she must die, and bind her hands.

She begs them to have mercy on her, but they are deaf to her entreaty.

She is taken to the seaside by four men.

In the see amonge the greatest wawes that ye can fynde / when these knyghtes understode the kyng, who commaunded them to do this murder, they were ryght sorowfull at theyr hertes / but they durste not saye naye, nor do agaynst his wyl, for yf they had they knew well they shulde dye, for they knewe well there was nother marcy nor pytye in hym / therfore they durste make no semblant to the contrary / they fered so sore to dysplese hym / then they wente and toke the damoysell wheras she was / 'syrs,' quod she, 'what wyll ye with me, wherfore take ye me, let me go; yf ye wyll' any thynge with me, shew me / they sayd, 'damoysell, speke no more / for your ende is come, ye shall neuer se fayre day more:' when she saw that she was so taken with x. men, who went thretenynge to sle her, she then cast out a great crye, & desired god and our lady to ayde and socoure her / then they bounde the damoyselles handes with a cord, in suche wyse that her whyght tender skynne braste & they bounde her so sore that the blоде droppyd out at her nayles / 'syrs,' quod she, 'I crye you marcy / lytell shall ye wynne to sle me, ye shall do great synne, syn I haue not deseryed it:' 'dame,' quod they, 'your wordes can not auayle you / the kynge wyll not that ye shall make anaunte to haue his sone in maryage / for ye shall be drowned in ye see whether ye wyll or not, your wepynge shall not ayde you' / then .iiii. 28 rebaundes toke and bounde her, and drewe her by the fayre here of her hede, & led her towards ye se syde to haue drowned her / but ofteynymes it is sayde that god wyll haue sauyd can not be perysshed. This same
season Florence was in the batayle, wheras he fought with his enemyes, and\(^1\) Peter of Aragon had take[n]\(^2\) many presoners, and he came to\(^3\) Florence and sayde / 4 'a, syr, I requyre you let vs retourne to the citye / and be content \(^4\) with that ye haue done this day: for yonder ye may se comyng all the hole hoste of the Nauernoyse agaynst the whome it is not possible for vs to 8 endure / for they are mo then .lx. thousand men, and they all hateth vs to the dethe / ye haue done ynoyge, ye\(^5\) ought to be content / yf they take you none can saue your lyfe / 'cosyn,' quod Florence, 'I pray you 12 or\(^6\) I departe, let me inste ones with myne uncle the kyngge of Nauern, whom I haue promised to yelde as presoner to\(^3\) the kyng my father / & therby I shall haue in maryage the fayre damoysel, my loner;\(^7\) and 16 for the loue of that fayre damoysell I shall make many a Nauernoys to lese theyr lyues.' 'Syr,' quod Peter, 'syn ye desyre your owne dethe / so moche I am sory therof / but I wyl no longer tary here, for it is not 20 possyble for vs to tary here without we wyl be slayne wylyfully / & I hane here many presoners, I will go lede them in to the citye and then I shall retourne agayne to\(^3\) you / to the entente that yf other you or I 24 be taken presoner by them we maye be redemed agayne.' Then Peter wente to the citye with all his presoners;\(^5\) when he was come into the citye / he hard a great noyse abought the market place, wherof he had great 28 maruayle, and wente thether / and then he sawe there .iii. fowle glotons\(^8\) drewynge the fayre damoysell Claryet towaredes the see syde to drowne her / when he saw that he was neuer so sorowful in all his lyfe 32 before / and incontynente\(^9\) let go his presoners and drew out his sword and cryed to\(^3\) them that led the

\(1\) Sir. \(2\) takey in text. \(3\) vnto. \(4\) Fol. cviii. col. 2. \(5\) and. \(6\) before. \(7\) Loue. \(8\) villaines. \(9\) did.

Meanwhile, Peter of Aragon urges Florence to return to the city, since they have done sufficient injury to the enemy for the day: and reinforcements are coming to aid Navarre.

Florence begs for one joust with his uncle, the king of Navarre.

Peter will not tarry, and resolves to lead his prisoners back to the city.

He meets Clarret being dragged to the sea side.

He lets go his prisoners, attacking those who had Clarret;
damoysell: 'a, ye ¹ fowle horson ¹ thenes, let that
damoysel go whom I brought for beyond ye e se: ye
dyd neuer such foly in² your lyues,' and therwith he
strak so³ ye e fyrs with his sword ⁴ that his hede flew ⁵
fro the body, and the seconde he clau the teth /
and the .iii. and .iii. he slew / when the ⁶ damoysell ⁶
saw the erle Peter, ryght petuounedly ⁷ she began to crye,
and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of me, & ⁸
helpe & ayde me as ye haue done or⁸ this tyme, other⁹
lord nor mayster I haue none but you / syr, for god
sake vnbynde me and put me out of this payne that I
am in'/ then Peter wente to the damoysell and cut ¹²
ye e cordes a sonder, wherwith she was bounde: and for
the sorow that she was in she fell downe in a swoune :
then Peter toke her vp and sayde / 'fayre damoyselle,
¹⁰ take confort in you,'¹⁰ I shal ayde¹¹ to saue you;’ ¹⁶
the damoysell¹² wept petuounedly and sayde to herselfe /
'a, Huon of Burdeaux, my dere father, the great paines
and pouertes that ye were wonte to suffer ye haue left
me, now enheryter to the same / alas, I knowe not ²⁰
where you nor my mother is, I byleue I shal neuer se
you more'/ then Peter of Aragon toke the damoysell
by the hande and led her to his logynge in the towne /
then he wente to the palays, wheras he found kyng ²⁴
Guaryn, to¹³ whom he sayd / 'o, thou olde dotynge
fole, wherfore or for what cause wolde you haue slayne
the damoysell, and she is none of yours / she is myne,
I wan her vpon the see and saued her lyfe, ye can ²⁸
make no clayne to her.' Thus as Peter spake to the
kynge there entered into the palais two knyghtes, and
they sayde to the kynge / 'syr, before you is the erle
Peter, your cosyn, who hathe deleynered and rescued ye e ³²

¹—¹ false.  ² all.  ³ omitted.  ⁴ in such sort.
⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 1.  ⁶—⁶ faire Ladie.  ⁷ pitifully.
⁸ before.  ⁹ neither.  ¹⁰—¹⁰ be of good cheere, for.
¹¹ helpe.  ¹² faire Ladie.  ¹³ vnto.
newe founde damoysell, & hathe slayne the .iii. men that shulde haue drowned her in the see ' / when kyng Guaryn saw the erle before hym / ¹ sayd, ² 'how arte ³
4 thou so hardly ⁴ to ⁴ hauce slayne ⁴ my men for doynge of my commaundemente' / then he ⁵ cryed to his men and sayd / 'syrs, I charge you take this velayne here who hath done me this offence, for I shall neuer haue ioye
8 at my harte tyll ⁶ I see hym hanged a hye on ⁷ yonder ⁸ rocke' / then ⁹ men stepte forthe to haue taken the erle Peter / & when he saw that they aproched nere to ¹⁰ hym, he drewe his sworde and claue the hede of the
12 fyrst to the tethe, and he slew the seconde, thyrde, and fourthe / he bette downe ¹¹ to the erthe / then the other fled awaye so that there was none that durst aproche nere to ¹⁰ hym / for they were vnarmed and he
16 clene ¹² armed / then he cam to the kyng and sayde /
' a ¹³ false olde dottarde, full of syn and outrage / how dare ye thynke to do such an outrage, ye are not worthy to bere a crowne ; your sone Florence ought to
20 hauce it / for a traytour ought to holde no realme ; full derely ye shall abye the yll wyl of the damoysell' / and the more to make hym abasshed he made semblaunte to ryn vpon the kyng with his sworde / who
24 for fere of hym ran into his chaunbre and shote fast the dore after hym / and the erle Peter stondynge without, sore threatened the kyng / then the kyng sayde, 'cosyn Peter, I crye you marcy, yf I haue done
28 yll ¹⁴ / I am redy to make a mendes at your pleasure, I was sore dyspleasyd with my sone, and therfore I thought to be reuenged on ⁷ her that hathe caused all this / I shal make amendes / but by the grace of ¹⁵ our
32 lorde Iesu chryst ¹⁵ my son shal neuer haue her in

¹ he. ²—2 why wert. ³ as. ⁴—4 slay. ⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vppon. ⁸ a. ⁹ his. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ more. ¹² well. ¹³ thou. ¹⁴ euill. ¹⁵—1⁵ god.
although he will not consent to Clarit's union with his son.

maryage to dye, therefore I will neuer consent that a newe found damoysele should be heretes of suche a realme\(^1\) as is\(^2\) the realme of Aragon. Then syr Peter answered and sayde / 'syr, beware, blame her no more, 4 be contente with that ye haue done all redy / it may be that\(^3\) damoysele\(^4\) is of as hye a lyngnage as is\(^5\) your sone, wherfore such tyme myght\(^6\) come that ye shulde\(^6\) derely be rewardyd / paraduenture, the damoysele\(^8\) was stollen away by some yll tyrannte / she hath the bene yll loged\(^7\) with you, when ye wolde so crewelly haue slayne her' / 'cosyn,' quod the kyng, 'the mater is yl come to pas, for her sake ye haue slayne\(^8\) of my 12 men / the whiche I pardon you / but as for the damoysele I will set her in pryson in a towre / out of the whiche she shall not departe, and I will shewe my sone that she is drowned in the see / and I will kepe her in 16 pryson tyll my sone haue forgotten her, or elles haue\(^9\) taken a nother wyfe / then I will deleyuer her & sende her into some other countrie, where as she shall be better entreated\(^7\) / when the erle Peter harde the 20 kyngs seye so, he agreed to his sayenge, and thoughte that aduyse to be good / & was contente with that he had sauyd her lyfe / then the kyng opened his\(^3\) chaumbre dore & so came into the palays / then he sente for 24 the damoyse / and then she was set in pryson in a towre / and y\(^e\) kyng commaundid to a secrete saruaunt that he shulde se that the damoysele shuld lacke\(^10\) no thynge for her leuyng, and charged hym on\(^11\) payne of 28 his lyfe to kepe the mater secrete / and he charged all tho \(that\) knewe therof in any wyse to shewe Florence, his sone, no thynge of her / then he closed vp the dore with stone to the entent that she shulde not issue out, 32 & lefte no thynge open / but a lytell wyndow towards

---

1. Kingdome.  2. is after Aragon.  3. the.  4. Fol. clviii. col. 1.  5. omitted.  6. may.  7. entertained.  8. many.  9. hath.  10. want.  11. vpon.
the towne of courtoys, wherein her mete was put in other wyndowes there were openyng vpon the feldis, the whiche gaue great lyght into the house. Thus the 4 fayre Claryet was closed vp in to the towre / where as she had good leyser to wepe and wayle. Now let vs leue spekynge of the damoysell and speke of Florence, who was in the batayle.

8 How Florence dyscomfyted his enemyses, & toke the kynge of Nauerne & led hym into the towne, & delyuered hym to the kynge his father / and how florence delynered hym agane quyte bycause his father shewed hym that the damoysel was drowned.

16 E haue well harde here before how the erle, Peter of Aragon, departed fro Florence and retourned into the citye, for he coude not cause Florence to leue the batayle, wheras he dyd mar.

20 nayles for the loue of the fayre Claryet, whome he trusted to wed: he slew so many of his enemyses that the feldes were couered with the dede bodycys / when the kynge of Nauerne, his vnkle, [s]awe that, he was right.

24 sorowfull to se his men so slayne / then he came agaynste Florence his nephue, and sayd / 'a, thou vnkynd nephue, cursed be thou, I shall never haue ioye at my harte as longe as I se the alyue / thou hast done me this day great domage, I had rather dye an yll deth with out I were reuenged vpon the / wherfore I requyre the to iustse with me / I chaleunge thy londe, the whiche shall be myne / thou shalte neuer be lorde

1 omitted. 2 Ladie. 3 Fol. clviii. col. 2. 4 that. 5 vnto. 6 faire. 7 Fol. clviii. back, col. 1. 8 right. 9 you. 10-10 then not to be. 11 of.
Florence soon strikes the king to earth, where he lies in a trance.

The youth tells his foe that he will give him as prisoner to a fair damsel.

The king yields, and rides before Florence into the town.

The men of Navarre do not rise up in time to rescue their king.

Florence answered and said, 'I shall not refuse the Istes' then he put vp his sworde, & toke a great spere / and so ran agaynst the kynge his vnkle / and ye kynge came agaynst hym / they met together so rudely that the kynge spere brake all to peces / but Florence spere was byge, wherwith he strake the kynge so rudely that he fell to the erthe with his fete vpward, & he fell so rudely2 that he laye 8 in a trauze,3 so that or he coude releue3 Florence toke hym by ye ventayle of his helme, and sayd, 'Nauernoys, or I slepe I shall render4 you presoner into the handes of a fayre damoysell, whom I loue enterely / 12 in all the worlde there is none lyke her in beautye, ye refuse thus to do, with my sword I shall incontynent stryke of your hede fro the shulders' / the kynge sayd he was content to fulfyll his pleasure, & to yelde 16 hymselfe prysoner / then Florence toke his sworde fro hym, and made hym to mounte on6 his horse / and made hym to [r]yde7 before hym towards the towne, and deluyered hym to the kepynge of x. knyghtes / 20 and Florence rode after with his sworde in his hande al blody / ye crye and noyse began to be great among the Nauernoys / they enforsyd them on all partyes to haue rescued theyr kyng, but they could not come in tyme / 24 for by that tyme Florence was within the gates of the citye, wheras he was well9 receyued.

1 when the Nauernoys saw how they losse theyre payne,10 and how theyr kyng was entered into the 28 citye they were11 sorowfull, and came before the barryers & skyrmysshed, and wan but lytell, and so retourned with small profyghte and sorowfull for the losse12 they had receyued that daye, for the feldes were couered 32

1 and. 2 sodenly. 3—3 and before he could be recovered. 4 deliver. 5 for. 6 vppon. 7 dyde in text. 8 Fol. clviii. back, col. 2. 9 right joyfully. 10 labour. 11 right. 12 that.
with dede men / thus they retourned to theyr tentes
and pauylongs, and the Aragonoyes entered into the
citye of courtoys with great ioye / 1 when they were in
4 the citye, then Florence toke the kyng of Navarre, his
uncle, by the hande, and ledde hym to the palays, and 2
alyghted & wente into the hall, wheras he founde kyng
Guaryn his father, who had great ioye of his comynge /
8 when he sawe his sone Florence bryngynge his enemye
prisoner / he enbrased his sone, and sayd, 'My ryght
dere sone, I am ryght ioyous 3 of your comynge' /
'father,' quod Florence, 'I haue done so moch by the
12 ayde of our lord Iesu chryst that I haue taken your
enemye prisoner, whome I render into your handis to
do with hym at your pleasure. Now I wyll ye kepe
your promyse with me syn I haue quyt myne / nowe it
16 is tyme that ye delyuer to 4 me the damoysell, whome
I shall make quene and lady after your dysses' / when
the kyng vnderstode his sone he was al in a rage, and
sayd / 'fayre son, leue thy folly & take suche a wyfe
20 acordyng to thyne estate, & thinke no more of that
newe foundelyng, for knowe for trouthe I haue caused
her to be caste in 5 y 6 see, wheras she is drowned /
Thou arte a fole to thinke that I wyll 6 suffer after my
24 dysses that a poore caytyfe, newe founde, shulde be
lady and quene crowned of such a realme / beware in
as moche as thou thinkest to dysplease me / that tho-
be not so hardy 7 to speke or to 8 rememble eny mor
28 the newe founde damoysel' / when Florence harde y
kyng his father saye how the damoysell was drowned
in the see, his blod mounted into his face / and
his harte was so opressed and so heuy that he had no
32 power to speke / & suche a marueylous colde swete
toke hym that there was no vayne nor membre in

1 and. 2 there. 3 ioyfull. 4 vnto. 5 to. 6 Fol. clix. col. 1. 7 as. 8 omitted.

The army of Navarre retires to its tents, and the army of Arragon enters the city.

The king of Arragon warmly welcomes Florence, who enters the palace with his prisoners.

Florence demands Clariet.

His father bids him have done with such folly, and tells him that Clariet is drowned.

Florence is overcome at the words.
his body but trymbelyd for sorowe\(^1\) and anger that was in hym / so that he had no power to sustayne hymselfe, but fell downe to \(y^e\) erthe in a great traunce / \(^2\) so\(^2\) that every man there wente\(^3\) he had bene dede, and \(y^e\) every man complayned for hym / \(^4\) specyally \(y^e\) kynge his father was\(^5\) sorowfull, and wold as then that he had neuer begonne that mater / when Florence cam agayne to hymselfe, he sayd / \(O\) \(^6\) very god,\(^6\) the erthe ought \(8\) to be cursed when it sustayneth such a\(^7\) kynge \(8\) traytoure\(^8\) that hathe done suche a case\(^9\) / great pareyle it is to be consersaunt with hym’ / then Florence loked vpon the knyghtes aboute hym, and sayde / \(‘\) syrs, \(12\) I requyre you for all the loue that\(^8\) ye ought of reason to bere me / bryng me to \(y^e\) sam place where as she whome I loue perfectely was perysshed and drowned / for other sepulture I desire none / but the same that \(16\) she hathe: for the loue of her it shall please me well to be vnder couerte vnder the wawes of the se where as my lourer\(^10\) is, to the entente that of me there be harde neuer more remembraunce’ / Then he behelde the kynge \(20\) of Nauerne his vncl, whom he had taken presoner, & sayd, ‘syr kynge of Nauerne, thou arte\(^11\) my presoner / but ye thou wylte ayde me to be reneged of this treason that my father hathe done, I shall\(^12\) let the \(24\) go agayne franke\(^13\) and quyte’ / ‘fayre nephe,’ quod he, ‘leue that foly and speke no more therof / for it toucheth moche your honoure / and ye shall be blamed of all them that here spekyng thew of. ’ ‘\(\dot{\text{Syr}}\)’ \(28\) quod Florence / ‘what is that ye saye, ye know wel ye are my presoner, and that it lyethe in me whether ye shall lyue or dye.’ ‘Fayre nephe,’ quod the kynge, ‘I wyll well agree to your wordes / but ye ye \(32\)’

---

\(^1\) sorow after anger. \(^2\) in such sort. \(^3\) thought. \(^4\) and. \(^5\) right. \(^6\) good Lord. \(^7\) trayturous. \(^8\) omitted. \(^9\) deede. \(^10\) Loue. \(^11\) Fol. clxiv. col. 2. \(^12\) then. \(^13\) free.
wyll beleue me / byleue the kynge youre father, & lene
to do after your owne wyll' / 'what,' quod Florence,
'ye know wel that in me it lyethe to styrike of your
hede without ye wyll agre vnto my wyl and pleasure,
the whiche thynge I wyll do without1 incontynente ye
were the dethe of kyng Guaryn my father / and that
neuer to take peas with hym tyll2 ye hane brought hym
to the dethe / on3 this condycon I shall set you
in sauegarde / for the traytoure hathe dysceued me
of the thynge that I loue best in this world.' Then ye
kynge of Nauerne sayd / 'fayre4 nephew, ye ar as yet
13 yonge, I can not tell whether youre wordis and promyse
are stable and ferme or not / for the youth that I se in
you and also for the great dyspleasure that ye be in 5 as 5
nowe / 6 therfore, fayre nephue, I haue great ferre that
16 ye shulde begyle me.' 'Syr,' quod Florence, 'god
forbede that I shulde be so dysceuyable of my promyse
to promyse you any thyng and fulfyll it not, what so
euer shulde fall therof.' At this tyme there were but
20 fewe parsons in the palays with the kynge / for all the
lordes and knyghtes were gone in to the towne to theyr
logynges to refresshe 5 & to rest 5 tham of theyr traunayle
& 7 werynes / therfore the kynges was in his palays with
24 a small company / ye8 which Florence had well espyped /
there 8 were a 8 sartayne of Florence knyghtes aboute
hym, to 9 whom he sayd, all wepyng / 'syr, inco?ity-
ment go and get me my horse, and also the kyng
28 of Nauerne his hors redy at the gate' / the which was
done; when they were come then Florence sayde to
the kynges of Nauerne his vncl 10 'if ther be eny
apiro in you to be saue and out of damage11 take this
32 sword in your hande, and let vs lene this vnhappy
kynge to vse his dayes in sorowe / and come on and

1 except. 2 vntill. 3 vpon. 4 Deere.
5-5 omitted. 6 and. 7 Fol, clix. back, col. 1.
8-8 was. 9 vnto. 10 good vncl. 11 seruage.
folowe me' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kynge of Nauerne / 'I haue great fere that ye wyll begyle me' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'thynke it not, but come on after me & ye shall se what I wyll do' / then Florence departed and the kynge of nauerne with hym; they lepte on2 theyr horses / when they were on2 theyr good horses ther was no man at that tyme in the town abrode to let Florence of his enterpryse / but thus they 8 passed bothe tyll3 they were without the towne / then Florence sayd to the kynge his vnclle / 'syr, nowe ye knowe well that I haue broughte you out of this towne, and therfore I requyre you agayn that ye neuer 12 take peas with the kynge my father, tyll3 ye haue slayne him' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kynge, 'that4 ye requyre me to do I shall fulfyll it, and thus I recommende you to god:' when the kynge saw hym selfe 16 so well delyuered he was ioyful / & so rode tyll3 he came to his hoste, wheras his men receiued hym with great ioy, & they demaunded how he was scaped out of the handes of Florence / then the kynge shewed all the 20 maner howe Florence deliuered hym, wherof they had great maruayle, and had great ioy of his comyng; 5 and to acomplysse his promyse to Florence his nephue / he sente to all his realme of Nauerne, to all his frendes 24 and alyes6 to come and ayde hym. Now we shall leue spekyng of the kynge of Nauerne, and speke of Florence his nephue.

¶ How kyng Guaryn put Floren[ce] his sone 28 in7 a towre in preson / and howe the damoysel scapyd out of the towre and spake with Florence, her louer, at an arche vpon the gardayyne syd, and how they were 32

1 omitted. 2 vppon. 3 vntill. 4 which. 5 Fol. clix. back, col. 2. 6 other. 7 to.
Ca. clxv.] OF FLORENCE'S STRIFE WITH HIS FATHER.

spyed / and how she thought to have drowned herself.

Hen Florence had delyuered the kyng of Nauerne his vnce, whom he had taken before in the batayle / then he returned agayne into ye 6 citye and so rode tyll he came to the palayes, wheras he founde the kyng his father, 1 and sayde, as a man almoste out of his mynde 2 / ‘O, thou false traytour, thou hast done so moch thrugh thyne ylues, that I had rather desyre the 3 dethe then the 3 lefe’ / Then he sayd to the knyghtes that were there presente / ‘sirs, I praye you brynge me to the see and caste me therin in the same place, wheras my louer 4 was cast, for I wyll not lyue one owre lenger / yf ye do not this I shall sle myselfe withe myne owne handes’ / when kynge Guaryn harde his sone saye so, he was ryght sorowfull / and spake fersly to 5 his sone, & commaunded to take hym and to sette hym in pryson in the towre, in suche wyse that he may be sure of hym / and sayd, ‘well I oughte to be angry in my harte when this boy, myne owne sone, thus delethe withe me: but by the faythe that I owe 6 to my 6 lorde, 7 saynt Iames 7 / 24 the dyspleasure that he hathe done to 5 me he shall derely abye it / for as longe as he leueth he shall haue no fote of my londe’ / ‘syr,’ quod Florence, ‘by you nor by your londe, nor by any thynge that ye can do, 28 I set not therby a boton, for I had rather dye then lyue.’ There was no man presente but 2 that wepte petuously 8 for petye / 9 when Florence sawe them wepe, he said to 5 them / ‘syr, com to 5 me, tak of my harnays 10 & put me into the handes of the kynge my

1 Fol. clx, col. 1.  2 wits.  3 thy.  4 Lone.  5 vnto.  6-6 vnto our.  7-7 god.  8 grcuously.  9 and.  10 armour.
father, for I will not that any of you shuld haue any displeasure for my sake / lette me bere the blame my selfe syn1 I haue lost the thynge that I loue best2 / then the knyghtes came Florence and vnarmed hym 4 and delyuered hym to ye kyng his father / then the kyng teke hym by the hand and led hym forth rudely, and sayd howe he wolde set hym in suche a place out of the which he shuld not com of a longe space. The 8 erle Peter of Ara2gon had great sorow, but he durst speke no word / the kyng hymselfe led hym to the great towre, and there lefte hym sore wepyng and makyng great sorow for his louer4 that he had lost / 12 he made such sorowe that petye it was to here / & when the nyghte came and that he remerbered the damoysell his sorowes began to renewe. And as wel as he made sorow for his louer4 6 damoysel Claryet, 16 who was in the same towre muryed7 vp in pryson, she harde the complayntes that Florence made / and so long she herkenid that at the last she thought8 she knew ye voyce, and sayd / 'O, 9 very god,9 what may 20 this be, who is this that I here thus complayne; me thynke I haue hard or10 this tyme11 that voice,11 12 me thynke it shuld be he that loued me so wel: I will not leue serching tyll13 I maye knowe the trouthe.' 24 Then ye noble14 damoysel came to the dore that was newly muryd7 vp / wherby the morter was not fully drye, and she scraped with her fyngers and with a lytell knyfe that she had, so that at15 laste she scraped28 out a stone. Then she assayed to pull out mo / so moche she dyd with her fyngers and15 knyfe that she made a great hole in the newe wall / so that she creped out and went in to the gardayne, the which isyued to 32

1 seeing.  
2 vnto.  
3 Fol. clx. col. 2.  
4 Loue.  
5 whom.  
6 faire.  
7 immured.  
8 that.  
9-9 good Lord.  
10 before.  
11-11 before this tyme.  
12 and.  
13 vntill.  
14 omitted.  
15 the.
...the towre / and then she felte by her a rosyer, vnder the which she sate her downe / the mone shone bright, wherby the gardayne was as lyght as thoughe it had bene clere daye. Then she toke a fayre rose in her hande, the which smelled sweetely, & sayd / O, very God, I wolde it were your pleasure that my louter were here by me, I thynke he be not far hence / I wysshe with hym this swete rose, so that he knewe it came fro me / I wyll not leue serchynge tyll I naue found hym / yf I can not fynde hym in doloure & mysery I must ende my dayes / the same tyme that the damoysell complayned thus in the gardayne, Florence who was in the towre / and harde the damoysell in the gardayne, he knew her well by the voyce, and sayd, 'O, very god, what is it that I here, yonder in the gardayne: 'dare louter,' quod the damoysell, it is she whome ye do lone so well / I am issued out of the towre, wher in I haue bene in great mysery / I can not tell what wyll fall therof / conforte me or elles I shall dye here in great sorowe:' when Florence harde the voyce of his louter / he had suche ioye at his harte that he forgate all his dolour / when he saw that she was not dede / then he sayd to her: 'a, my ryght swete louter whether wyll ye go / for yf the kynge, my father, know that ye be scaped out of the towre incontynent, he wyll sle you, he wyl haue no petye of you, and I can not ayde you. Fayre louter, I praye you gather me some flowers, and caste them in at this wyndowe / I shall pas my dolours the better when I haue in my handes any thynge that cometh out of yours / then the damoysell gathered roses and Flowers, & dyd cast them into her louter: wher of Florence had...
great ioye / when he had receyued them fro her, and kyst them often tymes: then he came to the wyndowe thynkynge to haue taken his louer\(^1\) by the hande, but he coude not,\(^2\) for\(^2\) the wall was to thycke, wherof they\(^4\) were bothe sory / the same tyme whyles they were thus deuysynge together, the wache men came abought, whome the kyng had sent thether to spye and knowe if Peter of Aragon dyd sende to\(^3\) those prisoners any \(^8\) comforte or ayde /\(^4\) when he came thether he\(^5\) harkened and harde the voyces of thos\(^6\) two persons, and harde well theyr wordes, and wepte for\(^7\) petye of them: then swetely the wache man called to\(^8\) them, & sayd, 'hold 12 your peas, for yf ye be spyyed ye can not scape the deth: I haue great petye of you both: I pray to\(^8\) god preserue you, for I canne not \(2\) ayde nor\(^2\) comforte you.' / Then they held theyr peas and so wente a 16 sonder to the entent\(^9\) they shuld not be harde nor sene / then\(^10\) thether came two other wache men, sente thether by \(y^e\) kyng to se yf any body came to the towre to aye or confort the two presoners / when they were 20 come nere to \(y^e\) towre they saw the newe made wall broken / then they sayde ech to other, suerly the damoysell is fled and hathe broken\(^11\) pryson / then they cryed out and made a \(12\) scrye,\(^12\) and said the 24 damoysel is fled out of the towre / when the damoysell, beyng in the gardayne, harde the noyse that the spyes made she was in great fere and doubte, the which was no marauyle, then incontynent as preuely as she coude 28 she wente fro the towre and wente to the ende of the gardayne / wheras there was a hye rokke, & vnder the rokke a great water and depe, she clame\(^13\) vp\(^2\) vpon the rokke and sayde: 'A, Florence, my dere louer, this day 32 shall be the departhynge of vs two / it must behoue me

\(^{1}\) Loue.  \(^{2}\)\(^{2}\) omitted.  \(^{3}\) vnto.  \(^{4}\) and.  \(^{5}\) they.  
\(^{6}\) Fol. clx. back. col. 2.  \(^{7}\) meere.  \(^{8}\) to \(a\)fter god.  
\(^{9}\) that.  \(^{10}\) ther came.  \(^{11}\) out of.  \(^{12}\)\(^{12}\) great crye.  
\(^{13}\) did clime.
to dye for your sake' / she saw in the garlaine a great nome of torches light and men sekyng all abought for her, wherof she was afrayed and not without a cause / for she knew wel yf she were taken she were lost for euer / ryght swetely she called on our lord god and on the vyrgyn Mary for ayde and confort, & sayd: 'alas, yf I be taken I can not scape fro the lyght and men sekynge all ahoiht her, for her, wherof she was af rayed and not without a cause / for she knew wel yf she were taken she were lost for euer / ryght swetely she called on our lord god and prays to the Virgin for aid.

12 and therwith tombeled downe the rocke to haue fallen down into the water / but as she fell she fell in a great busshe by the waye / wherby she was prycked in dyuers places on her face and handis so that the blode folowed, wherby she felte such payne that she swouned / then the noyse ran thruhe the paleys how the damoysell was scapyd out of the towre / so that the kynge was aduertised therof, wherof he was sorowful, & made promyse that erle Peter of Aragon shulde lese all his londes & goodes, as he thoughte that by his meanes she scaped the pryson.

How the fyrist wacheman found out the damoysel, and led her into a great wode therby / and after the same wacheman deluyered out of pryson Florence, and shewed hym the place wher the damoysel was, and howe florence and claryet entered into the see / & how the kyng went after his sone, & the wacheman taken. Ca. clxvi.
The first watchman who had spied Florence and Clariet talking, finds Clariet.

He promises to take her to a forest, and there bring Florence to her.

She enters the boat in which the watchman has come to her, and disembarks at the forest by the waterside.

Hus as the brute was in ye palays of the damoysell; he spied ye damoysell, where as she laye in the bushe in great parayle to be drowned / this wacheman was a wyse man, and as pruely as he coude he issued out of the gardayne and went downe to the water syde, and there he founde a lytell bote & entered into it / and so passed the vyne gardaynay as pruely as he coude, so that none harde nor sawe hym: and when he was agaynst the bushe wheras the damoysell was / then he spoke to her softly, and sayd, damoysell, be not abasshed, for ye I may in any maner of wyse, I shall ayde you / come downe and enter into this bote, and I shall set you in the foreste, and tary there tyll I brynge to you Florence, your loner / the whiche I shall do by the grace of Iesu, for ye I can by any maner of menes / I shall brynge hym out of daunger that he is in / bycause I haue alwayes loued hym, and for the goodnes that he hath done to me I shall nowe rewarde it / when the damoysell harde the wacheman / for ioye therof she forgate all her sorowe, and incontynente as well as she myght she issued out of the bushe and went downe the ryuer syde. Then she entered into the bote, & the wacheman set her ouer & lefte her in ye forest, which ioynd to the water syde / then he toke his leue of her, and sayd damoysell, tary here tyll I retourne agayne to you.' 'Frend,' quod the damoysell, 'I praye to our lord ye may so spede as to brynge hether my loner, and to set hym out of daunger;' and so he departed and entered agayne into

---

1 the.  2 omitted.  3 see.  4 Fol. clxi. col. 2.  5 Faire.  6 will.  7 vntill.  8–8 god that.
the gardayne, harkenyng towardes the palays, where as there was great brute made for the scapyng of the damoysell; but there was no dought made of Florence, because the tower that he was in was stronge and thycke. Also the chambre that he was in was not toward the palays, but it laye open agaynst the garden; then the sayd wacheman came to ye wall syde, where as there was a strayte lope into Florence chambre, and he had two gotes fete in his handes / then he callyd Florence, and sayd / syr, ye wyll be with your louer who taryth for you in the forest, whereas I haue lefte her in sau[ue]garde / helpe your selfe that ye were out of this towre / take here this gotes fote and do you so moche there within to enlarg[e] the lope that ye myghte issue out / and here without I shall make the hole wyder / when Florence vnderstode ye wacheman he was neuer so joyful in al his lyfe / when he hard the man say that his louer was in sau[ue]garde / then they laborid so sore that they made the lope so large that Florence issued out / then the wacheman brought Florence to the stable, whereas some of the kynges horses stode / specyally there was one there coude be founde no suche / this wacheman, who had great affe[cy]on and desyre to do seruys[e] to this yonge lorde, dyd so moche that he brought to Florence his harnais, his shylde and his helme, and his sworde and a good spere / and so Florence armyd hym and lepte upon the good horse / then the wacheman shewed hym the place in the forest, whereas he had left the damoysell / and then he toke his leue of Florence, who sayde, 'frynde, the seruyse that ye haue done me shall be well rewarded in tyme to come:' then he rode forth and lefte not tyll he came there, as his louer.

---

1-1 omitted. 2 Fol. clxi. back. col. 1. 3 hole. 4 Lone. 5 may. 6 and. 7-7 whose lyke. 8 not. 9 vnto. 10 armour. 11 vntill. 12 where.
She mounts the horse beside her lover, and they ride away.

Men are seen in pursuit.

They coast along the seaside of the forest,

and come to a little port, where a ship is ready to set sail.

The master takes them on board.

The watchman arrives on the shore when they have left, and sorrows much, for he is in fear of his life.

was; \(^1\) when he saw her his joye was renewed, then he alyghted and kyssed his lover,\(^2\) & when he sawe that she was so blody he had great petye of her, and sayd / 'dere lover,\(^2\) it is nedefull that we departe or\(^3\) the 4 daye come / therfore make you redy and lepe vp behynie me / \(^4\) then Florence mouȝted and she lepte up behynde hym and so departed as soon as they myght / when they were in the feldes the damoyysell 8 lokyd backe to\(^5\) the citye \(^6\) ward\(^6\) / and she saw\(^7\) great number of men issued\(^8\) out / then she said to\(^9\) Florence / 'syr, I se wel\(^10\) we be loste, for I se moche people issued\(^8\) out of the citye, it is not possyble for us to be sauid, \(^12\) but that we shall be taken, and specially I can not scape ; I se well that nowe our lone shall depart / your father is fell and crewell, I knowe well\(^10\) he wyll sle me : ' then the wacheman came rynnynge after Florence \(^16\) for fere that he had of the kynge / but he coude not ouertake Florence / who fled with his lover\(^2\) behynde hym as fast as he myghte costynge\(^11\) the see syde / for Florence knew well the preuy wayes, for\(^12\) he had often 20 tymes vscd the wayes when he was wonete to go a hawkyng or hurtynge, so long he rode that he came to a lytel porte, where ther was a shyppe redy to depart / then Florence alyghted and his lover\(^2\) with \(^24\) hym, & tyed his hors to a tree, \(^3\) then he toke the damoyysell by y\(^e\) hand and came to the mayster of y\(^e\) shyp and agreed so with hym that he and his lover\(^2\) entered into the shyppe / then they hoysed vp theyr \(^28\) sayles and so went\(^13\) fro the lond / the wacheman came to the see syde trustynge to have founde Florence there / \(^1\) he was ryght sorrowfull when he saw them so far in\(^14\) y\(^e\) see : he was in great fere of\(^15\) his lyfe. Then \(^32\)

\(^1\) and.  \(^2\) Loue.  \(^3\) before.  \(^4\) Fol. clxi. back, col. 2.  \(^5\) towards.  \(^6\) omitted.  \(^6\) a.  \(^7\) issuing.  \(^8\) vuto.  \(^9\) that.  \(^11\) toward.  \(^12\) because.  \(^13\) sayled.  \(^14\) on.  \(^15\) loosing.
kynge Guayyn came thether with a great number, and when he sawe the shyp so farre in the see, he sayde / 'a, good lorde, now haue I loste my sone / for I knowe well he is gone in yonder shyp and the damoysell with hym / by the faythe that I owe to our lorde Iesu Chryste the wacheman shall lese his hede' / then the wache man was taken and fast bounde, so that the blode came out at his fyngers endes, and sayd all wepynge, 'a, very god, in an yll our I was acquaynted with Florence and his louer: also for the goodnes that I haue done I shall haue a small rewarde, this day I am lyke to lese my lyfe for loure of my lorde.'

Of the great debate that was in the palays for the wachemans sake, whomme the kynge wolde haue had to be hanged / and how the kynge of Nauerne took the citye of courtoys / and how he departed thence.

Ca. C.lxvii.

Hen the erle, Peter of Aragon, sawe the wache man taken by whome Florence and his louer was saued / he was sorry to se the man so sore be'ten and entreated / then he wente in hast to the kynge, and sayd / 'syr, ye shewe well by your workys that ye haue but small reason to suffer thus this poore man to be beten, and that ye wolde put hym to deth / for the goodnes that he hath done to your sone therin he hath done but as he shulde do, and lyke a trewe seruaunte; ye ought the better to loue hym, ye shall do yll to put hym to deth / I wyll ye knowe ye put hym to deth I wyll neuer serue

1 vnto.  2 this.  3 Fol. clxii. col. 1.  4 4 good Lord.  5 Loue.  6 from.  7 Fol. clxii. col. 2.  8 threatened.  9 therein after done.  10 that.  11 not.
you one daye lenger; But I wyll rather go to the kyng of Nauerne, and to mayntayne his warre agaynst you; when the kyng hard hym so to threthe hym, he sware by god he shulde repeat it, and how there shulde no man saue the wachemans lyfe: then the poore man embrased the kynges leg & cryed for marcy / but the kyng sware and made promyse howe he shulde be hanged without marcy / when the erle Peter harde 8 that he was sorowfull / the poore man wepte & behelde the people that were there assembeled / and desyred them to praye for his sowle / sayenge howe he shuld dye for sauyng of his lorde / there were many of ye pore mans kyn, they knelde all downe before the kyng desyryng hym to pardon hym / the kyng answered that he wold not / when the erle Peter harde that he sayd to the kyng, 'syr, suerly he shall not dye without it be by ingemmente as your lordes and counsayle shal ordayne:' when the kyng hard that he was sore dysplesyd, and so entered in to the citye and set the wacheman in pryson / then he wente to his palays, and Peter folowed hym, & acompanied with many other knygthtis such as loued hym, and in lyke wyse so dyd the poore mammes kyn / when the kyng was in his palays he commaunded a scaffold to be made, wheron he wolde haue the wacheman to lese his hede / when his kynsmen harde that they cryed for marcy / but the kyng wold do no thynge at theyr desyre / when erle Peter sawe the yll wyll of the kyng he made a token 28 to the wachemannes frendes, who were in nombre a C. and l., that they shulde go to such a towre, where was great pleute of harnayse, and to breke it vp and to armee them, and so they dyd, and came agayne to the 32 palais; and when the kyng sawe them comynge

1 helpe. 2 verie. 3 kindred. 4 Fol. clxii. back. col. 1. 5 the. 6 about a. 7 there. 8 Armour.
armyd / he cryed to his men that they shuld arme them and to take them that were so holde to come in\(^1\) his presence all armed; and when euery man was \(^4\) armed they came agayne to the palays to haue taken the wachman and all his kynred / but then\(^2\) the wacheman and his frendes, who were redy in armure, set upon the kyngis men: & also Peter of Aragon and his \(^8\) company ayded them / so that there was great, so great a skyrmyssh in the palays that it was petye to se it, they cut of armes, legges & hedis, eche of other / fynally the kyngle and his men were so sore constrayned \(^12\) that of force they abandoned the palays and fled awaye / and the kyngle fled into his chaumbre for sauengarde. Anone the newes ran in the towne that the kyngle was sore assembeled\(^3\) in the palays and \(^4\) iopardy of his \(^16\) lyfe / then all the comunalt wente & armed them / and sowned the larom bell, there was suche a noyse and brute as thoughe all the world had bene lost / then a spy ye went out and shewed the kyngle of Nauerne howe \(^20\) kyngle Guaryn was assembeled in his palays within the citye bycause of a wacheman whome\(^5\) y\(^6\) kyngle wolde put to dethe bycause\(^6\) he had delyuered out of preson Florence and the da\(^7\)moysell his louer:\(^8\) then the kyngle \(^24\) of Nauerne, ryght ioyous\(^9\) of those newes, commaundde hastely his men to be ry\(^d\)y in harnay\(^5\) / for he sayde\(^5\) it was tyme then or elles neuer to assayle the citye / 'great desyre I haue\(^11\) to be reuenged of this kyng who \(^28\) had wedded my syster / whome he hathe slayne, I shall neuer hane ioye at my harte / tyll\(^12\) I be reuenged' / then euery man armed them / and so assembeled together with baners dysplayed, and so came in good \(^32\) order towards the citye to assayle it / but when they within the towne hard the crye and noyse without,

\(^1\) to. \(^2\) omitted. \(^3\) assaulted. \(^4\) in. \(^5\) that. \(^6\) in that. \(^7\) Fol. clxii. back. col. 2. \(^8\) Loue. \(^9\) ioyfull. \(^10\) armour. \(^11\) (quoth he). \(^12\) vntill.
At the approach of the men of Navarre the strife in the palace ceases.
The king of Arragon and his lords came forth to give battle to Navarre.

But the men of Navarre defeat the men of Arragon, and enter the city.

The king of Arragon takes refuge in a church, but he is nevertheless taken prisoner.

He reproaches his enemy with sacrilege in seizing him in the church.

The king of Navarre admits the sin, and promises to release him if he will pardon the watchman.

& saw their enemies coming towards them / they went and showed it at ye palais, whereby the stryfe there seased / & then the kyng and all his lords, with all his people, issued out in batayle / then there began 4 a sore batayle, and many a man slayne and maynide / but there were so many Nauernoys, that whether kyng Guaryn wold or not, parforce they were fayne to abandon the vctory to their enemies / and were fayne 8 to flee into the towne: but their enemies followed them so nere that the kyng of Nauerne and his men entered in with them / then the kyng of Nauerne commanded1 none to2 be slayne without they were found in defence / for he sayd he caryd not so he myght be reuenged of the kyng. Then the Nauernoys spred abrode in the citey takynge presoners / then kyng Guaryn fled to the mynster churche / then he stode in 16 the churche dore to make defence / but it coude not auayle hym, there was so many of his enemies that he fled to the hye aulter for saugard / but ye kyng of Nauerne, who was entered into the churche, com-
manded his men to take Guaryn / ye which they dyd / ye syrs, 3 quod kyng Guaryn, 'ye do me great wronge to take me in this holy place, whereas every man shuld be sayd / aboue all thynges ye house of 24 god ought to be refuge for every man' / then ye kyng of Nauerne, who was holden for a good holy man / heryng what kyng Guaryn sayd, he knew well 1 he sayd4 trouthe, and repentlyd hymselfe, and sayd / 28 'fayre brother,5 for the offence that I have committed agaynst our lorde god 6 Iesu chryste,6 I shall amend it to the doble / so that ye do pardon the wacheman that hathe deluyered my nephue Florence out of your 32 preson / I shall then shew you this courtoysye; for the offence that I have made I and all my men shall issue

1 that. 2 should. 3 Fol. clxiii. col. 1. 4 the. 5 Nephew. 6—6 omitted.
out of this citye without takynge of any presoner or any maner of goodes / for the lone of my nephue Florence, whome I loue enterely, and for the goodnes 4 of the people I shall go to my tentes without, and I wyll graunte you a truce to endure for a moneth / and I promise you the monethe ones expyryd / I shall aproche agayne so nere to this citye / that as long as 8 lyfe is in my body I shall not departe tyll 1 I haue taken this citye and you, whome I take for myne enemye / to hauue you as my presoner / for I shall never haue ioye at my harte tyll 1 I haue reuengyd the deth 12 of my syster, your wyfe 3 / then kynge Guaryn sayde / 'syr 2 kynge of Nauerne / of the courtoysye and bountye that ye shewe 3 me I thanke you / and as for the wache man, I do pardon hym all myne yll wyll / and wheras 16 ye saye that ye wyll come so nere my citye to wyn it / when that cometh, by the grace of god & by the helpe of my truwe subiectes I shall do ye best I can to defende my selfe and my citye 1 / then the kynge of Nauerne 20 issued out of the church, & lepte on his horse and rode to the gate and taryed there tyll 1 all his men were clene aoyned out of the citye, to ye entent that none presoners nor goodes shulde not be had out of the 24 citye, wherof his men were angery, & specially they that were poore / the other caryyd not greatly bycause ye ii. kynge had bene so long frendes togethre / wherefore ye warre dyspleasid them, and were sorry that it 28 enduryd so longe / when the kynge of Nauerne saw that all his men were issued out of the citye / then he withdrew hym into his tent / then he closyd in the citye with a sege abydyng tyl 1 the truse were expyryd. Nowe let vs leue to speke of this warre betwene these two kynge, & speke of Florence, who sayled vpon the see with his louver Claryet.

1 vntill. 2 omitted. 3 vnto. 4 Fol. clxiii. col. 2. 5 vpon. 6 caried. 7 they. 8 was.
How the shyp wherein Florence and his louer was in was taken by the sarasyms, and all theyr company taken and slayne, and led to the castel of Anfalerne.

Ca. Clxviii.

He story sheweth that after that Florence was departed out of his countr with his louer Claryet; how be it he knew not what she was / so it was that the master of the shyp that he was in was of Marcyl / when he knew that Florence was sone to kyunge Guaryn of Aragon, & that he had put his truste in hym, then he came to Florence & sayd 'syr, the goodnes and honoure that I se in you causeth me to say to you that I wolde not do to another; I wel perseyue by you that ye are in great dought of your father, lest he shulde folowe you to get you agayne / syr, to the entente that ye shall be well assured of me and of my maryners, I put in to your handes my selfe, my shyppe, and all my maryners / and I wyl they obeye you as they haue done me, and that ye be maister ouer vs al. And, syr, neuer thinke that the kyunge of Aragon, your father, shall trouble you / we be farre ymoue and then fro thence ye maye go whether as it plese you / syr, quod Florence, 'of the honour and great courteysye that ye offer me, I thanke you' / then all they that were within the shyppe sayde, 'syr, refuse not to be oure mayster / for ye the wynde had not bene agaynst vs we

1-1 was and his Loue.  
2 History.  
3 Lone.  
4 Marseillis.  
5 vnto.  
6 which.  
7 but.  
8 Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1.  
9 that.  
10 are.  
11 bothe.
had bene farre of by thys tyme / syr, hau none doubte
we sall all obeye you and do as ye commaunde vs, syn
it is our maysters pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I
thanke you of your offer, god suffer me to deserue it' / Florence was joyfull of the good aduenture that god had
sent hym. Thus he and his louer sayled joyfully in
the see of Aufrike. So longe they sayled that they
paste the Isles of Corse, and Sarayne, & Cesyll, and
on a wednysdaye betymes they aryued nere to ye Isle of
Candy / there ther arose vpon them a maruaylous
great wynd and tempest, so that parforce they were
dreuen to the coste of Barbary; the tempeste was
so great that every man was in fere of drownynge / the
wawes were great & ferfull / the damoysell was in
great doubte when she saw the maryners in suche fere :
she called deuoutly vpon our lorde Iesu chryste, desyrynge hym to haue petye of her and to brynge them to
a good porte / when Florence perseyued his louer and all his maryners in suche fere as they were in
he comforted them the best he myght / but it aunayled not, for the wynde draue them whether they wold
or not towards Bongy, nere to a citey namyd as then
Aufalerne, where as they were fayne to caste their
ancre in great fere of lesynge of theyr lyues / then ther
fel on them a galey wherein were a .C. sarayns / & another
great shyp wherein were mo then .iiii. C. men, & they
all fell vpon Florence shyp / when Florence sawe bothe
the shyppe and galey to set vpon his shyp / the
mayster of the shyp and the maryners began to wepe,
and sayd to Florence, 'syr, you & we all ar lost, we
shall be all sclaunes with ye sarayns: yonder galey and
shyp ar full of sarayns, and they are redy comynge to
set vpon vs' / when Florence hard that, he sayd, 'syr,
Florence implores all to place their trust in God.

be not abashed / 1 whom god wyll ayde 2 can not be perysshed / no mortal man can hurt hym, let vs put our trust in hym, and take suche grace as he wyll sende vs / the great nombre of people can not hurt vs yf god 4 wyll ayde vs / let vs shewe our selfe lyke men, they be without lawe and without fayth / and we bylue in god ; 3 let vs arme our selues and shew our selues lyke men to defende our lyues ? / when the mayster and the 8 maryners harde Florence, they sayd / ' syr, 4 in the sanegard of our lorde Iesu chryst, and vnto 4 you we commytt our selues ' / then they all armed them / and every man stode at theyr defence / then Florence sayde / 12 ' syrs, let vs all thynke that we nowe do fyght for our lyues, and therfore let vs not be abasshed, every man thynke to do his beste that he can / I lone by amours / beholde her here 5 by me 5 by whome I am so moued to do well / and to defende bothe her & me ' / ' syr,' quod they, ' shame have he that 6 sayd the / then the shyp and the galey came nere to Florence shyppe ; then the shotte of both partieys flewe so thyczke as though it had bene snow : there was a great bataile betwene them, great hurte was done with castyng downe 7 of barres out of 8 the toppes / two tymes Floren[ce] entered into the shyppe of his enemyes, wheras he dyd maruellous, 24 and slewe so many sarasyns that the water was red with the blode of them that were slayne of bothe partieys / there was an orryble batayle / many of Florence men were slayne / the good maister was slayne and the 28 most parte of his men. Also fro the lond there were shot bombardis and gonnys at Florence shyppe, so that therby, and with the great barres of Iron the shyp was sore enpayryd, for it was stryken thrughe in a .C. 32 places, so 9 that the see enteryd with great abundaunce /

1 hee. 2 saue. 3 by whome we trust to be saued. 4—4 to. 5—5 omitted. 6 Fol. clxiii. col. 1. 7 out. 8—8 from. 9 in such sort.
when the damoysell sawe that mortall dyscomfyture,  
how there company were slayne and theyr shyp nye full  
of water, & sawe no mo parsones lefte alyue with

4 Florence but .vi. parsons,¹ she was then in great fere /  
and she thought she had rather enter into the sarasyns  
shyppe then to be drowned in the see / she sawe the  
galeye, the whiche laye ioynynge to the shyppe, she  
8 lepte into the shyppe to sawe her lyfe ; when Florence  
sawe his louer² in the galeye he was nere out of his  
mynde³ for sorowe, and he sawe well⁴ yt he taryed styl  
in his owne shyppe he shulde be drowned / then he  
12 lepte in to the galeye whereas his louer² was / and there  
he slewe many a sarasyn, but there were so moche  
people that with force of darters and speres he was  
borne downe / then they toke and bounde his handes  
16 so sore that the blode ran out at his nayles. Thus  
Florence was taken and all his men slayne and  
drowned excepte some that were taken / then Florence  
wept for petye of them, and sayd / 'a, my father, how  
20 falsely hawe you wrought agaynst me / thus by your  
foyl I am in great daunger / I shall never retourne in  
to my countre without god helpe me' / often tymes he  
beheld his louer² / whome the sarasyns dyd sore bet  
24 and yll entrete⁶ / wherof Florence had suche dys-  
pleasure that he was nere hande out of his wyttes.  
'Alas,' quod Florence,⁷ 'I oughte greatly¹ to be sorrow-  
full to se her that I loue best so sore beten and  
28 tormented before my face / O cursed dethe, why  
sufferest thou me to lyue to see this⁸ that my louer²  
shulde be thus delte with, and yet I can not helpe nor  
so coure her, therwith he wepte, and sodaynely fell in  
32 a swoone amongethe handes of the sarasyns / when the  
damoysell sawe her louer fallen in a traunce, and sawe

¹ omitted.  ² Loue.  ³ wits.  ⁴ that.  
⁵ Fol. clxiii. col. 2.  ⁶ threaten.  ⁷ he.  ⁸ day.
Clarlet comes to him, and thinks him dead.

She laments her cruel fate,

and falls down in a trance beside her lover.

Sorbare, the captain of the town and castle on the shore, enters the galley, and pities the lovers, for he was a secret Christian.

Florence and Clarlet are delivered into his hands, and he takes them to the castle.

The other prisoners are sent to various towns, and cruelly ill-used.

Hym so pale of colour / she came to hym / and she went suerly that he had bene dede, and also the sarasyns sayde the same. Then she cryed out, and said, "O very god, why do you consente the dethe of my louer, seynge that we must thus depart for euer, it is no thyng the payne and yll that I suffer / but my sorow is for the dethe of my louer here before me / I ought to be sorowfull when the moste fayrest, & S sweetest / & most ientylest creature of all y worlde is thus dede and loste for euer, and the most valyauntest knyght that euer was borne,' therwith she fell downe in a trance by her louer. All that sawe them thought suerly that they had bene both dede without any recouer, and had great petye and compassyon of them / then he that was the capetayne of the towne & castall, who was named Sorbare, cam into the shyp, and sawe where Florence & his louer laye one by another as dede, he had great petye of them, for he was a good chrysten man / but he duste not be knowned thereof for fere of sleynge / he loued well god, and dyd after good seruyce in chrystendome / for by hym the sayd two louers were saued fro the dethe, as ye shall here after / when these .ii. louers were come agayne to themseluex / the sarasyns then delyuered them bothe into the capetayns handes / when Florence saw his swete louer by hym, he embracid and kyssed her swetely / the capetayne sorbare, when he sawe the yowthe of these two louers, he had great petye of them / but he made therof no semblaunt / he toke them bothe into the castell with hym, and the other presoners suche as had taken them, brought them into dyuers towers, wheras they were kepte in great myster / for

1 vnto.  2 thought.  3-3 good Lord.  4 faire.  5 omitted.  6 sweet.  7 and.  8 Fol. clxviii. back, col. 1.  9 Loue.  10-10 to knowe.  11 afterward.  12 hearer.  13 semblaunt.
the sarasyns had no pety of them bycause they were chrystened.

Howe Sorbare the capetayne comforted Florence and Claryct / and howe there aryued .iiii. shyppes with chrysten men by fortune of the see, and how Florence was known by them. Ca. clxix.

Hen the capetaine of the castell was within the castell, and Florence and his louer with hym / he sayde to them / 'frendes, I haue great petye of you. shewe me what ye be and what fortune hath brought you hether, syn ye be yonge; howe is it that ye wolde aduenture vpon the see wherin are so many perelles / yf ye shewe me the trouth ye shall lese nothynge therby / for yf I canne I shall set you in suche a pla[ec]e wheras ye shall be in sauegarde'/ 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I shall shewe you all myne aduenture what so euer fall therof. Syr, knowe for trouth I am sone to kynge Guaryn kynge of Aragon, and I am departed fro hym in dyspleasure.' Thus Florence shewed Sorbare all his hole aduenture / and how he was taken by his father, and howe he scaped and his louer also / then he sayd, 'syr, I haue shewed you the trouthe, I commyt my body and my louers here into your handes / In you lye the our lyfe and dethe; ye maye do with vs at your pleasure' / and therwith he kneled downe / then Sorbare toke hem vp and sayd / 'fayre sone, be not abashshed, for I haue bene or this tyme in as great aduenture / haue no doubte I shall so order the matter that ye shall be out of all

1 Loue. 2 seeing. 3 so. 4 Fol. clxiii. back, col. 2. 5 plate in text. 6 that. 7 Loues. 8 for. 9 before.
parayle / but kepe every thynge secret to your selfe 1 / then Sorbarre called to 2 him iii. of his seruauntes and sayde / 'I commaunde you to 3 do no rudenes to 3 this presoner 4 nor to 4 this damoysel / but 4 lette them haue 4 brede, fleshe & wynye at theyr pleasure / as I had when I was presoner at Terascon / fayre sone,' quod Sorbarre to Florence, 'knowe for trouthe 5 I was ones kynge of Belmaryn / & ones I fought with Aymery of Narbone, 8 and I was taken by the handes of Reynalt of Beau-
lande / then I was brought to 6 the citty of Burdeaux, wheras I sawe a noble prynce namyd duke Huon, who had wedde a noble lady called Esclaramonde, daughter 12 to the admyrall Gaudes / 4 they had a daughtuer wel-
beloued with 7 8 them / she was the fayreste damoysell 9 that euer I sawe, 10 she passed 11 not 12 at that tyme vi.
yere of age / and as I harde say syn there came to 16 Burdeaux dyuers kynges and great prynces for to haue
had her in maruyage / then I cam preuely to myne
uncle who gau me this castell to kepe when he sawe
that I had loste all myne owne realme / and bycause 20 I was well entretyd 13 amonge ye e chrysten men I wyll
that these presoners be well delte withal ' / ' syr,' quod
his seruauntes, 'syn 14 it is your pleasure we shall ac-
complysshe the same.' then they toke Florence and the
damoysell and dyd set them in a towre eche of them
in a chaunbre apart, wherof they were 15 sorowfull / when the fayre damoysell sawe that she was put fro
her louver she was ryght sory / she began then 16 to com-
playne and said '/ 'a, my ryght dere father 17 and dere
mother Esclaramonde, I maye well hate the acqaynt-
aunce that ye haue had with kynghe Oberon / for by
hym I haue lost you both. ye haue forgotten me in this 32

1 selues, 2 vnto. 3-3 vse well. 4-4 and. 5 that. 6 to to in text. 7 of. 8 Fol. cxi. 9 Ladie. 10 did see 11 was. 12 aboue. 13 entertained. 14 seeing. 15 right. 16 then after sory. 17 Duke Huon.
worlde when ye leue me in this pryson / a, kyng
Oberon, thou hast done me great yll & domage when
thou dydest geue 1 to 4 my father thy realme, whereas is
the citye of Momure, 2 wheras nowe is the duke my
father and y° duches my mother: I haue lost the
flowre of all my kyn, 3 I am sure 4 I muste 5 dye in this
towre for 6 sorowe. A, false deth, thou dydest me great
8 yll that thou tokest not me when I was yonge and
lytell. I yeld myselfe to god 1 and to his dere mother 1
whom I requyre to haue petye of me / and wolde to
god that I were in company with my louer Florence /
12 the capetayne hathe done yll thus to separete vs a
sonder, for yf I were with hym I shuld the better pas
the tyme / yf 7 his father knewe of what lynage I am
of and whose doughter I am he wolde not haue refused
16 to haue geuen me his sone in maryage / but he shall
not know it 1 for me what so ever payne I suffer.'
Florence, who was 8 in the chaumbre nexte aboue 9 the
chaumbre where as the fayre damoysell Claryet was /
20 who had well harde the complayntes that she had made
before, and vnderstode euer ywerde that she had
spoken, wherof he was the ioyfullest man at his hart
lyuynge / for yf he loued her wel before then he loued
24 her moche better / 2 then he loked out at a wyndow
wheras he saw Sorbare walkyng vp and downe in the
courte of the castell. Then Florence requyred hym to
haue petye and compassyon of the damoysell beynge
28 in the towre alone / 'frend,' quod Sorbare, 'suffer a
season.' 10 I shall sette you bothe in suche a place or 11
it be nyght that ye shall be bothe ioyfull / be not
abasshed / for the loue of you I shall leue the lawe of
32 Mahomet, and byleue on 12 our lord Iesus chryst / 13 when
it is nyght and euer man a 12 bed / we shall enter into

1-1 omitted. 2 and. 3 kindred and. 4 that. 5 shall. 6 with. 7 fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 2. 8 aboue. 9 vnto. 10 for a time. 11 before. 12 in. 13 for.
a galeye that lyeth here by: but as for your other men that be presoners abrode in the towne / it wolde be hard for me to get them out of preson.' Then I pray to our lorde Iesu chryste, quod Florence, 'to ayd & socoure them in theyr great nede.' Great pitye had Sorbare when he harde Florence so peteously pray for the sauegarde of his men whome he muste leue behind hym yf god socour hym not: then Sorbare sawe com-8
ynge to the port warde .iii. great shyppes wherein there were a two thousande pylgremes who were com-
ynge fro Jerusalem warde fro the holy sepulture / but by fortune of the see & force of ye wynd they were 12
constrayned to anye th-re / then the capetayne wente vp into the towre to se Florence whom he toke by the
hande and sayd / 'fren, yonder ye maye se .iii. great
shyppes full of people comynge hether by force of the 16
wynde / let vs go downe and se what they be and whc
is theyr capetayne' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I am redy
to folowe your pleasure / my body & my louver I com-
myt to your sauegarde' / then the capetayne sente for 20
the damoyssell, & when Florence sawe her he was
ryghte joyfull and sayd, 'dere louver, be no thyng
afrayed / the capetayne and I wyll go downe to the see
syde to knowe what people be yonder that comethe in 24
yonder shyppes / and anone we wyll retouerne agayne
to -you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyssell, 'god be youre
gyde' / Sorbare and Florence went downe to the haiuen
syde / when the shyppes aryued they saw wel there 28
was moche people, and parseyued well howe they
were chrysten men. Then Sorbare saluted them and
sayde / 'syrs, ye be wellcome. I praye you shewe me
fro whence ye come, & what ye seke for in these 32

1-1 god. 2 towards. 3 omitted. 4 more then. 5-5 at Jerusalem after sepulture. 6 Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 1. 7 Loues. 8 Loue. 9 vnto. 10 and. 11 that. 12 many.
party, & what ye be.' Then the chefe mayster of them answered and sayde / 'syr, we be of the realme of franuice, and we come nowe fro Ierusalem fro the pylgrymage of the holy sepulture: and the force of the wynd hathe caused vs to aryue here. 1 yf we ought to paye anythyng for comynge hether we are redy to pay it:' 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'syn' this is your adventure 8 ye ar hether3 welcome to me / syn ye be here aryued it is reason that I be comfortid and ayded by you. 1 I say vnto you that I byleue vpon 4our lorde god 4Iesu chryst / but as yet I was neuer chrystened / I shall 12 shew you, syrs, what ye shall do. yf ye wyl byleue me ye neuer came to 5 so fayre adventure / ye shall go with me into the castell here aboue / in which place I shall fornysshe you all with horse & harnays 6 / then 1 ye 16 shall abyde in the castell and make no noyse nor shewe youre selfe 7 / then 1 I wyll go to the hauen and garnysse a galey with all thynges necessary / in this towre there are many presoners 8 of 4 frensshe men who 20 were taken but late in this hauen, and many were slayn, & such as be taken as 9 presoners in this towne / and erly in the mornyng we wyl issue out of the castell into the towne and set fyre in dyuers places / then the 24 sarasyns wyll haue great busynes to rescue and stanche the fyre / 1 then we wyll enter into theyr howses & take all theyro gooddes and all the presoners and all the ryches that we can fynde in the towne we shal put it in to our 28 shyp: and yf the sarasyns come to asayle our shyppe with botes and barges / then lette vs defende our selfe 7 as well as we can / and fyrst of all let vs go and take all the shyppes that be in the hauen 1 when the cape. 32 tayne of ye .iii. shyppes hard Sorbare they praysed his aduyse and good cousayle: and they all with one

The captain tells Sorbare they come from France.

Sorbare bids them welcome.

He tells them of the French prisoners in the town, and how they may help him to set them free.

1 and. 2 seeing that. 3 after welcome. 4-4 omitted. 5 Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 2. 6 armour. 7 selues. 8 presoners after men. 9 are.

CHARL. ROM. IX. X X
acord concluded to do his pleasure / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'to y° entent that ye shall ybyeue me and to haue of me no maner of suspente / yf ye wyl haue knowlege what I am this yong man that ye se here be me can 4 enforme you' / 'syr, quod the patron, 'by your vysage it apereth well that all trouthe is in you, & how\(^1\) that ye be\(^2\) a noble man. therfore, syr, 3 all we put our selfe in\(^3\) your conducte and grace / but, syr, yf it 8 maye be your pleasure to shew vs what yonge lentylman is that we se there by you. 4 syr, ye shulde do me a great pleasure, for me thynke I shulde haue sene hym or\(^5\) this' / 'patron,' quod\(^6\) Sorbare, 'syn ye wyll knowe 12 it gladly I shall shewe you / syn\(^7\) he hath dyscouered hym selfe to me / knowe for trouthe\(^8\) he is sone to kynge Guaryn of Aragon / who by fortune of the se aryued here\(^1\)there as ye be\(^1\)/ and here parforce he was 16 taken and his men most parte slayn / and with hym was taken a noble damoiseell who is aboue in my castell' / when the patron and they that were with hym vnderstode that it was Florence sone to\(^9\) kynge Guarin\(^1\) 20 of Aragon they were therof ryght ioyfull, for they were all of the realme of Aragon, and sent forthe by the kynge to serche for Florence / they thanked\(^10\) our lorde Iesu chryst\(^10\) of the\(^11\) adventure that he had sent them 24 to fynde Florence there: whome they were sente to serche for / then they came to Florence and knelyd downe before them\(^12\) and sayd / 'a, syr, ye ought to thanke god that we haue founde you. we haue mar\text{-}nayle why ye hyde your name fro vs / for we be all sente fro kynge Guaryn youre father to serche for you / for yf god had not sente you this good fortune we shulde neuer haue hard any tydynge of you / nor haue 32

\[\begin{align*}
1 \text{omitted.} & \quad 2 \text{are.} & \quad 3-3 \text{we all commit ourselves to.} \\
4 \text{truly.} & \quad 5 \text{ere.} & \quad 6 \text{Fol. clxvi. col. 1.} \\
8 \text{that.} & \quad 9 \text{the.} & \quad 7 \text{seeing.} \\
10-10 \text{god.} & \quad 11 \text{their good.} \\
12 \text{him.}
\end{align*}\]
OF THE ATTACK ON SORBARE.

shewed the kynge your father any thyng to his pleasure.

Howe Sorbare and Florence & theyr company went in the towne and robbed and spoyled it / and so toke the se with great ioy and the damoysell Claryet with them, and toke theyr course to sayle to the realme of Aragon. Ca. C.lxx.

Hen the patron & his company knewe and sawe Florence the ioy that they made can not be recounted, nor the chere that they made to Florence when they were entered into the castell / wherof sorbare had great ioy : the same season whyles they made this great ioye and feste there was in Sorbare's company a sarasyn who vnderstode the language of frenche / and had well hard the enterpryse that the chrysten men were determyned to do / and also he saw well how sorbare was ioyned to theyr company / then he preuely departed, and hastely he went into the towne and shewed the burgesses and comons of the enterpryse that the chrysten men had concluded to do, & how that Sorbare was become chrysten / when the paynys vnderstode that / incontynent they went and armyd them and came to the castell thynkynge to have wonne it / but they founde there suche defence and resystence that they dyd there lytell to theyr pro-fyght / yet the assaullte endu ryd tyll the nexte daye / and at last were constrayned to withdrawe fro the castel a great space. Florence, who was within, cryed

1 to. 2 and triumph. 3 faire Ladie. 4 towards. 6 Fol. clxvi. col. 2. 6 feasting. 7 French language. 8 Sarasyns. 9 that which. 10 was small. 11 Fol. clxvi. back. col. 1. 12 vntill. 13 they.
to them and sayd / 'a, ye false velaynes, ye haue slayne
my men / but yf god suffer me to lyue theyr deth shal
be derely sold' / when the paynyms saw that they
coude not atayne to the castel / then they blew the 4
retrayte ; and euery man returned to theyr owne house.
Then Sorbare sayde to Florence and his company /
'syr, I aduyse you all to lepe on youre horses / for now
the paynyms are returned to theyr logynye wery of 8
theyr trawayle, and many of them sore hurte, and they
are in great fere; I knowe theyr condycyons well
ynoughe / and bycause that after trauayle and laboure
a man is febelyd & full of fere / and nowe euery man
is in his owne house and vnarmed to be at theyr ease /
therfore I counsayle that incontynent 2 Issue out and
set vpon the towe.' Then Florence and all the other
seyd / 'syr, as ye haue deuysed we ar reddy to do it / 16
for a more noble counsaile was neuer geuen ' / then euery
man made hym reddy and 3 so 3 issued out of the castell,
and Florence and Sorbare went before them and
sessyd 4 not ytll 5 they were entered into the towe, 20
for ther enter 6 coude not be defended, for 7 the castell
ioyned to a corner of the towe: then they made a
great crye and spred abrode in the towe and put in
fyre in dyuers places / and slewe downe the paynyms 24
in the stretes and market places / fynally, they dyd so
moche by force of armes that they brought the towe
vnder theyr subieccyon / and the enhabytauntes therof 8
slayne, 3 none spared, 3 and all the chrystn presoners 28
rescued, who had great ioy when they saw Florence,
theyr lord, whom they thought 9 had bene dede / great
ryches that day was wonne in that towe, the which
was geuen and departed to 10 them that had deserved it / 32
& Florence gaue to the chrystn presoners great ryches /

1 bought. 2 we. 3-3 omitted. 4 rested.
5 vntill. 6 entering. 7 because. 8 all.
9 Fol. clxvi. back, col 2. 10 vnto.
Ca. clxx.] HOW FLORENCE SETS OUT FOR ARRAGON.

thus when the towne was wonne and the ryches there of put into theyr shyppes / then¹ they all departed and set fyre on al the citye / then they went into the castel, 4 wheras the damoyssel Claryet was, who had great ioy when she sawe Florence her lover / ²then Sorbare, who had great desyre to departe³ thence, toke all the treasure and ryches & had it into theyr shyppes, and vytailde 8 them with all thynges necessary / then when it was daye in the mornynge they departed fro the castell & wente to theyr shyppes with great ioye / Florence holdynge his lover⁴ by the hande / sayde vnto her / 12 'dere lover,⁴ kynge Guaryn, my father, hath sente to seke for me all aboute bothe by londe and by water / and these that be come here with these shyppes were sent forthe by the kynge, my father, to serche for me' / 16 when the damoyssel hard how Florence wold brynge her agayne to his father she had great fere, and said, 'syr, ye knowe ryghte well the great hate and dys-pleasure that your father hathe to you and to² me / for god sake, syr, let vs go some other waye:' 'dere lover,'⁴ quod florence, 'haue no fere of my father; for ye⁵ wolde haue⁶ shewed youre name & what ye be or⁶ this tyme / it had easid vs of moche payne.' 'A, 20 syr,' quod she, 'it is not as ye wene it were' / 'well,' quod Florence, 'it is suffycyent to me as it is' / then they hoyset vp theyr sayles & so sayled tyll⁷ they were fare of fro that londe. ²Sorbare was ryght joyful in 23 that he had saued y⁶ chrysten men / and for the loun of Florence he forsoke his owne lawe and his countre / then⁸ he sayde to⁹ Florence / 'syr, my body and goodes I abandon to you in suche wyse that I shall 32 neuer leue you for lyfe nor deth'/ 'syr,' quod Florence, 'of the goodnes and trouthe that ye haue shewed me,
I thanke you, and I shall neuer haue peny worthe, but the halfe shalbe yours.'

Nowe let vs leue spekyngge of them saylynge joyfully on the see towards Aragon / and let vs speke of kynge Guayrn, who was besegid within ye citye of Courtoys by his brother in lawe, the kynge of Nauerne.

How kyng Huon, kynge of the fayrey, sente two of his knyghtes to the two kynges / and howe he apere betwene them with a great nombre / and of the peas that he made betwene them.

The truce between the king of Navarre and King Guayrn is within two days of ending.

A mysterious voice rises from the earth and addresses the combatants.

Ell haue ye harde before howe that after the kynge of Nauerne had taken kynge Guayrn presoner, and that truse was taken for a sartayne space / and then eche of them to shewe theyr powers / so it fell that two dayes before the brekyng vp of ye truse, and that theyr aydes and pursaunces were assembelyd together: the one partye within the citye and the other without with the kyng of Nauerne, who sore threatened kynge Guayrn / bycause he had banysshed awaye his sone Florence, his nephue / and sayd he had rather dye then such an yll kyng shulde not be punysshed / this kyng of Nauerne had assembelyd suche a nombre of people that the valayes and hylees were couered with men of warre / & ye nyght before the truse brake vp there was hard in the ayre a ferfull voyse / the whiche when it began to speke / the erth trymbelyd and thondered and lyghtened so that all they that were there assembelyd / as well they within as without had suche fere that they were lykely to haue ryn awaye / then the voyse began to speke /
and sayde / 'syrs, ye that be here in the feld redy to fyght of bothe partyes make no haste to ioyne together in batayle, for suche ayde and socoure shall be sent to you bothe that ye shall be all ioyfull ' / therwith the voyce passed awaye & was hard no more, whereby both partyes wer abasshed, and all the nyght they were in their prayers / besechyng 2our lord Iesu chryste 2 to 8 ayde and socoure them / kyng Guaryn was sore abasshid when he hard the voyce, and sayde / ' O, 3very god, 3 if this 4 people that is 5 assembelyd be slayne by my meanes and for me / my sowle shall be lost for ever / 12 Alas, my sone Florence, I was yll cousailed when I chasyd you awaye fro me, I dyd great syn when I dyd 6 put you in pryson, I am very 7 of my lyfe / it 8skylleth the not of my dethe 8 / I am more sory for you, 16 my dere sone, whome I have betrayed and dreuyn away with out 9 cause / Alas, by my meanes this realme shall be wasted & dystroyed, ye whiche ye ought to haue after me ' / therwith he swouned amonghe his lordes, so 10 20 they all thoughte he had bene dede, wherof they sore complayned / 11at last the kyng came agayne to hymselfe / then his lordes comforted hym / and so had 12 hym to here mas, 13 and after mas 13 there apered sodaynely 24 14 before hym two goodly yonge knyghtes / the one was Gloryand and the other Malabron / they were two knyghtes of the fayrey / then they all smylynge saluted the kyng, and sayde / 'syr, 15 kynghe Huon of Burdeaux 28 salutethe the by vs, he is kyng of all the fayrey, 11 he wyll come to ayd the and to defende thy lond: and 16 he wyll that thou knowest / how 10 he is father to ye 8 fayre damoysel Claryyet, whom thou namest the newe founde 32 damoysel, and bycause thou hast banisshed fro the

It promises a speedy and a peaceful settlement of the dispute between them.

King Guaryn feels remorse for having banished his son.

Two goodly yonge knights suddenly approach him. They are the fairies Gloryand and Malabron, and promise the King Huon's aid.

1 at. 2 God. 3 Good Lord. 4 these. 5 are. 6 omitted. 7 wearie. 8-8 is no matter though I die, and. 9 a. 10 that. 11 and. 12 bad. 13 Service. 14 Fol. clxvii. back, col. 1. 15 Royall. 16 also.
They tell of the marriage he will make between Florence and Clariet.

The two fairies return to Huon and remind him of the peril of Florence and Clariet on the sea. Huon promises to go to Courtois with a mighty army.

Huon tells Esclaramonde.

thy sone Florence / he wyl come to the to make the peas betwene the and thy brother in lawe the kyng of nauerne / & he wyl make the maryage betwene thy sone Florence and Claryet his daughter' / when kyng 4 Guaryn harde the knyght of the fayrey he had such joy at his hart that his wyster not what to do nor 1 saye / 2 he came to the knyght and embraced hym, all wepynge, and sayde / 'syrs, knowe for trouthe, my 8 body, my lyfe, and all that I haue I submyttte it into the handes of ye ' good kyng Huon to do therwith at his pleasure' / with those wordes the .ii. knyghtes vanysshed awaye, no man wyster how nor whether, so 3 12 evey man had great marnayle / kyng Guaryn and his lorde lyfte vp theyr handes to the heuen, makkyng the synge of the crosse, recommaundyng themselfe to 4 our lorde 4 Iesu chryste / and ye 6 two knyghtes restyd 16 not tyll 5 they cam to the citye of Momure to kyng Huon, and shewed hym what they had done & sayd to kyng Guaryn / and shewed Huon of the daye of batayle that was taken betwene the two kynges, and sayde / 20 'syr, haue petye of Florence and of Claryet, your daughter, who are as nowe on the see in a great tempestat' / then Huon sayd / 'surely they and I shal be shortly before 6 the citye of Courtoys with suche 4 a 24 nombre of people that the erthe shall be coueryd with them / to the entent that yf any 7 of these 8 kynges wyll 4 do contrary to my wyll I shall dystroye hym for euer / for shortly I wyll that my daughter Claryet 28 shal be duches of Burdeleys / 2 she is so fayre that there is none lyke her, & I shall 9 shew the great loue that I haue 10 to her' / then Huon called to hym Esclaramonde, and sayde: 'lady, ye shall se this daye the 32 thynge that ye 11 desyre 4 sore 4 to se, that is your

1 or. 2 and. 3 that. 4–4 omitted. 5 vntill. 6 Fol. clxvii. back, col. 2. 7 either. 8 those two. 9 wil. 10 beare. 11 much.
daughter Claryet / to whome I gyue her in \(^1\) gyfte, that she shall be byloued of every man, and I wyll that fro hense forthe she shall gyue largely gyftes & rewardes to ladies, damoyeselles, knyghtes, and squyres; for I wyll that fro henseforth she haue her pleasure with out sufferynge of any more yll or parell, for she hath suffered ynoughe' / this daye was fayre and clere, and with in ye citye of courtoys there was moche\(^2\) people assembluyd / and they were in great deuocyon / some made masses\(^3\) to be song, and some were confessed and ordered them selues towards the batayle. Then kyng Guaryn commanded every man to lepe on\(^4\) theyr horses redy armyd / then\(^5\) the kyng hym selfe mounted \(^6\) and so\(^6\) issued out of the citye / and commanded his constable and marshalles to ordayne .iii. batayles in the name of god \(^7\) and saynt Gorge.\(^7\) Kyng Guaryn had assembluyd a great nombre of men, he had mo then l.M. men / there ye myght haue sene ladyes & damoyeselles and burgesses / that wepte for fere of theyr frendes, \(^7\)husbondes / fathers, and bretherne,\(^7\) whome they sawe goynge to\(^8\) the batayle warde\(^7\) / \(^8\)they went all to ye walles \(^7\)and the\(^7\) colleges & churches \(^9\)with theyr crosses and baners went \(^10\) on processyon praying\(^9\) for the good sped of theyr kyng and of theyr frendes. Now let vs leue spekyng of these two kynges, who were redy in the feldes rengyd in order of batayle, the one agaynste the other / and let vs speke of kyng Huon \(/\) who called before hym all his lordes of the fayrey / there was the fayre esclaramonde, and Gloryand, and Malabron, and many other knyghtes of the fayrey / then kyng Huon sayde / 'syrs, ye all know well that by the wyll of god / kyng Oberon whyles he leued gaue me all his realme / and syngnory and pusance

\(^1\) the. \(^2\) many. \(^3\) Servue. \(^4\) vpon. \(^5\) and. \(^6\) then they. \(^7\) omitted. \(^8\) towards. \(^9\) to pray to God. \(^10\) Fol. clxviii. col. 1.
He bids them prepare for war.

He orders a wondrous tent for himself.

Suddenly the fairy band, with Huon at its head, is transported to the scene of the warfare between King Guaryn and the king of Navarre.

that he had over all the fayrey of the worlde / therby then I may haue all my commandementes fulsylyd / then syn god hath geuen me this gyfte / I wyll not suffer the manslauter and murder that is lyke to be between the two kynges of Aragon and Nauerne / therfore I wysshe myself with two .C.M. men wel armyd and rychely besene and all mounted on good horses / and also I wysshe to haue as many on fote2 / furnysshed with bowes and crosbowes. Also I wysshe a .C.M. to be aparyled in gownes of cloth of gold and sylke / and also I wysshe for my doughter Claryet, whome I haue lefte a longe tyme in payne and mysery, therof I repente me / for myne entencyon is to mary her to Florence, son to kynge Guaryn of Aragon, the whiche Florence is so fayre : so hardy and so humble and curtoyse that in all the worlde there is none lyke hym / I wysshe hym & al his company and Sorbare with him to be at the haun of courtoyse. Also I wysshe my tente in the medow betwene the hostes of the two kynges, and I wyl that my tent be suche that there be none lyke it in all the worlde, and on the top thereof I wyll there be pyght a dragon of fyne golde / kynge Huon had no soner made his wysshe but he and all his company were there as he had deuysed. when the kynge of Nauerne sawe so much people and so many tentes and pauylyons so nere hym / and that he sawe the ryche and pusaunt pauylyon of kynge Huons with the flambynge dragon / he was greatly dismayed. Then he called his lorde and knyghtes and sayd / 'syrs, behold what people are yonder before us logyng, me thynke I neuer sawe so many together in all my lyfe / I wote not what it maye be, I am in doubt / then he called to hym two knyghtes, and said / 'syrs, go

1 by seeming. 2 on fote after crosbowes. 3 vpon. 4 Fol. clxviii. col. 2. 5 many. 6 dismayed. 7 should. 8 vnto.
Ca. clxxi.] HUON ARRANGES PEACE BETWEEN THE TWO KINGS. 681

the other and knowe what people they be & what they meane: or whether they be frendes or enemyes, and who is chefe over them.' 4 'Syr,' quod ye two knyghtes, we wyll not go thether, for we knowe not whether they be oure enemyes or not' / when the kyng of Nauerne undersytode that those knyghtes nor none other wolde go thether he was sorrowful / as the kyng was thus deuysynge / thether came the two knyghtes of the fayrey, Gloryand and Malabron / then Gloryand sayd / 'syr,' kyng of Nauerne, kyng Huon of Burdeaux hath sent vs to you, and commaundeth you that ye make peas betwene you & kyng Guaryn, for he wyll gyue his daughter Claryet to your nephe Florence, who is the fayrest lady of ye world / when the kyng of Nauerne undersytode the three two messangers sente fro kyng Huon, he was ryght ioyful / and commaundeth all his lorde to go with hym to kyng Huon / they obeyed his commandement and rode with hym tylly he came before the ryche paulyyon of kynges Huons / wheras they alyghted and were wel receyued; then the kyng of Nauerne saluted kyng Huon / who sayde, 'syr, ye be welcome' / then ye kyng of Nauerne knelyd downe before kyng Huon & sayde, 'syr, I am redy to ful-fyll your pleasure:' then Gloryand toke the kyng of Nauerne by the arme and reysyd hym vp / and set hym downe by kyng Huon and Esclaramonde: then kyng Huon sente for kyng Guaryn / who incontynten came to hym accompanied with a M. knyghtes / when he was come he saluted kyng Huon and sayde, 'syr, ye be welcome into my countre of Aragon, the whiche I offer to you to do therwith at your pleasure / and, syr, all that ye haue commaundedy me to do by your two knyghtes I am redy to acomplysshe,' and there he shewed all wepyng to kyng Huon / the occasyon

1 and. 2 omitted. 3 these. 4 untill. 5 Fol. clxviii. back, col. 1. 6 are. 7 after Huon.

The king of Navarre's knights fear to approach the new-comers.

Gloriand and Malabron come to him, and bring commands from Huon to make peace with King Guaryn.

With all his lords he goes to Huon's tent.

Huon sends for King Guaryn.

Guaryn also promises to submit to Huon, and rehearses the causes of the war.
of the warre, and of his sone Florence, who for the loute of a new found damoysell was put in pryson, wherof he repented him, for he said "there was not a fayrer damoysell in the worlde, & for the loute of her Florence, my son, is departed fro me, & I thinke I shall neuer se hym more." 'Syr' kynge Guaryn,' quod Huon, 'know for trouth shortly ye shall se them both come hether to me / for I wyll mary them to together: the damoysell is my daughter, and 'name Claryet / and I wyll ye knowe she is noble and issued of a royall lynage / none more noble in this countre / she hathe bought her desteny ryght derely / when kynge Guaryn knew that the noble damoysel was daughter to kynge Huon, and that he wolde make a maryage betwene her and his sone Florence, and that they shulde come thether shortly / he was neuer so ioyfull in all his lyfe before: then he knelyd downe before kynge Huon, and cryed hym marcy, and sayde / 'a, syr, howe maye it be that in myne old dayes suche a grace may come to me, as to haue againe my dere sone / & that the noble damoysel whome I haue done so moche yll vnto shall be his wyfe.' Then kynge Huon rose vp and sayd / 'syr' kynge, haue no doubt but that ye shall haue your sone / for I canne not so sone wysshe for hym / but they shall be with me where soeuer they be in the world / wher of all they that were presente had great maruayle / 'syr,' quod the quene Esclaramonde, 'when shal the owre come that I myght se my dere daughter Claryet / syr, ye knowe well I am come hether with you for none other cause:' 'dame,' quod Huon, 'ye shall se her shortly.'
Ca. clxxii. HOW FLORENCE AND CLARLET COME BEFORE HUON. 683

How Florence and Claryet aryued & their company, and came to kynge Huon, and of the great ioye that was made at theyr company / and there they were wedded together and the peas confermyd betwene ye two kynges.

Hen kynge Huon sawe the queyne his wyfe wepe his harte tendered and sayde / 'a, my dere daughter Claryet, great petye I haue of you and of Florence the hardy. I wysshe you bothe and all your company here at the porte on the see-syde / as rychely aparayled as euer was quene or prynces departynge out of theyr house to be maryed / & that with you there be ladyes and damoyselles rychely aparayled: and of the fayrest that be in my realme of the fayrey: he had no soner made his wysshe but that shyppes and galeys aryued at the porte: & anone Florence and Claryet were in the medow rychely acompanyed with trompettys: tabours: harpes: vyalles: and lutes and all other instrumentes, the which sowned so melodyously that it semyd to all the herers that they were rauysshed into paradyse, & also there were ladyes and damoyselles & knyghtes of the fayre syngynge ryght swetely / the herers semyd to be aungelles of paradyse / and they were aparayled riche, garnisshed with precyous stones, so that with yon sonne strykynge on them: they shynyd in such wyse that who souer had sene them wold haue thought that god and all the court of paradyse had bene there assembelyd / thus Florence came with .iii. M. men makynge great ioye. After came rydyngen ye fayre

1 there with. 2 how. 3 Fol. clxix. col. 1. 4 omitted. 5 thought them. 6 and. 7 shining. 8 vpon. 9 glittered. 10 him.
Claryet on a ryche palfrey ambelynge, so fresshely harnaysyd and rychely aparayled that in all the worlde there was none suche: the harnay full of belles of syluer / makyne so swete that maruayle it was to here them; yf I shulde dyscryue the beautye & ryches that was on her palfrey, it shulde be to longe to reherse / this lady Claryet was accompanied with .ii. notable ladys of the fayrey / the one was Morgan, and the other Oryand / who came syngynge after Claryet. Then after came the lady Transelyne with many damoysels of ye fayrey / great ioye there was made: then kynge Huon sayd to Esclaramonde his wyfe / 'dame, it is tyme that ye depart, for I se yonder comynge to vs warde my doughter Claryet and Florence / when Esclaramonde harde that she was ryghte ioyfull for the great desyre that she had to se her daughter: the quene went forth hyely acompanied / then kynge Huon & the other .ii. kynges with all theyr companyses, with baners dysplayed with great ioye & treumphe wente to mete Florence and Claryet: ye may well thynke that kynge Guaryn had great ioye of the comynge of his sone, and sawe suche an assemble mete there together to receiue him. he deuoutly thanked our lord Iesu christ. Thus these kynges & prynces wente to mete these .ii. yonge parsons rychely accompanied / so7 great ioy had Claryet when she saw the quene her mother before her that she wepte for inwarde ioye that she had / & when the quene sawe her daughter she enbrased and kissed her often tymes, and of a great season none of them coud speke to other, theyr hertes were so ouer come for ioye / then kynge Huon came & toke his doughter out of the quenes armes / and kyssed her mother then .xx. tymes / Then
kynge Guaryn came to Florence & sayd, 'dere sorne, I haue sore trespassed agaynst you; in that wrongfully I put you into my presone, I complayne greatly to you of your vnkle the kynge of Nauerne who hath wasted your countre / syr, quod Florence, 'I requyre you pardon my vnkle / reason is that I shulde be content that peas be made betwen you / and, syr, I requyre you gyue me this damoysel in maryage.'

'son,' quod kynge Guaryn: be in suerte ye shall haue her & none other / for a more noble lady can not be founde in this .x. realmes / syr, quod Florence,

12'I thanke you' thus these ii. companyes ioyned togethér / and the kynge of Nauerne came to his nephue Florence, and enbrasyd hym and sayd / 'fayre nephue, of your retourne I am ryghte ioyous' / syr, quod he,

16'I am well plesed with the peas that is made betwene my father and you' / Thus they rode tyll they came to the tentes & there alyghtyd then kynge Huon called the other two kynes and sayde / 'syrs, howe saye you, wyll ye abyde by myne aduyce and put into myne handes the dyscorde that hath the bene betwene you?' / they answeryd they were content to do as he wold haue them. Then kynge Huon sayd / 'syrs, then my wyll is that peas and acorde be betwene you and all yours' / and they lyberally agreed therto, wherof kynge Huon was ioyfull. Then kynge Huon desyred Florence to shewe his aduenture, and how he was rescued by sorbare. Then Florence shewed al his aduertures: ye other kynes were ryght ioyfull to here it, and all other that harde it, and greatly praysed Sorbare for his dede: and honorid hym greatly and made hym great feaste and chere / and caused hym to be chrystened.

---

1 vnto. 2 much. 3 and. 4 to. 5 it is. 6 omitted. 7 Fol. clxix. back, col. 1. 8 desire. 9 that. 10 ioyfull. 11 vntill. 12 dyd. 13 praise. 14 moch. 15 feasting.
Then kyng Huon sayd to the .ii. kynges, 'Syrs, I wyll that presently eche of you do pardon other\(^1\) all yll wyll.' 'Syr;' quod they, 'we are redy to do it,' & so eche of them enbrasyd other / wherof kyng Huon had 4 great ioye, and so had all other lordys and knyghtes that were there assembelyd / \(^2\) 'syr\(^2\) kyng Guaryn,' quod Huon / 'incontynent I wyll that your sone Florence haue 3 my daughter in maryage / and I geue 8 them the citye of Burdeaux / Blames / & Geronyl, and all the apendantes theerto belongynge / when kyng Guaryn hard the offer that kyng Huon 4 made to his sone Florence he thankyd hym 5 with good harte,\(^5\) and 12 so dyd all the other lordes / who alowed greatly that maryage. \(^6\) Kynge Guaryn, \(^2\) when he 2 saw the honour, loue, and courtoysye that\(^7\) Huon dyd to Florence his sone, he knelyd downe and sayde / 'syr, my chylde 16 and yours I comitye into your handes / vse them at your pleasure' / then by consente of bothe fathers they were fyausend\(^8\) and spwased together all in one daye / the fest and solemnnyte of this maryage endured 20 .viii. dayes / the kyng of Nauerne gane to\(^9\) Florence his realme of Nauerne to possede\(^10\) and enioye after his discease : of the festes and iustes and tournays that was made that .viii. dayes I make no mencion therof, for it 24 were ouer longe to reherse / then kyng Huon gane his daughter 2 Claryet\(^2\) .xxx. somers charged \(\text{with gold & great ryches} / \) wherby the ioye encressyd of all partyes / then the lordes and the other people of Aragon came to 28 kyng Huon, and all wepyng they desyryd hym to haue petye and compassyon of them / and that he myght fynd some meanes \(\text{that they myght haue some recompense for y^6 great hurtes & damages that they had} \) 32 receyuyd by reason of the warre betwene these .ii.

\(^1\) of.  \(^2\) \(\text{omitted.}\)  \(^3\) Fol. clxix. back, col. 2.  \(^4\) had.  
\(^5\) hartely.  \(^6\) When.  \(^7\) Kinge.  \(^8\) wedded.  
\(^9\) vnto.  \(^10\) possess.
kynges, wherby they were nere dystroyed by the Nauernoys / when quene Esclaramond hard ye people complayn / she enbrased her husband and sayd / 'syr, I rekyure you for ye loue of our children / to haue petye of this people who requyrethe for ayde / for in you is all theyr trust' / 'dame,' quod Huon, 'I shall incontynent shew what grace I shall do for the loue of you.' then kyng Huon commaunded all the peopel to knele downe, then he sayd / 'syr, all ye that be here assembelyd, to ye entent that ye shall not thinke that the thynge that I wyll do shuld be any wychecrafte or yllusyon / but that it is by ye wyll of our lorde Iesu chryst / the gyfte that kyng Oberon gaue me or he dyed, the which was all the pusaunce & dyngnyte that he had in all the fayrey of the worlde / therfore knowe that by the pusaunce and dyngnyte that our lorde Iesu chryst made kyng Oberon my predyssessor to gyue me / I will that this realme of Aragon, wheras it hath had domage by reason of the warre, so that the realme is sore brent and wastyd, I wyll that it be agayne in the same case as it was before any warre began, and that all castelles and houses brente or beten donne be better. Then they were before / and I wyll that fro hensforthe euery man serue god & thanke hym of this grace that he hathe sente you / then he lyfte vp his hande and blessyd all the people with the syngne of the crosse / as sone as he had done his blessynge euery thynge was as he had deyysed throughe all the realme. Thus was ye wyll of our lorde Iesu chryste at the instaunce and prayer of noble kyng Huon.

Howe kyng Huon and quene Esclaramond departed, and howe he gaue great gyftes

1 desire. 2 your. 3 Madame. 4 Fol. clxx. col. 1. 5 will. 6 and. 7 before. 8-8 god. 9 burnt. 10 out. 11-11 omitted. 12 the. 13 rich.

CHARL. ROM. IX.
to the two kynges, and to al other lordis and ladyes, & damoyselles / and of the sorowe that was betwene the mother and the daughter at theyr departynge.

Ca. C.lxxiii.

Hen kenge Huon had made his prayers to our lorde Iesu chryst, and that his bone was graunted, he thankyd god / suche festes, iustys and tournays as was made there duryenge the fest / was neuer sene nor harde of in no cronycle here before / then kynge Huon made hym redy to departe / he gaue gyftes or he departed to them that were there, & specyally to Sorbare, to whome he recom- maunded his doughter Claryet, and desyred hym not to leue her / 'syr;' quod Sorbare, 'the great loue that I haue to you constraynethe me neuer to forsake her nor them that shall come of her, as long as lyfe is in my body' / when que[ne] Esclaramond vnderstode the departynge of her lorde Huon / & sawe that she must leue her doughter, she had great sorowe at her harte, and so all wepyng she came to her doughter, and sayde / 'ryghte dere doughter, ye ought greatly to thanke our lorde god Iesu chryst in that he hathe cast you out of so many parayles, & nowe to haue great honoure, & to be exalted lyke a rych & a pusant lady / therfore, always set your harte on god, & serue & loue him ; be lyberall to them that be poore / nor mocke no parsone / nor be no iangeler agaynst your husband / nor harken to non yl sayers, fle fro flaters / loue your husband, kepe youreselfe always trewe / to the entente that none yl reporte be made of you. Marke
wel this docryne / for I can not tell yeuer I shall se you agayne or not.' when the fayre Claryet hard her mother, sodaynely she began to wepe, and sayd /

'O my ryght dere lady and mother, y6 departynge of you & of the kyng my father fro me oughte sore to greue me, syn we haue ben together so lytel1 a seson2 / for your 3 departynge is to me so greuable that yt ys great payne to me to bere it ' / then the mother and the daughter clyppyde and kyssyd ech other mo then .xx. tymes, and oftener wold haue don &4 kyng Huon had not bene / for then he toke his daughter Claryet in his armes and kyssyd her often tymes, tenderly wepyng, By cause he knewe well he shulde neuer se her after5; then he lyfte vp his hande and gane her and her husbonde his blyssyng, and shewyd them many fayre examples and doctrynes. Then the noble quene Esclaramonde knelyd downe & prayed kyng Huon, hyr husband, that he wold counsell and aduertyse them what they shuld do. 'dam,'6 quod Huon, ryse vp, for suche petye I haue of them and of you that nere hand my harte faylethe me / 7I tary here ouer6 longe / 9I muste nedys departe; come hether my10 daughter and kysse me / and sone Florence, with you I leue my daughter / kepe her well as longe as god wyll suffer her to be with you' / then kyng Huon toke leue of the two kynges, who were ryght sorowfull of his departynge / and he desyeryd then alwayes to be good louers together / and so toke his leue, and sayde, 'I wysshe myselfe and11 my quene, and all my company, to be in my palays of Momur' / he had no soner spoken the word but that he was there / and sodaynly he11 vanysshed fro the two kynges, wherof they and all other were greatly abasshyd, so that they wyst not

1 small. 2 time. 3 Fol. clxx. back, col. 1. 4 if. 5 againe. 6 Madame. 7 and. 8 too. 9 for. 10 deere. 11 omitted.
The King of Navarre takes leave of King Guayn.

what to saye, they had thought it had bene but a dreme, but by the reason of the great giftes and riches that he had lefte behyn him amonge them. Then after al these thynges done the kyng of Nauerne toke leue of kyng Guayn, and departed; and his nephue Florence rode with hym iii. leges, and then returned to courtøyse, to Claryet his wyfe, and there they taryed two monethes in great ioy and solas. Then after a sartayyne space kyng Guayn, who was sore agyd and auncyente, toke a sykenes, wherby he passyd out of this world / for whose dethe Florence his sone, and Claryet, wept many a salt tere. Then he was buryed with great solemnyte / then by all the lordes and peers of the realme Florence was chosen & crowned kyng, and Claryet quene / great solempnyte and ioy was made at theyr coronacyon. Thus with great ioye & gladnes Florence and Claryet were together, so that at the laste Claryet was great with chylde / wherof Florence and all the noblemen and comons of the realme were ioyfull, & thankyd our lord Iesu chryste. and when the tyme came the quene was brought a bedde of a fayre doughter, wherof bothe father and mother were ioyfull / the whiche ioye within a whyle after tornyd to sore wepyng & great heuynes, as ye shall here after.'

How quene Claryet was brought a bed of a doughter / at which delyueraunce the quene dyed / and howe when the yonge damoysell cam to the age of xv. yere, the king her father wolde haue had her in maryage, wher with al his lordes were sore trowbelyd. Ca. C.lxxiii. 32

1 and. 2 omitted. 3 Fol. clxx. back, col. 2. 4-4 verie old. 5-5 god. 6 right. 7 hereafter.
Hen kyng Florence was aduertysyd that his quene was delyuered of a doughter, he thankyd god / the chyld was borne to the christenynge in to the chefe church, and was namyd yde; the ioy of the comyng of this chyld cost derely to the quene her mother, for by reason of the Payne that she enduryd she departed out of this lyfe, and so dyed / ye chylde was brought to kyng Florence; 2 when he sawe her he was ioyfull, and demaundyd how her mother dyd / and they thought that the mater coude not be hyden nor kepte secrete, they sayd / 'syr, your quene is departed to god' / when the kyng harde that he fell downe in a swoune, so that euery man fered he had bene dede / 2 when he came to hymselfe he sayd / 'a, my ryghte dere louer, 3 in an ylloure ye were borne; for your sake I had forgotten all Payne, and thought to haue liued in rest with ye / me thynke ye be ranysshed & stollen awaye fro me / a, false deth, thou arte hardy to take fro me that thynge that 4 I louyd best / the most fayrest, most trewest, and most 6 swetest creature leuynge' / then his lordes came and comforted hym; the cryes, complayntes, and wepynges rose thrughe the citye, all ladyes, and damoyselles, & 6 burgesses, and maydens, and all the comons made great lamentacyons; that nyght the quene was wachyd, & the nexte mornynge, with great cryes & wepynges, the quene was borne into ye chefe churche; her obsequy was done notably, and so layd in a rych sepulture / ye sorow that the kyng made was neuer none such sene / the kyng was vysyted by ye lordes of his realme, but they coude not cause hym to take any solas, but alonly to go now and then to se his dere doughter, ye lady yde / and euer when he sawe her his sorowe renewyd / 2 she was Clariet is buried.

1 Fol. clxxi. col. 1. 2 and. 3 Lone. 4 which. 5 Fol. clxxi. col. 2. 6 omitted. 7 throughout.
wel norysshed and broughte vp, and when she came to
the age of .xv. yere she was beautyfull / wyse, and
sage, for she was brought vp with .iii. noble ladyes,
and ordered as it apartayned to a kynges chylde / 1 her
father, kyng Florence, louyd her so well that he coued
neuer be satysfyed with lokyng vpon her / oftentymes
he kyssed her holdynge her in his armes, he wolde
neuer mary agayne for loue of her / so moche grew and
encreased this noble lady 2 yde, that she came to the age
of .xv. yere complete / the fresshe beantey & bunte
that was in her, yf I shulde dyscryue it, it shuld 3 be
ouer long to reverse, but I dare wel say that in beauty
as then she passyd all other women of y e worlde / for
god & nature had employed al theyr study to forme
her / ther was neuer 4 man that saw her but that 2
louyd her, 5 & so dyd her father; so that on a day that
kyne had his lordes aboute hym / 5 the one of them
was Sorbare, 5 whome the kyng louyd derely / 1 the
kynge, sayng his 6 daughter yde growe and encrese
in all vertues / he sayde to his lordes / 'syrs, it were
20 good that there were some wyfe found out for me /
whome I wyll mary yf any suche can be found in all
condyconys lyke to her that I had before' / when
his lordes harde the kyng they were ioyful in that the
24 kyng wolde mary agayne / Alas, they knewe not the
kynges inward entencyon / but shortly after they
knew it, wherby moche yll and myschefe came after, 8
and many a man slaine, and many a churche brente, 9 28
as ye shall here after 10 / Then the kyng wrote and
sent to all hys lordys and knyghtes of his realme
to com to his court at a daye assyngnyd ; 1 when they
were al com to the palays ther they founde the kyng, 32

1 and. 2 omitted. 3 would. 4 any.
5-5 and Sorbare was amonge them.
6 Fol. clxxi. back, col. 1. 7 the kyng. 8 afterward.
9 burnt. 10 hereafter.
who humbly reseyuid them, and made them great fest, & had them to dyuer withe hym / when the dyner was done / the kyng and all his lordys went 4 in to a gardeyne, were as ye kynge wolde kepe hys counseylly; 2 when they were all there and the kynge set in his sete, he sayde / 'syrs, ye know well I haue no mo children but a daughter, who hathe bene desyred 8 in maryage by dyuers kynes and prynces / but I wolde not consent to mary her / nor I thought not to mary myselfe for 3 loue of her mother, whome I so derely louyd / but now I am in wyl to be maryed 4 12 and to take a wyfe / so 5 she be semblable to her that is departed / and therfore I haue sente for you to shewe you my wyl and pleasure.' when his lordes hard hym they wer ioyfull, & sayd / 'syrs, knowe for trouthe 16 there is no woman leuynge in chrystendome that 6 yf ye wyl haue her, ye shal, ye shal be neuer so fayre or so hye 7a parage 7 / & therfore, syr, thynke in your selfe whether ye wyl that we shall go to get you a wyfe.'

20 8 'Syrs,' quod the kynge, 'in this matere ye shall not nede to take 9 great payne 9 / for ye wyfe that I wyl haue is not far 10 hence; it lyethe in me to haue her yf I lyst' / 'syrs,' quod the lordes, 'wyl it please you 24 to name her that shall be so happy' / 'syrs,' quod ye kynge, 'it is my daughter yde whom I wyl take to my wyfe, for the great loue that I had to her mother' / when the lordes hard that they regardyd 11 eche other / 28 blessyng them selues of the orryble and detestable wordes of the kynge, and beheld 12 him maruaylously. Then Sorbare, who was of the kynges preuy counsaile, began to speke, and sayde / 'a, syr, god forbede that 32 suche a shame shulde come to you / for it is worse then

1 feasting. 2 and. 3 the. 4-4 minded to marie. 5 that. 6 but. 7-7 of Lyneage. 8 Fol. clxxi. back. col. 2. 9-9 any paines. 10 from. 11 beheld. 12 looked on.

The lords approve his proposal to marry a second time.

He announces his intention of wedding Ide.

The lords are horror-stricken, and Sorbare reproaches him for meditating so unnatural a crime.
bogery¹ to hym that wyll polute his owne proper blode² by hymselfe engendered / ye shulde not be worthy to syt in a chayre royall /³ ye ought to be the myrrour & ensample to other men how they shulde⁴ lyue / wyll you then breke the law that god hath geuen vs / put fro you that crewelte, ye shall fynde no man wyll prayse you in your so doynge or thynkynge’ / when the kyng hard sorbare he beheld hym sore,⁴ and ⁸ sayd / ‘sorbare, knowe for trouthe but that I fynde⁵ myselfe moche bounde to⁶ you, I wolde stryke of thy hede / and there is no man that speketh to the contrary / but I shal put hym to dethe.’ Then all the 12 lordes together sayde to the kyng / ‘syr, do as ye lyst⁸ / Sorbare hathe sayd as a noble man ought to do, for yf ye do otherwyse ye ar not worthy to bere a crowne’ / & so helde theyr peas; they durst speke no ¹⁶ more for fere of him, & also bycause they thought suerly⁹ the deuyl was within hym to mosyon¹⁰ such a¹¹ mater / when ye kynge hard the wyll of his lordes / hastily¹² he sent for his daughter / who came with a smy¹³lynge countenaunce, not knowynge¹⁴ the vn-reasonable wyll of the kynge her father / ³when she came before hym she knelyd downe / the kynge toke her vp & set her bytwene his armes, and kyssed her ²⁴ more then .xx. tymes / the lady knewe no thynge ¹⁵ ye kynges¹⁵ entencyon none other wyse but that she thought he dyd it but as a father ought to do with his chylde. the lordes then¹⁶ sayd softlye one to another / ²⁸ ‘A, vnhappy kynge, his thoughtes be farre vnlyke to his doughters / for yf she were here alone he wolde dys-honest¹⁷ her, althoughe he¹⁸ be her¹⁹ owne father²⁰,’

¹ heathen.  ² Daughter.  ³ and.  ⁴ angrily.  ⁵ hold.  ⁶ vnto.  ⁷ your.  ⁸ please.  ⁹ that.  ¹⁰ any.  ¹¹ omitted.  ¹² hastily after Daughter.  ¹³ Fol. clxxii. col. 1.  ¹⁴ of.  ¹⁵–¹⁶ her father’s.  ¹⁷ dishonour.  ¹⁸ she.  ¹⁹ his.  ²⁰ daughter.
y*e kynge, seynge his doughter yde so excellent fayre, he sayde to hymselfe without he hadde his doughter in maryage he shulde dye for the kynge behelde her, and made her to syt downe by hym, and sayde, 'my dere doughter, ye are as an orpheline on the mothers syde / wherfore I haue great petye of you that ye haue lost her / and ye resemble so moche your mother / that I thyncke when I se you in the face that I se her before me, wherfore I love you the better, and therfore it is my wyll to take you to my wyfe, for other then you I wyll none wed.'

Of the great sorow that the damoysel yde made when she hard her father how he wolde haue her in maryage / and howe by the meanes of a noble lady and Sorbare, she departed at midnyght, & went at the adventure that god wolde sende her.

Ca. C.lxxv.

Hen y*e damoysel hard her father her fresshe red couloure in her face became pale & wan, she cast downe her loke to the erthe, & sayd, 'a, my ryght dere fader, take hede what ye say, for yf ye be hard of them that be here presente / ye shall be greatly blamed.' Then the damoysel wold haue resen vp to haue gone fro her father, but the kynge toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My doughter, make no daunger nor refuse to folowe my wyll / for ye sle me for the loue that I bere you' / then all the lordys knelyd downe before the kynge, and helde vp

1 that. 2 with. 3 and. 4 and therefore. 5 for this cause. 6—6 for I will haue none other in mariage. 7 Damsell. 8 Fol. clxxii. col. 2. 9—9 omitted.
theyr handes / and desyred the kynge for his owne welthe and honour that he wolde haue petye of hymselfe & of his daughter, and that he wold neuer thynke to do suche a dede / for yf he dyd he shulde neuer be 4 set by after: when the kynge harde his lordes how they resoned with hym to haue tourned his mynde / he answered as a man full of felony and Ire, and sayd, that in the dyspyte of them all, whether they wolde or 8 not, he wolde haue her to his wyfe / and that yf there were any so hardly to speke to hym to the contrary, he wolde causse them to dye a shamefull dethe / and he sore rebukyd them / when the damoysell hard her 12 father so speke to his lordes and knyghtes / then she saw well ye dysordynate loye of her father / then she began to wepe, and sayde, 'O very god, I shall be shamyd & lost for ever yf he take me to his wyfe / for 16 both of vs cannot scape without damnpacyon' / then she thought in herselfe that ye she coude in any wyse scape she wyll fle a waye so farre of that there shuld neuer tydynges be harde of her. Then the kynge sente her into her chambre with her maydens, who were sorowfull and dyscomforted when they harde of that mater / for the kynge had commaunded them to kepe her well / and to ordayne a bayenge for her, bycause ye next day he wold mary her / when the damoysel yde was in her chaumbre she callyd to her an aunycyent lady, who had bene her mastres, then she voyded all other out of her chaumbre, and made semblaunte to slepe / and when she sawe that all other were gone she knelyd downe and held vp both her handys before the lady, and all wepynge sayd / 'a, my ryght dere lady and mastres, I com to you as a poore

1 villany.  2 Fol. clxxii, back, col. 1.  3 as.  4 unto.  5 inordinate.  6 and.  7 good.  8 within.  9 would.  10 any.  11 rich bed.  12 mistresse and.  13 Mistresse.
orphelyn without father or mother / my mother is ded
as ye knowe well / but he that shulde be my father
wold be my husband / y" which is a thyng that the
1 erthe oughte not to bere nor sustayne them that wolde
lyue in suche maner, and therfore, dere mastres, counsel
sayle and ayde this poore dyscomforted orphelyn, and
helpe me that I myghte be out of y" syghte of hym
that oughte to be my father / for I had rather go into
a 3 farre coun tre and 4 to lyue in pouerte / then to ende
my dayes withe hym in doynge of such a dede, and at
the end to be dampnyd and loste.' when the olde
12 lady, who was ryght noble & sage, harde the petuous
complaint of the damoysel yde, whom she had norysshed
& brought vp, she answeryd and sayde / 'my ryghte
dere doughter, for the great loue that I here
you I
16 shall ayde and counsayle you and brynge you out of
this doughte / as somtyme dyd my brother, Peter
of Aragon, to the lady Claryet your mother / he rescued
her out of the handes of the sarasyns whereas she was
20 in ioperdy of her lyfe / for all your father I shal not let
to ayde you.' when the damoysell yde hard the good
wyl of the lady how she wold ayde her / all wepynge she
kyst her mouth and eyen, and sayde / 'a, my ryght
24 dere mother / y" goodnes that ye do to me god rewarde
you 8 / for it lyeth not in me;' then the old lady
issued out of her chaumbre and lefte the lady yde sore
pensyue, and went into Sorbares chaumbre / who was
28 as then in the palays, for he was of the kynges preuy
counsayle / 10 when he came to his chaumbre & found
the lady there, he demaundyd what aduentre had
brought her thether / y" lady drew hym apart and
32 shewyd hym the request and prayer of the damoysell
yde / wherof Sorbare, for the great petye that he had

She takes counsel with the old mistress of her chamber.

1 Mistresse. 2 Fol. clxxii. back, col. 2. 3 some. 4 there. 5 pitifull. 6 when. 7-7 omitted. 8 for it. 9 verie. 10 and.
of her he\(^1\) began to wepe, and auoyded his chaumbre / the better to speke with the lady at his ease / then\(^2\) they deuysed together of dyuers thynges, and at last\(^3\) concludyd / for the saluacyon\(^4\) of the damoyselles\(^5\) body, that this auncyente lady shulde bere to her the aparaille of a man, and that at theoure of mydnyght she shulde araye her therwith / and then shew her\(^2\) let her go out of the palays and come to the stable, were\(^8\) as she shall fynd me redy with the best horse that her father hath redy for her to lepe on.\(^6\)

¶ when the aunsyent lady vnderstode Sorbare, she was ryght ioyfull, and thought his counsayle good / then she departyd and made redy al the aparayll belonginge to a man / then she came to the damoysell ydes chaumbre, and shewed her the conclusyon that was taken betwene her and Sorbare / when the damoysell\(^6\) harde that she had great ioy at her hart, \(^2\)she clypped and kyssed her / ye\(^e\) lady was glad when she sawe her somewhat recomforted,\(^7\) and sayd / 'fayre lady, ye kynge your father hathe ordayned for you\(^8\) a bayne,\(^9\) 20 therfore go thether & bayne\(^9\) with other damoyselles, to the entent that the kynge do not suspecte any thyng / and when ye haue bayned\(^10\) you a sartayne space lette your bed be made redy / and when ye are in your\(^24\) chaumbre go to youre bed / and then commaund me and all the damoyselles to go and bayne\(^6\) vs / and I shall kepe them there so longe a space \itshape{that} they shall haue good lyst to slepe / and I shall leue here by youre\(^28\) beddes syde all your mannes aparayle /\(^2\)aray you therin, and then gyrte this sworde abought you / & put on your sporres / & when ye are out of the palays go to the stables, where ye shall fynd a hors redy for you.'\(^32\) Then they went in to the bayenge\(^11\) chaumbre\(^12\) in her

\(1\) omitted. \(2\) and. \(3\) they. \(4\) sauegard. \(6\) Fol. clxxiii. col. 1. \(6\) vppon. \(7\) comforted. \(8\) for you after bath. \(9\) bath. \(10\) bathed. \(11\) bathing. \(12\) and she.
Ca. clxxv.] HOW IDE DONS MAN’S APPAREL.

smoke redy to go into the bayenge / all the other damoyselles were ioyfull when they sawe her come thether / for they went she had beene gone to slepe for the dyspleasure that she had at her hart; then they sayd one to another / ‘it semethe that our lady is well apayed of her sorowe, me thynke to morowe she shall be lady and quene; she shal be wyfe and doughter to ye kynge her father, the which is a thync vnresonable’ / then they came to her and bayned her, and festyd her as moche as they myght / when the lady yde thought it was tyme to departe, she sayde to her mastres and to the other damoyselles / howe she had bayned her ynouge, and that she wolde go into her chaumbre to slepe / and bad all the other to go & bayne them / and that there shulde no mo go with her but two of them to brynge her to bed, & she sayd to her mastres that she shulde go and brynge her with the other damoyselles / the whiche thynge they dyd gladly / the damoysell departed and went into her chaumbre wrapped in a mantell of scarlet / when ye two damoyselles had brought her a bed they toke leue of her, & departed and closed the dore after them, and then they went and bayned them with other / and when the damoysell yde felte herselfe all drye / she rose and arayed her in the mannes aparayle as well as she coude / and toke the sworde and gyrte it abought her / & dyd on her sporres / then she wente to a great lowe wyndowe on ye gardayne syde, and there she lepte out into ye gardayne as preuely as she coud, and so wente all alone by the wall syde tyll she came to the posterne / then she wente out towarde the stabyl / when she came ther she founde redy

---

1 bathing. 2 and. 3 thought. 4 because of. 5 Fol. clxxiii. col. 2. 6 bathed. 7 Mistresse. 8 bath. 9 haue. 10 omitted. 11 iofully. 12 to. 13—13 along. 14 untill. 15 redy after horse.
there a horse in Sorbares hande / and at the arson of the sadyll a bag full of brede and flesshe, and two botelles of good wyne / then the damoysell toke the horse, & without any worde spekynge she lepte vp quyckely; then Sorbare, all wepyng, sayde, 'My dere daughter, god be thy gyde and bryng the to sauegarde / go thy waye and kepe the way on thy lyfte hande / folowe the see syde' / 'Syr,' quod she, the goodnes that ye haue shewed me god rewarde you, in to whose sauegarde I commende you' / thus departed this noble lady yde to eschewe and flee fro the yll dyshordenate wyll of her father / she entered in to the forest, kepyng no hye waye / and so she rode .iii. dayes alonge the wode tyll she thought well that she was farre fro her countrre. Nowe let vs leve spekyng of her tyll styme be to retourne to her agayne, and let vs speke of kyng florence her father.

"How kyng Florence was sorowfull when he was aduerteysed of his doughters depart-ynge, who was aparayled lyke a man, and how shee came into almayne, and how she found sartayne theues in a forest, and how she came to Rome to the emperour lyke a s quyre."

Ca. Clxxvi. 24

E haue harde here before in this hystory howe kyng florence of Aragon wold haue his owne daughter, the damoy- sell yde in maryage agaynst the wyll of all his lordes and people; after that he had spoken with her and commaundyd the bayne

1 omitted.  2 pommell.  3 Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.  4 vpon.  5 and.  6 dishonorable.  7 vntill.  8—8 we haue occasion.  9 Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2.  10 bath.
to be orderyd for her to the entente\(^1\) the nexte daye to
take\(^2\) her in maryage / the nyght aprochyd, and after
supper the kyng wente to his bed /\(^3\) then the nexte
mornyngye betimes tidynge was brought to yᵉ kyng
how the kyng of Nauerne was come to se hym / the
kyng wente to mete with\(^4\) hym, and made hym great
dere, and so came together to the palays / and then
incontynent it was shewed the kyng how his daughter
was fled away, wherof yᵉ kyng was so sorowfull and
angery that no man durste speke a worde to hym,\(^3\) he
went in to his daughters chaumbre: there he found the
ladies and damoyselles that had yᵉ kepynge of her;
yᵉ kyng wolde hauve ryn vpon them and the kyng of
Nauerne had not bene, who letted hym and blamed hym
moche when he knewe the cause of her departynge /
and what yᵉ kyng wolde hauve done / then came the
horse keeper to the kyng, and sayde / how his good
horse was stollen awaye the same nyght. Then the
kyng as a man desperate commanded on all sydes
men to ryde after,\(^6\) and who soeuer coude brynge his
doughter agayne or elles sure tydynes of her he
promysed to gyue hym a .M. florences of gold / there
were many that for loue of that mony rode forthe, to
the nombre of .iii.C.; they rode dyuers wayes, but
there was none of them that coude brynge any newes\(^7\)
of her / and so returned to yᵉ kyng, who was sorowfull
when \(^8\) he coude here no thyng of her / great wepynges\(^9\)
there was\(^10\) in yᵉ city for\(^11\) goyne awaye of the damoy-
sel / for\(^12\) fere that she had of her father, & rode vpon
the good horse / in the daytyme she wolde rest her in
the wodes, and in the nyght she wold ryde forthe.
Thus she passyd all the prouynces of Aragon /\(^3\) then

---

\(^1\) that. \(^2\) haue. \(^3\) and. \(^4\) omitted. \(^5\) if. \(^6\) her. \(^7\) tidings. \(^8\) Fol. clxxiii. col. 1. \(^9\) lamentations. \(^10\) made. \(^11\) the. \(^12\) because of the.
she passed into Lombardy. of her iornays and adventures I wyll make no menacyon, because she founde no thynge by the waye to let her; she rode so longe that she aprochyd to ye countrie of almayne / when she came there her mony fayled her, wherby she was constrayned to selle her hors for money to lyue with all, and so wente afote / and at ye last came to the citye of Basyle, and ther she taryed a season, and ther 8 dyspendyd her money / so longe she laye there that she harde howe the emperour of Rome sent for men all about to ayde and socoure hym agaynst the kyngye of castell, who made hym great warre / when she sawe that many noble men were goynge to Rome to socour the emperour she was ioyfull, and sayd to her host that yf she had horse and harnays she wolde go with other into the warre / and thought in her selfe that she wold gladly be aquaynted with the emperoure of Rome, who was named Othon / she thought yf she myght she wolde take coursayle of hym / she dyd so moche that she fell in a quayntaunce with some of the 20 almayns / so that they were glad to se her / she semid to them to be so fayre a yonge squyre / then an Almayne that was there sayd to her / 'frende, come hether to me and shewe me what thou art' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am to hym that my seruyce may please / for I desyre nothyngue but to serue some noble man / but late I was in Aragon, and there I seruyd a lord that is dede / wherfore I am come hether for the dyspleasure that I haue of his dethe / I can well serue a genttilman / and kepe his horse, and yf nede be to dryue his sompterhors / & if I come in batayle or in scyrmysshe with my mayster, I thynke he shall have worse then I in his company' / the Almayne, herynge her so speke, sayde, 'fayre sone, that thou
sayst procedethe of a good courage / therfore good must come to the yet, I pray the shewe me thy name' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am called yde' / 'brother,' quod the
4 Almayne, 'I retayne\textsuperscript{1} ye\textsuperscript{2} to\textsuperscript{3} my seruyse, take hede of my horse' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am redy to do you the best seruyce that I can' / \textsuperscript{3} ye\textsuperscript{4} Almayne had her to his loging. Thus she then serued\textsuperscript{4} and she\textsuperscript{4} was wonte to 8 be serued, for she fered yf it shulde be parseuyed that she were a woman it shulde\textsuperscript{5} be to her trobyl / therfore she kepeth herselfe close and secyete: \textsuperscript{6} she was\textsuperscript{7} .iii. dayes with her mayster after that the other company 
12 were gone\textsuperscript{8} to romeward,\textsuperscript{8} \textsuperscript{9} her mayster myght not departe so sone as the other dyd, for his busynes was not redy / \textsuperscript{4} then thre days after they departed to go to Rome / and she was harnaysed\textsuperscript{10} after the coutume 16 of the countre. she serued so wel her mayster that he prayed her, and\textsuperscript{11} so long they rode that they came and aproched nere to the countre of rome, so that on a dayes they entered into a great darke forest / wherein laye in 
20 a bussheament a\textsuperscript{12} .vii. score spaynardys, lyenge there to abyde theyrv aduenture; they lay in a darke valey, and when they saw the Almaynes\textsuperscript{13} them escryed\textsuperscript{13} them to the dethe, and ran upon they. Then yde, who rode 
24 before her mayster, couchyd her sperre and strake a spanyarde there\textsuperscript{14} elene thrugh the body, and with the drawynge out of\textsuperscript{15} her sperre the spanyarde fell downe dede, of the whiche course her mayster prayed her / 
28 then ye\textsuperscript{16} spanyardes ran in amonge the almayns, who ryght valiantly defended them,\textsuperscript{16} but theyrv defence could not auayle them / for fynally\textsuperscript{17} they were all slayne, so that none scapyd alyue / but alonly yde, 
32 who dyd bere her so valauntly that she slewe .iii. of

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} entertain.
\item \textsuperscript{2} into.
\item \textsuperscript{3} so.
\item \textsuperscript{4}—\textsuperscript{4} that.
\item \textsuperscript{5} wold.
\item \textsuperscript{6} and.
\item \textsuperscript{7} continued.
\item \textsuperscript{8} towards Rome.
\item \textsuperscript{9} but.
\item \textsuperscript{10} armed.
\item \textsuperscript{11} omitted.
\item \textsuperscript{12} about.
\item \textsuperscript{13}—\textsuperscript{13} they despised.
\item \textsuperscript{14} therwith.
\item \textsuperscript{15} Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.
\item \textsuperscript{16} selues.
\item \textsuperscript{17} at the end.
\end{itemize}

CHRL. ROM. IX.
the spanyardes, but when she saw that her mayster and all his company were slayne / with her sworde in her hande all blody she fled awaye, and rode out of the way and toke a lytell pathe, the whiche brought her to a rocke, and there she alyghted, and taryed in the wode all the nexte mornynge / she had so great hunger and thyrste, for she had rydden all day without mete or drynke / then in the mornynge she loked all abouth and saw in an herber a theues syttyng at a table etyng and drynkyng at theyr pleasure; when the damoysell sawe them, for the great rage of hunger that she suffered constrayned her in such wyse that she forgate all fere and went to them / when the theues sawe her one of them sayd to his felaws, ‘I se yonder comynge a squyre mounted on a good horse / the which shal be ours’ / when yde aprochyd to them she humbely saluted the company, and sayd, ‘Syrs, yf it may please you to let me eat and drynke with you I wyll pay for my scot’ / ‘frende,’ quod one of them, ‘is there any man that hath bene your gyde in this forest?’ ‘syrs,’ quod yde, ‘god hathe bene my conduct, and none other’ / then one of the theues stepte forthe and toke her horse by the brydell, and sayd to his company, ‘syrs, laye on, stryke hym downe, he shall nuer eate nor drynke more; as for his horse shall not scape me’ / when she sawe that she was taken she was in great fere, she durst make no countenaunce to defende her selfe / there were so manye theues vpon her / she thought to humble herselv, which should be more proft, & sayd, ‘Syrs, why make ye that haste to sly me / lytel shal ye wynne therby nor lese, hold here

---

1 that. 2 vntill. 3 that she was nere hand famished. 4 the. 5 and. 6 her. 7 arbour. 8 about. 9 vnto. 10-10 omitted. 11 vpon. 12 shotte. 13 the Damsell. 14 Pol. clxxiii. back, col. 2. 15 looze.
my sword, I yelde me into your handes, and I praye you in the honoure of our lorde Isu chryst gyue me some mete and drinke/ for I haue suche hunger that I am nere dede for famyne/ then the mayster these sayde, 'squire, haue no fere to be stryken, thou shalte haue no more hurte then myselfe, but thou shalt haue all that thou lackest; go thy waye & sytte downe and eat and drinke at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I thanke you' / then the damoysell sate downe with them, & dyd eate and drinke at her pleasure / when they had all eten and were resyn vp, then the theues began to stryue amonge themselfe, sayenge to theyr chefe mayster how he had done yll, that he wolde not suffer them to sle the squire / then another answered, & sayd how there shuld no hurte be done to hym, bycause he was so fayre a yonge man and so courtoys / and sayd it shuld be great damage to sle hym / better it were to kepe hym bylly with them, and to lerne hym to stelle and to mourder men / and yf he wyll not do so it were reason to sle hym.

\[\text{She yields to them, and they offer her meat and drink.}\]

\[\text{Many of the thieves wish to make } \text{Id} \text{e a member of their band.}\]

\[\text{The chief of them asks her name and history.}\]

\[\text{She tells how she is on her way to serve the emperor of Rome.}\]

1 myselfe. 2--2 omitted. 3 to. 4--4 am so hungry.
5--5 almost famished. 6 their. 7 and. 8 vnto.
9 that. 10--10 and that it were better. 11 then.
12 good. 13--13 gol. 14 aide before succour.
15 Fol. clxxvi. col. 1. 16 about.
bushement lyeng in the bottom of a valey / they set on vs and slewe all my company, none scaped but myselfe / and therfore, syrs, I pray you let me haue agayne my horse and my sworde, and shewe me ye way to Rome / it shall be a great almes dede to shewe me that courteys.' 'Nay,' quod the mayster thefe, 'that wyll we not do / but thou shalt tary with vs, and lerne to be a thefe and a murdrer; yf thou wylte not thus do / with my swerde I shall stryke of thy heed.' 'Syrs,' quod yde / 'ye wolde haue me to a thynge that I was neuer accustomed to do, nor none of my lynage / nor I haue none intencyon to do any suche workes / therfore I pray you let me haue my horse and my swerde, than ye do me great courteys / and when I am mounted on my horse / yf one of you wyll defye me, and yf I defende not my selfe from hym / than stryke of my heed / I haue boughte my mete and drinke very dere if I shuld lose my horse / than the mayster thefe said, 'bycause I se thou arte so hardy I wyll wrastell with the / on the couenaunt that yf thou cast me thou shalt be one of vs / & yf thou be cast to the erthe / than I wyll haue thy horse and thy swerde / and dyspoyle the of all thy clothes /' Than yde sayd, 'I am content thus to do / so that ye withdrawe backe your men fro me / and set my horse by me, and my swerde tyed to my sadle bowe / for it is sayd in a comen proverbe / that a man is taken for a foole that putteth his trust in a thefe / whan the theues herd that they coulde not forbare laughing / and they had great desyre to se this wrastelynge betwyxt them / than they withdrewe abacke / and set his hors ther by hym / than the noble damsell yde quyckely toke the thefe / who thoughte to haue borne her to the erth / but she drewe hym so sore to her that he coulde scant

1-1 omitted.  2 so.  3 vpon.  4 would.  5 and.  6 this.  7 our companie.  8 Fol. clxxv. col. 2.
hane any breth / and therwith she cast hym soo rudely
to the erth against a stone that he was therwith in
a swone / and with the fall all his teth brast in his
4 mouth.

¶ Whan yde sawe the thefe in that daunger quyckly
she wente to her horse and mounted vp / than she
drew out her swerde, and said, 'A, ye horson thefes /
youre treason shall not auayle you / for ye hane
all thought vyolence and treason agaynst me / go &
help your maister who lyeth yonder / I thinke he
shall euer remembre this wrastlynge bytwene vs. 3 I
12 hane now no dout of you all / tho ye were a hundred
mo / for yf I may* I shall make you all be hanged
& strangled / than the quyckest and lyghetest thefe
amonge them stept forth and toke hym by the brydell
16 of his hors / 3 whan she saw that / she lyfte vp her
swerde & strake the thefe on6 the hande / so that the
hande flew fro his body and hanged styll vpou her
brydle / than he ranne awaye thinkynge to dye for7
20 payne of his hande / 3 than she dasht in amonge the
thefes / they had no wepen aboute them to defende
them withal / but they were there to their foly,
nor they had no fere of that / that8 fell / nor they
24 byleneud not that suche a yonge squier shulde hau
had suche hardinesse & force; 10 she fought fyersly
amonge them, and cut of armes and shulders, & claue
some to the brayne / she dyd so11 that she slew fyue 12 of
28 the thefes or13 she departed / and whan she sawe time
to departe / she sporred her hors / for by that tyme
the residue of the theues had gette14 weapons / and they
folowed her to hame slayn her or her hors / than
32 she departed with the sporres / her hors was good /

1 burst. 2 vilde. 3 and. 4 can. 5 thec. 6 vpon. 7 with thec. 8 which. 9 hardness. 10 then. 11 much. 12 Fol. clxxv. back, col. 1. 13 before. 14 gotten.
therefore anone she was ferre fro them / than the theues saw they lost but there payn\(^1\) to folow any further, therfore they let her goo / whan yde sawe that she was scaped their handes / humbly she thanked our lorde \(^2\) Iesu chryst,\(^2\) desyrynge him to ayde and conducte her into some sauegarde / \(^3\) she rode so long that she issued out of the great forest / of her iourneys and lodgyng \(^1\) make no mencyon / but she spedde so in her Iourney \(^8\) that she arived at the noble cite of Rome, and she toke vp her lodgyng nere to the palayes / wheare as the emperour was deuysynge with his lordes of the feates of the \(^5\) warre / than yde wente thyther / & kneled \(^12\) downe and saluted themperoure and all his lordes. When the emperoure and the Romaynes that were there saw the goodly yonge man who so humbly had\(^5\) saluted them / they gretly\(^5\) regarded him\(^6\) for the lev beaute that they saw in him. Than the emperour said to\(^7\) hym / 'fayre son, shewe me what ye be and fro whens ye come, that thus cometh hyther to me.' 'Syr,' quod yde / 'I am a squier that came now strayte \(^20\) fro Almayne / wheare as I haue serued a certayne tyme / and lytell there I haue wonne, whear of I am sory / and but late\(^8\) I was in a\(^5\) place / wheare diuers Spanyardes and other were in company, and they al\(^15\) \(^24\) had great desyre to make warre / and they wente to the kynge of Spayne, your enemy / but or\(^9\) they hadde ferre gone / they that were in my company met with them / and there we foughte \(^10\) togyther and slewe \(^28\) ye\(^6\) moost parte of them, and there I was a lytell hurte / and now, syr, I am come to you to serue your grace / if my small seruyce may please you / & in the best wyse that I can I shall serue you trewly.'

\(^1\) labours. \(^2\)—2 god. \(^3\) and. \(^4\) wyll. \(^5\) omitted. \(^6\) much. \(^7\) vnto. \(^8\) lately. \(^9\) before. \(^10\) Fol. clxxv. back, col. 2.
How the damsell yde was retained 1 with the emperour of rome / and how the lady Oliue, his daughter, was in 2 amours with 2 yde, wenynge she had ben a man / & how the kynge of Spaine came before the cite of Rome, and how the noble damsell yde tooke the kyng of Spaine in batayle and dyscomfyted him. Ca. C.lxxvii.

Han themperour herde yde speake / he well 3 behelde her, and saw how she was byg and great / and thought that he neuer saw 4 in 5 his lyfe before so fayre a yonge man / and as the emperoure was talkyng with yde / theare came to them Olyue the emperours daughter. Than all the lordes rose vp at her comyng / than 6 she sate downe by her father / & behelde greatly the yonge squier / and greatly 7 she praised her 8 in her corage, bycause of the meruaylous great beaute that was in her / wenynge 20 9 to her 9 that 10 she had bene a man / this Olyue was so fayre, so swete, and so meke, that for her bounte and humylyte she was 9 wel 9 byloned of every man / then the emperour demandyd of yde what was her name & fro whence she came. 'Syr,' quod she, 'my name is yde, and 11 was borne at Terascon, 6 I am kyn to duke Nayms of Banyer, & to Aymery of Narbon, and to Gyllerme the scotte / but by the kynsmen of Ganelon 28 I was chasyd and banysshed out of my countrie, and syn I haue endured moche payne and pouerte.' Then the emperour sayd / 'frend, thou art of a good kynryd / I retayne 12 the in my courte / for the bounte that I entertaine.'

1 entertained, 2-2 enamoured of.
3 were after behelde her. 4 he neuer saw after lyfe.
6 all. 6 and. 7 much. 8 him. 9-9 omitted.
10 Fol. clxxvi. col. 1. 11 I. 12 entertaine.
thynke be in the, and also for thy good lynage.'
'Syr,' quod yde, 'god geue me grace that I maye
do you suche seruyce that it maye be to youre plea-
sure' / 'doughter Olyue,' quod the emperour, 'for ye
loue of you I haue retayned this squyer to serue you' /
'father,' quod Olyue, 'I thanke you / for he semethe
that he is come out of a good house / and I had
no seruaunt of a longe season, that better contentethe
me' / then the emperour sayd to yde / 'my frend,
serue me well, behold here my doughter, whome I
loue and bids her enterely, to whome I deluyuer you to serue her: I
attend his daughter olive. haue no mo chyldren but she, & therfore serue her
trewly as a man ought to do that is come of suche
a lynage as ye be come of / yf ye serue her wel and
trewly, ye had neuer in all your lyfe before so good
aduenture' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I shall do so moche that by
the grace of Iesu that you & she shal be wel content / and, syr, there is no thynge but lyghtly
I can do it to serue a noble man, and in the warre
I shal defende my selfe I trust as well a nother, and also I can serue at a table before a kynge or quene.'
'frende,' quod the emperour, 'yf ye can do thus as ye
saye ye are well come hether, and ye shall fayre ye
better / and I am ioyfull of youre comyng to serue me, ye
shall neuer haue nede to go out of my seruyce / when yde harde ye emperoure humbly she thankyd
hym / thus was yde retaynyd with the emperour /
whereas she dyd so moche by her good seruice that the emperour and his daughter, & all they of the courte
louyd and praysed her, and the damoysell Olyue often
tymes gladly regardyd yde, and began in her harte sore
to loue her / and yde, who parseiued her, prayed
to our lorde Iesu chryste that he myght so dele that she be not acused nother of man or woman / she gaue almes often tymes to pore men, and she visyted gladly holy churche; she demenyd herselfe in suche wyse that of euer man she was byloued and praysed / often tymes she prayed to our lord Iesu chryst for kynge Florence her father, for all that she was chasyd & fled out of her countre by his occasyon and cause / yette she prayed euer to god that she myght be agreed with hym. Thus this damoysel yde was in this daunger seruynge the emperour and his doughter Olyue the space of two monethes / & on a day she was in the palays with the emperoure / and thether came in great hast a messanger, and came and saluted the emperour, and sayde / syr, knowe for trouth / y e News is brought the emperor of the approach of the king of Spain with a great and victorious army. kynge of Spayne, with great pusaunce, is entered into youre empyre of Rome, and wasteth all before hym with fyre and sworde / many a Romayne he hathe slayne / and he hath sworne by his lawe that or a moneth be passed he wyll be with in your citye of Rome with all his pusaunce, and he saythe that he wyl haue his pleasure of your doughter, & to make you to dye of a shameful deth by cause ye haue refused to gyue your doughter in maryage / syr, it were better for you that he had wedded youre doughter, then so many men shulde haue been slayne, and so many townes brente & destroyed / & castelles beten downe / syr, go quyckcly agaynst hym and defende youre countre, or elles ye shall se hym shortly pyght vp his tentes & panylyons before this citye / when the emperour hard the messanger he studied a great season, and loked vpon yde, and sayde / frende,

---

1 omitted. 2-- god. 3 would. 4 nor. 5 the. 6 alwayes. 7 that. 8 and. 9 before. 10 Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 1. 11 him. 12 had been. 13 married. 14 burnt.
The emperor takes counsel with Ide.

Ide asks for fighting men, and promises to lead them against the enemy.

counsayle me, for I thought ful lytell that these men of war wold haue come vpon me, and nowe they waste and dystroye my lond.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'trowle not your selfe for it; conforte youre selfe and reioyse your 4 lordes & sarauntes, and let me haue men to fyght with them, and I wyll loke vpon them or 1 they come any nerer / and by the grace of god I shall cause them to bye derely the dystruycyon that they haue made in 8 youre contyre yf god saue my lyfe and my 2 good 2 sword' 13 / when y 6 emperour hard the valyant corage of yde, he prayed byr moche in his harte, and sayd / 'freund, your reason pleaseth me well / and therfore I 12 shal do you that honour as to make you a knyght, wherby your prowes and hardynes shall encreas' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'of the honour that ye wyll do to me I am ryght joyful / and thanke you therof' / then the 16 emperoure came to 4 yde and gyrte aboute hym a good sworde & a ryché / it was so good that there was none lyke it in goodnes, nor 5 sharper, nor harder / 6 then y 8 emperoure gane her the necke stroke of knyghthoo 1020 d and sayde / 'yde, remembre this order, the whiche ye haue receyued this daye / and I praye 2 to 2 god 7 it maybe to the encreas of your honour, and euer 8 beware that your thoughts be not lyght nor vauerynge, but 24 be 9 sage and dyscrete, and atemperate, and be hardy in baytell, and cast away fro you all fere 2 and drede 2 / and when ye haue wonne any goodes or ryches / kepe them not locked in your cofers / but 10 depart with 10 them to 28 poore knyghtes, the whiche shall encrease and exalte your honoure / and alwayes loue 11 holy church; yf ye do thus ye can not faile to come to great honour, & euer shew youre vertue ageynst your enemyes' / 'syr,' 32 quod yde, 'by the grace of 12 our lord Iesu chryst 12

1 before. 2 omitted. 3 hold. 4 vnto. 5 neither. 6 and. 7 that. 8 Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 2. 9 rather. 10-10 distribute. 11 the. 12-12 god.
I shall so do that ther is no spaynyarde But that shall wysse themselfe to be on the other syde of the see' then everyman arrayed them in the paleys & in the

citye / then trompettes and tabors and hornes began to sowne in the citye, so that all the cheualry and comunalte of the citye were redy armyd / then they came all before the palays and presentyd themselfe

to the emperour / who dyd commaunde them that daye to folowe & obeye the commaundement of yde, whom he commytted that day to be as chefe capetayne, and sayde, 'syrs, loke ye do as moche for hym as ye wolde

do for me, ye knowe well I am old and feble, and can bere armure no lenger / nor I am not able to ryde as I myghte haue done or this tyme / wherfore I desire you, & also commaunde you all on payne of youre

lyues to do every thynge that he commaundethe in the stede of me as well as thoughe I dyd commaunde you myne own parsone, for he that dothe the contrary, he shall lose his hede without any other redempcyon.'

Then they all sayde they wold so do syn it was his pleasure. Then the noble emperoure causyd yde to be rychely armyde, and then delyueryd hym his owne hors, who was so good that his lyke coude not be

founde in no countr / yde mounted vp quyckely with helme and shyld and a great spere / then yde toke leue of the emperour and of the lady Olyue, and yde toke leave of the emperor and of Olive.

and when they were without the citye yde ordelyned .iii. batayles / two fyrst batayles were led by two great lordes / and the thyrde yde dyd gyde it, and thus with baners dysplayed auauised forthe towards theyr

enemies / spanyardes thought suerly all had bene theyrs / bycause they sawe of all the waye that they

1 himself. 2 and. 3 doe and. 4 that. 5 before. 6 as. 7 in. 8 Fol. clxxvii. col. 1. 9 any. 10 then. 11 omitted. 12 they.
had come no maner of defence made agaynst them / but it is an olde sayenge / that many thynges remayneth of such folysshe thoughtes / as it dyd with the span-
yardes / for they thought suerly ¹ the citye of Rome was 4
won ; but yf god ayde and socoure the damoysell yde
and her cheualry, she shuld take fro them or it were
nyght theyr hope to haue any vyctory / she rode by her
bataylles and encouraged her men, and mouyd them to 8
do valyauntly, ² thus they aprochyd towards theyr
enemies: great crye³ and noyse there was when the
batayles encounyred together / the shot flewe so
thycke of both partyes that it semed to be snowe and 12
hayle / yde encountered with a knyght, nepheu to the
kynge of Spayne / he receyued suche a stroke, that for
all his armure ydes spere wente clene thrughe his body /
so that the knyght fell to the erthe with his fete 16
vpwarde, and so dyed myserably amonge the horse fete /
then yde sayde, 'of god be thou cursyd ; in an yll owre
thou camste hether to recey[ue] suche an offerynge. I
challengre fro you all the empyre of Rome' / then she 20
sayde to herselfe, 'good lord god, humbly⁴ I re⁵quyre
the this day⁶ ayde and socoure me this⁷ poore fugy-
tyue' / therwith she sporred her horse ⁸ with the
sporres⁹ / and with the same spere she slewe another 24
great baron of Spayne, and so slewe with the same
spere dyuers other / and when the spere was broken /
then⁸ she drew out her ⁸good⁸ sworde, the whiche the
emperoure had geuen her / then she came to a notable 28
duke of Spayne, vnclc to the kynge, to whome she gaue
suche a stroke with her good sworde that she claue his
hede to the tethe, and so⁹ fell downe dede / then she
dasshed into the thyckest presse / and euer dyd chese 32
out of the greatest parsonages, and slew many of them,
for she thought the mo that were slayne of the great men, the more shulde her enemyes be afryed, therfore she chese out suche one after another / and also the

4 Romaynes fought valiantly / so that by the hyge prowes of yde and of the good cheualry Romayne that was with her / made the Spanyardes abasshed, and caused them to fle awaye / and had neuer retourned

8 agayne and the duke of Argonne, with the Romaynes fought valiantly / so that by the hyge prowes of yde and of the good cheualry Romayne that was with her / made the Spanyardes abasshed, and caused them to fle awaye / and had neuer retourned

12 the Romayns dyd valyauntly by the ayde and comforte of theyr capytayne; she rode into the thyckeste of the prese & bet downe the Spanyardes on al sydes, that petye it was to se / Great was the noyse, petuously

16 cryed out the hurt men lyeng among the horse fete, which were beten downe to the erthe / then the kyng of Spayne came in to the batayle with his swords in his hande, and encouryed with a great lorde

20 of Rome, whiche was cosyn to ye emperour / ye kynge gaue suche a stroke on the helme that he claue his hede in to ye braynes / and then the kyng slewe another / then yde, who saw that, was sorowful, and

24 sayd, 'I ought lytell to be praysed / without I reuenge the deth of this ii. lordes slayne by ye kynge of Spayne' / she rode to the kyng and gaue hym suche a stroke on the helme / that all the sercles with stones

28 and perlys flew downe to the erth, and strok a waye a part of his coyfe and here and skynne, and yf the kyng had not tornid his hede elles his hed had bene clouen to the tethe, and the sworde glente & lyght on

32 the horse necke and strake it clene asonder, and so the hors fell downe dede, & the kyng to the erthe, wherof

1 of the Romanes. 2 if. 3 Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 1. 4 vpon. 5 then. 6 omitted. 7-7 it. 8 glanced.
the spanyardes where sore afrayed,\(^1\) thynkyng theyr kyng had bene ded\(^2\) / so they fled awaye & lefte him there lyeng on the erth in a traunce, so\(^3\) that he coude nother se, nor\(^4\) here, nor speke one word; then the 4 damoysell yde toke hym and delyuered him to two noble lordes of the emperours courte, and when he reuyued he was made to swere and promise to be a trew presoner / those two lordes wente with the kyng 8 of spayne into the citye of Rome, and presentyd hym to\(^5\) the emperour fro yde / wherof the emperour thankyd god that he sente yde thather to serue hym / then the kyng was set in a strong towre, and yde was 12 without\(^6\) doynge maruayles in armes, so that euery man was abasshed therof / \(^7\) so that\(^7\) y\(^8\) spanyardes made hym\(^8\) way / fynally, by y\(^8\) hye prowes of the damoysell yde, the kyng of Spayne was taken, and all his 16 men dyscomfytedyd; happy was he that myght scape to saue his lyfe / long endured y\(^9\) chase,\(^9\) wherein many were slayne and taken / then yde and her company returned to the\(^10\) tentis and pa\(^11\) uyalons, and there they 20 founde great ryches, the whiche was broughte out of Spayne / \(^7\) the whiche\(^7\) was geuen and departed\(^12\) to them \(^7\) that had deserued it / great ioye was made in the\(^13\) citye of Rome / for the batayle was well sene 24 ouer the walles, and specyally the lady Olyue had well regarded the hye prowesse of yde / wherby she lonyd her so in her hart that she smyled for ioye, and sayde to herselveyonder yonge knyght I do gyue my 28 loue / the whiche I neuer before grauntedyd to any man leuynge / but it is good ryght and reason that I graunt my loue to yde' / suche\(^15\) wordes Olyue sayde to herself.

\(^1\) abasshed.  \(^2\) slaine.  \(^3\) in such sort.  \(^4\) omitted.  \\
\(^5\) Vnto.  \(^6\) still.  \(^7\) and.  \(^8\) her.  \\
\(^9\) the chase after endured.  \(^10\) their.  \\
\(^11\) Fol. clxxvii, back, col. 2.  \(^12\) distributed.  \(^13\) noble.  \\
\(^14\) to.  \(^15\) like.
How ye emperoure of Rome receyuid hyely the noble damoysell yde, and of ye honour that was made to1 her / & how the emperour made her constable of his empyre / and how the kyng of Spayne was delyuered out of pryson, and made homage to1 the emperour.

Ca. C.lxxviii.

After that the bataile was done and fynysshed, and the botye departed3 / yde with great triumphe, accompanyed with lordes and knyghtes, enteryd into ye citye of Rome / 4 the emperour was enformed of the comynge of yde and of her valyaunt dedis, by whom the batayle was wonne,5 and howe that none coude endure agaynst her, 16 wherof ye emperour had suche ioye at his harte that he wyst not what to do; 4 he thanked our lorde 6 Iesu chryst6 that the mater wente so to hys honoure and glory / therwith yde came to the palays, wheras she 20 was receyued with great ioye with all the coleges of ye citye / and when the emperoure sawe her he rose and enbrasyd her, and sayde / 'my trewe frende yde / of your comyng I am ryght ioyous,7 for this day ye 24 haue done suche honoure to our empyre that ye ought to be honoured for euer, and bycause ye haue done vs suche seruyce we wyll8 ye shall be the myrour for al other knyghtes to encourage them to do wel / we 28 therfore make you our fyrst chaumberlayne and hye constable of all our empyre Romayne, and all my londes and syngnoryes I abandon to be at your commandement in all thynges that ye thynke resonable to 32 be done / for I wyll and commaund that all my lordes

1 unto. 2 Fol. clxxviii. col. 1. 3 distributed. 4 and. 5 obtained. 6-6 god. 7 joyfull. 8 that.
The king of Spain is brought before the emperor.

The emperor sentences him to death.

The king in alarm offers to make abject submission, and implores mercy.

do obeye you.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'of this honour I thanke you / god gyue me the grace that I may all wayes parseuer to do that thyng that shall be to you agreable and profytable to your countres and syngnoryes' / then the emperour sente for the kyng of spayne out of pryson / the king of Spain is brought before the emperor. The emperor sentences him to death. The king in alarm offers to make abject submission, and implores mercy. 'Syr,' quod yde, 'of this honour I thanke you / god gyue me the grace that I may all wayes parseuer to do that thyng that shall be to you agreable and profytable to your countres and syngnoryes.' / then the emperour sente for the kyng of spayne out of pryson / when he was come he knelyd downe and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of me' / the emperour answered fersly, and sayd / 'kynge 8 of Spaŷne / for what cause are you come out of your countre of spayne thus to dystroy and waste myne empyre; ye haue slayne many of my lordes and knyghtes, who neuer dyd you any dyspleasure; and 12 besyde that, ye haue brente many of my townes, and beten downe my castelles, wherof I am sory, seyng that nother I nor none of myne dyd you neuer dyspleasure / and bycaus that all yll oughte to be 16 punysshed, and all good dedys rewarded / or euer I drynke any wyne I shall cause your hede to be streken of, for any mans spekyng to the contrary I shall not fayle to do it' / when the kynghe harde that he was in great fere / & prayed humbly that he wold haue petye of hym, and sayde how he was redy to make amendys of all his trespasses / and to repayre agayne al the yll damages done by hym and caused to be done within the empyre, and therwith to do homage and feaulte to hym, and to holde the realme of spayne of hym, promysynge also yf any war were made agaynst the emperour / he to come and socoure hym with .xx.M. men at his owne proper costys and dyspence, and to be with hym agaynst all men that wolde troble hym / then the emperoure sayde / 'syr kyenge of Spayne, knowe for trouthe that for all youre promyse and wordes I wyll do but lytell for it, for ye shall not

1 and. 2 Fol. clxxviii. col. 2. 3 burnt. 4 any. 5 euill. 6 before. 7-7 him to. 8 or. 9 vnto. 10 would. 11 charges. 12 omitted.
scape me / then the damoysele yde stept forth and sayde to the emperoure / 'syr, I haue often tymes hard say that he that humbleth hymselfe and cryethe for marcy / reason then requereth that he shulde haue marcy graunted hym, and therfore, syr, I requyre you to receyue this kynge to your grace, and pardon his trespas, seynge the offers that he hathe offeryd to do / 3 he shal become your lege 5 man, and holde his lond of you / and amende the damages that ye haue suffered / he that reason offereth ought to haue reason / well ye ought to thanke god syn suche a man as he is puttethe hymselfe into your handes / when the emperoure vnderstode yde, he sayde / 'frende yde, your wytte and courtoysye is to he alowed / and by cause I knowe that the counseall that ye gyue me is resoneable, I wyl the emperor agrees to spare the king's life.

The emperor does homage to the emperor, and is liberated. He thanks Ide many times.

He pleads for his life with the emperor.

1 from. 2 then before reason. 3 that. 4 will. 5 Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 1. 6 and. 7 you. 8 omitted. 9 sufficient before pledges. 10 vntill. 11-11 came. 12 this. 13 his.

CHARL. ROM. IX. 3 A
losse that they had receyued. Now we shall leue spekyng of hym and retourne to our mater.

Howe the emperoure gaue his daughter Olyue in maryage to the damoysel yde / knowynge none other but that she had bene a man, and howe she was apeched by a verlette, that harde theuyr deuyse whyles they were a\textsuperscript{3}bed together, wherby the emperour wold haue brent\textsuperscript{4} the damoysel yde.

After that the kynge of Spayne was departed fro Rome, the emperour\textsuperscript{12} honoryd and prayed moch yde for ye\textsuperscript{6} good seruyce that she had done / who euer better & better parseuered in good seruyce doynge, for she dyd\textsuperscript{16} so moche by her wyt that all dyscordes and debates that were in the empyre betwene lordes or neybours, she set them in peas and acorde, wherfore the emperour louyd her in such wyse that without her he dyd\textsuperscript{20} nothynge / and the emperours daughter Olyue loued her in suche wyse that she coude not lyue one day without ye\textsuperscript{e} syght of her, she was so taken with lone, thynkyng that she neuer sawe so goodlye a\textsuperscript{5} yonge man / and so on a day the emperour assembelyd his lordes and his preuy counsayle / to whome he shewed and sayde that he had but one doughter, the which as then was of lawful age / wherfore he wolde that she\textsuperscript{28} shulde be maryed, to the entente that she myght haue hayers to enioye his londes after his dyscese / & sayd, syrs, I thynke yf all ye\textsuperscript{e} world shuld be serchyd there

\begin{itemize}
  \item he.
  \item Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 2.
  \item in.
  \item burnt.
  \item Fol. clxxix. col. 1.
\end{itemize}
conde not be founde a man so worthy to haue my
doughter Olyue in maryage as our welbeloued constable,
the valyaunt yde, by whom so noble seruyce hath bene
4 done to vs and to our hole empyre / for I wolde or I
dye that she shulde be marued / and I thynke I can
not better bestow her / for in al the worlde there is not
a more valyaunt knyght then yde is, nor that is better 2
8 worthy to gouerne an empyre or a great realme / when
the lordes understode ye emperoure / they al allowed his
mynde, and counsailed hym to do the same ; then the
good emperoure called to hym yde, and sayd, ' My dere
12 and cordyall 3 frende, for ye great seruyce that ye haue
done / I wyll rewarde you as by reason I am bound to
do, and I can not gyue you a more rycher thinge, nor
that I loue better, then Olyue my dere daughter /
16 whom I wyll gyue you in maryage, and I wyll that ye
take her to your wyfe, to the entente that after my
dayes ye maye gouerne myne empyre / for nowe I fele
my selfe agyd and feble / wherfore I shall be content
20 that fro hensforthe ye haue the gouernynge therof / and
now I deluyer to you my londe in kepynge to gouerne
it as your owne / ' A, sir,' quod yde, 'what is that
ye saye / ye knowe well I am but a poore gentylman
24 banysshed out of my countr e / and 4 am worthe noth-
ynge / great 5 damage it shulde be so noble a damoyself
to be assyned to 6 so poore a 6 man as I am / syr, I cry
you marcy, humbly requyrynge you to take aduyce that
28 your daughter, who is so fayre, maye be maryed to
some hye prynce and pusaunte, to the entent that yf ye
shulde haue any busynes that he myght be of power to
ayd and to socour you / 7 I am poore, & ought always
32 to traувayle and to take payne to get honour for me, and
to encrese my lynage / ' what,' quod ye emperour, 'are
you so hardy 8 to refuse my daughter, by whom great

1 before. 2 more. 3-3 omitted. 4 I. 5 Fol. clxxix. col. 2. 6-6 such a poore. 7 for. 8 as. 3 A 2

The emperor declares that he can bestow her nowhere so well as on Ide, his valiant constable.

The emperor informs Ide of his purpose.

Ide deprecates the notion of marriage with Olive; she is a poor gentleman banished out of her own country, unworthy of such honour.

The emperor is wrathful at his officer's rejection.
welth and goodnes maye come to you' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'syn it is so that it plese you to shewe me this honoure I wyll not refuse it / but, syr, I saye it to the entente that ye shulde take good aduyce therin / & syn ye be content that I shulde thus do, and that it is your pleasure, I am content, and humbly thanke your grace of the honour that ye bere me' / then the emperour sente for his daughter, who cam to hym with a glad hart, for she had ben aduerteyesd of the mater why that her father sent for her / then the emperoure sayd, 'doughter, ye muste promyse me to do as I shall shewe you' / 'syr,' quod she, 'it is not in me, nor I wyll not refuse any thyng that is your pleasure' / 'doughter,' quod the emperoure, 'ye do well so to answere me / & bycause I haue no mo but you that ought to haue my realme after me, therfore I wyll ye take a husbonde, to the entent that your loundes and syngnoryes maye be defended by hym, & therfore I wyl ye take to your husband our capetayne, the valyaunte yde, whom I loue enterely / this is my pleasure and agremente of all my lordes / yf it be your pleasure to haue hym, he shall be kynge and you queene after my disces.' 'syr,' quod the lady, 'I am redy to fulfyll your wyll, and to obeye your commaundementes, and I thanke god of this fayre adventuere that is fallen to me this day / for I shall haue hym that I haue loued beste; I haue not now lost my tyme, when I shall haue at my wyll hym whom I most desyre in the worlde' / she knelyd downe before her father & thankyd hym of his gyfte / then she rose and kyste her father, and sayde, 'ryght dere father, I requyre you haste that this be done; let us go to the churche to be wedded, for me

1 seeing.  2 are.  3 I.  4 vnto.  5 and.  6 Deere father.  7 that.  8 Fol. clxxix. back, col. 1.  9 pleasure.  10—10 loue.  11—11 loue best in all.  12 then.  13 to hasten.
Ca. clxxix. j

OF IDE'S FEARS.

723

thynke we ought so to do; when the lorde hard the lady they laughed at her haste / then the emperour said, 'daughter, come forth and fyanace your hus-

bond, and you, yde, aproche nere; and nowe, after my dethe, I gyue you all my realme, and I gyue you my dere daughter in recompence of the good seruycye that ye haue done me'/ when yde vnderstode the emperour / all her blode chaunged, she wyste not what to do, all her body trymbelid; for fere she callyd vpon our lorde god ryght petuously to herselwe, and prayed god to haue petye of her, and to counsayle her what was best for her to do / for she sawe that parforce the emperoure wold mary her to his daughter, and sayde, 'a, my father Florence, by you and by your dyshordynat rage I am nowe brought to this case, when ye made me 16 to departhe by case ye wolde haue had me to your wyfe, but or I wold haue consentyd therto I had rather haue bene brent / therfore I fled awaye to eschewe that shame, wherby I haue bene syn in many parelles / for the which, by the wyll of god, I haue scapyd, wherof I ought to thanke hym / and I thought to kepe my selve with in Rome secrete, and that no man shulde know that I am a woman, but I shall be acusyd by the emperours daughter, whose loue is so sore set on me that I haue no powre to escape without I stele preuely away fro them all; and yf I shewe them what I am, I maye then sone haue some velany and accuse me and send me to y e kyng my father, or els to send hym word where I am, and then in great haste he shall sende for me / or elles, yf I wyll scape, I must fle awaye ouer the see / howbeit, I spake but lyke a fole / syn this fortune is fallen to me to haue ye e emperours

1 and. 2-2 mine Empire. 3 him. 4 before. 5 to. 6 burnt. 7 from. 8 Fol. clxxix. back, col. 2. 9 much. 10-10 bee accused and sent vnto. 11 will. 12 seeing. 13 vnto.
doughter in maryage and his realme\(^1\) / I shall wed her & do as god wy\(\)l gyue me grace to do' / All this the damoysell yde spoke to herselfe. Then she sayde to the emperour / 'syr, syn it is your pleasure to gene me \(^4\) your doughter in maryage, I am redy to take her.' Then they were led to the mynster churche / and there they were faunanced, wherof great ioye was made in rome / then the day of maryage came / then\(^2\) the fayre 8 Olyue was led to the churche betwene .ii. kynges / and yde went afore all\(^3\) sadly / and so they\(^4\) cam to the church, and there\(^5\) were wedded. Then great was the triumphe and ioye that was\(^4\) in the citye of Rome; 12 many a ryche garment of golde and sylke was worne that daye / 2 euery man ran to se the new brydes / then they went to the palays, and so to dyner. Of the festes and sportes and ryche metys that was\(^6\) there 16 that day, yf I shulde shew it the tyme shulde be ouer longe to reherse yt / but syn Rome was fyrste founded yt was not knouen that ther had ben such a fest as this maryage\(^7\) / for no man\(^8\) thought but that yde had ben 20 a man / and after supper, \(^9\)and that\(^9\) it was tyme to go to rest / the brydes were brought in to ther chaumber / then the lady\(^10\) Olyue went to her bedde / than came yde and the chambre auoyded / 11 than yde\(^11\) locked fast 24 the dore, to the entent that none shulde here them / than he\(^12\) cam to the\(^4\) bed, and layde hym\(^13\) downe on the bed syde / & said to Olyue / 'my ryght swete loue, god gyue you good nyght / for as for me, I can gyue\(^2\) you no good / for\(^14\) I fele suche a disease, the which grueth me sore'/ and therwith she kyst Olyue, who answered and said / 'my swete louer, ye ar the thing in the worlde that I moost desire / for the bounte and 32

---

1 Empire. 2 and. 3 verie. 4 omitted. 5 they. 6 were. 7 wedding. 8 bodie. 9 when. 10 Fol. clxxx. col. 1. 11–11 and shee. 12 shee. 13 her. 14 because.
sweetnes that I know in you, ye do with me as it shall please you & to the extent that ye shall not thinke that I haue so great desyre that ye shulde do ye thynge, the whiche of right ought to be done bytwene man and woman / I am content to forbere it this .xv. daies & bycause that dyuers folkes are here aboute to herken vs / I am contente to gyue you trewes / for we shall 8 haue space ynoughe hereafter to sporte vs / for I knowe such noblenes in you that I am sure ye wyll take none other wyfe / nor touche none other / but that ye wyll kepe your fayth & trouth to me / for I am chast, & so ye shall fynde me it suffyseth me to 3clyppe and 3 kysse you / and as for ye preuy loue, I am content for this tyme, syn it is your pleasure, to forbere it.' Than yde answered 'fayre lady, I wyll not refuse 16 youre wyll.' thus they passed that nyght with clyppyng and kyssynge. Than in the mornynge they arose and made them redy, & cam in to the palais / themperour beheld Oliue his daughter / to se if she 20 were any thinge chaunged or altered / and said, 'doughter / how is it with your husband?' 'Syr,' quod she, 'euyn as I desyre / for I loue yde my hus- bonde better than I doo you / all though ye be my 24 father' / at that worde the emperoure and all his lorde laughed / so great ioy and feast was ther made, the whiche endured eyght daies. Than euer ym toke leaue and wente whither as they list / than after 28 the fyftene daies were past that yde had lynen with Oliue / yde touched her not but with clyppyng and kyssynge / whearof Oliue was sorowfull, and said to herselfe, 'O, good lorde, I was engendred in an euyll 32 hour whan I haue maried the goodlyest person of the worlde / and the moost worthyest and hardiest that

---

1 then. 2 wife. 3 omitted. 4 heare. 5 and. 6 loue. 7 are. 8 Fol. clxxx. col. 2. 9 feasting. 10-10 that it. 11 expired.
euer was gyrde with 1 swerde and 2 rode on hors / he maketh noo 3 maner of 3 semblance to do that thynge that 4 I so sore haue desyred 7 than she drew nere to yde and touched him 5 than yde, who knewe 4 3 ryght 3 well what her desyre was / he 3 turned 6 to herward 6 and wolde hyde himselfe no lenger fro her / but all wepynge cryed her mercy, and shewed her fro the begynnynge to the endynge the maner of all her 8 aduenture / and how that she was a woman and was fledde awaye bycause her father wolde haue maried her himselfe. And whan Oliue vnderstode yde / she was right sorowfull / howbeit, she comforted yde, and said / 12 'my right swete lounor, discomforte not yourselfe / for ye shall not be 7 bewrayed for 7 me nother to no man nor woman lyuynge / we are wedded togyther, 8 I wyl be good and trewe to you syn ye haue kept youre selfe 16 so trewly / with you I wyll vse my tyme and passe my destany syn it is thus, for I se wel it is the pleasure of our lord godde.' Thus as Olyue and yde were deuyng synge togyther of their secretes / a page, beynge in a 20 chaumbre that ioyned 9 fast vnto 9 their chaumbre, herde well all their secrete wordes and communycacion what eche of them had sayd vnto 10 ye other, 11 than he in all hast went to the emperour and shewed hym all that 24 he had herde betwene ye two louners / whan themperour herde that he was ryght sorowfull, and saide, 'felowe, beware what thou sayest / looke that thy reporte be trewe / for ye I fynde it contrary thou shalt dye of 3 28 an yll deth / 'syr,' 3 quad he 3 / 'if it be not as l haue sayd, and that yde be not a woman, whom ye take for a man, stryke of my head.' Than themperour made hym to be taken & kept, to the entent to proue the 32 trouthe / for he thought the matter straunge to byleue /

1 a. 2 or. 3-3 omitted. 4 which. 5 her. 6-6 toward her. 7-7 accused by. 8 and. 9-9 close to. 10 to. 11 Fol. clxxix. back, col. 1.
than he called to hym the lorde of his preuy counsell / and he shewed them the mater / whearof they had great 1 marueyle, seynge the great vertue / and hye prowes that was in yde / 2 they greatly complayned 3 the mater, and were sorowfull / than the emperour, who was right pensyfe, sware and made promyse / that if he found the mater in that case / he wolde cause both his daughter and yde to be brent, 4 bycause of hydnynge of that straunge cas, and sayd, 'if yde had dyscouered the mater to me be tymes / my daughter sholde neuer haue wedded 5 her, and the mater 6 keppe close fro me /

12 I shal neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll 7 I knowe the trouth'/ than he commandd a bayne 8 to be made redy in his owne chambre, whearin he wolde haue yde to be bayned, 9 to the entent that he myght know the trouth or 10 she scaped away, for he sayd he wold not suffre suche boggery 11 to be vsed / the bayne 12 was made redy, and yde was sent for / who knewe no-thynge of that mater / than the emperour sayd to him, 13

20 'yde, do of your clothes, for ye shal bayne 8 you with me' / whan yde herd the emperour, she was sore abasshed, and sayd, 'Syr, I pray you forbere it for this time, for 14 I haue not ben accustomed to be 15 bayned.'

24 Than the emperoure sayde/ 'I wyll not bere 16 it / for I wyll se you naked / for yf I fynde it trewe that 17 hathe ben shewed me / bothe you and my daughter shall be brent.' 14 Whan yde herd that she sawe well she was betrayed and loste / than she kneled downe before the emperour and cryd hym mercy / and requyred hym to haue pyte of her / than 2 the emperour in great hast sent for his lordes, who were in the hall / talkynge togyther, & were sorowfull for yde, whom they loued

1 much. 2 and. 3 of. 4 burnt. 5 married. 6 now. 7 vntill. 8 bath. 9 bathed. 10 before. 11 falsehood. 12 bathing. 13 her. 14 because. 15 Fol. clxxx. back, col. 2. 16 forbeare. 17 which.
The Emperor will have no mercy on her, and the fire is prepared to burn her.

Ide prays to the Virgin.

A marvellous voice from heaven is heard while Ide is praying.

It bids the emperor do Ide no hurt.

entirely / so they cam to ye emperor, and founde yde before hym on her knees sore wepyng / so that for pety of her they wept all / than themperour shewed them all the dede / whearof he must nedes se Instyce to be done vpon yde / who than by the peers & lorde of Rome was judged to be brent. Than it was commanded the fyre to be made redy to bryn her, the whiche was done / and yde before the emperour abyde-8 ynge her judgment, with her handes ioyned lyft vp towards the heuen / makynge peyteous praiers to our lorde god and to the vyrgyn Mary his moder, praenge them to haue pety of her soule, and to receyue it in to the holy paradys / for she saw wel ye ende was come of her lyfe.

Howeoure lorde god made great myracles for yde / for god made hym to chaunge from the nature of a woman and to become a parfite man / whearof the emperour & his daughter Oline had great ioy / and so yde and olyue lay togyther and engendered a fayre sonne named after Croysant. And of the deth of the emperoure. Ca. C[1].xxx.

The same houre that yde was in her prayers / sodenly there appered in the chambre a great clere light / and therwith a meruelous swete odoure / that it semed all ye chambre to be full of ensence and spyces aromatyke / then anone after they herd an angelyke voyce sent fromoure lorde god & sayd / thou em-28 perour of Rome,oure lorde god commaundeth the by me / that thou be not so hardye to touche yde to do her any hurte / for oure lorde god hath done her ye

1 in such sort. 2 ye. 3 burnt. 4 burn. 5 pitifull. 6-6 hooly ghost. 7-7 after lyfe. 8 her. 9 Fol. clxxxii. col. 1. 10 presently. 11 as.
Ca. clxxx. | OF THE EMPEROR'S DEATH. 729

grace for the goodnes that is in her / he doth consent and wyll by his dyuyne puyssaunce / that she be chaunged in nature, and become a parfeyght man as all other be with out any difference / & also god commaundeth that the page whom thou hast in pryson that thou let hym go quyty / for that sheweth the was of trough / this mornynge yde was a woman, and now he is a man / Also god commaundeth the to make thyself redye, for thou, shalt lyue here in this world but J dayes longer / therfor fro henceforth let yde and Olyue thy doughter haue gouernynge of thy realme, also or this yere be passed shall haue betwene them a sonne who shall be named Croisant, who shall do meruelles whan he cometh to age. many adventures and pouertyes he shall suffer in his youth, but afterward he shall haue ioy and welth ynough / & with those wordes the angell wanysshed away / and left themperour and his lordes and al the people of Rome in great ioy for ye evident myracle that our lord god had sent by the prayer of yde / who and Olyue his wyfe had great ioy and thanked our lord Iesu Chryst / than the feest and tryumphe began agayne at Rome. the day past and the nyght came, and yde and Olyue went to bed togyther, and toke there sport in suche wyse that the same nyght was gotten & engenderyd the fayre Croysant, whearby ye ioy doubled in the cite of Rome / the next daye yde came to the palayes with other lordes. And themperour was in his chambre makynge of his testament / for he had not forgotten the wordes of the aungell. so he lyued .viii. dayes longer, and on the .ix. day he dyed / and he was borne into the great churche of saynt Peter, wheare his absequy was done solemply, and layde in his tombe, the whiche

Her sex is to be changed.
The emperor will die within eight days.

1 to. 2-2 settest him at libertie. 3 which. 4 but. 5 she. 6 Empire. 7 before. 8 Fol. clxxxi. col. 2. 9 with. 10-10 god. 11 that.
Olive is delivered of a fair son, who is named Croissant.

He is carefully trained in youth.

He is kept at school till he is fifteen.

was ordained for hym as it apartayed. his sone in law and his daughter morned accordyng to the custome than vshed / and after .viii. dayes was passed all the noble lorde of the countrye came to the courte and 4 crowned yde emperoure & Olyue his wyfe empresse / greate 3feest and ioy 3 was made at theyr coronacion.

And when Olyue thempersse approched her time / she was delyuered of a fayre sonne / and when he was 8 cristened he was named Croysant / that is to say, grow-yng, because the mone the same tyme was Increasynge / of the chere that yde and his lordes made at the byrth of this chyde nede not to be rebursed / for ye may well 12 thynke it was as great as euer was any done before / then the tyme came that thempersse was chyrched, wherof gret ioy was made.

Olive is delivered of a fair son, who is named Croissant.

He is carefully trained in youth.

He is kept at school till he is fifteen.

was ordained for hym as it apartayed. his sone in law and his daughter morned accordyng to the custome than vshed / and after .viii. dayes was passed all the noble lorde of the countrye came to the courte and 4 crowned yde emperoure & Olyue his wyfe empresse / greate 3feest and ioy 3 was made at theyr coronacion.

And when Olyue thempersse approched her time / she was delyuered of a fayre sonne / and when he was 8 cristened he was named Croysant / that is to say, grow-yng, because the mone the same tyme was Increasynge / of the chere that yde and his lordes made at the byrth of this chyde nede not to be rebursed / for ye may well 12 thynke it was as great as euer was any done before / then the tyme came that thempersse was chyrched, wherof gret ioy was made. this chyde was well norysshed, 4 two notable ladyes had the kepynge of hym 16 tyl 5 .vii. yeres 6 were past 6 / then a noble knyght and an aunseant was set aboute hym, and a wyse and a great clerke to teche hym co7nynge, for comonly it is said that a kyng without letter 8 or conyne is compared to an asse crowned / often tymes the father & the mother wolde visytte their chylde / he was kept to scole tyl 9 he was .xv. yeres of age, and he was so good a clerke that ther was none in the cite of Rome / but 24 that he coude well dispute with hym and assayle his questions / yf his beawte / greatnes / force / humlyte / and good vertues whearwith he was indewed / yf I shulde discriue / 10 or report 10 them it shulde be over 28 longe to reherse / whearof yde and his mother olyue hadde such ioye that they wyst not what to do, but alonely to thanke god of his grace / for this 12 chylde grew so in bygnes and strength that euery man was 32 therof abasshed in such wyse that at that tyme there

1 then. 2 were. 3-3 ioy and feasting. 4 and.

5-5 vntill he was. 6-6 of age.

7 Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1. 8 learning. 9 vntill.

10-10 omitted. 11 would. 12 their.
Ca. clxxxii.] OF THE BIRTH OF CROISANT. 731

coude not be founde in ye cite of Rome of his age none so great / nor so bygge of strength1/ whearof his father & his mother and all the noble lorde & knyghtes were 4 ryght ioyfull.

"Howe Kyng Florence sent two knyghtes to Rome to themperour his sonne, desiringe hym to come and se him, & to leue thempyre of Rome to his son croisant / & to set noble men aboute him to gyde him / and also2 brinage with him thempresse / the faire Oliue.

Capitulo .Clxxxii.

12 He emperour and thempresse, seynge theyr sonne to growe & amende euery day in all good warkes, they thanked god, prayenge hym to gyue hym the grace from beter to better to parseyuer / so it fell that on a witsonday themperour and thempresse helde estate royall at there palayes for ye solempnyte of that day4 / there was many diuers kynges / barons / dukes / erles / duchesses and ladies / & whyles they were in the myddes of theyr dyner / there arryued two notable aunciaunt knyghtes /

24 when they were entered into the palayes they came before themperour & kneled downe and sayd / 'god that hath vs created saue & kepe the noble kynge Florence of Aragon and of Nauerne and duke of Burdeaux / and the same god saue ye ryght noble and ryght excellent emperour 6 Romayne, her dere sonne, and his fayre daughter thempresse Olyue'/ when themperour yde herd spekyng of his father / he was feerfull in his hert bycause of ye shamfull thyngne not faysable7 the whiche he wolde haue done agaynst hym / ryght in-

1-1 hye of stature.  2 to.  3 Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 2.  
1 and.  5 omitted.  6-6 of Rome his.  7 faileable.
ide inquires after his father. tentiuely he behelde the two knyghtes, and demaunded howe the kyngge his father dyd / euery syn he departed from hym / than one of the knyghtes answered and sayd / 'ryght dere syr, yf the doloure / the\textsuperscript{1} displease / & the great rage whearin your father was for your de- partynge / if I shulde shewe it / ouer\textsuperscript{2} longe it shulde be to reherse / but shortly I shall shew you the sub- stance of the matter / the same mornynge after your 8 departure\textsuperscript{3} tydynges was brought to the kyng your father how that the kyngge of Nauern, your uncle, was come to se hym. than your father went and met hym, and brought hym in to the cite of courtoyse with great 12 ioye & myrth / than\textsuperscript{4} they alyghted at ye palayes, and there tydynges was brought to the kinge your father how ye were fled away, whearby suche sorow and doloure & displease toke hym at the herte / that there\textsuperscript{16} was none that durst loke hym in the face / \textsuperscript{5}for he loked lyke a speryt for\textsuperscript{6} the folyssh he lone that he had on you / he ranne about in the palayes as a disparate man / so that for fere of hym there was nether ladye\textsuperscript{20} nor damesell that durst abyde hym for the great furour\textsuperscript{7} and displease that he was in / so that by reason of his great yre he fell in a greuwse malady, whearin he thought\textsuperscript{8} to\textsuperscript{8} haue dyed / and so was confessed\textsuperscript{24} & made hym redy to receyue the holy\textsuperscript{9} sacrament\textsuperscript{9} / than the kyngge of Nauerne, & Sorbare, and dyuers other prynces came too vysyt hym, and desyred hym to put that folye out of his mynde and to crey\textsuperscript{10} god\textsuperscript{11} mercy / 28 many notable clerkes\textsuperscript{12} were there / and they shewed hym many good reasons and ensamples, and sayde without he wolde leue and forsake his folye he shulde be dampened\textsuperscript{13} bodye and soule / \textsuperscript{4}when the king your 32

\textsuperscript{1} omitted. \textsuperscript{2} too. \textsuperscript{3} departing. \textsuperscript{4} and. \textsuperscript{5} Fol. clxxxii. col. 1. \textsuperscript{6} because. \textsuperscript{7} furie. \textsuperscript{8} he should. \textsuperscript{9} ghost. \textsuperscript{10} to. \textsuperscript{11} for. \textsuperscript{12} doctors. \textsuperscript{13} condemned.
father saw hym selfe in that doubt, knowynge that he
had done yll to cause you to fle awaye / and that no
tydynges coude be herde of you / suche a contrisyon
and a repentaunce toke hym that greate haboundaunce
of droppes fell frome his eyen / so\(^1\) that all his face was
wet / and he had \(^2\) so great\(^2\) doloure and contrysion\(^3\) in
hymselfe that every man that sawe hym wepte for
8 petye / and the kynge of Nauern had so great petye
of hym that he was so sorowfull that a greuous syknes
toke him, so that the fourth daye he dyed, wherof \(^y\)e
kynge your father was ryght sorowfull / at last his
12 syknes determyned, and \(^4\) was recouered and in good
helth a certeyne space / but by reason of the dolour
that he had for you he coude not be ceased / \(^5\)he fel
agayne sore syke, and so he contynueth, and hathe no
16 power to ayde nor\(^6\) releue hymselfe / but he eteth and
drynketh ynough. And after nowe of late it hathe ben
shewed hym / all your lyfe, and how by \(^y\)e grace of
\(^7\)our lord\(^7\) \(^8\)god it is fallen to you / whearby suche ioye
20 is come to his herte that there was neuer suche ioye
before\(^7\) in no mans herte, and yet he sayth that he shall
neuer haue parfeyght ioye at his herte tyll\(^9\) he may se
you / and therfore he hath sent vs heder to you / and
24 he desyreth and commaundethe as moche as the father
can commaund his chylde / that both you and them-
presse your wyfe leue this your countrye in \(^y\)e gydynge
of your sonne, and to leue notable persons aboute hym
28 to kepe and to conducte hym ; for it shalbe to you more
profeyghtable & better to vse your lyfe in pease in the
realmes of Aragon and Nauerne with the duchye of
Burdeaux / the whiche to you parteyneth by iust en-
32 heritaunce / and he hathe gyuen vs in charge not too
departe hense tyll\(^9\) \(^y\)e haue shewed me your wyll, to the entent
that we may bryinge hym sum good newes.

\(^1\) in such sort. \(^2\) such. \(^3\) greefe. \(^4\) he. \(^5\) but.
\(^6\) and. \(^7\) omitted. \(^8\) Fol. clxxxii. col. 2. \(^9\) vntill.
Howe the emperoure yde and thempresse Olyue gane good instructions to there sonne when they departed from Rome, and how they arryued at Courtoyse and cam to Florence, who with great ioy receyued them as his chyldren.

Han themperour yde had herde this knyght reporte these newes of the kyng his father / the water fell frome his eyen for petye and ioy that he had, and answered and sayd. 'Syrs, I wyll that ye knowe well that of your comynge and good newes' I am ryght ioyfull / but I am sory for the sikness that my father is in / whearfor to recomfort hym and make hym ioyfull, I wyll ye retourne to hym and say howe that humblye I recommaunde me to his good grace, and that at mydsomer nexte I and my wyfe shal be with hym.' the messengers, herynge that answere, were ryght ioyfull. Than after dyner they toke theyr leue of themperour and of thempresse / who gaue them many rych gyftes for the honour of kyng Florence theyr father / and so the messengers departed /

When thempresse Olyue vnderstode the wyll of her lorde / she was ryght sorrowfull for to leue her countree wheareas she was borne and norysshed, and specially to leue her sonne Croisant whom she loued. But syn it was the pleasure of her lorde so to do she contented herselве / for she loued her husbonde so well that she wold in no wyse saye agaynst his pleasure nor lette hym to do his wyll / ryght sorrowfull were the prynces and lordes of that countree and all the people of Rome. But the best wyse they coude they comforted them-

1 Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1.  2 great.  3 to.  4 that.  5 will.
Ca. clxxxii. [How Croisant is Regent for His Father.]

Selues by cause of the yonge prynce Croysant, who shulde tary and abyde with them, whom themperour deluyed to them to be kept / and than he spake to his son, and shewed him many fayre and notable reasons and doctrynes; he commaunde hym to be swete and courtoyse to his people and to his lordes, and that he shulde not be lyght of credence / and that in any wyse he shulde not leen his cares to here flatterers, nor the venym that cometh from them that wyll lye and flatter to please hym with al to the entent to come to theyr entensyon / whearby many a prynce hath ben distroyed / and brought into hell, whearas they and theyr londe also for beleuyng of them haue ben dampedn perpetually / son, loke thou be serued with gentylmen, suche as are come of them that hathe been of good renome / loue holy churche / gyue almes to the poore for loue of our lorde Iesu cryst / let thy cofers be open to thy good knyghtes, beware bee noo nygarde, and beware be not overcome with wyne / lede an honest lyfe / haunt and kepe companye with the aunsyent sages, and laude and prayse them yf they be worthy / flee flatterers and mockers, and beware therof thy selfe / for thou canst not do worse / for it shall abate thyne honour.' Thus themperour yde sayd to his sonne Croysant, and shewed hym manye notable saynges and goodly instructions. than he called his lordes and sayd. Syrs, the moost parte of you know-eth my wyll, the whiche is that I and my wyfe wyl go into Aragone to the kyng my father / therfore I desyre you all and commaunde you / that ye wyll haue my sonne as recommened / I haue left hym great treasure, to the entent that yf any warre or any other besines

1 and. 2 vnto. 3-3 omitted. 4 examples and.
5 gentle. 6 Lordes and. 7 Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 2.
8-8 listen with. 9 filth. 10 to. 11 whereby.
12 the. 13 chests. 14 thou. 15 noblemen.
16 because. 17 will. 18 fayre. 19 to you.
fall to hym / that he shall haue rychesse sufficent to
withstonde them that wolde do hym any dammage or
his countree / and also the realme of Aragone is not so
farre hence / but anone I may haue newes from hym.’ 4

¶ When the lordes vnderstode themperoue, and
how he had taken on hym this vyage, they knew well
they coude not let nor stope hym of his pleasure.
Than they all answered in generall / and said that as 8
nerere as they coude they wolde aecomplyssh his com-
maundement, and so 5 serue trewly his sonne Croysant,
and to ayde / kepe, and defende his countrie agaynst all
men that wolde anoye hym. ‘Syr, quod themperoue, 12
‘I thanke you.’ Thus after that the emperour had
spoken with his sonne and with his lordes, and shewed
them his wyl and pleasure / than he made redy for
his iorney, and toke with hym a certeyne 7 of notable 16
knyghtes to accompanye hym & Olyue thempresse his
wyfe. 8 he apareled 8 two great shyppes, and caused
them to be charged with vytayles and artelrye, as it
apartayned for y 9 defence of theyr bodyes and lyues, 20
& toke with hym great rychesse and 6 apereell & iemelles /
then he toke his leue of the pope and of all his lordes,
and of all them of the cite, who made great sorow for
theyr departynge / than they entred in to the ryuer of 24
Tybre, accompayned with a 9 .v. C. knyghtes / at theyr
departynge they toke leue of theyr sonne Croysaunt,
and kyssed hym often tymes / whan thempresse sawe
her sonne whome she must departe fro she began to 28
wepe / but themperoue comforted her as moche as he
myght 10 / than they toke theyr shyppes, & so departed
and sayled so longe in the streme 11 of Tybre that they
came in to the hye see, wheare as they sayled nyght 32
and day with good wynde, that without daunger they

1—1 after country. 2 from. 3 that.
4 Fol. clxxxii. col. 1. 5 to. 6 omitted.
7—7 number of. 8—8 and he founnysshed. 9 about.
10 could. 11 Riper.
arrayed at the cite of Courtoye, wheare as they were receyued with great ioy. So they came to yᵉ palayes and there founde kynge Florence lyenge on a couche, who whan he was aduertesed of there comynge he had greate ioy / than themperour and thempresse entered in to the palayes and came wheare as the kynge laye / than they both kneled downe before hym / and whan the kynge sawe them he had suche ioy that he coude speke no worde / but made a token that they shulde aproche nere to hym, and so they dyd / he enbrased & kyssed them often tymes / and whan he myght speke 12 he sayd, 'my ryght dere chylde, of your comynge I am ryght ioyous, and of the grace that god hath sent to you' / then agayne he kyssed often tymes thempresse Olyue, & sayd howe she was welcome in to the realme 16 of Aragone / of⁵ great ioy ⁶and feest and⁶ gyftes & presents that were gyuen and done at theyr welcomynge, yf I shulde shew it at lenght it shulde be ouer longe to reherce / and therfore I passe it ouer. Nowe 20 let vs leve spekyng of the kynge and of the emperour and emprésse his wyfe, who toke suche pleasure to abyde with kynge Florence that neuer after they returned too Rome / but they regned togither al theyr 24 lyues in peace and good⁷ loute / & they had no ⁸mo chylde / but Croisant whom they had left at Rome,⁹ of whom we shall speke nowe after.¹⁰

Howe Croysant was so large¹¹ and se liberall that he gane away all the treasure that hys father had left hym / so that at last he had no more to gyue / and so was constrained to go seke his adventure, he & a verlot alone.

Ca. clxxxiii.

¹ and. ²–² whereas they. ³ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2.
⁴ ioyfull. ⁵ the. ⁶–⁶ feasting. ⁷ good before peace.
⁸–⁸ child but. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ heereafter. ¹¹ bountifull.

3 B 2
Fter\textsuperscript{1} themperour yde and ye empresse Olyue were departed from\textsuperscript{2} Rome, Croysant theyr son grew and amended in all thynges. he deleyghted to\textsuperscript{4} take his pleasure in all sportes\textsuperscript{3} / he made to be cryed\textsuperscript{4} lustes\textsuperscript{5} and tournoyse, and gaue large gyftes to ladyes and to knyghtes. none went from hym without sum gyft. he toke great pleasure to gyue gyftes / so that he was praysed of euery man / howbeit dyuers aunsyent and wyse men sayd, 'yf Croysant, oure yonge prynce, dele thus longe\textsuperscript{6} with ye treasure that his father left hym / it wyll be sore\textsuperscript{7} wasted, and suche as now foloweth hym wyll forsake hym when they se that he hath no more to gyue' / as they dyd in dede / as ye shall here after / for he gaue to them that were pore, whearby they were made rych, who after wolde not gyue hym one morsell of breade / he was so lyberall & so great a dispender\textsuperscript{8} that all the treasure that his father had left hym he gaue it awaye / so that many compleyned greatly\textsuperscript{9} his bountye & larges,\textsuperscript{10} he gaue awaye so moche that he was forsyed to mynysh\textsuperscript{11} his estate, and was forsaken of all them that were wont to serue hym, bycause he had no more to gyue them, so that when they met hym they wolde tourn to another way / & whan he knew that he had so great shame that he determyned to departe pryuely out of the countre, and\textsuperscript{12} goo seke his adventures / for he sawe well\textsuperscript{1} he had gyuen awaye so moche that he was left he bought two good horses, and monted on the one and\textsuperscript{17} the other a verlet, and a male behynde\textsuperscript{32}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{1} that.
  \item \textsuperscript{2} the Citie of.
  \item \textsuperscript{3} and.
  \item \textsuperscript{4} proclaimed.
  \item \textsuperscript{5} Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1.
  \item \textsuperscript{6} omitted.
  \item \textsuperscript{7} much.
  \item \textsuperscript{8} spender.
  \item \textsuperscript{9} of.
  \item \textsuperscript{10} for.
  \item \textsuperscript{11} diminish.
  \item \textsuperscript{12} to.
  \item \textsuperscript{13–13} after lent.
  \item \textsuperscript{14} lend.
  \item \textsuperscript{15} one.
  \item \textsuperscript{16} which.
  \item \textsuperscript{17} vpon.
\end{itemize}
hym, and therin a gowne and his shertes and hose and shoes, and he had in his purse no more but one c. fl. for his dispence. Than in a mornynge he departed from Rome, to thentent he shulde not be perseyued, and rode so long by his iorneys that he was far of from the cyte of Rome more than .iii. dayes iornay. Now let vs leue spekyng of hym tyll tyme shal be to retourne to hym agayne.

How they of Rome sent to the kinge Guymart of Puylle, to the entent that he shulde come and gouerne that countre, and to be theyr lorde, bicause that Croisant was a chylde, and had gyuen and wasted all that he had, and howe Guymart came theder and was receyued as lorde.

Ca. Clxxxiiii.

After that the barons and senatours of Rome were aduertesede that theyr yonge lorde Croysaunt was departed from the cite, and that he had all wasted and spended the treasure that he had / than they assembled at the capetale / then ther was one sayd / cursed is that londe whearof ye lorde is a chylde, as ye may well parseyue by our yonge lorde Croysant, who hathe all dispended and gyuen all great treasure that his father had left hym / yll shulde he gouerne his londe and countre whan he can not kepe it that is closed fast in his cofers / and therfore, myne aduyse is that we sende to kynge Guymart of Puylle / who is all redye of the mynde to come and besiege vs, bycause he knoweth

1 omitted. 2 expenses. 3 and. 4 Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 2. 5 and. 6 spent all. 7 away. 8 verie badly. 9 which.
well that we be without a lorde / and therefore myne aduyse is that we sende to\(^1\) hym a notable embassad\(^2\) desyrynge hym to come to this cite of Rome / and how\(^3\) that this cite shall do to hym obeysaunce / better it is to sende by tymes than to late / to thentent that\(^4\) he nor none of his do no\(^5\) domage to the londes of Rome’ / all they that were there agreed to his sayenge / & so they sent to hym, who\(^6\) receyued the embassetours\(^7\) rght honorably / and so he came to Rome, wheare as he was receyued for theyr lorde peaceablye. But or\(^8\) he entred in to Rome they went and met hym, and with great tryumphe\(^9\) brought hym in to the cite with 12 trompette\(^9\)es and tabours\(^10\) blowynge before hym tyll\(^11\) he cam to the churche of saynt Peter, and there he offered and kyst the relykes / whearof he made his oth, suche as emperours\(^12\) accustomed to make / he to defend 16 & kepe Rome & ye empyre. Than he went to the palayes, wheare as he was receyued of the noble men and of the people /\(^13\) he gouverned Rome in peace and good\(^14\) Iustice. Nowe let vs leaue spekynge of hym 20 and retourne to Croysant.

\[|\textbf{Howe Croysaunt arrayued at Nyse in prouaunce, and came to the erle Remon, who was beseged by the sarazyns / & of the honour that the erle Remon dyd to Croysant / and how he gaue hym his baner to bere, & made him knyght / and of the great enmye that the erles son had at Croysant.}\]

\(\text{Ca. Clxxxv.}\)

\(^1\) vtto. \(^2\) Ambassage. \(^3\) say. \(^4\) neither. \(^5\) any. \(^6\) Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1. \(^7\) Ambassadours. \(^8\) before. \(^9\) ioy. \(^10\) Drummes. \(^11\) vtill. \(^12\) are. \(^13\) then. \(^14\) good before peace.
After that Croysant was departed from Rome he and his verlet, and had well sene how in all Rome they set no thynge by hym bycause he hadde no more good to gyue. Than he rode throw Romayne and Lombardye / and passed Pyemont / and than he came in to Daulpheney; and when he came in to the towne of Grenoble it was shewed hym that in Prouaunce there was a notable prync named erle Remon, of saynt Giles, who was beseged by londe and by water in y towne of Nyse by the kynge Grenade and the kyng of Belmaryne / who day and nyght made great assaultes to the cite / and they had sworne and made promyse that they wyll neuer departe thense tyll they haue wonne the towne / and slayne the erle Remon / when Croysant herde those newes, the hardye prowes wheare with he was garnysshed and replete set him in to so hye a wyll / that he thought the sarazyns flewe in the Eyer, and that he wolde reyse theyr sege or it be nyght / and for the bryngynge desire that he had he thought to goo theder to prowe his vertue agaynst the paynyms / so whan he had rested his horse he and his squyer monted and rested not tyll he came to Nyse; in an euynnynge late he aryued without perseyuynge of them of the sege / for as then they were all in theyr tentes / for a lytell before there had bene at the gate a great skyrmysh / whearfor the sarazyns were wery of theyr trauayle / & also on that parte that Croysant aryued there were no sarazins lodged / than he came to ye gate and prayed ye porter to let hym enter / & whan the porter saw there were no mo but .ii. persons, & that

1 Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2. 2 omitted. 3 with him. 4 that. 5 guifts. 6 them. 7 noble. 8 would. 9 from. 10 vntill. 11 had. 12 to. 13 before. 14 burning. 15 there. 16 because.
he was crystened, he suffered him to enter without any refuse / & when Croysant sawe that he was in without daunger he was joyfull, he came to one of the best lodgynges in the towne, and there he alyghted and souped with his host / Bycause it was late to go that nyght to the court; there he taryed all that nyght tyll next mornynge / than he went to the palayes, wheare as he found the erle Remon deuysynge with his 8 lordes and knyghtes of the dedes of warre; than Croysant saluted the erle and all his lordes. when the erle sawe the yonge man he greatly behelde hym / and thought that in all his lyfe he had neuer sene so goodlye a person, and thought that he was com of sum noble lynyage. Than he toke Croysant by the hande and demaunded what was his name. 'Syr,' quod he, 'my name is Croysant' / 'Croysant,' quod the erle, 'ye are welcome / ye are come well at a point both for you and for me / for I haue great nede to haue men with me to ayde me / and me thynke by your personage that ye shulde scheue a great interpryses / for of your age I haue not sene in my dayes a yong man more lykely to be fered of his enemyes / & bycause I se by your apparell that ye be no knyght, I shall make you a knyght to thentent that to morow your prowes & hardynes may be proued / for ye maye se here without this towne two kynges, enemyes tooure crystyn fayth, and by the pleasure of our lorde Iesu cryst I haue intencyon to morow to gyue them batayle, I loke this nyght for my brother, the duke of Calaber, who bryngeth with hym a men of warre / and a. I haue all redye with in the towne / and consideryng your hye corage to come hether to serue me, I shall do you more honour; after I haue made you

1 a Christian. 2 any. 3 then. 4 Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1. 5 vntill. 6 omitted. 7 was after name. 8 are. 9 grace of god I intend.
knyght I shall gyue you my baner to bere / and yf ye do as me thynke ye shulde do your Payne shal not be lost.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Croysant, ‘god gyue me the grace that to 1 morowe to hym and to you I may do such seruices that it may be welth to all crystendome, and that god may perfourme in me that 2 wanteth / for yf ye make me knyght al the dayes of my lyfe after 8 I shalbe yours’ / than the erle incontynent sent for a son of his, who as than was no knyght, and dyuers other, whom he made knyghtes with Croysant / than he sayde to Croysant, ‘frend, I pray to our lord 3 Iesu cryst 3 to gyue you suche fortune to-morow that ye may wanquysshe the batayle.’ ‘Syr,’ quod he, ‘god gyue me the grace to render to you thankes for the honour that nowe ye do to me / for as for me, by the grace of 16 god that 4 to morowe I shall so do that your enemies shall curse the hour that they are come hether to assayle you’ / whyles that Croysant was thus made knyght with the erles son and other, the same tyme 20 thether came y 5 duke of Calaber, and he came to the palayes / of the great 4 chere that he had made hym by his brother, the erle Remon, I wyll make no mensyon / therof / but he came at y 6 same poyn 5 that 24 these new knyghtes were made, and that 6 quynteyne was set vp to proue them selfe. Than y 5 duke of Calaber and the erle Remon his brother went theder 7 desyreous to se who dyd best / than y 8 duke demaunded 28 of the erle what yong knyght it was that rode by his neuew, for he thought 8 he neuer saw 9 a goodlyer 9 person nor more puyssant of his age. Than the erle sayd how he was come thether to seke for honour. 32 But what he was nor of what lynage he knew not. Thus they talked togyther of this yonge knyght Croy-

1 Fol. clxxxiii, back, col. 2. 2 which. 3-3 god. 4 omitted. 5 season. 6 a. 7 verie. 8 that. 9-9 so goodly a yong.
Croissant alone is able to strike it and throw it down.

The ladies praise Croissant.

The earl's son is jealous of Croissant.

The earl asks of what family Croissant is.

He tells of his father.

sant / \(^1\) when they came to ye place whereas the quyntayne was dressed vp / the erles son ranne and bracke his spere all to peces, and than other assayed themselfe / sum bracke theyr speres, and sum fell too \(^4\) the erthe parforce\(^2\) \(^3\) of there stroke / but there was none that coude remoue the quyntayne / when Croissant sawe that all had assayed themselves to throw \(^4\) the quynteyne, he had a greate spere, and ran so fyersly that he \(^8\) strake the quyntayne and ouerthrew it to the ground, whearof every man had great meruayle; the duke sayd to ye erle that he neuer sawe so goodlye a stroke, and sayd howe he is greatly to be doubted that gyue \(^12\) such strokes; he was greatly prayed of the ladyes and dameselles that were there present, & specially of the erles doughter, who was a fayre damesel. But who soever was joyfull, ye erles sonne was displeased / \(^16\) he toke agaynst hym a mortall hate and an yll enuye, so that ye he had durst he wolde haue ryn vp on Croissant to haue destroyed him, and concluded in his corage that ye he myght lyue longe he wolde make \(^20\) Croysantes lyfe to departe from his bodye / and so he had done and \(^5\) god had not ayded Croysant / when Croysant had ryn his course he rode to the erle, who sayd to hym ryght swetly / 'Croysant, god encrease \(^24\) your bountye \(^6\) and \(^7\) gyue you grace to perceyner \(^8\) your goodnes / and I pray you humblye to shewe me the trouthe what ye be and of what lynage, for I am sure \(^9\) ye \(^10\) be come \(^10\) of sum hye lynage.' 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'syn ye wold know it I shall shew you ye \(^e\) trouthe. Syr, knowe for trouthe I am sonne to the noble emperour of Rome, and I am departed out of \(^11\) countre for certen causes, the \(^12\) whiche I coude \(^13\) not suffer / and therfore I went too serche myne aduertures such as

---

\(^1\) and. \(^2\) by force. \(^3\) Fol. clxxxv. col. 1. \(^4\) ouerthow. \(^5\) if. \(^6\) honour. \(^7\) god. \(^8\) in. \(^9\) that. \(^10-10\) are. \(^11\) the. \(^12\) omitted. \(^13\) would.
Ca. clxxxv. HOW THE EARL'S SON IS JEALOUS OF CROSANT. 745

god wold sende me? / when the erle herde hym speke he was ryght ioyouse,1 and thanked god, & sayd, 'fayre sonne, ye be welcom, I am ioyfull of your cominge, for the goodnes that I see in you apparent; I haue a daughter ryght fayre, whome I wyll gyue you in marryage, and as moche of my goodes and of my londes and seygnoryes that ye shal neuer be pore.' 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'your fayre offer that ye make me I wyll not refuse, and I thanke you. But or 
I take a wyfe my wyll is to do so moche that myne honour may be exalted, and that renowne maye rynne vpon me as it hathe done of my pralecessours, and that I may conqyure londes and seygnoryes.' Than the erles sonne, herynge his father make Croysant suche an offer as to gyue him his sister in marryage and a great parte of his londe / he was therwith sore troubled in his hert; 5 he toke agaynst hym a cordyall hate, and made promise in hym selfe that if he may6 retourne from the batayle he wyll7 cause Croysant to dye an yll deth / 20 thynkynge not to be disenheryted by hym / after those wordes the duke of Calaber and the erle Remon toke betwene them ye yonge knyght Croysant & led him by the hande to the palayes, wheare as he was receyued with great ioye / and after dyner they came in to the hall wheare as all the lordes were. Than Croysant, who greatly desyred8 to be in suche a place wheare as he myght shew his prowes, spake on hye, and sayd to9

erle Remon, 'Syr, ye knowe well that ye enemies of oure lorde god & yours hath beseged you in your towne / the whiche is a thynge not to be suffred, 4 and vunreasonable,4 so long without doynge10 them any anoyaunce / and therfore, syr, I counsell11 that or they knowe moche of your estate or of your puysaunce,

1 ioyfull. 2 Fol. clxxxv. col. 2. 3 before. 4--4 omitted. 5 as. 6 myght. 7 would. 8 delighted. 9 the. 10 of. 11 you.
Croissant advises an immediate sortie.

The earl's forces prepare to march against the enemy, who is besieging them in Nice.

Croissant leads one detachment.

The earl's son leads a second.

or what people ye haue, it were best ye went to assayle them without any lenger taryenge / orden your hedes and your capeteyns to gyde your people, to the entent that whan ye were issued out of the towne and than that every man may knowe what ye are purposed to do / and than sende to your enemies a messenger and gyue your enemies knowledge of your comynge, and we shall folowe so fast that they shall haue no leaser to arme them / when the duke of Calaber & ye erle Remon vnderstode the noble Croysant they prayed moche his counsell and aduyse. Than they ordyned theyr batayles and theyr capeteyns / and than they issued out of the towne with all theyr companye.

Howe Croisant dyd meruayles in the batayle, by whose prowes the sarazins were discomfited and slayne, whearof the erle Remon and the duke of Calaber were ryght ioyfull.

Han the erle Remone was without the towne / he ordyned thre batayles. 20 The fyrst Croysant had the leadynge therof, & the erle sayd to him, 'frende, I praye you this day shew from whense ye come, and how that ye be of the lynage iueryall, and of the good lyne of the duke of Burdeaux / for I haue suche trust in god and in the vertue of your armes / that me thynke now6 myne enemies do flee awaye before me.' 'Syr,' quod Croisant, 'I shall do so much by ye grace of god that our enemies shall haue no leaser to graunt vs the victoyre. The seconde batayle led the erle Remons sonne, and his father sayd

---

1 therefore. 2 Battailes. 3 are. 4-4 omitted. 5 Fol. clxxxv. back. col. 1. 6 now after do. 7 led after sonne.
to hym that he shulde that day 1 shew forth his vertue and prowes. The thyrde batayle the erle Remone and the duke of Calaber had the gydynge therof, 2 they set 4 in every batayle . xv. M. men / than the erle Remon went before every bataile sterynge and mouynge them to do well / 2 than the erle sent a messenger to the host of the sarazyns to shew them of the coming of the 8 crysten men / 2 they were before theyr tentes in .v. batayles / they were in nombre a 3 C. M. sarazyns, wherof there were .ii. kings and foure Admyralles. This messenger dyd his message / and whan he had 12 done / he retourned to the erle Remon & shewed hym all that he had herde & sene. Than Croysant sayd to the erle. ‘Syr, I requyre 4 you 5 shew me what armes the .ii. sarazyn kynges doth beare, to the entent 16 that I maye knowe them / for the sonner that the great men be slayne the sonner y e other wyll fle / for 6 that shall 7 abассhe them and the sooner to be discomfyted, for men without a lorde are / as shepe without a 20 sheparde.’ Then y e erle shewed hym theyr armes and bages. ‘Syr,’ quod Croysant, ‘syn I am hereof aduer- tesed I shall neuer rest tyll 8 I haue incountred them yf god wyll saue myne armes and good sworde’ / than the 24 paynyms who saw well y e crysten men comynge / they 9 cast vp a great crey & so meruelous that there was none so hardy / but that 9 was abasshed therof / for it semed that all y e worlde there aryued / whan Croysant sawe 28 the sarazyns approche he auauised his batayle / and whan they ioyned / he couched his sperre and strake therewith the sonne 10 of 11 kynges of Belmaryne / so that the sperre hede passed thorowe his bodye more than a 32 good 9 fote / and so with drawynge out of his sperre the sarazyn fell downe deed amonge the horse feft, 12 wherof

1 Fol. clxxxv. back. col. 2. 2 and. 3 about. 4 pray. 5 to. 6 because. 7 will. 8 vntill. 9 omitted. 10 sonne a'fter Belamyne. 11 the. 12 Fol. clxxxvi. col. 1.
the paynyms had great dolour when Croysant had slayne the sonne\(^1\) of \(y^e\) kyng of Belmaryn / there cam before hym the neuen of the kyng of Grenade / \(^2\)Croysaunt bare hym to the erthe so rudelye so\(^3\) that \(^4\) in the fallynge he brocke his necke / than he ranne at the thyrde and at\(^3\) \(y^e\) .iii. and slew them / and as longe as his spere helde\(^4\) ceased not to sle and to bet downe \(y^e\) sarazyns / and whan his spere was broken he tooke his 8 sworde, whearwith he claue the sarazyns to the brayne, and cut of armes and handes / he made amonge them such slawghter that there was not so hardye a sarazyn that durst abyde his full strok, but they fled from hym \(^12\) as the shepe doth before the wolfe / anone the tydinges was brought to the kyng of Belmaryn howe his sonne was slayne by a yonge knyght who dyd meruaylles in the batayle / \(^2\)whan the kyng knew that his sonne was \(^16\) slayn he wepte for sorow, and made promise that he had rather dye than the deth of his son shulde be vnreuenged / and therwith he pr eased into the batayle, and met at his comynge the dukes seneschall \(^5\) of Ca- \(^20\) laber,\(^5\) and strake hym with his spere in suche wyse that he ranne hym clene thorow, and so he fell downe deed / than \(y^e\) batayle began fyersly, and they of Pro-
uaunce and of Calaber dyd valyauntly / than \(y^e\) erle \(^24\) Remon came in to the batayle, and met with the Ad-
myrall of Cordes and gane hym with his sworde \(^6\) suche a stroke\(^6\) on \(y^e\) helme that he claue his hede to the brayne, and so he fell downe deed / than he sawe the \(^28\) kyng of Grenade, who slew many a crystemnau ; than the erle Remon toke a spere & ranne at the kyng, and strake hym so on \(y^e\) vyser of his helme that he fell to \(y^e\) erth with his fete vpwarde amonge his owne men, \(^32\) and had ben there slayne and his men had not\(^7\) socoured

\(^1\) sonne after Belamyne. \(^2\) and. \(^3\) omitted. \(^4\) he. \(^5\) before seneschall. \(^6\) before with his sworde. \(^7\) Fol. clxxxvi. col. 2.
Ca. clxxxvi.] HOW CROISANT SLAUGHTERS THE SARACENS. 749

hym / in another place was Croisant, and he saw before hym the kynge of Belmaryn, who rode aboute sekyngge for Croysant to be reuenged vpon1 hym for y° deth of 4 his sonne / 2 whan the kynge sawe Croysant betynge downe horse and men, and that none coude resyst agaynst hym / he had greate desyre to be reuenged, and sayd to Croysant. 'O thou false traytour that hath 8 slayne my sonne, I ought greatly to laude and prayse Mahounde yf I may be reuenged vpon the' / then he couched his spere and strake Croysaunt in the myddles of his shylde, so that his spere flew all to peces / but for all y° stroke Croysant remoued no more / than tho he had stryken a stone walle / & Croysant, sore displeased that the kynge had guyen hym suche a stroke / lете go the brydell of his horse, & lyft vp his sworde with bothe his handes / and strake the kynge as he past by on the corner of his helme in suche wyse that he strake it clene asondre. 2yf the stroke had not gleynted3 he had clouen his hede to the gyrdell / but the sworde tourned & aliyght on4 the hors necke, so that he strake y° necke clene asondre / so5 that of force y° kynge tumbled to the erth° astoned of the stroke that he had receyued / and if he hadde not ben quykely rescowed Croysant had striken of his hede / than the sarayns remounted agayne theyr kynge, & ran at Croysaunt, and cast at hym dantes7 and ianelyns to haue slayne hym / but they durst not aproche nere hym so moche they fered hym / howbeit they hurte hym in dyuers places. he helde his sworde in his handes, whearwith he strake no man with a full stroke / but that he claue his hede to the brayne / than he saw y° great admiral of Spayn, & he gaue hym suche a stroke that his hel was clouen to y° chyn, & so fell down deed. great 8sorow made 1 of. 2 and. 3 glanneed. 4 vponon. 5 in such sort. 6 sore. 7 dantes after cast. 8 Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 1. The king of Belmaryne challenges Croissant, and is stricken to the earth by the youth. Croysant is hard pressed by the Saracens, but kills many of them, including the great admiral of Spain.
the sarasyns, and specially ye kynge of Grenade / \(^1\) when Croysant sawe hym he knew hym well by his armes, wherof he was ioyfull / \(^1\) Croysant aproched to hym and gaue hym on the helme suche a stroke that his hede 4 was clouen to ye brain, and so the kyng fell down deed / than Croysant ranne at hym that hare the sarazyns baner, whearin \(^2\) was paynted the Image of Mahounde \(^3\) / he strake hym that bare it with a reuerse stroke betwene 8 the necke and the shulders / that the hede with the helme flew in the felde / and he \(^4\) layd \(^8\) so in ye thycke prease that anone he made way / the sarazyns wolde \(^6\) haue reased vp agayne theyr baner / but they \(12\) coude not.

\(\mathcal{I}\) When the sarazyns saw theyr kynge deed and theyr banner lyenge on ye ground, theyr corage began to fayle them / than they brayled and opened theyr array \(16\) and began to lese \(^7\) place / and Croysant, who toke hede of nothynge / but to sley the great capeteyns, at last he \(^4\) saw before hym the kynge of Belmarne, who had slayne many a cristenman that daye / Croysant strake \(20\) hym suche a stroke on the ryght shulder that arm and shylde fell to the erth, \(^9\) and by reason of the great doloure that the kinge felt / he fell in sowne amonoge the hors fete, whereas he dyed myserable / the duke \(24\) of Calaber & the erle Remon regardinge the hye dedes of armes done and acheued by Croysant had great meruayle of his force and puissaunce / \(^1\) they blyssed the houre that he was borne in / thankynge god of his \(28\) comynge theder / they rested and behelde hym howe he made theyr enemyes to fle awaye, for none was so hardy to abyde hym / fyinally if I shulde reherse ye hye dedes that Croysant dyd that day it shulde be ouer 32 lone to declare / for by hym & by his great hardines

---

\(1\) and, \(2\) wheron, \(3\) Mahomet. \(4\) omitted. \(5\) on. \(6\) fayne. \(7\) loose. \(8\) gaue. \(9\) erth in text.
the paynysms and sarazyns were vt\text{erly discomfyted} / for he was happye that coude saue hymselfe / thus they fled on all sydes towards y\text{e} see syde, \text{3}there were mo / slayne in the sleynge than were in y\text{e} playny batayle / for from thesse to the see syde the wayes were couered with deed men / such as myght saue them selues in y\text{e} shyppes were happy, but there were but \text{1} few that / 8 scaped / after y\text{e} chace\text{5} done they of Prouaunce and of Calaber came to the boutey, y\text{e} whiche was \text{7} great / \text{3} the whiche\text{3} the erle Remon \text{8} departed and gaue in suche wyse\text{8} that every man was \text{9} content with him : \text{9} for there / \text{12} was suche rychesse in the tentes of the sarazyns \text{that} it coude not be estemyd \text{10} / wherby all suche as \text{11} had ben \text{11} at y\text{e} batayle were riche euer after, both they & theyr frendes.

16 Of the great honour that erle Remon dyd to Croisant, & howe he wolde haue gyuen hym hys doughter in marriage / whearof the erles sonne was sore enuyous, and thought the same nyght to haue mordered \text{12} in his bed \text{12} the noble Croisant / but he failed, for the noble Croisant slew hym & after fled awaye as fast as he myght.

Capitolo. C.lxxxvii.

\text{24} Fter that the batayle was fynysshed, and that the sarazyns were deed, the erle Remon with great reverentce came to \text{13} Croysant, and toke hym by the hande, and ledde hym in to the townne betwene the duke of Calaber...
and hym selfe / and they dyd hym as greate honour as they coude denyse, & so entered in to the towne, and with great 1Hym &solemptite thei were receyued /2they came to the palaies & dysarmed3 then / & whan 4they were refreshed / than4 ye duke of Calabre & ye erle Remon came to Croysant / than2 the erle said. 'O right noble knight, replete with all vertues and hyghe prowess, to whom no man is comparable / ye stronge armne / shelde / and resorte5 of the countree of Prouence and Languedoc / by thy hye vertu 6this day7 hast saued one of the quarters of cristendome, whearby the fayth of Iesu4 chryst is exalted / the whiche yf thou haddest 12no ben / had ben abated and staunched / it is not in me to say nor recompt the goodes8 that ye haue done vs this day / nor it lyeth not in me to rewarde it / but if it were thy pleasure to abase thy selfe so lowe / as 16to take my daughter in mariage / ye whiche I wold gladly se / 2I wyll gyue the / the one halfe of all that euer I haue / for a fayrer iuvel nor a richer I can not giue than my dere daughter whom I lous entyrly. 20She is the fayrest 9/ the sweetest 10/ and the 11moost humble11 damsell that is now lynynge.' Whan Croysant had well vnderstande the erle Remon he said. 'Syr, of your curtoyse and ryche gyfte that ye offre me / I 24wyll not refuse it / but thanke you hertly therfore12 / & as for your daughter whom ye offre to gyue to4 me / I trust13 I shall do her that honour that on14 her heed I shall set a crowne of golde and make her Empresse 28of Rome / wheare she shall be serued and honoure / as lady of15 all the countree.' Whan the erle herde the answere of Croysant / he was right16 ioyfull / but his sone who was there present / 17had nye raged for17 dys- 32
Ca. clxxxvii.] croissant is to marry the earl's daughter. 753

pleasure,¹ and sayd² to hym. 'By god, Croysant / syn
thus by you I shalbe disherited / and that my father
wyll giue you that³ of right apartayneth to me / or⁴ 5¹
4 graunt thereto, I shall make you to dye of an euil⁶ deth /
though I do it by treason / nor thou shalte neuer haue
my systuer in maryage' / thus thought the erles sone to
worke against Croysant, who knewe nothynge therof /
8 thus without god helpe him / he was lykely to ⁸ be⁸
slayne petyously. Than there began great Ioye in the
palaies / the erle Remon wente to se his daughter, and
sayd to her / 'my dere daughter / knowe for trouth I
12 haue gyuen you in mariaige / to the moost fayre / and
hardiest knight that ever was gynde with⁹ swerde:
that is Croysant whom ye se here, by whom we¹⁰ all
delyuered and brought out of seruage into fredom / for
16 we had then all lost if his hye prowes had not ben, by
whom all the paynims are discomfyted.' / when the
damsell herde her father she was right ioyous¹¹ / and
thanked god and said. 'Syr, syn it is your pleasure to
20 gyue me to this noble knight / I shall not refuse hym /
but I am agreed¹² to fulfyl your pleasure,' whearof
Croysant was ioyful, for she was so fayre that euery
man had meruayle therof. Than the damsell saluted
24 Croysant and said. 'Syr, of your comynge and socours
we ought to be ioyous¹¹ / for by you we are restored to
ioye: y⁶ which was lost' / 'lady, quod Croysant / so
goeth the workes of our lorde god / ¹³ men maketh
28 batayles / and god gyueth y⁶ victory' / thus deuysyng:
they entred into y⁶ chambre whease the bourdes
were redy sprede / but Iacars the erles sonne wolde
not come there / but he wente into the towne in to a
32 secrete place / and thyther he sent for ten of his affinite/

¹ that he had. ² inragedly. ³ which. ⁴ before. ⁵ Fed. clxxxvii. col. 2. ⁶ euill. ⁷ and. ⁸ haue bene. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ were. ¹¹ ioyfull. ¹² content. ¹³ for.
in whom he had parfite affiance / than he shewed to them all his intencion, and determined that whan Croy- sant was a\(^1\) bedde and a slepe / than thei to murdre him in his bed \(^2\)and his squier also. Whan these .x. 4 traytours vnderstode their maister / they answered and said how they were all redy to do his commandement what soeuer com therof / thus they taried y\(^6\) houre to accomplyshe their vngracious enterpyse / as they were 8 in their communicacion / there was in a chambre there bysyde / a yonge squier who had wel herde their enterpyce & what thei were determined to doo / than he said to himselfe that surely he wold aduertysse Croysant 12 of their malicious enterpryse / to the entent that he shuld not be surprised / \(^3\) he departed as preyly as he coude & \(^4\) cam to Croysant / & shewed him how the erles sone with .x. men were determined to murdre him 16 the\(^5\) same night in his bed slepyng / & how that ech of them had a sharpe knyfe / \&\(^6\) said, 'syr, be \(^7\) garnysshed\(^7\) to defende your lyfe / for thei all hane sworne your deth' / Whan Croyssant vnderstode y\(^6\) squier he 20 waxed as reed as a brenning coole / \& sayd, 'I can not blyene that suche a treason shuld be in the corage of a noble man / as to murdre hym that neuer dyd hym trespas' / 'sir, quod the squier / 'ye may do as ye 24 please / but without ye fynde remedy / ye are but lost.' Whan Croyssant herde that he trembled for\(^8\) displeasure that he was in / \& he thought in\(^9\) him selfe that he wold not shew the matter to no\(^{10}\) person lyynyng / but 28 he sware that if any came to do him displeaser that\(^{11}\) with his swerd he wold clewe his heed to y\(^6\) brayne / thus the matter rested tyl\(^{12}\) it was night / \& so he went in to y\(^6\) hal amonge\(^8\) other lordes, \& there he founde y\(^6\) 32 erle / who made hym great chere / the\(^{13}\) souper was redy,

\(^{1}\) in. \(^{2}\) Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 1. \(^{3}\) then. \(^{4}\) so. \(^{5}\) very. \(^{6}\) he. \(^{7}\) \(^{7}\) readie armed. \(^{8}\) the. \(^{9}\) within. \(^{10}\) any. \(^{11}\) omitted. \(^{12}\) vutill. \(^{13}\) and.
and1 than they sate downe: of their seruyce I make  
no rehersall / after they had souped diuers sportes were  
shewed in ye hall, & whan2 houre requisyt came every  
man went to bed /3 ye erle Remon had prepared for  
Croysant a fayre chambre with a riche bed for him / &  
a couche bed for his squier / than Croisant toke leue of  
ye erle & of the damsell with whom he was 5in  
8 amours5 / than he went to his chambre wel accompanied  
with knightes and squiers / than3 with in a seson6 thei  
toke leue of him / & than he was alone 7same with7  
his squier / whom he made to lye in the couch bed1 /  
12 & shewed him nothyng of that he thought to do /  
than Croysant armed him at all peces / his helme on  
his heed / his sheld about his necke & his swerde  
about him / and so layde him downe in his bed &  
16 hyd him with clothes that his armure shuld not be sen  
by them that shuld8 come theider / 9there he lay as  
preuely as he coude / & than about mydnight the erles  
son entred in to the chambre all vnarmed with his  
20 swerde in his hande & his .x. companyons with him /  
eche of them with a sharpe weapon in their handes /  
than thei approched to Croysantes bed, than3 the erles  
sone lyfte vp his swerde & strake Croysant on the  
24 helme suche a stroke that the swerde swuered in his  
hande, wheary he parcyued that he was armed &  
that he had warnyng of their comyng, whearoF he was  
right sorowfull / than he recovered againe another  
28 stroke, thynkyng to haue slaine Croysant / but he  
coulde not / his helme was so good / than the other .x.  
strake at Croysant / but they coude do hym no hurt,  
his harneys10 was so good / than Croisant11 as a hardi  
32 knight11 rose vp quykly with his swerde in his hande /  
when the erles sonne sawe that / he was neuer so  

and afterwards withraws with his squire to a  
rich chamber.  

Croissant puts on  
strong armour.  

The earl's son  
enters,  

and strikes  
Croissant on the  
helm, but does  
him no hurt.  

The other traitors  
strike him also.  

Croissant rises,  

when the erles sonne sawe that / he was neuer so

1 omitted.  
2 the.  
3 and.  
4 Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 2.  
5—5 enamoured and.  
6 while.  
7—7 sauing onely.  
8 would.  
9 so.  
10 armour.  
11—11 after quckly.
afrayde in all his lyfe / & thought to haue fled away / but Croysant was before him / & gane him suche a stroke on ye heed with his swerde that he claue 1 his heed 1 to ye chyn, & so he fel downe deed / & the other 4 had slayne Croysantes 2 squier, whearof he was sory / than he ran at them lyke a man dysperate, and dyd so moche that within a shorte space he had slayne fyue of them / & the other fled away into a nother chambr e 8 and durste 3 speake no 4 worde.

Howe Croysant departed from Nyse with his swerde in his haude, and howe the erle Remon was sorowful for the deth of his 12 sone, and chased after Croisant, but he coud not be found. Ca. C.lxxxviii.

Han Croysant saw himselfe so enter-16 priced, and that he had slayne the erles sone, he was in great feare / for he knew well 5 yf he were taken he shulde be in daunger of his lyfe / 20 therfore hastily he departed out of the palais, and when he came to the stable wheare his hors stode / he founde a greate yron chayne before the dore, to the entent that ye hors shulde not be taken out in the nyght tyme / 24 when he saw that he was sore discomforted, and said, "O very god, now by thy grace ayde me, I ought well to be sory when I must leue my hors. Alas, now I can not tell how to beare myn armure / certaynely 28 without 7 god ayde 8 me now I se no way how I may 9 scape alie. Alas, I thought to haue ben maried to ye erles daughter / but now I am ferre fro it syn I haue slayne her brother / I was 10 not in mynde so soone 10

1—1 it.  2 Fol. clxxxviii. col. 1.  3 not.  4 one.  5 that.  6 and.  7 except.  8 succour.  9 can.  10—10 minded.
to have returned into my country / till I had conquered some honour and lollens, whereby I might have been receyued honourably of them that dyed set no thyng by me / than he began sore to wepe / he went through the town as preuely as he mighte / he could not traualye longe in his armure / he behelde in a corner of a strete a voyde house, thyder he went & vnarmed him of all his armure except his swerde, and so he was in a wyght iacked, and than he rested not till he came to the gate, and called the porter and desired him to open the gate, saynge howe the porter answers chorlysshely, and sayd 'there requyreth no hast, he might well abyde / for he sayd he wolde not open no gate till it was fayre day. 'Frende,' quod Croysant, 'I praye the shewe me this curtoysse / the porter answered fyersly, & said / 'thou doest but lose thy payne for the gate shall not be opened the tyl the sonne ryse.' Whan Croysant sawe that for no fayre wordes porter wolde open the gate / he set his hande vpon his swerd, and sayd / 'thou false traytour, without incontynent thou open the gate with my swerde I shal slee the.' Whan the porter sawe that Croysant held a naked swerde in his hande to haue striken him, he had great feare / he came forth in hast with the keyes in his hande, and said, 'syr, I shal open y gate with a good wyl;' how be it he was so afrayde that all his body trembled for feare / than he came to the gate & opened the wycket / than Croysant issued out vnarmed, and had on but a cloke over his doubled, and his swerde about him, and

1 vntill.  2 so.  3 Fol. clxxxviii. col. 2.  4-4 omitted.  
5 but.  6-6 before of.  7 and he went before thyder.  
8 that.  9 stubbornly.  10 labour.  11 not.  
12 by fayre meanes.  13 to.  14 except.  
15 incontynent after gate.  16 dost.  17-17 strike.  
18 and.  19 cloake.
a lytell purse by\textsuperscript{1} his gyrdell, and therin twenty shyllynges in money, and no more / thus as ye haue herde Croisant issued out of ye towne of Nyse in Prouance, and he\textsuperscript{2} toke the way to\textsuperscript{3} Rome, but or\textsuperscript{4} he had gone two leeges / the fyue traytours that fledde fro him and were hydden in a chambre / whan they thought that Croisant was departed, for thei thought \textsuperscript{5} he wolde not tary bycause he had slayne the erles sone / than they \textsuperscript{8} went out of the chambr[e] makynge great bruyt and great noyse / soo that euery man rose in the palayes / and the erle him selfe rose and came in to ye hall with his swerde in his hande, & there he founde the fyne \textsuperscript{12} traytours / who shewed hym that for certayne wordes betwene Croysant and his sone there was a fray betwene them / whearby your sone is slayne by the handes of Croisant / the whiche he dyde wolfully, to 16 the entent to haue all youre londes after youre dyssease, bycause ye haue gyuen hym youre daughter in mariage / and or\textsuperscript{4} we coulde come he was fledde / but or\textsuperscript{4} he departed out of the chambr[e] he slewe fyue men besyde 20 your sone, for they were not armed / &\textsuperscript{6} Croysant was armed / \textsuperscript{7} he semed rather a spirite than any\textsuperscript{8} mortall man / and when we sawe that we coulde not approche to him bycause he was armed / we slew his squier. 24 Whan the erle herde them it was no meruayle thought he was sorowfull; \textsuperscript{7} than he went in to the chambr[e] wheare as his sone lay dede / whan he came thyder\textsuperscript{9} for great distres that he had at his herte he fell downe 28 vpon his sone in a swone / \textsuperscript{7} whan he came to himselfe he cryed, and sayd, 'A, Croysant, your acqueyntaunce is to me very herde / than he comaundered his men to arme them and incontyneynt to go after Croysant, who 32 so petyously hath slayne his sone / and said, 'if I maye

\textsuperscript{1} at. \quad \textsuperscript{2} omitted. \quad \textsuperscript{3} towards. \quad \textsuperscript{4} before. \quad \textsuperscript{5} Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 1. \quad \textsuperscript{6} but. \quad \textsuperscript{7} and. \quad \textsuperscript{8} a. \quad \textsuperscript{9} there.
take him he shall never escape my hands without deth / than in the palais and in the town every man[n] armed them, and the earl himself armed him

4 & mounted on his horses and issued out at ye gate with moche people / and than thei rode abrode in the countrey serchynge / and demandynge if any man met with Croisant, but he coude here no certayn newes of

8 him except of one man, that said howe he met hym a fyue leeges fro thens / and how that he went a great pace.

Han the earl herde that / he saw wel it was but a payn lost to folowe any further / than he returned to ye townes right sorrowfull and sore displeased for the deth of his son / and yet againe

16 he greatly complained for Croisant for that adventyre, and said a more valiant knight can not be founde / nor more curtous / nor more sage, wold to god that bytwene him and me there were a good

20 accord, so that he hadde my daughter in mariage / so that after my disesane he might have my londe / than diners of his men said / Sir, let him go, he seme rather a dyuell than a man / he is fiers and cruell / he

24 setteth no more to slee men than some do to drinke the good wine / let him goo / he was borne an yll houre / than the earl entred in to the townes right sorrowfull and sore displeased for the deth of his son /

28 & also for Croisantes adventyre / than he caused his son to be buried as it appertained / great sorowe was made by the earl, and by ye duke of Calabre and other knightes that were there / but thei knew not the

He vows Croisant's death, and orders his arrest.

He with many armed men pursue Croissant, but to no purpose.

The pursuers return home.
and none of them knows the truth. 

trouth of the matter / who so euer made sorow / the erles daughter was sorrowfull / both for her brother and also for ye noble Croisant whom she had thought to mary. Now let vs leaue spekyng of them, and returne to Croisant.

Howe Croisant ariued in the subburbes of a lytel towne called Florencolle, and lodged amonge ruffians and vyleyns / and howe thei fell at stryfe / and how Croisant slewe them and fledde, and was in great daunger. And howe he came in to the cyte of Rome, whereas there was noo man that wolde gyue hym one morsel of brede / and how he wente and lay in an olde palayes on a burden of strawe. Capitulo Clxxxix.

Han Croissant saw that he was departed fro ye towne of Nyse, and that he was alone afote / he made his complayntes to our lord god, requyeynge him humbly to have pety on him / than he went forth, and so travailed thre dayes & thre nightes without mete or drinke / but a lytel brede and water / he had such hungre and thurst that he coude scant susteyne himselfe on his fete / so at last a lytell before the sonne was sette he came to a lytel towne called Florencolle, whearof the gates were shytte whan he came thyder / than in ye subburbes he saw a house lyke a tauerne, & he sware though he shulde be slayne he wolde go to that house to ete & drinke / and to pay well for his scot / it had ben better for him to haue passed by / for there he was in great peryll of his lyfe,

1 Fol. clxxxix, col. 1. 2 vpon. 3 of. 4 scarce. 5 before. 6 shot.
as ye shall here / thus he approched to y[e] house and
herde how the cokes were busy in the kytchyn / than
he sawe a great fyre in a chambre / & wheare there was

1 the greatest ruffyans / & plaies at dyse in all y[e] towne /
& they had prepared flesshe and fysshe for their
souper. Whan Croysant saw y[e] preperacion that was
made there for the syxe ruffians / he entred in to the

8 house and saluted the hoost, & demanaued if he might
be lodged there / y[e] hoost said ye / & how he shulde
be there well servyd bothe of wyne and of meate / suche
as he wolde demaunde / than Croisant entred2 in /

12 3 the ruffians met with4 him and said how he was
welcome, and eche of them pynded other & wynked
with y[e] one eye, and said softly to the maister of
them / this great stradiot5 is come well at a poynte /
16 for or6 he departe he shall pay for our scot7 & expence /
and anone we shal8 put y[e] dyse in to his handes / wheary
he shall leaue gowne / cap / and money if he haue any. Croysant dyd not vnderstande them by
20 cause they spake Iaragon9 / than Croisant said / ‘syr,
if I eate with you, paynge my scot,7 shall it turne you
to any displeasure.’ ‘frende,’ quod the maister of
them / ‘it pleaseth me well that ye eate with vs’ / than
24 they wasshed10 and sate downe at the table nere by11
the fyre, 3 thei were wel serue of euerthyng. Whan
Croisant was set he began sore4 to fede / 12 for the
hunger that he had12 / for in thre dayes before he hadde
28 eaten nothyng but brede & water / whearefore13 he
had the better appetyte, and also he founde there good
wyne and fresshe, & he drank therof at his pleasure.
whan thei had wel eaten & dronken, & were wel chafed
32 by reason of the good wyne / the hoost rose vp and

1 Fol. clxxxix, col. 2. 2 went. 3 and. 4 omitted.
5 Trauailer. 6 before. 7 shot. 8 wil.
9 whisperingly. 10 all together. 11 to.
12-12 well, (his hunger was so great).
13 & therefore.
said, 'syr, it is tyme to make reckenyng, and that every man paye his parte' / than the maister ruffian said, 'syr, make ye ye° accompt / ye can better do it / than we / shewe vs what we shall pay every man 4 lyke' / 'syr,' quod the hoost, 'as nere 3 as I can recken ye must paye in all .xii. sh., & loke every man pay his parte' / than the maister ruffian began to swere bloode & woundses that thei shulde plei at the 8 dyse to se who shulde pay for all / than he said to Croisant / 'frende, ye must come playe with vs; beholde here .iii. dyse, good and square, we must do so that 1 one shall 4 pay the hole expence whan 5 we 12 departe' / 'Syrs,' quod Croisant, 'we shall not nede to play at dyse to know who shall pay for the scot, 6 I wyll paye it all togyder without ony stryfe' / than thei said thei were well content ther with, & thanked him / 16 than one of them, the falsest vyleyne amonge them, wyfully caste downe a potte of wyne vpon ye° table, wherof his felowes blamed him; than he answered[d] & said / 'syr, ye nede not to be angry therwith / for 20 there is none of you wyll druyke therof / it is better to haue a fresshe potte of wyne of a new vessel' / thei said, well that is trew, so be it / than their hoost brought them a new pot ful of wyne, & said, 'syr, this 24 pot of wyne is not of the fy rst rekenynge, this is a potte of a newe accompt' / than the maister ruffian said to Croysant / 'Syr, take and cast the dyse, for the first cast shal be yours.' Croysant beheld them fiersly, 28 & said / 'nay, syrs, I shall kepe me therfro 7 / for I neuer played at ye° dyse in al my lyfe / be content with the .xii. s. that I shall pay for our scot 6 / for by reason of the longe vyage that I haue made I am not 32 wel furnysshed of money / for I haue but xiii. s. in my purse' / than ye° maister said / thou art better arayed

1 for. 2 and. 3 Fol. clxxxix back, col. l. 4 must. 5 before. 6 shot. 7 from that. 8 omitted.
than we / than thou must vse thy wordes\(^2\) other wyse / for
thou shalt not thus scape / thou shalt lene thy gowne
to pay for our scot\(^2\) to morow in y\(^e\) morning.' than
4 another ruffian said / ' & I wyll haue his hose & his
shoes\(^3\) to bye fyssh for our dyner' / when Croysant
herde the 4 vylaynes he began to chaunge colour, & was
sore displeased, and said right fyersly / ' Syrs, lene your
8 clatterynge, yet I haue .xiii. s. in my purse, the whiche
I wyl gyue you rather than ye shulde be displeased / me
thynke this is ought to suffyce you / for,\(^1\) syrs, I am
a noble man, & lately I was made knight, for if I were
12 ones agayne in my countree I wold neuer come\(^3\) thens
to seke for such adventures / ye ought to beare me\(^6\)
honor syn I \(^7\)say to\(^7\) you that I am a knight' / y\(^e\)
ruffian said / howe his wordes nor his prechyng shuld
16 not anayle him / but that he must lene his gowne /
jacked / hosen \& shoes / than Croysant, replete \(\text{with yre,}
\)
dyd of his surcot, the whiche was furred \(\text{with armyns,
& cast it to them} / \& \text{said, ' syrs, nowe ye ought to be
20 content with me} / \& \text{I ought to be quyt'} / \text{when
y\(^e\) ruffians vnderstode him thei cried all at ones that he
shuld put of his hosen \& his shoen} / \& \text{his gyrdle} / \&
purse / \& gowne / \& had him quyckly delyuer it to
24 them / and than to anoyde y\(^e\) house / for thei said there
was no lodgyng for him / \(\text{the hoost to plese the vylaynes said howe thei said trouth} / \text{than Croysant, ful
of yre} \& \text{dyspleasure, turned his visage to y\(^e\) benche
28 where as} \(\text{his good sword lay} / \text{wherof he was joyous}^9
\text{that thei had not taken it away} / \text{than he stept thyder}
& toke it in his handes} \& \text{drew it out,} \& \text{came to the
vylaynes, \& thei arose against him with their swordes
32 in their handes} / \& \text{he strake y\(^e\) maister ruffian so
meruaylous a stroke} / \text{that he clane his hed to y\(^e\) teth} /

\(^{1}\) and. \(^{2}\) tongne. \(^{3}\) tomorrow. \(^{4}\) Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 2. \(^{5}\) from. \(^{6}\) my. \(^{7}\) shew. \(^{8}\) omitted. \(^{9}\) joyfull.
Three others he kills.

The host raises the cry of murder, but Croissant rushes from the house and from the town.

The rulers of the town come to the tavern, and order the men to pursue Croissant.

so he fell downe deed before ye chymney / & fro another he strake his heed / & than he slewe ye thirde / & the fourth / & the other two had so great feare that thei fled away / than the host began to crye / a thefe / a murderer; but Croissant wold do him no hurt, he issued out of ye house with his sword in his hande, & ran as fast as he could tyl he was without ye subburbes / than he ran in the feld ouer hedges & dykes, to thentent that none shuld folow him; than he herkened towards ye towne, where he herd great crynge / & noyse of ye hoost of the house that he cam fro / therby all his neyghbours / tailers / cordiners / drapers / & men of all craftes / came to ye house, and there was such noyse made in ye subburbes / that the towne gates were opened, & ye burgesses issued out & came to the house where as the noyse was / & when ye rulers of ye towne came thyder & sawe the men lye deed / they demandede of ye hoost who had done that murdre / Syr, quod ye hoost / that hath done a great vacabond / who is bygge & mighty / for I neuer sawe with myn eyen a man better made ne furred / & he is fled away with his swerde in his handes yonder his way / but, syr, for goddes sake com not to nere him / for he semeth no man when he is angry / but he is lyke a man out of his wytte without feare or doubt / than ye ruler commaunded to folowe him bothe on horsbacke & a fote, & they ran al to harnes, though ye captayne were not greatly afrayde / yet he wolde not be ye first shulde go forth / he loued better that another shulde take that aduantage / thus on all sydes a horsbacke & a fote / they followed Croisant, who helde not ye hye way / & it was farre in ye night, & also there were many that wolde not chafe

1 omitted. 2 in text. 3 Fol. clxxx. col. 1. 4 vtill. 5 diches. 6 Shoemakers. 7 a. 8 Magistrates. 9 hath done it. 10 nor. 11 on. 12 all. 13 and. 14 armour. 15 kept.
themselfe ouer sore to seke for him / for thei wolde make no prease to receyve his offryng / for\textsuperscript{1} they fered to fynde him / \textsuperscript{2}whan they had sought a longe space in 4\textsuperscript{e} fieldes & in the\textsuperscript{3} wayes, & coulde not fynde him / \textsuperscript{4}than\textsuperscript{4} thei all returned to their towne / & Croisant went euere fro y\textsuperscript{e} towne warde with his swerde\textsuperscript{5} in his hande 4 all naked\textsuperscript{4} / \textsuperscript{2}whan he saw that he was wel two leeges 8 of them,\textsuperscript{4} he entred into y\textsuperscript{e} lyce waye, & prayed god that he was so scape\textsuperscript{d} with\textsuperscript{6} out daunger / but he was sore displeased in that he had neuer a peny in his purse, & nothyng but his swerde \textsuperscript{&} his cote / \textsuperscript{&} a rich purse 12 at his gyrdle, \textsuperscript{&} also he sawe\textsuperscript{7} it was wynter, \textsuperscript{&} frost \textsuperscript{&} snowe / also he felt y\textsuperscript{e} cold wynde, y\textsuperscript{e} whiche dyd him moc hyll / thus he went forth al night / \textsuperscript{&} the next day tyll\textsuperscript{8} it was nere night / than he arriued at a 16 vyllage / ther he was fayne to sel his swerd for lacke of money to pay for his scot\textsuperscript{9} / he came to a lodge where he was well serued of euerythynge that he wolde have, than in the mornyng when he departed he solde 20 his purs for as moche as he coud gete / than\textsuperscript{2} he trauayled forth so long that he approched to Rome / \& than\textsuperscript{4} he cam to a lodgyng without the gate, \& there he lodged that night / than\textsuperscript{2} in the mornyng he de- 24 mauaded of his hoost to whome the towne pertained, \& who was lord therof, \& what is\textsuperscript{4} his name\textsuperscript{10} that gouerneth the towne / the hoost said, 'frend, he that now is lord here is named Guimart of Puile, but or\textsuperscript{11} he 28 came hider we had a yong lord, the most\textsuperscript{4} fayrest yong gentylman \textit{that} euere was sene / \& he was sone to y\textsuperscript{e} noble emperour yde / ye somwhat resemble him / but he was of so yll rule \& so ful of folies \textsuperscript{4}and youth\textsuperscript{4} / 32 that all the riches that his father had left him / he dispended,\textsuperscript{12} \& gaue away \textsuperscript{4}his riches\textsuperscript{4} to every man

\textsuperscript{1} because. \textsuperscript{2} and. \textsuperscript{3} high. \textsuperscript{4-4} omitted. \textsuperscript{5} naked. \textsuperscript{6} Fol. clxxx\textsuperscript{x}. col. 2. \textsuperscript{7} that. \textsuperscript{8} vntill. \textsuperscript{9} shot. \textsuperscript{10} was. \textsuperscript{11} before. \textsuperscript{12} spent.
that wold haue it, & so he gau e moche to euery man that he left himself nothyng to lyue by. And after I herde say that he had in himselfe suche shame that he departed priuely with a squier & went to seke his adventes / but no man knoweth where he is / nor whyder that euet he wyll come agayne or not / and ye eomomers of the cyte made lytell therof / for after he was departed they sente for Guymart of Puile, whom they haue made emperour." When Croysant vnderstode his hoost / right pytously he complayned to himselfe, & said, 'Alas, caytiue that I am, what shall I do that thus hath loste all myn enheritunce without recover / & besyde that, I haue nothynge to spende / nor I haue no craft to lyue by / it muste behoue me to dye for I haue no more but .xxv. s., for the which I solde my purse.' Thus as wel as he coud he contynued tyll lent / than the season began to waxe somwhat hotter / euery day in the mornynge he Avolde here masse / euery man that sawe him / behelde him sore for the great beaute that he was of / there were dyuers that knewe him / but they wolde make no semblaunt therof / to the entente that they wolde gyue to him nothyng / than they sawe him thei wolde eschewe the way, bycause he shuld not knowe them / there were many of them that he had done them moche good, and gyuen them in suche wyse that they were become riche & he pore / & ther was none of them that wolde ofre him one morsel of brede / wherof he was sorrowfull / for than he sawe wel his money was gone, so that he had neuer a peny / than he thought to sel his gowne rather than to dye for

---

\[Ca. clxxxix.\]

1-1 craine anything of him so that in the end. 2-2 omitted. 3 er. 4 communaltie. 5 of this Empire. 6-6 after compleyned. 7 Fol. clxx. back, col. 1. 8 trade. 9 through. 10 and. 11 seruice and. 12 greatly. 13 semblaunce. 14 shun. 15 unto. 16 left.
huongre, & so he dyd / he solde it for xxviii s., & than
he taryed in his lodgyng as long as his money endured /
so¹ he contynued² tyll³ Easter / by that tyme all his
money was done.⁴ Than he thought⁵ he wold go in⁶
the stretes to so yf he myght spye any burgesses to
whom he had done in tymes past some good vnto / &
to demaunde of him some courtoyse / & so he issued out
8 of his lodgyng & walked into the stretes & pareuyod⁷
a ryche burges / who was lenyng out at a wyndowe in
his house / Croysant knewe him well / for it was
he that made him ryche / ⁸for afores⁹ he was but pore /
12 than he thought to knowlege him self to that burges /
than Croysant came⁹ and saluted¹⁰ him right humbly,
and sayd / 'syr,¹¹ remembraunce of a pore caytyue to
whom fortune is contrary / who in tyme past dyd you
16 moche good whan ye serued him / yf ye be a good man,
as I bylyne ye be¹² / of that goodnes ¹³ye haue¹³
remembraunce / & it may so be / yf ye do so ye shall
fare the better' / whan the burges herde Croysant
20 he behelde him fyersly / he knew him anone¹⁴ / &
without makyng¹⁵ any maner of answere, he called his
page, and commaunded him to brynge him a pan full
of water to yᵉ wyndowe / and he dyd as his maister had
24 commaunded him / than yᵉ burges toke yᵉ panne full of
water / than¹ he behelde Croisant who stode vnder the
wyndow / and dyd cast the water vpon his heed / soo
that his fayre heere, cote & shyrte, were all wete /
28 Croisant without any wors spekyng made him selfe
clene / and after¹⁶ sayd to yᵉ burges that yf he lyued
longe the offence that he hadde done him¹⁷ shulde
derely¹⁸ be bought /¹⁸ the burges, who was proud &
32 disdaynfull, set but lytell by his wordes / Croisant,

He has to sell his
gown,
but at last all his
money is spent.

Croissant appeals
for aid to a
burgess whom
he himself in
past time had
made rich.

But the burgess
only throws a pan
of water at him.

¹ and.    ² there.    ³ vntill.    ⁴ gone.    ⁵ that.
⁶ to.    ⁷ saw.    ⁸–⁹ and before.    ¹⁰ went.
¹¹ Fol. clxxxx. back, col. 2.    ¹² are.
¹³–¹⁵ haue you.    ¹⁴ presently.    ¹⁵ of.    ¹⁶ afterward.
¹⁷ he.    ¹⁸–¹⁹ buy it but.
who was right sorrowfull, toke his way towards the palayes, before ye which there was an olde palais, where as no man had dwelled in of a long space, he entred in at the gate, the which was great, and 4 stode open / and there he sawe a great pyller, where as there laye two bundles of strawe / than he layd him downe & slept right sore, angry with the burges that had so wete him with water / ye which burges, after 8 that he had cast this water vpon Croysant, he went to the palayes to the emperor Guymart to flattter and to please him / he founde the emperoure lenyngge in a wyndowe, and he saluted him, and said / 'syr, I bryinge certayne tydynges of Croisant / some to theemperour /', who of right ought to be enheritour of this empyre, wherof ye be as now empour; he is come into this towne in his double without hose or shoes / he is arayed lyke a vacabande / or a ruffian comyng fro the tauerne, he is so great and so wel made in all his membres that he semeth more lyke a champaign redy to fyght than euer I sawe man in my lyfe / ye wyll 20 byleue my counsell, sryke of his heed or cast him in a pytte, to thentent that of him there be neuer had memory / for if he lyue longe he may do you damage & put you out of this empyre, the whiche ye holde / the whiche shulde partayne to him: when theemperour Guymart vnderstode the burges, he behelde hym fyersly, & said / 'spoke no more to me of this matter / for thou doest lyke a traytourue; thou knowest well that by him and by his dede thou and dyuers other are made riche / thou arte lyke him that betrayed our lorde Iesus chryste / therafore I commaunde the fro hensforth come not in my syght / for I wyll haue none acqueynt-

1 and. 2 burdens. 3 sorrowfull &. 4-1 omitted. 5 are. 6 Fol. clxxxii. col. 1. 7 the. 8 all. 9 follow. 10 to. 11 any more. 12 bee.
Croisant be pore, it is pety & damage\(^1\) and great syn to
doo him any yll / \(^2\)I haue done him great yll when his
loudes and sygnoryes \(^3\)I kepe\(^3\) wrongfully and without\(^4\)
cause, wherof I thinke my selfe gretily culpable against\(^5\)
god for the syn that I haue done \(^6\)whan \(^6\)I holde the
honour & sygneory that of reason ought to partayne to
him / this daye is Easter day, on \(^7\) y\(^8\) whiche day every
8 good crysten man ought to humble himselfe to \(^8\)our
lorde \(^8\) / cryinge him mercy and pardon of \(^2\) all their
synnes / it is reason that I make pease with god, and
do so that he may be with me content.' \(^9\)

12 ¶ Howe themperour Guymart spake & re-
buked the burges that spake yll of Croys-
sant, and howe \(^10\)themperour bare meate
& drinke to the place where as Croisant
slept / and of the meruaylous tresure that
he founde in a chambr in the sayd olde
palayes / and of that \(^11\) was shewed him
by two knyghtes whom he founde there.

Capitulo .C.lxxx.

Han the burges vnderstode themperour
he was in great feare, & soo departed
ryght sore abasshed / & thought he
had ben to hasty to reporte suche
newes / & so right sorowfull departed
and lefte themperour alone in a wyndowe right sore
pensyue, and said to himselfe, 'O very god, the
pouerte \(that\) Croysant is in is by my cause / for I haue
all that ought to be his / \(^12\)I kepe it from him perforce;
yf I kepe it styll I may wel say that my soule shal

\(^1\) lamentable, \(^2\) for. \(^3\)-\(^3\) after whan. \(^4\) a.
\(^5\) the almighty. \(^6\)-\(^6\) him, in that. \(^7\) vpon.
\(^8\)-\(^8\) god. \(^9\) before with me. \(^10\) Fol. clxxxxi. col. 2.
\(^11\) which. \(^12\) and.
neuer come in⁠¹ paradye, but shal be dampned for euer.' Thus themperour Guymart compleyned to him self, and so went downe in to his palaiues / and so walked vp and downe by him selfe before ye olde 4 palayes, the whiche was nere to his palays / he lokd in at a gate and sawe a man lye slepyng on a burden of strawe, he thought incontynent⁢² it shuld be Croy- sant by the report of the burges. When the emperour S saw him / he had so⁢³ great pety of him that he wepte / than he wente in to his palayes and commaundd one to brynyng to⁢⁴ him a towell with brede and flesshe / & a bottel of wyne / which thyng was done; than 12 themperour toke a mantel furred with gryse, & dyd it about him selve, & toke the wyne & mete, & commaundd his men⁢⁵ none to⁷ follow him / he went downe ye grees & came to the palais where as Croissant 16 slept, themperour set the mete and wyne nere by Croissant, and a woke him not, than he covered him with the mantell and than⁹ departed / & as ye emperour was partyng he lokd on his right hande & sawe 20 a dore open all of yren, sore bonded with barres of yren, ¹⁰ & he sawe a clerens within / in such wyse as though there had ben within C. torches brennyng¹¹ / he went thyder & entryd into the chambr / which ²⁴ was great & large, & he sawe all about ye chambr great coffers, ye which stode open, & thei were full of golde / & other coffers full of Iewelles & riche stones / ye whiche shone¹² with suche lyght that themperour ²⁸ was marayed / also he sawe great peces of plate & money lyinge on ye erth, & bysbye he sawe ¹⁴ vessel / cuppes / & pottes of golde & syluer, & great peces of golde bordred with precious stones. Also he sawe ³²

¹ to. ² and. ³ that. ⁴ such. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ Fol. clxxxxi. back. col. 1. ⁷ should. ⁸ then. ⁹ he.
¹⁰–¹⁰ & banded verie strongly with yron barres.
¹¹ burning and. ¹² did shine. ¹³ greatly.
¹⁴ a great. ¹⁵ of.
riche gownes hangyng on perches of clothe of golde & syluer,\(^1\) in so great nombre that the emperour was sore abasshed / & said who so euer left this treasure here / 4 might wel be called a great lord / for he thought\(^2\) al y\(^e\) golde in y\(^e\) worlde / & all the riche iuwelles were brought togyder\(^3\) might not be compared to y\(^e\) treasure that he saw there / & said he was happy to come 8 thyder / than he passed forth where he saw an ymage of fyne golde, & it was as byg as a chylde of two yere of age / & wheare as the eyen shulde stonde there were two gret carbuckles / y\(^e\) whiche cast so great clerenes 12 that all y\(^e\) chambre was lyght therwith / whan themperour sawe that ymage he thought to haue taken it & to haue borne it into his palais / but he had moche ado to lyfte it / than he loked towards a lyttel dore, out of 16 y\(^e\) whiche he saw comynge two knightes well armed at al peces with their swerdes in 4 their handes,\(^5\) they came to themperour & said / 'beware, frende / be not so hardi to bere any thyng fro hens / for y\(^e\) treser that is 20 here is not yours / nor it belongeth you\(^6\) not to haue it / therfore set downe agayne that ymage / without ye do it shortly / ye shall by it derely'\(^7\) / y\(^e\) emperour, seyng the two knightes thretenyng him / he was in 24 great feare / 5 he set downe the ymage & beheld y\(^e\) knightes, & said / 'Syrs, ye speke fyersly to me / for the treasure / the which ye warne me that I shulde not take any parte therof, by all right ought to be myn, 28 and none others / syn I haue founde it / 5 therfor I comire you by y\(^e\) puyssance of god / & of his angelles & archangelles, & all saintes / that y\(^e\) shewe me y\(^e\) trouth to whom this treasure 8 do parteyne\(^8\) / ye 32 ought to knowe it / syn ye haue y\(^e\) kepynge therof' / than y\(^e\) .ii. knyghtes answered & said / 'syr, this

\(^1\) sylke, \(^2\) if, \(^3\) they. \(^4\) Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 2. \(^5\) and. \(^6\) you after to. \(^7\) derely before by it. \(^8\) doth belong.
They tell him it is Croissant's property, treasure that ye here se / ought to partayne to Croissant, sone to ydc themperour, who alone lyeth on a burden of strawe here by not ferre fro this chambr / he lyeth right porely & naked / the which treasure was iudged 4 to him .v.C. yere past / 1neuer syn 2 there hath ben taken fro it ye\(^e\) value of a\(^3\) peny / nor neuer syn it was layde here there neuer entred any erthely man but onely you; Croysant who slepeth without is a valiaunt 8 knight, & ful of 4all\(^4\) trouth / wherfore, ye wyll know to whom this treasure parteyneth / 1 shall shewe you ye\(^e\) maner how ye may know it / beholde yonder hepe of golde / go & take therof .iii. besantes / & put them in 12 to your purse / than returne into your palais & 5make a crye through\(^5\) rome that al pore men com to your court, & that to ech of them ye shall\(^6\) gyue a floryn\(^7\) of golde. Whan Croisant shall here that he shal\(^6\) not be 16 behynde / but he wyll come amonge other to take that almes / & than ye\(^e\) thre besantes that shall be in your purse, take & cast \(8\) them on the erth / one in one place / & a[no]\(^8\)ther in another place / wheare as ye\(^e\) 20 pe[ople] must pas to com to receyue your [almes], than Croisant shall come the same [way] & fynde the thre besantes, the whic[h] by] reason of his noblenes & bounte he will come & brynge them to you a[gain], 24 therby ye shall know that ye\(^e\) treasu[re that] is here assembled\(^10\) parteyneth to hi[m, and] ought to be his / than gyue him your [faire] daughter in mariage / & than \(4\)bryn[ge him] hyther / & than ye shal se that he ma[y take] of this treasure at his pleasure / for it is] all his / no man shall say the contra[rie, and] doyng thus as we haue sayd / ye s[hall] haue parte of this treasure.'

1 and. 2 that time. 3 one. 4\(-\)4 omitted. 5\(-\)5 cause to be proclaimed throughout. 6 will. 7 Florent. 8 Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1. 9 leaf torn [ ] from 1601 ed. 10 before you.
Howe the two knightes th[at] kept this treasure spake with the emperour Guymart, & shewed him the maner howe he shulde know Croisant. And of the meruaile that Croisant had whan he awoke & sawe the mete & drinke by him. Capitulo. C.lxxxxi.

Han the emperour had wel herde the two knightes he went to the hepe of golde & toke the thre besantes, & [dydj] put them in his purs / than he toke leaue of the two knyghtes & departed, whan he was issued out / he loked behynd him / than he saw the dore fast closed / wherof he had great meruaile / & founde Croysant styl slepynge / & so he past by, & wold not a wake him / & than he went to his palaiies; & then his lordes demaunded of him where he had ben that he taried so longe, but he wolde not shew them any thynge of yᵉ matter / than he went to dyner, & was [richly serued]; and then Croissant / who lay and slept in the old Pallace / suddenly awoake, and had great meruaile of the furred Mantle that he found vppon him / and he saw also lying by him a Napkin, and therin wrapped good white bread, Capon, rosted Fesant, & Partridge, and therby he saw lying a great bottel full of wine, and when he saw this good cheere, he thanked god of that adventure. Then he did eate of the meate, and dranke of the wine at his pleasure; and when he had well eaten and drunke, he departed from thence, and left the rest behind him, and tooke nothing with him; and also he left the furred Mantle, for he durst not weare it, but sayd to himselfe, that he had no right thereto,

1 All in [] from 1601 ed. omitted. 2 to. 3 and. 4 his. 5 the emperour. 6 Fol. clxxxxii. col. 2.
because it was a thing that was none of his, and so he went downe through the streets of the Towne.

The proofe that the emperour Guymart made to know Croisant, vnto whome he gaue his Doughter in marriage, and deliuered [him all his Signiorie and Inheritance,] whereof great ioye was made at] Rome[.] Ch. CLXXXII. [C.lxxxii.] 8

[Hen the emperor was risen from dinner, he called to him Four of his servants, to whome he gaue in charge that they should cause to be proclaimed in 12 euerie Strete] of the town[e [that all pore men that would] come to them[perour, should have in almes] eueryma[n a Fl[orent of gold of the value] of .x. sous / the w[hich crie was made] in every 16 strete & ma[rket place in Rome, where]by 1 all the 1 pore m[en drew to wardes the Pallaice]. Whan this cryn [wa[s made Croissant heard] it, whearof he was [ioyfull, and said howe] hee would goe thider [among 20 others to ha]ue the emperours almes, 2 wherewith hee thought hee would pay his host, and then in haste he went thether. The Emperour, who was there readie / thought to see & prooue whether the two Knights 24 sayings were true or not, & so drew out of his purse the Three Besans of gould, the which he did cast in diners places, in the way as the pore men shuld come to the Pallaice, but many poore men passed ouer them, and 28 perceived them not: & then Croissant came amonge others, & he saw among the mens feet one Besan of gould faire and bright, and he stouped downe and tooke it vp, and then he went forth, & within a little 32

\[1-1 euerie. \quad 2 \text{Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1.}\]
while after he found the second Besan, the which also he tooke vp, and a little further among the mens feete he espied the Third Besan, the which also hee tooke vp; then hee thought within himselfe, and sayd, 'Alas, what a Caitiffe am I? if these had beene silver, they had been mine, but they are fine gould, wherfore I am beguiled, for they appertaine to the Emperour Guymart, who holdeth this Empire; [I] have no right to kepe them, because they belong not to mee, therefore I wyll render them to the emperour, vnto whome they doe appertaine.' then hee came to the Em[perour,]

...He brings them to the emperor.

Croissant comes and picks up the three besants.

The emperor receives him kindly, and offers him his daughter in marriage.

He brings them to the emperor.

...The emperor brings them to the emperor.
prepared, whearin Crois[ant was] bayned. Than the
emperor [brought him] such apparel as was met for
[him] to haue. Whan he was thus richely [app]arelled
/a fayrer nor a better made [ma]ne could not be founde
in a xviii real[mes] crystened / whearof kyng Guymart
[had] great joye, and said that in all his lyfe he neuer
saw a more goodlyer prince / he was great amongst
other men, & wel furnysshed of al his membres; he was
byg & large in his shulders / the skyn whyte enewed
with reed / his heere lyke gold wyre, his face streyt
with a large forheed / his eyen gray, his nose
well made / longe armes / & byg / handes, fayre & his
streyt legges / his fete well proportioned and made /
kyng Guymart coude not be satysfyed with regardlyng
of him / he lede him into the palais wheare as his
lordes were, who greatly prayed him, and said eche to
other / that they had neuer sene so goodly a prynce /
nor better fourmed of his membres / than the kyng
sent for his daughter by two great lordes / they wente
to her chambr e for her / she came into ye palais to ye
kyng her father, richely accompanyed with ladyes
& damselles / of their apparel I wyl make no longe
rehearsall / for it was as riche as might be, & she was so
fayre / that god and nature could not amende her / no
Painter in the world, though he were neuer so
skilfull, could not paint ye fashion nor proportion
of her beautifull bodie, and all that were there present,
both young and old, sayd that they neuer sawe nor
heard report of so faire a copple of Creatures as the
noble Croissant and this Ladie were, for enerie man
thought that they were made for nothing else but
to cause men to behould them and their beautie.

1 bathed and. 2 Croissant. 3 fourmed. 4 omitted.
5 the Emperor. 6 how. 7 for. 8 and. 9 mingled.
10 his Legs before fayre. 11 the. 12 and then.
13 lauded and. 14 before. 15 made nor. 16 then.
17 from 1601 ed. The page in the earlier ed. is torn away.
Howe the Emperour Guymart promised Croissant that within three days he should have his Daughter in marriage; And how the Emperour Guymart led Croissant to the olde Pallaice, and shewed him the great Treasure that the two Knightes kept for him.

Ch. clxxx[x]iii.

Hen the Emperour Guymart sawe his Daughter come, hee toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My right deere Daughter, I haue found for you a Husband, to whome I haue gien you, and you may well say that a fairer man nor a hardyer Knight you never saue before, and that is the noble Croissant, vnto whom this Empire appertaineth by rightfull inheritance, and he is Son to the noble Emperour Ide, who hath gien this Empire to his son Croissant, but when he was of no great age he departed from this Cittie with a small companie, and went to serue in strang countreys, and when the Lords of this countrey saw that they were without a Lord, they sent for me into Puille, and so they made mee heere Emperour wrongfully and without reason; but nowe since that Croissant the rightfull Inheritour is returned; for to discharge my soule towards God, I shall put into his hands al his Empire, without keeping from him any part thereof, for as for me I am rich and puissant ynough; and therefore, Croissant, if it be your pleasure, you shall have my Daughter in mariage.' 'Sir,' (quoth Croissant) 'if it be her pleasure I will not refuse her, for I never saue a fairer nor none that I had rather to haue.' When the faire Damsell vnderstood Croissant shee was right joyfull, and she beheld Croissant, who seemed to her so faire
that her lune was enflamed vpon him, for the more she beheld him, the more she loued him / and she thought it long vntill the matter was made perfect ; then she sayd to the Kinge her Father, 'Sir, then it is your will and pleasure that I shall haue Croissant in marriage, you may commaund mee as it please you, it were a folly for mee to make refuse ; and, Sir, I require you to let vs be married shortly, for if I haue not him I 8 renounce all marriage for euer, for there is none other that euer shall set the Ring on my finger, but onely Croissant.' When the King vnderstoode his Daughter hee laughed hartely, and sayd, 'Deere Daughter, thinke not the contrarie, but that you shall haue him to your Husband.' then the King sent for a Bishoppe, who assured them together, whereof the Damsell was so joyful that she wist not what to doo, and prinuely she thanked our Lorde god: and if she loued him well, Croissant loued her as well, and both of them desired for the day that they might come together in wedlocke.

When Three dayes were passed, and that the prouission was made readie for the wedding, then King Guymart made them to sweare each to other, and especially he made Croissant to promise that on the Third day hee should take his Daughter in marriage, the which Croissant promised, and swere so to doe : then the King tooke Croissant by the hand, and ledde him to the old Pallaice, to prooue if the Treasure that was there might be had away by Croissant, as the two Knightes had shewed him ; and then they two alone came to the ould Pallaice; when they were come thether the King sayd, 'Faire Sonne, I loue you well, and also you ought to beare me your loue, since you shall haue my Daughter in marriage, and because I haue great affiance in you, I shall shew you what I thinke to say, and that which lyeth in my heart; it is of troth, that about foure dayes passed, as I came from
service, I stoode and leaned out at a window in my Pallaice, and I beheld this same place where as we be now, where I saw you lye asleepe, repleat with 4 famine and pouertie, I tooke of you great pitie, and I brought to you bread and drinke, and did sette it by you, and I couered you with a furred mantle, and so I let you lye still, for I would not awake you, and as I S returned from you, I sawe a dore open of this Chamber, the which you see now closed, out of the which I sawe a great light yssue; then I went thether and entred into the Chamber, and there I sawe so great Treasure, 12 that I never sawe none such in all my life: there was a rich Image of gould, the which I thought to have taken and borne with me, and as I had it in my handes, two knightes well armed came foorth, whereof I was 16 afraide; then they sayd vnto me, that I should not be so hardy as to touch the Image nor no part of the Treasure that I sawe there, for they sayd that it did not appertaine to me, and if I did the contrarie I should 20 repent it, and they sayd incontinent they would slay me: then I demaunded to whome that Treasure did belong. Then they sayd that it did belong vnto Croissant, who lay heere without a sleepe, and they 24 commanded me to take three Besans of gould to prooue thereby to whome the Treasure should appertaine, and then they advised me to make a Dole to poore men / and that I shold cast down the Besans 28 vppon the earth whereas the poore men shoulde passe by, and he that found them and brought them to me, this Treasure should appertaine to him, wherefore, I pray you, let vs go thether to know the troth.' 'Sir,' 32 (quoth Croissant) 'I pray you let vs goe thether.' When they came there they found the dore closed, and then Croissant knocked thereat, and sayd, 'Ye Sirs, that be within, I pray you in the name of God to 36 open this dore.' incontinent the dore opened, and
They enter the treasure-chamber, and find the two knights guarding it. ther they found the two Knightes with their swords in their hands. Then Guymart and Croissant entred into the Chamber, and the two Knightes came to Croissant, & made him great cheere, and sayd, 'Croissant, your great Prowesse and Noblenes is greatly to be praised, we haue been a longe time heere sette to kepe for you this Treasure that you see heere, for it is Fiue Hundred yeeres since that we were set heere by King 8 Oberon to keepe this Treasure for you, and hee shewed vs that it appertained to you, and nener since it was touched by any man, but onely by King Guymart, whom / to the intent to ayd and succour you / wee 12 had him take three Besans of gould, and shewed him that this Treasure appertained neither to King nor Emperour, butalonely to you, which is so great that no man liuing can esteeme it / you may take it & beare 16 it away, or giue it whereas it shall please you, and whatsoever you take from it, all your life it shall not diminish nor decrease.' When Croissant vnderstood them, hee was ioyfull, and thanked the Knightes in 20 that they hadde so longe kept his Treasure; then they tooke leaue of Croissant, and embraced him, and sayd, 'Sir, we require you to bee courteous and liberall, and pitifull to the poore, and loue well all noble and wise 24 men, and giue to them largely, and be good and true to your Father in law, King Guymart, for he is a noble and a wise Prince; you ought to thanke him, & to loue him aboue all other men liuing.' Then Croissant thanked 28 them of their good advertisement, and then they tooke their leaue, and so departed sodenly, that neither Croissant nor Guymart wist not where they were become, whereof they were abasshed, and made on 32 them the signe of the crosse; then they looked about the Chamber and saw the Treasure that was there, whereof Croissant was so abasshed that he wist not what to say, for there was a great light in the Chamber 36
as though there had been Thirtie Torches lighted, by reason of the bright stones that were there. to speake of the Treasure that was in that Chamber, I cannot shewe it, for ther was so much that they were thereof abasshed to behold it.

When Croissant sawe this Treasure, it was no maruaile though he was ioyfull, and thought to himselfe that he would not spare to giue to them that were worthy, & such as did serve him truely, and so hee did, for he gane so largely that all the Citie praised him; and when they had beeue there a certaine space, Croissant sayd to King Guymart, 'Sir, of this treasure I will that you haue the one halfe, & you shall haue the keys of that, and giue thereof at your pleasure.' 'Faire Sonne,' (quoth the King) 'I thanke you, all that I haue is yours, and all that you haue is mine, wee will part nothing betweene vs as longe as we liue.' Then they departed from thence, and Croissant tooke certaine of the iewels to giue to his Spouse; and then they departed out of the Chamber, & locked the dore, & tooke the key with them, and so they returned to the Pallace right ioyfull. Then Croissant gane to the Lady the rich iewels, who then humbly thanked him therefore.

Of the great Treasure that they had, and how Croissant wedded the noble damsell, daughter to King Guymart, and of the feaste there made.

After that King Guymart and Croissant were returned to the Pallace, the Ladie was readye appareled, and then the two Louers were weddele togither in the Chappell of the Pallace. The great ioye and myrth 1 added leaf.
that was made in the Citie I omyte, they dyed, and after dyner the yong Knyghts justed, and the joye and sporte cannot be expressed, and after supper, and the dauncing was done, Croissant and his Ladie went to bed in a riche Chamber; so faire a coupelle was neuer seene, and on the morowe the feasteinge was renewed, and continuede fiftene dayes. And longe tyme thei lyned togither. So that at laste King 8 Guymarte lay sicke in bed, and on the fourthe daye he dyede, to the great sorowe of Ladie Katherine his daughter, and of Croissant, who dearelye loude him. And after his deathe, by the consente of all the Lordes 12 of the empire, Croissant was crowned Emperour. And the Ladie Katherine Empress, at whos coronation was made greate feasting and joye. Croissant amended and encreased the signiorie of Rome, & conquered 16 diuers Realms, as Ierusalem, And all Surrey, as more plainlye you may knowe by the Cronicle that is made of him and his.

Thus endethe the auncient, honourable, famouse, 20 and delightulle hystorie of Huon of Bourdeaux, one of the Peers of Fraunce, and Duke of Guyenne, and of dyuers Princes liuing in hys tyme. Translated out of frenche into English by Syr Iohn Bourchire, Knight, 24 Lord Berniers, at the requeste of the Lord Hastings, Earl of Huntinton, in the yeare of our Lorde God, one thousande five hundrede and three score and Ten, and now newlie revised and corrected thys present yeare, 28 1601.

FINIS.
PREFATORY NOTE.

Apology for my unconscionable delay in completing this edition of Lord Berners' *Huon of Burdeux* may be misconstrued as an impertinence. I will therefore only venture to say, that since I undertook the work and produced the first part early in 1883, my time has been more fully occupied than I could have then anticipated, and that my leisure has of late years grown very limited. I trust, however, that this concluding portion of my labour will not seem unsatisfactory to those who were good enough to express approval of my earlier efforts.

My best thanks are due to Mr. W. A. Clouston for the interesting and valuable notes which he has supplied on the magical episodes in the Romance.

Sidney L. Lee.
APPENDIX.

I. Lord Berners and Euphuism, p. 785.
II. Lord Berners' work on Calais, p. 789.
III. The Hamilton MS. of Huon, p. 789.
IV. Contemporary Criticism of Huon, p. 790.
V. The Bibliography of Lord Berners' Huon, p. 791.
VI. The 1601 Revision of Lord Berners' English, p. 791.
VII. A table of the magical incidents in the romance, with notes, p. 798.
VIII. Index Locorum, with a note on the romance's geography, p. 811.
IX. Index Nominum, p. 815.
X. Glossary, p. 839.

I. LORD BERNERS AND EUPHUISM.2

It has been recently proved that English Euphuism is a Spanish product,—an imitation of the style of Antonio de Guevara, a Spanish writer of the early part of the sixteenth century. John Lyly, the author of Euphuies, has been deprived of the honour, long assigned him, of having invented 'a new English.'3 The leading characteristics of his manner of writing are undoubtedly borrowed from Sir Thomas North's translation of Guevara's popular book, Libro del Emperador Marco Aurelio con el Redox de Príncipes.4 North's version appeared under the title of the Dial of Princes, in 1557, with a dedication to Queen Mary: it was republished in 1568, 'newly revised and corrected, and reform'd of faultes escaped in the first edition.' Lyly's indebtedness to North has been fully illustrated elsewhere,5 but it is important to note here that North himself was anticipated by Lord Berners in his endeavour to introduce Guevara's style and

---

1 The editorial matter is fully indexed here.
2 See Introduction, p. xlv.
3 In 1632 Edward Blount, when issuing Lyly's Six Court Comedies, writes of the author in an address to the Reader:—'Our Nation are in his debt, for a new English which hee taught them. Euphuies and his England [i.e. Lyly's book] began first that language.'
4 It is worth noting that all the English translations from Guevara were made through the French.
5 See Euphuisms, by Dr. Landmann, Giessen, 1881; Shakspere and Euphuism, by Dr. Landmann, in New Shakspere Soc.'s Transactions, 1884.
his best known work to English readers. Doubts were fully expressed at the time of the first publication of North's translation, as to his right to claim the glory of having discovered Guevara, or even of having done any part of the work of translation himself. The charges were in part justified. ¹ Lord Berners and Lord Berners' nephew, Sir Francis Bryan,—the first Englishmen to present their countrymen with Guevara's writings in English versions,—did more for Guevara's fame and influence in England than Sir Thomas North. And their labours were at the service of the public many years before North attempted authorship.

'At Calais ye tenth daie of Marche in the yere of the regne of our soueraygne lorde King Henry the VIII. xxiii' (i.e. 1533), Lord Berners completed, according to the colophon of the first published edition of 1534, his translation of Guevara's Marke Aurelie Emperour, otherwise called the Golden Boke. The Spanish original bore the title Libro Aureo de Marco Aurelio Emperador y Eloquentissimo Orador, and it was an expanded version of the same work that Sir Thomas North anglicized three-and-twenty years later. Both versions are identical in style and almost identical in subject matter; and a comparison of the two translations shows that Lord Berners writing in 1533 (and not North writing in 1557) is the true parent of Euphuism or Guevarism in England.

I print side by side Berners' and North's versions of the prologue of the Golden Boke. Lord Berners' sentences are Euphuistic beyond all question; they are characterized by the forced antitheses, the alliteration, and the far-fetched illustrations from natural phenomena, characteristic of Lyly and his successors.² The subject is the destructive and productive powers of Time:—

¹ To the second edition of the Dial of Princes North added a fourth book, which he had previously omitted, and 'certen letters [of Guevara] written by Marcus Aurelius, selected out of the Spanishe copie, not wrytten in the Frenche tongue.' In 'the Epistle to the Reader,' which prefaces these appendices, North writes under date 10th May, 1568: 'What detracting tongues report of mee & my first tranuell in the translation of this Dyall, enlarging them at pleasure to woork my defam[e], disabling my doing herein, by brute yt was no woork of myne, but the fruit of others labor: I neede not much force, since by dayly proof wee see that yll desposed mynds can neuer frame an honest tongue in head.'

² These results have been previously made public in a letter contributed to
BERNERS.

'There is nothyng so entier, but it diminisheth; nor nothyng so hole, but that is very; nor nothyng so strong, but that it breaketh; nor nothyng so well kept, but that it corrupteth. . . . The fruite in the spryngyng synde haue not the vertue to gyue sustenancce, nor perffyte suete-nesse to satysfie the taste of them that eate thereof: but thanne passeth the season of somer and harvest cometh, whiche tyme doth better rype them, and thanne that we do eate, dothe proffyte us, the profe thereof is ryghte sueterenesse, and gyueth the more force and vertue, and the greater is the taste.'

The popularity of Lord Berners' translation, of which nine editions are known to have been published between 1534 and 1560, and five between 1560 and 1588, is a remarkable indication of the favour bestowed on Euphuistic style in England before the time of North or Lyly.

But more can be proved in the same direction. The translator's prologue to Lord Berners' Froissart, written in 1524, and that to be found in other of his works, show him to have come under Guevara's or a similar influence before he translated the Golden Boke. In the following abbreviated extracts from the prologue to Froissart the parallelism of the sentences, the repetition of the same thought differently expressed, the rhetorical question, the accumulation of synonyms, the classical references are irrefutable witnesses to the presence of well-developed Euphuism. Berners is writing of the advantages of history:

the Athenæum, for 18th August, 1883. To make the parallel more effective, the following extracts from Lyly's Euphues, in which the form of the sentences is almost identical with those in the two passages printed above, should be read with them:—'There is nothing so lyghter than a feather, yet is it sette a loft in a woeman's hatte: nothing sligter then haire, yet is it most frisht in a Ladies head, so that I am in good hope, though there be nothing of lesse accounte then Euphues, yet he shall be marked with Ladies eyes, & lyked sometimes in their eares' (p. 221); or, 'There is nothing more swifter than time, nothing more sweeter: wee haue not as Seneca saith little time to live but we leesse muche, neither haue we a short life by Nature, but we make it shorter by naughtynesse' (p. 152).
'Ones the continuall redyng thereof maketh yonge men equall in prudence to olde men; and to olde fathers stryken in age, it mynystrareth experience of thinges. More it yeldeth priuate persons worthy of dignyte, rule and gouernaunce: it compelleth the emperours, hygh rulers, and gouernours to do noble dedes, to thende they may optayne immortall glory: it exciteth, moueth and stereth the strong, hardy warriours for the great laude that they haue after they ben deed promptly to go in hande with great and harde parels in defence of their countrie: it prohybyteth reprouable persons to do mischeuous dedes. . . . What moued the strong and ferse Hercules to enterpryse in his lyfe so many great incomparable labours and parylls? . . . . In semblable wyse dyd his imitator, noble dyke Theseus and many other. . . . What knowledge should we haue of auncyent thinges past, and historie were not, whiche is the testemony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembraunce and the messanger of antiquite? Why moued and stered Phaleryus, the kynge of Phthalome oft and delaughtly to rede bokes? Forsothe for none other cause but that . . . ?

Nor was Lord Berners the only author who fell under Euphuistic influences at this early date. His sister Margaret was the mother of Sir Francis Bryan, one of Henry VIII's favourites, and a lover of literature, who was influenced by his uncle's literary tastes. The first edition of Berners' *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius* was published posthumously. The colophon states the translation to have been undertaken 'at the instaunt desire of his [Berners'] neuewe Sir Francis Bryan knyghte,' and to Sir Francis its posthumous publicatation was avowedly due. At the close of Berners' *Golden Boke* is a passage applauding the 'swete style' of 'the sentences of this booke,' which is an 'envoy' in praise of Guevarism almost certainly from Sir Francis' pen. Bryan's admiration of Guevara is further shown by his own translation of another of Guevara's works in 1548. The English title runs:—*A Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier in Commandacion of the Life of a Labourynge Man.* London (by T. Berthelet), August 1548. Bryan must therefore be placed beside his uncle as one of the progenitors of English Euphuism. And Lord Berners must be held responsible for the direction of his nephew's literary tastes.1

1 See the article on Bryan in the *Dictionary of National Biog*.
2 It may, perhaps, be not deemed altogether impertinent if I note here the chief editions of English translations of Guevara's works published before the issue of Lyly's *Euphues* in 1579:—
II. LORD BERNERS' WORK ON CALAIS.

On p. xlv of the Introduction, I state, on the authority of Anthony à Wood, that Lord Berners was the author of a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*. At the time of writing I was not aware that this work was still extant, but I now find that Mr. J. G. Nichols, in his edition of *The Chronicle of Calais*, published by the Camden Society in 1846, had identified it with a copy of *Ordinances for Watch and Ward of Calais*, printed by him from the British Museum (MS. Cotton. Faust. E. vii, 89—102b). The tract is of no literary interest, but it gives a valuable account of the police regulations enforced in Calais while under English rule.

III. THE HAMILTON MS. OF *HUON*.

On p. xxxv I state, on the authority of the Athenaeum, that the Hamilton collection of MSS. included an illuminated copy of the French poetical romance of *Huon of Burdeux*.

1535
1537 *The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier*, by Sir Francis Bryan.
1542
1546
1548 *The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier*, by Sir Francis Bryan.
1557 *The Dial of Princes*, by Sir Thomas North.
1568 *The Dial of Princes*, 2nd edit., by Sir Thomas North.
1574 *The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara*, by Edward Hellowes.
1577 *The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara*, by Edward Hellowes (2nd edit.).
1577 *A Chronicle conteyning the Lives of tenne Emperours of Rome*, compiled by the most famous Syr Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Queen Elizabeth.
1577 *Golden Epistles*: gathered as well out of the remaynder of Guevara’s wookes as other Authours, Latin, French, and Italian, by Geoffrey Fenton.
At the time of writing, the sale of these MSS. to the German Government had just been completed; but although they had arrived in Berlin, the authorities there had not had time to examine them. Herr Tobler has since examined the romances included in the MSS.; and has published an account of the Huon MS. in the transactions of the Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin. It there appears that the MS. is a version of the chanson de geste of Huon d'Auvergne, and has no concern whatever with Huon of Bordeaux.

IV. CONTEMPORARY CRITICISM OF HUON.

To the instances given above on pp. xlviii and xlix should be added the very uncomplimentary notice of 'Huon' in 'The Epistle to the Reader,' prefixed by Thomas Bowes to the second of his 'French Academie' (1594)—a translation from the French of Primaudaye. After denouncing dramatists as atheists, Bowes proceeds:

'It were too long to set downe the Catalogue of those lewde and lascivious bookes which have mustered themselfes of late yeeres in Paules Churchyard, as chosen souldiers ready to fight vnder the diuels banner, of which it may bee truely said, that they prevale no lesse (if not more) to the vpholding of Atheisme in this light of the Gospel, then the Legend of Lies, Huon of Burdeaux, King Arthur, with the rest of that rabble, were of force to maintaine Popery in the dayes of ignorance.'

The passage from Gervase Markham's Health to the Gentlemanly Profession of Serving Men (1578), in which reference is made to Huon of Burdeaux, may be worth giving in full (cf. p. xlix and p. 370). Markham is referring to the baneful attractions which gold has for mankind. He adds:

'But the Deuill (in my iudgement), the authour, roote, and originall of all mischiefe and miserie hath infused into this mettall some peece of Adamant, and into man's desire and affection some lumpe of Iron; which Adamant, according to his nature, drawing the Iron vnsto it, linketh them selues togethther in undesolveable bondes, not much vnlyke the Castle of Adamant, feigned in the historie of Hughon of Burdeaux, which Castle having drawne the sayd Hughon vnsto it, all hope of departure thence was quite extinguisshed, onely except he could escape and be thence deluyered by an extraordinarie and imminent danger: which was to be carried ouer the sea in the clawes of a Griffine, whose desire was to deuoure
him, and that was one danger; and in great hazard in regard of his wayghte to fall from the sayd Griffine into the ocean and so be drowned, and that was another danger; which dangers as they were great and perilous, so I holde them perils no lesse dangerous and as hard for them to be separated and delivered from this pemitious Adamant Castle that hath linked and chained them selues into it by their extraordinarie couetowse desire of this worldly Mammon.'

V. THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF LORD BERNERS' *HUON.*


VI. THE 1601 REVISION OF LORD BERNERS' ENGLISH.

Nearly seventy years after the romance of *Huon* was translated by Lord Berners into the English of his generation, the publisher of a third edition (1601) entered on his title-page that 'the rude English' was 'corrected and amended.' The first paragraph is completely recast in the Elizabethan version, and shows that the reviser at first contemplated rewriting the romance in a pompous Euphuistic style. 'In the tyme accountyde the yere of grace' becomes 'In the time by computation called ye yeere of grace;' 'Charles the Grete, namyd Charlemayn' becomes 'Charles the Great, more vulgarly known by the name of Charlemaine;' and the last sentence of the paragraph is transformed thus:

---

1 See page lvi.
2 See p. lvi, sup.
On pp. 6-7 another long passage is completely transformed, but, unlike the opening paragraph, the revised language is studiously made simple and straightforward.

This sweeping style of revision was, however, rapidly abandoned. In the rest of the book the revision affected every page, but the method proved that it was merely undertaken by a rapid reader—probably a printer's reader—mainly with a view to removing the obvious archaisms. Old words, liable to puzzle the pleasure-seeking public, to whom romances appealed, were replaced by modern words; the Gallicized English, in which Lord Berners, an accomplished French scholar, not infrequently indulged, was completely anglicized; the punctuation and spelling were occasionally made to conform to more modern rules; now and then an old-fashioned construction was altogether reformed; in very rare cases the sentence was rewritten. The alterations were not made with sufficient system to satisfy all the requirements of scientific philology, but they exhibit in a practical fashion the notions of an every-day Elizabethan as to the characteristic differences between his own written language and that of his grandfather.

Of purely grammatical changes made on archaic grounds, these affecting inflections are not very numerous. The plural forms *eyen* (p. 13) and *yere* (p. 29) are replaced by *eyes* and *years*. The pronoun *ye* disappears in favour of *you*, and the forms *tho* (p. 193) and *moo* (p. 36) become *those* and *more*. In the case of verbs, such strong forms of the past tense as *bet* (p. 86) and *clame* (p. 683) are softened into *did beat* and *did clime* (climb). The old ending of past tenses and participles in *-yde* or *-yd* (apealyde, baynyd, deuysyd, etc.) is modernized into *-ed*. *Quod* (p. 21) becomes *quoth*, and the participial termination of *-en* in *bresten* (p. 69) is abandoned. The termination *-eth* or *-yth* in third person plural of present tenses is not uncommon in Lord Berners. Thus he writes, 'These thynges hath' (p. 9), and 'I se them aproche that desyryth my deth' (p. 26). In the Elizabethan version these phrases become 'These thynges have,' and 'I se them aproche that desire my death.'

Changes of construction are rarely made in the 1601 revision. But the double negative did not approve itself to the reviser, and he
usually removes one of the negative particles. Thus 'none other shall have no profyght' (p. 13) becomes 'none other shall have any honour'; and 'nor never none of hys lynage gane as yette very good counsell' (p. 12) becomes 'nor ever any of his lynage,' etc. A few of Lord Berners' favourite constructions are loose adaptations from the French, and these are as a rule removed. In Lord Berners' phrase '[they] coude them great thanke' (p. 499) the reviser reads gave for coude, thus conforming to modern usage. This is a favourite phrase with Lord Berners (ep. 'I can you grete thanke,' p. 5). The French original has '[Je] bon gré vous secy;' and Lord Berners slavishly reproduces the phrase, translating savoir by can [O.E. can, cunnan = ken, know]. In Berners' Froissart the expression is more frequently employed. Cotgrave, like the reviser, does not recognize it. Under savoir he translates 'savoir bon gré a . . .' by 'to give thanks unto . . .'

The rejection of archaic words is the most valuable part of the reviser's labour. So far as connecting particles and non-substantive words are concerned, the enumeration is necessarily brief, but each of them is important. Thus or in the sense of before is invariably rejected for ere or before. The enclitic as, which Lord Berners was in the habit of occasionally adding to there and then, and almost invariably to where, is always dropped. Than for then is never accepted, and the forms syn (p. 199), seen, or sin are not allowed to do duty for since. Towards or toward is in Lord Berners' language used as two separate words, and the word governed by it is very often inserted after to. Thus we meet with to her warde (p. 254), to us warde (p. 295), to the host warde (p. 328), to ye galowes warde (p. 328), to the tre warde; but all these in the Elizabethan version are transformed into toward her, towarde us, towards the Hooste, toward the galowes, and towards the tre. Clene for wholly, as in clene armyp (p. 197), is replaced by all. The which figures perpetually in the old version, and the article is rejected in the new (ep. p. 16). What is not allowed to stand for why (p. 33), and the excessive employment of that to the exclusion of which, and with vague reference not to the preceding word, but to long clauses, is avoided by the Elizabethan. The awkwardness of the repetition of then,
used merely as a connecting particle—a common feature of all early English prose—is met by its omission or by the substitution of and. With regard to auxiliary verbs, it should be noted that a, the attenuated form of have (p. 149), and will, a common variant of will (p. 87), either of which is frequent in Lord Berners’ prose, are not found in the revised version. The verb do is used far more loosely by Lord Berners than his successor allowed to be correct. Thus Berners writes ‘They dyd to have Huon jugy’d’ (p. 22), where the reviser substitutes laboured for dyd; ‘[He] dyd of his brothers gowne’ (p. 28) becomes ‘he did take off’; in the sentence ‘ye that . . . have well herde the grete vnresonablenes that the kynge do too one of oure peeres,’ do is replaced in the Elizabethan version by offers. Another very common verb used by Lord Berners is ween or went for think or thought. The latter in the 1601 version invariably takes the former’s place. It is clear that such a phrase as ‘it skeeleth not of my dethe’ (p. 677) had an archaic sound to the reader of 1601, for he refashions it as ‘It is no matter though I die.’

The following list contains most of the substantive words, which the Elizabethan appears to have rejected on the sole ground that they had fallen or were falling out of common use. Many of them still figured in the poetry of the day, and Shakespeare pressed some of them into his service. But the fact that the reviser of Lord Berners’ text put himself to the pains of substituting for them more familiar expressions, is positive proof that they sounded in his ear rude or old-fashioned. The reader will hardly need to be warned that the substituted word is not always the best or even a correct representative of the original. A reference to the Glossary will sufficiently remove difficulties on this score.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>c. 1533.</th>
<th>1601.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apayred</td>
<td>p. 240 replaced by griewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apealyde</td>
<td>p. 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appellyd</td>
<td>p. 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arson</td>
<td>p. 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beseen</td>
<td>p. 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brast</td>
<td>p. 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brest</td>
<td>p. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carnall</td>
<td>p. 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chere</td>
<td>p. 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clypped</td>
<td>p. 635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crope</td>
<td>p. 169</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pommell (of a saddle) adorned brake burst loung countenance embraced back
The following Gallicized words, used by Lord Berners as well as by Caxton and a few other early translators from the French, were never fairly naturalized in England. How literal Lord Berners could be on occasion, our comment on his use of ‘can grete thanke’ has already shown. With it may be compared such a phrase as ‘eseryd a hye,’ by which Berners renders ‘escria en haut.’ Several of those words which were ejected by the Elizabethan reviser (cp. parents, denise) had not, however, entirely dropped out of the language, but they were quickly disappearing, and clearly were not quite familiar in 1601. As in the case of the merely archaic words, the reviser's rendering is not always correct (cp. entreated). Reference should be made to the Glossary when the sense is not obvious.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Word</th>
<th>Replaced By</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brochyd</td>
<td>spurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chatelyne</td>
<td>captain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conducte</td>
<td>conducte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consent any</td>
<td>give consent to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cordiner</td>
<td>shoemakers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couetys</td>
<td>couetousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defend</td>
<td>forbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deuysyd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deuyssinge</td>
<td>communing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deuyse</td>
<td>conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to deuysse</td>
<td>to sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dispender</td>
<td>spender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyspence</td>
<td>charges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolent</td>
<td>sorrowfull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolour</td>
<td>ill hap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doloure</td>
<td>greefe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domage</td>
<td>wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dystroyed</td>
<td>wocore impourerished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enbassd</td>
<td>ambassage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enbassetours</td>
<td>ambassadours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endoctryned</td>
<td>educated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eusample</td>
<td>example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entreated</td>
<td>entertained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entreated</td>
<td>threatened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escryed a hye</td>
<td>cried on hye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extorsyon</td>
<td>crueltie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feloney</td>
<td>villany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felony</td>
<td>rashness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fersly</td>
<td>boldly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fyaunsed</td>
<td>wedded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glotons</td>
<td>villaines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a high</td>
<td>aloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inportable</td>
<td>insupportable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mastres</td>
<td>mistress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messe</td>
<td>service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mossell</td>
<td>nostril</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muryed</td>
<td>immured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noyfull</td>
<td>Yrkesome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noyfull</td>
<td>too tedious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occyson</td>
<td>slaughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oreson</td>
<td>prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par[ent]age</td>
<td>lyneage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent</td>
<td>kinsman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parentes</td>
<td>kinred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastauence</td>
<td>pastine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>payne</td>
<td>labour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefessyd</td>
<td>pretended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purchase</td>
<td>provide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purchaseth for</td>
<td>seeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purchaseseth for</td>
<td>practised against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rased</td>
<td>torne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reculyd</td>
<td>staggred</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Several misprints and puzzling misspellings were justifiably corrected by the Elizabethan, of which the following are the most notable:

**Misprints.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>c. 1533</th>
<th>1601</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>above</td>
<td>p. 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aperaelyd</td>
<td>p. 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aryued</td>
<td>p. 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commonyuge</td>
<td>p. 392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excusyd</td>
<td>p. 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folye</td>
<td>p. 302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frusshe</td>
<td>p. 474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inbushyd</td>
<td>p. 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>c. 1533</th>
<th>1601</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>besynes</td>
<td>p. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herber</td>
<td>p. 701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impossessyonys</td>
<td>p. 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leue thystorys</td>
<td>p. 166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lybarde</td>
<td>p. 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portryd</td>
<td>p. 412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seasyd, <em>i.e.</em> ceased</td>
<td>p. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sirode</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not infrequently when attempting to remove a difficulty caused by misspelling he comes to grief. Thus, 'If any *plee* come therby,' which means 'if any plea or charge be brought,' the reviser reads, 'If any *hurt* come.' The French original reads *plait*. 'He shall derely abyde (*i.e.* abide) it' (p. 305) is rendered 'He shall dearly *buy* it.' 'To ordayne a bayenge,* i.e.* a *bayninge,* or *bathing,*' is changed into 'To ordaine a rich bed.'

A large number of changes were made like the last out of pure lightness of heart, and no philological deduction can be drawn from them. They were doubtless prompted in the first instance by the awkward spelling of the old text. Most of these changes are just such as a printer's reader might be expected to make if left to his own devices, and prove how permanent are the characteristics of these invaluable men, to whom no author ought to omit an opportunity of expressing his frequent indebtedness.
It is not safe to draw any very large conclusion from the revision. But a comparison of the two versions shows that while the structure of the language had changed very slightly, about five per cent. of Lord Berners’ vocabulary was judged to be out of date, nearly seventy years after his death, by a reader who made his standard of intelligibility the ordinary speech of his well-to-do contemporaries. At the same time it is noticeable, although not surprising, that the great literature of the end of the sixteenth century excluded a far smaller percentage of Lord Berners’ vocabulary. Poets always have a predilection for the archaisms of language. Many words ejected by the Elizabethan reviser from Lord Berners’ text are employed by Shakespeare in plays that were written about the date of the revision. The fact proves, if proof were needed, that Shakespeare freely indulged a taste for archaic expressions, and was exceptionally well read in the works of his predecessors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>c. 1533.</th>
<th>1601.</th>
<th>c. 1533.</th>
<th>1601.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>force</td>
<td>p. 152</td>
<td>violence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chorysshele</td>
<td>p. 757</td>
<td>stubbornly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clerely</td>
<td>p. 363</td>
<td>evidently</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clerkes</td>
<td>p. 732</td>
<td>doctors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drams, i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td>drachms</td>
<td>p. 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyshordenate</td>
<td>p. 700</td>
<td>dishonorable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dysordynate</td>
<td>p. 696</td>
<td>inordinate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fell after</td>
<td>p. 4</td>
<td>afterwards ensued</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortunyd</td>
<td>p. 21</td>
<td>happened</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praysyd</td>
<td>p. 39</td>
<td>regarded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rengyd, i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ranged</td>
<td>p. 494</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VII. A TABLE OF THE MAGICAL EPISODES IN THE ROMANCE.

** It is worth noting that the most striking of Huon’s magical adventures—his shipwreck on the adamant rock, his fight with the griffin, and his journey down the subterranean river—consecutively recorded on pp. 354—386 and pp. 407—444,¹ are related in the same order, and with little difference in detail, in the popular Bavarian story of Herzog Ernst von Baiern (see Karl Bartsch’s scholarly edition issued at Vienna in 1869, and Simrock’s Die Deutschen Volksbücher, iii. 305—15). The prose version of the folk-tale about Duke Ernest is still well known throughout Germany. It appears in its earliest known shape in a poem (of the Lower Rhine), of which a twelfth

¹ On pp. 387—407 the story of Esclaramonde’s sufferings at the siege of Bordeaux is inserted.
century MS. is extant. Arranged somewhat differently, each of Huon's magical adventures appears in one or other of the seven journeys of Sindbad the Sailor in the Arabian Nights. That the whole episode is of Oriental origin admits of no doubt. But two interesting questions suggest themselves. By what channel did the story reach the authors of Huon and of Herzog Ernst? Which of the two authors may claim the credit of first presenting it to European readers? Probably the Crusades produced sufficient intercourse between Europe and Asia to supply an answer to the first question. The second might be the subject of prolonged investigation, but a first survey of the evidence can point only to one result. The earliest extant manuscript of Huon which includes these adventures is of the fourteenth century (see p. xxxiii, supra). The date of the earliest extant manuscript of this portion of Huon is not, however, in itself conclusive as to the date of its composition. Nevertheless there are indications that historical events of the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries were known to the romancer, and we are not inclined to accept a date earlier than the fourteenth century for the later sections of the romance. The earliest version of Herzog Ernst has been dated two centuries earlier. Hence a strong presumption is created in favour of the theory that the author of Huon borrowed from the author of Herzog Ernst.

THE ADAMANT ROCK.

This magnetic rock, which appears in the story of Herzog Ernst, and in the story of Sindbad in the Arabian Nights, draws towards it all ships (with iron nails in them), and on Huon reaching it (p. 370) the masts of vessels which have been wrecked on it are so massed together as to present the appearance of a forest. Sir John Mandeville describes it in almost identical terms (ed. 1839, pp. 161, 163, 271). He localizes it in a Chinese sea; other writers, like the author of the Arabian Nights, place it somewhere between Tonquin and Cochin China.1

The myth of the existence of a magnetic rock that drew the iron nails out of passing ships, thus causing them to go to pieces, or that bodily attracted them to it (for it is told both ways), is one of the numerous marvels of the

---

1 The small-type notes are by Mr. W. A. Clouston.
hollow-sounding and mysterious main’ so universally credited in mediæval
times. It had doubtless been orally current in Europe long before the date
of either Duke Ernst or Huon: and while it may have been brought from
the East through the Crusades, it is perhaps as likely to have been introduced
through the Moors of Spain. Be this as it may, the incidents of Duke Huon’s
first journey to the East have an unquestionable resemblance to some of the
adventures of the renowned Sindbad.

In the old French romance of the Chevalier Berinus there is a very
curious account of the Rock of Adamant, which drew the ex-king of Blandie’s
five ships to it. The crews were in despair, for well they knew that when
their food was all consumed a terrible, lingering death was in store for them.
Presently an extremely attenuated man is observed to creep on board one of
the ships, in quest of food, as it turns out, and he informs them that there is
an inscription on the rock, but he had not read it. Aigres, the brave son of
Berinus, goes on to the rock with the lean man, who shows him the inscrip-
tion, which was to this effect: ‘Whoever may touch this rock can only be
freed by depositing on it all his wealth, save what may be necessary to enable
him to complete his voyage: one of the crew, chosen by lot, must then go to
the top of the rock and cast into the sea the ring which he will find there,
when the vessel shall instantly be freed, but he must remain on the rock.’
Aigres returns and acquaints them of the purport of the inscription: lots are
drawn, and Aigres is the victim. After bidding his family adieu, he goes to
the top of the rock, throws the ring in the sea, and all the five ships are at
once set free and sail away, taking the remarkably lean man with them. The
rock is infested by enchanters, but the gallant Aigres contrives to avoid their
snares, until another ship is drawn to the rock, when he informs the mariners
of the only means by which they can escape (for it would appear the ring
returned to the top of the rock each time it was thrown into the sea). Lots
are drawn, and so on, as before—an inconsistent story, if ever there was one!

The Rock of Adamant also figures in the Legend of St. Brandanus.—Is it
possible that the myth had its origin in some old-world sailor’s ‘yarn’ of an
actual rock, now submerged, to which vessels were driven by a very strong
current, a mishap which the unskilful navigators might ascribe to the attract-
ing force of the rock itself? There is always a substratum of fact in legends
of this kind, could it be discovered—they were not wholly invented.

THE APPLES OF YOUTH.

At the bidding of an angel Huon gathers three of these apples,
each of which, when eaten by a man of eighty or a hundred years old,
transforms him to a young man of thirty (p. 436). Huon bestows
one of these apples on the Admiral of Tauris (p. 465), and his white
hair and beard grow yellow as he eats it, and he suddenly becomes a
youth of strength and beauty. The second is eaten by the abbot of
Cluny, who is 114 years old, with similar results (pp. 552—5). The third rejuvenates Thierry, Emperor of Germany (p. 568).

This is essentially an Oriental idea—the counterpart of that of the Water
of Immortality. In Indian story-books fruits—generally mangoes, the favour-
like fruit of high and low throughout Hindústán—are frequently represented as
possessing magical properties, such as curing barrenness in women, and conferring perennial youth upon whoever ate of them. We are told in the Persian Parrot-Book (*Tuti Nama*), for instance, that a Prince having obtained some fruit of the Tree of Life, which grew in a far distant land, in order to test its virtue, gave part to a decrepit old woman (‘experimentum in corpore vili’), who no sooner tasted it than she became a blooming damsce of ‘sweet eighteen.’ With variations, the same story is found in several Indian collections, such as the *Kathá Manjari,* and there is also a version of it in the Tamil romance entitled *Alakēsu Kathá;* in both it is a mango fruit that has this quality, and the king causes some of it to be given to an aged goldsmith who was in prison for fraud, and it turned him into a youth of sixteen years—let us trust he was then released, that he might begin life over again!

There is a rather curious story about this kind of fruit in the Indian romance entitled *Sinhasana Dwatrināti,* or Thirty-two Tales of a Throne (and it occurs also in other collections), where a Brahman having received from his favourite deity, as a reward for his devotional austerities, the fruit of immortality, joyfully proceeds home and shows it to his wife, who advises him to give it to Rājā Bhartrihari, as the wealth he was sure to present him with in return were preferable to an endless life of poverty. He goes to the palace, and presenting the fruit to the good rājā, acquaints him of its nature, and is rewarded with a lākh of rūpis. The rājā gives the fruit to his wife, telling her that if she ate it her beauty should increase day by day, and she should be immortal. The rāni gives it to her paramour, the chief of the police, who, in his turn, presents it as the choicest of gifts to a favourite courtesan, who, after reflecting that it would only enable her to commit innumerable sins, resolves to offer it to the rājā, hoping to be rewarded in a future life. When Rājā Bhartrihari again received the fruit he was astonished, and on learning from the courtesan from whom she had obtained it, he saw that his wife was unfaithful, so, abandoning throne and kingdom, he departed into the jungle, where he became an ascetic. But we are not told what became of the fruit—perhaps the good rājā destroyed it, fully convinced that immortality on this earth would not be altogether a blessing!

**Armour That Renders the Wearer Invulnerable.**

See the account of giant Galaffer (p. 103).

**Cain.**

On a plain near the Caspian Sea, from which there appears to be no exit, Huon finds a ‘tun made of the heart of oak bound all about with bands of iron,’ which rolls round and round ‘in the circuit of the plain.’ Beside it lies a great iron mallet. Within Cain, the murderer of his brother Abel, is confined, with serpents and toads devouring him; but he is unable to die. He implores Huon to break the tun with the mallet, and thus release him. A fiend of hell is waiting with a boat to bear Cain from the accursed

---

1 C. imposed by Ziyā-ed-Din Nakhshabi about A.D. 1306, but representing a much older work no longer extant.
p'lace, and Cain suggests that after Huon has broken the tun, he shall tie the mallet round his neck, represent himself as Cain to the fiend, and effect his escape. Huon declines to touch the tun, but takes advantage of Cain's advice (pp. 484—492). He is ferried by the fiend to the city of Collanders, continues to call himself Cain, and is enthusiastically received by the pagans, who do not discover the deceit.

**THE CUP OF OBERON.**

This cup, which Oberon presents to Huon, fills with wine in the hands of any man who, being 'out of deadly sin,' attempts to drink out of it, but is always empty when a sinful man touches it (pp. 76, 77). The Emperor Charlemagne is proved sinful by this test, while Huon, his wife, and Gerames are all shown to be innocent of sin (p. 260).

Magical tests of chastity occur in many Asiatic as well as mediaeval European romances and tales. In the *Kathá Sarit Ságara,*1 a merchant named Guhasena is about to depart on a long trading journey, and both he and his wife have misgivings as to each other's fidelity during their separation, when the deity Siva appears before them, and puts in the hand of each a red lotus, which should fade if either proved unfaithful.—In the Persian *Tuti Náma* (or Parrot-Book) the wife of a soldier, on his leaving her to enter a great man's service, gives him a nosegay, which should betoken her chastity while it bloomed. And in the charming Arabian tale of Prince Zayn al-Asnám the King of the Genii gives him a magic mirror, in which if he see the reflection of any damsel undimmed, he may be sure that she is 'a clean maid, without aught of defect or default, and endowed with every praiseworthy quality; but if, on the contrary, the figure be found obscured, then know that she is sullied by the soil of sex;'—and the story of how the Prince at length found the required pure and spotless damsel is 'familiar to every schoolboy.'

From the East the idea of such magical tests was, no doubt, brought to Europe during the crusading times, when many a brave and worthy knight, as he lay sleepless in his tent on the plains of Syria, must have often thought of his dame at home, and wondered whether she had not found a substitute for him in the person of the 'lordly abbot, or perchance some meaner priest'! In *Amadis de Gaul* the test is a garland, in *Perce Forest* a rose, which remained fresh so long as its wearer continued chaste; while in *Tristan, Percival, Morte d'Arthur, Orlando Furioso,* and *Le Lay du Corn,* a cup of wine if spilled in the hand of either male or female indicated the unfaithful lover. In the old metrical romance of the *Wright's Chaste Wife* (edited for the E. E. T. S. by Dr. Furnivall) a poor widow gives the wright, when about to espouse her daughter, a garland of roses which would keep their colour while

---

1 Signifying, "Ocean of the Streams of Story," a great Sanskrit collection, of the 11th century, slightly abridged from a work apparently now lost, entitled *Vrihat Kathá,* or Great Story, written five hundred years earlier.
his wife was true to him, but not otherwise. In like circumstances, a carpenter, according to the *Gesta Romanorum*, received from his mother-in-law a shirt which would not be soiled or torn so long as his wife was chaste; and this also occurs in the North German tale of “The King and Queen of Spain” (Thorpe’s *Yule-Tide Stories*). In Bandello, Part I, Nov. 21, a Bohemian nobleman has a magic picture of his wife, which would betoken her infidelity by turning yellow (or green, the colour supposed to be appropriate to jealousy!) and this novel it was, doubtless—not some oral version of the *Wright’s Wife*, as I once thought—that suggested to Massinger the plot of his play of *The Picture*. Everybody knows the old English ballad of the *Boy and the Mantle*, derived from a *fabliau*, where a mantle will fit only a woman who is perfectly chaste. In the *Gesta Romanorum* a wild elephant can only be lulled asleep by two pure virgins; and in an Indian story a white elephant falls down dead, and a devotee informs the king that it will be restored to life by the presence of a chaste woman; surely no one could be so infatuated as to believe it likely—even possible—that these two stories were independently invented!

The ancient Hebrews had a water-ordeal to test a woman suspected of infidelity by her husband, which may have been derived from the Egyptians—see the Book of Numbers, ch. i, vv. 5—21, from which it is very evident that no woman conscious of guilt would risk such a punishment, threatened by one of the sacred order of the priesthood, and so she would stand self-convicted—truly, a shrewd device! The Hindús seem also to have had a water-ordeal, though of a different kind, for similar cases: in the *Rāmāyana* it is related that Sītā, the wife of Rāma, in order to prove her chastity, which the reverend hermits strongly suspected, boldly leaped into the “tank of trial,” and—more fortunate than many of her equally innocent European sisters in modern times who were “ducked” for witchcraft—she escaped being drowned, and thus satisfied the suspicious ascetics.

**DREAMS AND ANGEL’S VISIONS.**

Gerard learns approaching events in a dream (p. 16). An angelical voice, heralded by a shining light, addresses Huon (p. 435).

**FAIRIES.**

At Oberon’s birth (p. 73) a discontented fairy caused him to cease growing when three years old, but afterwards regretting this act, made him the fairest creature that ever nature formed. Translyne gave him the power of seeing through all men’s minds, and another fairy that of going whither he would by merely wishing himself there. Geraines tells Huon (p. 63) that any one speaking to Oberon is lost for ever, a common popular notion. Oberon can raise up tempests (p. 67), place rushing rivers in the paths of his enemies, or

---

1 It is curious to find this idea in a popular Bengali story, where a girl tells her companions that he who gets her for his wife will be a happy man, for the cloth she wears will never be soiled or torn.—See Rev. Lal Behari Day’s *Folk-Tales of Bengal*, p. 256.
suddenly call into being palaces for his friends, and by a touch of his rod make roads for them through stormy rivers. For further accounts of Oberon, the dwarf king of the fairies, and his attendants Gloriadas, Gloriande, Lempatrix, Margale, Oryane, Translyne, see under these names in the Index Nominum.

**FIENDS AND EVIL ANGELS.**

The devil of hell, who is in league with Cain (p. 489), has a head as big as an ox's head, his eyes are redder than two burning coals, his teeth great and long, and as rough as a bear, and he casts fire and smoke out of his gorge like a furnace (p. 489). Huon, when wrecked on a rock in the Spanish sea, finds a castle there inhabited by monks, who are evil angels, chased out of Paradise with Lucifer (p. 592). When they please they come among living men in the likeness of bears or wer-wolves. Others tempt men and women to their damnation; others follow the thunder and tempest in the air, and some destroy ships and men on the seas. They still have most of the powers of the fairies, and create, by merely wishing, towns and castles on high rocks, with minstrels and all that appertains to rich living, but Christ compels them to conduct daily divine service (p. 593).

**THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH.**

This fountain cures those who bathe in its stream of all infirmities (p. 434). It is apparently situated on Alexander's Rock.

The virtues of this Fountain are thus described in Way's rendering of the fabliau of "The Land of Cockaigne"—that is, Kitchenland, where all sorts of sensual delights abound—

"But the chiefest, choicest treasure,  
In this land of peerless pleasure,  
Was a well, to say the sooth,  
Cleped the Living Well of Youth.  
There, had numb and feeble Age  
Crossed you in your pilgrimage,  
In those wondrous waters pure,  
Laved a while, you had a cure:  
Lustihed and youth appears  
Numbering now but twenty years.'

The circumstance that, according to Huon, the Fountain was on Alexander's Rock clearly indicates that the idea was, directly or indirectly, derived from Eastern sources, since the universal Muslim legend tells how Alexander despatched the (mythical) prophet El-Khizr to fetch him some of the Water
of Immortality, and when, after much painful toil and long and weary journeying, the prophet reached the fountain, he had no sooner drank a little of its waters than they disappeared; and since then no man has been able to discover the Fountain.—But long before the days of Alexander, if we may credit the Rabbinical tradition, Solomon, the son of David, sent a messenger to procure him some of the Water of Immortality;—meanwhile the sage monarch would have ample time to reflect upon this delusive world: for was it not he who, having seen everything under the sun, declared that ‘all is vanity and vexation of spirit?’ We might therefore well expect that, on this account, when his messenger returned with the Water of Immortality, the ‘wisest of men’ would decline the potion; and declare it he did; but not because ‘all is vanity’ (the Rev. Mr. Stiggins, by the way, was of the same opinion—always excepting a little pine-apple rum), but because he could not endure the thought of surviving his female favourites!

The assertion that since El-Khizr took his draught of immortality no one has been able to find the Fountain can’t be true—if all stories be true—for have we not in the oral and written (popular) histories of many lands most circumstantial accounts of successful expeditions to the Fountain of Life? What, for instance, was the water which the beautiful and brave young princess, in the Arabian tale of the ‘Envious Sisters,’ sprinkled on the stones, as she went down the hill (after securing the Bird that spoke and the Tree that sang), thereby changing them back into their original forms of princes and nobles—what, but this same Water of Life? And again, in another Arabian tale, when Prince Ahmad is required by his silly father, the king—prompted by an envious, malignant vazir—to get him some of the water that could cure all ailments, and the Prince’s bewitching bride, the Peri Bânû, obtains it for him, spite of the lions and serpents which guarded the fountain—what was this but the identical water of which old El-Khizr drank—unless, indeed, there existed more than one fountain of the same kind in those far-off days? Then there is the delightful German tale, ‘Das Wasser im Leben,’ to which Grimm has appended a note, stating that in Conrad of Wurtzburg’s Trojan War, written in the 13th century, Medea gets water from Paradise to renew the youth of Jason’s father.—There’s no end, in sooth, to the number of stories of magical fountains of all sorts—fountains of immortality, of youth, of oblivion, of love, of disdain; and fountains, eke, that changed a man into a woman, and a woman into a man!

GIANTS.

The first giant Huon meets is Angolaffer or Galafer, who is seventeen feet high (p. 103). He has robbed Oberon of the tower of Dunother, and of a suit of armour which renders invulnerable any man who, wearing it, is ‘without spot of deadly sin’ and the son of a virtuous mother (p. 105). Huon puts it on, and strikes off the giant’s head. Angolaffer’s brother Agrapart is of the same height, and has two teeth protruding from his mouth, each a foot long: his eyes are like two burning torches, and ‘he was a foot between the brows’ (p. 140). Huon worsts him in a duel (p. 148).
THE GRIFFIN OR GRYPHON.

Huon sees this monster while in the castle of the Adamant, carrying off in its talons the corpses of sailors shipwrecked on that fatal rock (p. 426). Lying down among the dead men, Huon is himself carried by it through the air to its nest on Alexander's Rock (p. 429). It is a female bird with eyes like basins of fire, and of enormous size; but Huon succeeds in slaying it, as well as its young. He preserves a foot of the monster as a curiosity, and presents it on his return to King Louis of France (p. 583), and 'by King Philip it was hanged in the holy chapel, whereas it is as yet' (p. 583).

Accounts of this bird figure in Marco Polo's Travels, where it is called Gryphon; in the story of Sindbad in the 77th Arabian Night (under the name of Rukh), and in the travels of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela. "Its story is identical," writes Colonel Yule, "with that of the Garuda of the Hindoos, the Simurgh of the old Persians, the 'Angka of the Arabs, the Bar Yachre of the Rabbinical legends, the Gryps of the Greeks" (Yule's Marco Polo, ii. 349, 350). Its habitat has been referred to the China seas by early Eastern writers; Marco Polo heard of it at Madagascar; the legends of Northern Siberia tell how it has visited their climes. Marco Polo describes it as an enormous eagle. Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela writes that when sailors were in danger of being lost at sea near China, they sewed themselves up in hides and awaited the griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be natural prey. According to the story of Duke Ernest of Bavaria the duke was wrecked like Huon, on the rock of Adamant, but escaped with his life; the dead bodies of most of his companions were carried off by the griffin; and they themselves were whisked alive through the air by the bird to a rock, whence like Huon they travel down a river in the heart of a mountain. There is a Persian drawing engraved in Lane's Arabian Nights, of the Rukh or Gryphon carrying through the air three elephants, one in its beak, and two in its claws. Naturalists believe the bird to be an antediluvian member of the ostrich family, identical with the fossil bird Æpyorius. A fossil egg of the species, capable of holding nearly 2½ gallons of water, is in the British Museum.
To Colonel Yule's list of *wundervogels* may be added the Eorosh of the Zend; the Kargas of the Turks; the Kirui of the Japanese; and the sacred Dragon of the Chinese.—The device which Benjamin of Tudela describes sailors as adopting when in danger of being shipwrecked—sewing themselves in skins and awaiting the Griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be his natural prey—occurs in several Arabian tales, where it is generally practised by magicians on young lads whom they have seduced from home; the object being to obtain precious stones from the top of the mountain where the Rukh carries them, after which the magicians leave their victims to their fate, which however always proves a happy one.

**The Horn of Oberon.**

This horn was made by four fairies in the isle of Cephalonia; one (Gloriande) endowed it with the power of curing by its blast all manner of sickness; a second (Translyne) with the power of satisfying hunger and thirst; a third (Margale) with the power 'that whosoever heard this horn, though he were never so poor and feeble by sickness, he should have such joy in his heart that he should sing and dance'; a fourth fairy (Lempatrix) gave the horn the gift of forcing him who heard it to come at the pleasure of him who blew it (p. 66). When this 'rich horn of ivory' is bestowed by Oberon on Huon, its only virtue mentioned is that it brings a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows it, if—and the condition is all-important—there is genuine need of help (pp. 77, 78).

Musical instruments having the same property as that with which the third fairy endowed the horn of Oberon, viz. of making every one who heard it to dance, *volens volens*, are common to the folk-tales of all Europe. For examples, the magic pipe in our old English tale of *The Friar and the Bay*, and the violin in its German counterpart (in Grimm), *Das Jude im Dorn*, and the harp in the Icelandic *Herrands ok Bosi Saga*; and akin to these is the pipe of the Piper of Hamelin, which not only drew all the rats into the Weser but drew all the children into a mountain. In the Icelandic saga, which, according to Mr. Baring-Gould, rests on a mythological foundation, a harp occurs which belongs to one Sigurd. 'Bosi slays Sigurd, puts on his skin and clothes, and taking the harp goes in this disguise to the banquet-hall of King Godmund, where his true love is about to be married to another man. He plays the harp, and the knives and plates, the tables and stools, then the guests, and lastly the monarch himself are set to dancing. He keeps them capering till they are too exhausted to move a limb, then he casts the bride over his shoulder and makes off.'1 In Croker's collection of Irish Fairy Legends one Maurice Connor is said to have been able by playing a certain tune on his bagpipes, to make old and young, lame and lazy, 'up and fat it,' till they fell down from sheer exhaustion.—The fourth virtue of Oberon's horn, that of bringing a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows

---

1 *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, ed. 1869, p. 431.
it is also found in the horn that drew crowds which was presented by the little man in red to one of three soldiers journeying together, according to the German story of 'The Nose' (in Grimm); and also in the bagpipe of the young hero of a Slav tale in M. Dozon's French collection (No. 2), which when played upon calls up any number of armed soldiers.

**Judas Iscariot.**

In the perilous gulf or whirlpool near hell, Huon finds Judas floating about on a piece of canvas. This canvas (Judas says) he once gave away to a poor man for God's sake, a gift of charity unique in his career; and God afterwards restored it to him as a reward for his virtuous act, to protect him from the wind on his right side. Tormented to death, he cannot die (pp. 363, 369). The story finds a parallel in the Irish legend of St. Brendan, who met Judas on an iceberg in the Northern Sea, and learnt that he was allowed to leave the sinner's burning lake every Christmas night to cool himself in the snow, because he had once given his cloak to a leper. This story is the subject of one of Mr. Matthew Arnold's best known poems (see Mr. Thomas Olden's notice of St. Brendan in the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*).

**A Man Transformed into a Sea Beast.**

Oberon's messenger Malabron, who carries Huon on his back through the sea (p. 111), and resembles a bear, was a handsome man, whom Oberon punished for disobedience by transforming him into a beast of the sea for thirty years. When Huon makes the sign of the Cross, the skin of the beast temporarily falls off, and reveals as fair a man as could be seen.

**Mechanical Contrivances.**

Two men of brass 'without ceasing beat with their flails' before the gate of Dunotber, the residence of the giant Angolaffer, so that none can enter it alive. On opening a wicket, however, from within, a wind rushes forth and sets the men at rest (pp. 98, 99).

**Precious Stones.**

Of the stones gathered by Huon in the underground river, one preserves its bearer from poison or treason, another from fire and
sword, a third from all discomfort and old age, a fourth cures blindness, and a fifth renders its owner invisible (pp. 451—7).

Magic gems play important parts in innumerable tales. They are frequently obtained from grateful serpents. Thus, in an Albanian tale (No. 9 of M. Dozon's French collection), a youth having saved the life of a serpent receives as a reward a wishing-stone, by means of which, à la Aladdin, he has a magnificent palace erected and gets a beautiful princess for his bride.—In the Jātakas, or Buddhist Birth-Stories, we read of a gem which, when put in the mouth, enabled one to rise into the air and go wherever he wished.—In the Persian romance which recounts the imaginary adventures of Hatim Tai, the hero slays a dragon and takes out of the monster's head a pearl which restored sight to the blind; cured the bite of a snake; endeared its possessor alike to friend and foe; secured victory in battle; conferred profound wisdom and boundless wealth; and rendered all creatures obedient to his commands.—The notion of dragons or serpents having gems in their heads (as well as being guardians of hidden treasure), still prevalent in the East, seems to be a relic of serpent-worship, and recalls Shakspeare's 'toad, ugly and venomous,' &c. A Kashmiri folk-tale relates how a 'snake-woman' was burnt for twenty-four hours in a furnace, and among her ashes was found a small round stone—the real essence of the 'snake-woman,' and whatever one touched with it was turned to gold. The alchemists of old times were not aware of this ready process of obtaining the long-sought Philosopher's Stone: but, then, you must first catch your 'snake-woman'!

In the Gesta Romanorum (ed. E. E. T. S., story of Guido) we read of a stone of three colours, obtained from a thankful serpent, 'possessed of three virtues: bestowing evermore joy without heaviness; abundance without fail; and light without darkness.' The same story is told in Gower's Confessio Amantis, B. v., but the stone which the grateful reptile gives the hero had the useful—but, from a moral point of view, rather questionable—property of always returning to his purse after having sold it—there, sure enough, was the stone again, along with the gold paid for it by the unlucky jeweller!—Needless it were to multiply examples.

THE SERPENT.

This animal guards the castle of the Adamant (p. 374). It is 'higher than a great horse, with eyes redder than fire, with marvellous great talons and tail.' Sir Arnold, Huon's knight, flees on catching sight of it; but Huon kills it after making the sign of the Cross, by thrusting a broad-headed spear down its throat when it opened its mouth to swallow him. Huon's own sword could not pierce its skin, which is harder than iron or steel (p. 381).

SUBTERRANEAN RIVER.

When leaving Alexander's Rock, Huon is wafted in a richly-jewelled boat down the rock-confined river of Dyplayre (pp. 431—440). After three days' journeying the rocks close above him and
form a dark passage, down which his ship is hurried at a great pace; the air is bitterly cold, voices are heard cursing their ill-fortune in diverse languages. There is also thunderous noise of falling water. A tempest arises, and great bars of red-hot iron fall hissing in front of the ship. After three days the vessel runs aground on a gravel bank of precious stones. Launching his vessel once again he travels on in mid stream still underground, and on the eleventh day passes out of the darkness, and finds himself in the Sea of Persia. This underground river or perilous gulf, as it is also called, is stated to lie “between the Sea of Persia and the Great Sea-ocean.” A similar journey is made by Sindbad and by Herzog Ernst (ep. Tasso’s Gerusalemme liberata, xiv. 32 ff.).

SWORDS.

Galans forged three invincible swords, of which one called Durandel was owned by Roland; the second was named Courtain; and the third, rusty and old to outward appearance, was given Huon by Ivoryn (p. 182).

The hero of chivalric romance is usually provided with a most trenchant blade, which he only can wield, and a steel, like himself, high-spirited and of extraordinary endurance, that carries him through all dangers. In the Edda of Semund we are told that Wieland (or Veient) the Smith forged a sword of such sharpness that when he left his rival Emilius with it the blade seemed to the latter only like cold water running down his body: ‘Shake thyself,’ said Wieland; he did so, and fell in two halves, one on each side of the chair.

And in the Gisli Saga it is related that the sword Gray-steel, which was forged by the Dwarfs, could bite whatever its blow fell upon—be it steel, or iron, or anything else. So, too, Arthur’s famous blade, ‘y-hote’ Excaliber, could ‘kerve steel, yren, and al-thing.’

In the Bedouin romance of Antar the poet-hero has an all-powerful sword called Dhami, which was made out of a thunderbolt, and the skill and labour of the smith who forged it were but ill-requited; for when he took it to his employer—not Antar, but an Arab chief—with just pride but little prudence, he exclaimed, ‘Sharp is the sword, O chief, but where is the smiter?’ to which the chief replied, flourishing Dhami, ‘As for the smiter—I am the smiter,’ and, suiting the action to the word, he smote off the head of the unlucky artisan. When Dhami came, by mere accident, as it did, into the possession of the hero Antar, he plied it on the heads of his foes with such effect that many a time and oft he dealt a doughty knight and his horse each in two halves!

But the swords of romance had sometimes other wonderful qualities than that of carving steel and iron, or of cleaving man and horse. For instance, in the Katha Sarit Sagara the hero Indivarasena receives from the goddess Durga a sword by the power of which he should not only conquer his enemies, but it would obtain for him whatever he desired; and in another story (but
INDEX LOCORUM.

811

this often occurs in Indian fictions) the hero, in like manner, obtains a sword by means of which he could fly through the air. We must not forget the sword which 'the king of Arabia and Inde' sent, according to Chaucer's Squire's Tale, to the King of Tartary, that, like the spear of Telephus, could cure the wound it gave—a quality which seems to be amusingly distorted in a modern popular Norse story, in Sir George W. Dasent's Tales from the Fjeld, where Master Tobacco receives from an old witch a sword, one edge of which was black, the other white; and 'if he smote with the black edge, everything fell dead, and if with the white edge, everything came to life again.' This sword, moreover, could become a knife and be carried in the pocket, and when drawn out it was a sword again.

ADDITIONAL NOTE.

Florence's incestuous love for his daughter Ide is utterly inconsistent with his previous manly character, and a very clumsy interpolation by one of the continuators of the Romance. Nevertheless it has parallels both in Asiatic and in several European fictions. In No. xiii. of Pandit Naêsa Sastri's Folk-Lore in Southern India (London: Trübner) a king wishes to marry his four daughters after the death of his wife, their mother, but by a clever device they not only save themselves from such an unnatural union, but bring their father to a due sense of the enormous crime he purposed committing. And in the German tale entitled, in Grimm, 'Allerleirauh,' and in one of our English translations, 'Catskin'; and Perrault's 'Pean d'Ane'; in the modern Greek story entitled, 'Xylomarie' (M. Legrand's French collection), and in other popular European tales, the heroine has also to flee from the incestuous love of her father.—W. A. C.

VIII. INDEX LOCORUM.

** Mediaeval romances show as little regard for geography as for history, and Huon's travels in the East baffle all detailed description. The names of the places visited, although often hopelessly disguised by misspellings, are, however, rarely quite fictitious. The compiler of the romance obviously had access to some early book of Oriental travel, and thence derived his geographical nomenclature. I have tried to identify a few of the names below. If we take Huon's journeys seriously, the first journey to the East may be described as taking him to Jerusalem; thence from Southern Syria he crosses the sea to the mouth of the Nile, whence he is carried to Cairo. On leaving Egypt he appears to visit some island of the Greek Archipelago, and thence to pass to the mainland of Asia Minor (Turkey in Asia), whence he returns to Brindisi. On his second journey to the East he finds himself near the Caspian Sea, whence he makes his way to Tabriz in Persia, and to Angora in Turkey in Asia. After a voyage in the Persian Gulf, he arrives at Antioch and
Damascus, and visits most of the known towns in Palestine. His third journey to Momur, Oberon's realm in India, is not described after he suffers shipwreck off an unnamed rock in the Mediterranean near Spain. Thence he is carried through the air by fairies to Momur, a shadowy kingdom of India.

Ablyante, desert of, 478. [A lake in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia, is now named Abullionte or Abullonia, and is similarly situated in relation to Angora (q. v.) as the Ablyante of the romance.]

Acre, 62, 519 (besieged by Persians), 522.

Adamant, castle of, 370.

Affry'ke, Aufrike, 2; sea of, 663.

Albaney, 72.

Alexander's rock, 427.

Almavyn, Almayne, 279, Germany.

Anfalerne, a seaport, 161.

Anfamie, a Saracen kingdom, 357.

Angore, 472, Angora (Enguri) in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia.

Antioch, 497.

Antiopheney, a Saracen kingdom, 512.

Aquytanie, 18, Aquitaine.

Armanye, Ermyne, 489, 498, Armenia: part is called 'low,' and part 'high,' 498.

Arogone, 313, Aragon.

Arrabey, 519, Arabia.

Austrych, 277, Austria.

Babylon, city of, 49, 50, 61, 83, 113, 130, Cairo. [All mediæval travellers speak of Cairo as 'Babylon in Egypt' (Bambellonia d'Egitto, Marco Polo). Cairo is mentioned under this name by Diodorus, quoting Ctesias, by Strabo and by Ptolemy. Babul, close to Old Cairo, still preserves the old name of the city; cp. Yule's Marco Polo, i. 23.]

Barbarye, 310, 519, 663, Barbary.

Barselone, 624, Barcelona.

Basyle, 702, Basle.

Bauier, 2, Bavaria.

Beauland, 668, perh. Beaulieu.

Belmaryn, 741.

Berry, 281.

Blay, Blaye, castle of, 275; town of, 578.

Borgoyn, 316, 399, Bourgogne.

Bougye, 310, a town in Barbary.

Bouillon, 59, Boulogne.

Boulguant, 603, a realm of Oberon handed to King Arthur: probably identical with Bolgara or Bolghar on the Wolga, a town of Upper Bulgaria, which Arab writers regarded as the northernmost limit of the habitable world; cp. Yule's Marco Polo, i. 4—6.
| Brandys, a sea-port, 54, 55, 233, Brindisi. | Flanders, 252. |
| Caspys, sea of, 472, the Caspian. | Gerone, a town near Bordeaux, 15. |
| Cecyll, Cesyll, 663, Sicily. | Geronnill, 62; Geronell, 578. |
| Chafalene, an island, 66; 'the priney isle,' 72—3, Cephalonia. | Gerounde, province, 406, Gironde. |
| Chalons, 252. | Gerounde river, 356, Garonne. |
| Champagne, 52. | Grenade, 741, Granada. |
| Cluny, 52; battle near, 531. | Hell, gulf of, 362. |
| Colanders, a city of Armenia, 489—496. | Hungary, 607. |
| Coleyn, 284, Cologne. | Jaffe, 58, 497, 500, Jaffa or Joppe, Palestine. |
| Constantyne the noble, 466, Constantinople. | Jaffet, castle of, 519. [There is an island Jaffatine in Red Sea.] |
| Corse, isle, 663, Corsica. | Jene, 519. |
| Cret, isle of, 213, Crete. | Lombardy, 702. |
| Damas, 497, Damascus. | Luysarne, city in Spain, 415; ? Luserna, Italy. |
| Damiet, Damyet, 130, 155, 161, Damietta. | Lyon 'on the river Rone,' 403, Lyons. |
| Dolphennay [Dolphinne, 1601 ed.], 316; Daupheney, 741, Dauphiné. | Lysbone, 416, Lisbon. |
| Dorbrey, 507. | Magence, Maience, 278, 531, Mayence. |
| Dunother, tower of, 96. | Marrocke 'stratis,' 415. |
| Dyplayre, river, 439 [brings Huon to Tauris in Persia]. | Marseyle, Marsile, seaport, 528, Marseilles. |
| Egypt, 73, etc. | Mascon, 403, 500. |
| Ermyne, see Armanye. | Mede, 457, Media. |
| Escalence, 100, 501, Escalon. | Mesque, 129. |
Momur, capital of fairyland, a realm of India, 74, 604.
Monglew, ‘the which is called Lyon,’ 403.
Montleherry, 14, 18.
Mountaubon, 472, Montauban.
Myllayne, 420, Milan.
Napelous, 499, Nablous.
Naplese, Gl, Naples.
Nasareth, 519, Nazareth.
Navarre, 633.
Nile, river, 112, 116, 130, 155.
Noisaunt, Noysaunt, an island near the gulf of hell, 168.
Noremberge, 294, Nuremberg.
Nyse, 741, Nice.
Olyfarne, 511.
Oreaney, 511.
Orleance, 14, Orleans.
Paris, 2, et pass.
Paney, 33, Pavia.
Perce, Perse, 443, 451, 497; gulf of, 449, Persia.
Portyngale, 415, Portugal.
Puylle, 740, Apulia.
Pyemont, 741, Piedmont.
Raines, plains of, 507.
Rame, Ranes, a city in Palestine, 500, 507, Ramah.
Red Sea, 111.
Roddes, the coast of, 213, Rhodes.
Romayne, 741, Romagna.
Rone, 2, et pass.
Rone, river, 316, Rhone.
Rousillon, 530.
Rownceuall, 2, Roncevesvalles.
St. Giles, 741.
St. Omer, 209.
Sathab, gulf of, 528. [In Sir John Mandeville’s Travels (ed. 1839, p. 26), a city of this name (otherwise Catala, Satalia, Cataillie, etc.) is described as lying somewhere between Rhodes and Cyprus.]
Saxoney, 2.
Sayre, 518, prob. Tyre (Soor).
Sclauoney, 1, Selavonia.
Spayne, 1, et pass.
Strabourge, 278, Strasburg.
Surrey, 100, Syria.
Taragon, 624, Tarragona.
Tarascon, 668.
Thauris in Perce, 443. [In mediaeval books of travels this is the name given to Tabriz, the chief city of Adherbaijaz, a Persian province on the Caspian. Marco Polo gives a full description of it, i. 70—4.]
Thesalye, 265, Thessaly.
Tortouse, 313, prob. Tortosa [in Roland, 916, ‘Turteluse’].
Tournous, 530.
Tours, a seaport, 611.
Troye, siege of, 412.
Troyes, 52.
Trypolex, 310, Tripoli.
Valence the great, 624.
Vergier, 530.
Vyene, Viene, 276, Vienna.
Ynde, 489, India.
IX. INDEX NOMINUM.

** The editorial introduction and appendix are indexed here as well as the text of the romance. A few notes are inserted on one or two characters; see, for example, NAIMES.

** Abbots of Cluny, v. Cluny.

** Abbots of Maurys, v. Mauryse.

** Aclis, Duchess of Burdeux, and Huon’s mother, 56; sister of the Pope, 54, and of Garyn, 56; receives Charlemagne’s messengers, 7; sends her sons to Paris, 11; learns Huon’s ill-fortune, 52; dies, 53, 210.

** Agrapart, a giant, laments the death of his brother Angolafer, 140; insults Gaudys at Babylon, 141; is challenged by Huon, 147, and defeated, 148; becomes Gaudys’s man, 150.

** Albaney, Duke of, 265.

** Alberic, a German fairy, xxx.

** Aleaume or Alelmus, xxxiv, another name for Gerames (q. v.).

** Alexander the Great, vii; son of Neptanabus, 73; his picture in castle of Adamant, 412; a rock called after him, 427; spoke with trees of the sun and moon, 427.

** Almayne, Emperor of, v. Thierry.

** Amaury, Earl, longs for Huon’s land, 5; proposes to take it for Charlot, 16; reproved by Charlemagne, 12; plots against Huon, 13; in ambush, 19; bears Charlot’s body to Charlemagne, 18, 31; charges Huon with Charlot’s murder, 33; lies to the Emperor, 35; challenges Huon, 35; swears that Huon lies, 40; fights, 42, and is slain, 44.

** Amphage, a horse, saves Barnard in battle, 396.

** Amphamie, king of, Esclaramonde’s brother, 403.

** Angelars, Huon’s vassal, slain, 275.

** Angolafer, Galaffer, Galafre, giant of Dunother, 96; of terrible aspect, 102-3; threatens Huon, 103; his magic armour, 105; fights, and is slain by Huon, 108-9; pagans pay him tribute, 129.

** Angore, admiral of, 472; visits Huon, 473, and is slain, 476.

** Antonius, Marcus, husband of Cleopatre, 411.

** Aragon, king of, v. GARYN.

** CHARL. ROM. XII.
Arnold, Sir, climbs the Adamant rock, 373; rouses the serpent, 374; killed by Saracens, 377.

Arthur, King (of Brittany), vii; Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, xlviii; wants to succeed Oberon in throne of fairyland, 599; comes to Oberon's palace, 601; refuses for a time to acknowledge Huon as king of fairyland, 602; is given by Huon Bougnant and sway over fairies of Tartary, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606.

*Arthur of Little Britain*, Lord Berners' romance of, xlvii.

Ascham, Roger, quoted, xlviii.

Aspremont, a chanson de geste, xiii.

Auberon, of. Oberon.

Aude, La Belle, sister of Oliver, xii.

Aymon, *Four Sons of*, a romance, xix, xx, xxiii, xlvii.

Balaach, 500, v. Trampoynngnyfile.

Balan, a chanson de geste, xiii.

Barnard, Huon's faithful knight, 338; receives a horse from Huon, 356; supports Gerames in a night-sortie at siege of Bordeaux, 393; alone survives, 396; entrusted by Esclaramonde with care of Clariet, 399; rides to Cluny, 402; announces fall of Bordeaux to abbot of Cluny, 404; seeks Huon, 445; at Tauris, 446; meets Huon without recognizing him for a time, 447-50; sees the value of Huon's precious stones, 453; finds a stone that makes its holder invisible, 454; with Huon against Angore, 475, and Colanders, 489, and the Saracens, 504; at Marseilles, 545, and Cluny, 557, and Mayence, 558; guards Clariet at Cluny, 607; is drowned by traitor Brohart, 611; his body found in Garonne, 617; is buried at Cluny, 618.

Baudouyn (Baldwin), son of Ogier, slain by Charlot, 4. [This story is told at length in the *chanson* of Ogier le Danois, and in some detail in the original poem of *Huon*, 98—193.]

Baudouyn, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, buried at Calvary, 59.

Belmaryn, king of, besieges Nice, 741; killed by Croissant, 750.

Benet, St., patron of Cluny, 574.

Berners, Lord, translates *Huon*, xxxix; his history, xl; his
translations, xlii; end of life, xlv; undertakes *Huon*, liv; his Euphuism and knowledge of Guevara, 785; his work on Calais, 789.

*Berte au grand pied*, a chanson de geste, xiii.

Bertrand, son of Naymes, slain by Ogier, 33. [The story is in *Ogier le Danois*.]

Blanchardin, Sorbryn’s horse, 184; seized by Huon, 187.

Bourgoyne, king of, aids abbot of Cluny, 530.

Bowes, Thomas, quoted, 790.

Brohart, a traitor, seeks to marry Clariet, 608; gets her and Barnard into a boat, 610; kills Barnard, 611; is wrecked and killed by thieves, 614; his kindred flung into Garonne, 618.

Bryan, Sir Francis, and Berners’ literary work, 788.

Burdeloys, people of Burdeux, fight valiantly, 319.


Cesar, Julius, Oberon’s father, 72, 265, 411; builds tower of Dunother, 96, and castle of Adamant, 411; vanquishes Pompey and Ptolemy of Egypt, *ib.*; attacked at Adamont by three Egyptian kings, *ib.*; slain at Rome, 412.

Cain, Cayme, confined in oaken tun, 484; begs Huon to release him, 485; tries to trick Huon, 486; is abandoned, 487.

Calaber, king of, visits Nice, 743; fights at siege, 747.

Carahew, King, at Oberon’s death and funeral, 605-6.

Chalons, earl of, 252.

Charlemagne, romances about him, viii; their growth in France, ix; in Iceland, xi; head of a family of romance heroes, xiv; English romance about, xviii, xix; English play about, xxiii; reigns in France, 1, 756; defeated at Roncesvalles, 2; desires lords to choose successor, 3; sends for Huon and Gerard, 7; hears Huon’s complaint and promises redress, 27; grieves over Charlot’s corpse, 32; rages at Huon, 33; proclaims duel between Huon and Amaury, 40; banishes Huon, 48; sends him on mission to Babylon, 49; receives Gerard and Gybouars, traitors, 235; accepts Huon’s treasure from their hands, *ib.*; deceived as to Huon’s mission and return by Gerard, 237; resolves to examine Huon at Bordeaux, 241; makes good cheer at Bordeaux, 242; threatens
Huon, 249; orders peers to try Huon, 250; condemns him, 255; reproaches Naymes, ib.; suddenly sees Oberon approach, 259; is charged by Oberon with terrible sin, 260; receives from Huon relics of mission, 266; pardons Huon, ib.; leaves Bordeaux, 268; dies, 388.

Charles the Bald, xxviii, xxix.

Charlot, his historical prototype Charles the Bald's son, xxix; in Ogier le Danois, xxix; Charlemagne's elder son, 4; plots against Huon with Amaury, 13; advances against Huon and Gerard, 19; attacks Gerard, 20; challenged by Huon, 23; slain, 24, 388; brought before Charlemagne, 32.

Clare, St., 313.

Clariet, Claryet, Huon's and Esclaramonde's daughter, born, 313; christened, 314; entrusted to Barnard's care, 399; taken to abbot of Cluny, 403; visited by Huon disguised, 548; is richly dowered by Huon, 581; has kings for suitors, 607; is kidnapped by traitor Brohart, 608; resists him, 610; on a desert island and with thieves, 613-14; rescued by Saracen king of Grenade, 619; declines to marry him, 620; saved by Sir Peter of Aragon, and taken to Tarragona, 624; meets Florence, who loves her, 625; disguises her history, 626; is hated by Florence's father, king of Aragon, 630; is to be drowned by his orders, 631; saved by Sir Peter, 640; imprisoned in same tower as Florence, 652; escapes, 653; joins Florence in forest, ib.; flies with Florence, and taken by Sorbare, 666; brought back to Courtois by Huon, 685; marries Florence, 686; has a child Ide, 690, and dies, 691.

Clarimodes, fairy boatman, 597.

Clarisse, another name of Clariet (q. v.), xxxiv; chanson about, ib.

Cleopatre, sister of Julius Caesar, married Marcus Antonius, 411.

Cluny, abbot of, accompanies Huon to Paris, 18—26; charges Amaury with lying, 36; bids Huon accept Amaury's challenge, 37; goes with Huon to Cluny, 51-2; receives infant Clariet, 403; prepares attack on messenger of German Emperor, 530; welcomes Huon's return, 549; is one hundred and fourteen years old, 552; eats Huon's apple of youth and becomes a man of thirty, 554; attacks German Emperor in error with 20,000 men,
576; entertains Emperor, 577; guardian of Clariet, 607; calls her suitors together at Blaye, 316.

Cologne, provost of, leads burghers to battle for Emperor, 299; attacks Huon after truce, 804; begs pardon of Huon, 306.

Constantyne, Emperor, nominated the patriarch of Jerusalem, 500.

Courtayn, a sword, 182.

Crassyn Polynger, bearer of German Emperor’s banner, killed by Huon, 297.

Croissant, son of Olive and Ide, born, 730; regent of Emperor Ide, 733; reigns alone, 737; charitable, 738; flees from Rome, 739; at Nice, 741; welcomed by Earl Remon, 742; excels at the quintain, 744; attacks Saracen besiegers of Nice, 746-8; is to marry Remon’s daughter, 745, 753; is attacked by Remon’s son, 754; kills the son, 755; flees from Nice, 758; reaches Florence, 760; falls among thieves, 761; kills them, 763; at Rome, 765; lives in retirement there, 766; no one aids him, 767; sees miraculous treasure in old palace, 771; picks up three besants and gives them to Emperor Guymart, 775; marries Guymart’s daughter, 778; seizes Oberon’s treasure in old palace, 780.

Denis, St., 27, 28.

Doon de Maience, the head of a family of romance heroes, xiv n.

Dorbye, Dorbrey, a giant, admiral of, fights against Huon, 507; is slain, 510-11.

Durendal, Roland’s sword, xii, 182. [See Chanson de Roland, 1. 926, and M. Leon Gautier’s note in his edition, pp. 90-1.]

Elinas, a Saracen captain, converted, 422.

Emery, Sir, knight of abbot of Cluny, 545.

Emperor. See Charlemagne, Otho, and Thierry.

England, king of, Clariet’s suitor, 607; chanson about, xxxiv.

Ernst von Baiern, romance of, 797.

Esclaramonde (Huon’s wife), daughter of Gaudys of Babylon, 50, 119; thrice kissed by Huon, 120; grieves for Huon in prison, 125; visits him and confesses her love, ib.; grows angry on being told she is a Saracen, 126; keeps Huon without food, ib.; consents to turn Christian, 127; plans Huon’s escape, 128; tells Gerames all, 133; plots her father’s death, 139; arranges for
Huon to fight Agrapart, 143; is converted, 154; goes with Huon to Rome, 155; yields to temptation, 156; shipwrecked, 157; threatened by pirates in her father’s service, 158; pleads for Huon, 159; is carried off to sea, 161; freed by Galaffier, 162; is loved by him, ib.; begs to be delivered to Ivoryn, 183; visited by Gerames, 193; swears loyalty to Huon, whom she thinks dead, 194; desires to enter a convent, 195; meets Huon at Anfalerne, 200; leaves for France, 213; comforts Garyn’s widow, 215; is loved by Bavall, 283; hears from Huon of his adventures, 307; bids Huon get aid from her brother Salybraunt, 310, 324, 349; gives birth to Clariet, 312; urges Huon to go to the East, 353; grieves for Huon, 387, and for Gerames’ death, 397; is afraid, 399; bids Barnard take Clariet to Cluny, ib.; begs mercy of Thierry, 400; is promised life, 401; imprisoned at Mayence, 406; appears in vision to Huon, 520; led to stake, 532; saved by Oberon, 538; treated well by Emperor, 543; meets Huon, 570; goes with him to Cluny and Bordeaux, 572; in fairyland, 597; crowned queen there, 601; with Huon at Courtois, 682.

*Ferumbras (Sir)*, an English romance, xviii n.

*Fierabras*, a romance, xiii, xviii n., xix.

*Flanders*, earl of, 252.

*Florence or Florent, chanson* about, xxxiv; son of king of Aragon, Clariet’s suitor, 607, 616; meets Clariet at Tarragon, 626; does not know who she is, 627; wants to marry her, 628; offends his father, 630; will not fight Navarre unless he marry Clariet, 633; leaves for battle on receiving promise, 636; captures king of Navarre, 644; is told by his father that Clariet is drowned, 645; invites his prisoners to avenge Clariet and kill his father, 647; is imprisoned by his father, 650; meets Clariet in prison, 652; escapes with her, 656; to Africa, 663; attacked by Saracens, 665; delivered to Sorbare, a secret Christian, 666; at Courtois
FERUMBRAS—GAUDYS. 821

with Clariet, 684; marries Clariet, 686; becomes king of Aragon, 690; loses wife, 691; loves his own daughter Ide, 692; angry at her escape, 701; sends for Ide, 731; resigns his rule, 737.

FLORENT OF ALBANY, 72; son of duke of Albany, 265.

FROISSART, translated by Lord Berners, xliii.

GALAFFER, admiral of Anfalerne, 161; frees Esclaramonde from pirates, 162; loves her, 164; will not deliver her to Ivoryn, 164; threatens Ivoryn, 165; sees Ivoryn’s army upon him, 183; deplores death of his nephew Sorbryn, 187; retires before Ivoryn and Huon, 188; receives Gerames kindly, 192; tells them of Esclaramonde, 162, and of Ivoryn, 193; learns history of Huon, 201; submits to Ivoryn, 202; aided by Ivoryn against Huon, 203; encourages Ivoryn, 207; angry at Huon’s flight, 213; enters Anfalerne, 214.

GALANS, forger of swords, 182.

GALERAN, cousin of Duke Raoull, slain by Huon, 290.

GALLERANCE, a knight of Huon, 323.

GANELON, traitor of Roneesvalles, xxii, 3.

GARYN, 217; the baptismal name of Mouillet (q. v.).

GARYN DE MONGLAINE, the head of a family of romance heroes, xiv n.

GARYN, Guaryn of St. Omer, brother of the Pope, 54, 55; receives Huon, 56; accompanies him, 58-9; killed in fight with Saracens at Anfalerne, 206; his wife told by Huon of his death, 214.

GARYN, Guaryn, king of Aragon, 666; will not consent to marriage of Florence and Clariet, 630; orders her to be drowned, 631; deceives Florence, 640; imprisons Clariet, 640, and Florence, 650; will not pardon the watchman who releases them, 658; attacked by king of Navarre, 661; besieged by Navarre at Courtois, 676; accepts Huon’s intervention, 682; makes peace with Navarre, 685; dies, 690.

GAUDYS, admiral of Babylon, 50, 64, 71, 668; gave ring to Angolaffer, 106; hears Huon’s horn, 118; orders his arrest, 120; sees ring and welcomes Huon, 120; refuses to turn Christian, 121; sends Huon to prison, 124; receives Gerames disguised, 131; insulted by giant Agrapart, 141; promises his daughter’s hand to
any one who fights giant, 142; invites Huon, 144; receives Agrapart's homage, 150; will not turn Christian, 152; is delivered to Huon by Oberon, 153, and is slain by Huon, ib.

Geoffrey, a French knight in Macaire's service, 90; protects Huon, 91; drives Macaire from his castle, 92; is given Tormont by Huon, 97.

Gerames meets Huon, 60; his history, 61; directs Huon to Babylon, 63-4; accompanies Huon, 65; warns Huon of Oberon, 67-9; fears Oberon's banquet, 75; buys food for Huon's supper at tournament, 86; warns Huon of Macaire, 89; dissuades Huon from going to Dunotter, 97; remains with Huon's company at Dunotter after Huon leaves it, 110; waits for Huon's return, 129; sees a ship approach the shore, 129; kills the pagan sailors, 129; embarks with his companions in the ship to seek Huon, 130; arrives at Babylon, 130; enters the admiral's palace, 131; gives the name of Jeracle, Ivoryn's son, 132; pretends that his companions are his prisoners, 132; is told that Huon is dead, ib.; learns the truth from Esclaramonde, 133; suspects her, ib.; sends her companions to Huon's prison, 134; takes food to them, 136; allows Esclaramonde to visit Huon, 137; sees Huon daily, 138-9; keeps Huon's trophies in his side, 153; bids Huon obey Oberon, 155; is defied by Huon, 156; enters a little boat with his company and leaves Huon, ib.; reaches Anfalerne, 191; is well received by Galaffer, 192; offers to aid him against Ivoryn, 193; visits Esclaramonde, ib.; arms for the fight, 197; is attacked by Huon, 198; throws him to the ground and recognizes him, 199; pretends to take Huon prisoner, in order to bring him to Esclaramonde, 199; brings Huon and his company to Anfalerne, 200; shuts out the admiral and all his men, and kills all in the town, 200; fights with Huon before the castle against the Saracens, 206; recognizes his brother in Guyer of Bordeaux, 211; has been sixty years away from France, 212; leaves for France with Huon, 213; at Brandys, 214; at Rome, 215; warns Huon against journeying too early, 228; advises Huon to conciliate Gerard, 229; is robbed of the objects of Huon's mission by Gerard, 230; is allowed to live, 231; is brought into Bordeaux tied to a horse, ib.; cast into prison,
232; before the Emperor at Bordeaux, 243; shows the wound made in his side by Gerard, 248; with Huon at Coleyn, 295; fights with vigour against the Germans, 299; promises to aid Huon against the German Emperor, 317; is taken prisoner, 321; is condemned to be hanged, 326; mounts the scaffold, but is released, 331; promises to protect Esclaramonde in Huon’s absence, 355; consoles Esclaramonde, 387; fights bravely, 389; advises a night attack, 392; leads the force, 394; is attacked fiercely by Savary, 395; is slain by the Emperor, 396.

Gerard, Thierry’s bastard son, slain by Huon, 347.

Gerard, Gerarde, Gerardyn, Huon’s brother, 5, 118; goes with Huon to Paris, 15; has an evil dream, 16; is attacked by Charlot, 20; is wounded, 21; at Paris, 26; entrusted with Huon’s lands in his absence, 51; gives Huon a Judas kiss, 52; petitions to be a peer of France, 52; at Bordeaux, ib.; marries a daughter of Gilbert of Cecyll, 53; grows wicked, 210; learns of Huon’s return, 220; takes counsel with his father-in-law, 221; treacherously visits Huon at the abbey of Mauryse, 223; desires Guyer’s death, 226; urges Huon to set out for Bordeaux at cock-crow, 227; complains that Huon’s return makes him penniless, 228; asks for some land, 229; seizes the objects of Huon’s mission, 230; kills the abbot of Mauryse and seizes Huon’s treasure, 233; sends a third part to Paris, 235; gives some of it to Charlemagne at Paris, and declares that he has imprisoned Huon because the mission has failed, 237; goes with Charlemagne to Bordeaux, 241; challenged by Huon, 248; forced by Oberon to confess all, 261-2; charges Gybouars with suggesting the plot, 263; is hanged, 265.

Gerard of Rousillon, son of duke of Bourgogne, 530. [Hero of a popular chanson, Gerart de Rousillon, one of the peers of France. See Gaston Paris’ translation of poem, 1884.]


Girarde de Viane, a chanson quoted, xiv n.

Gloriadas, a fairy living in Adamant castle, 412.

Gloriande, Gloriant, Gloryant, a fairy, 65, 267, 278; intercedes for Huon with Oberon, 70, 167; sent to save Esclaramonde, 537; delivers Oberon’s message to Emperor of Germany, 540; receives
Huon at Momur, 598; sent by Huon to make peace between kings of Aragon and Navarre, 677.

Godfrey of Bouillon, buried at Calvary, 59.

Godin, chanson about (a son of Huon), xxxv.

Godun, a German knight, proposes to slay Huon in an ambush, 294.

Gonder, Christian provost of Tormont, 83; receives Huon, 84; tries to make peace between Huon and Macaire, 93; restores Huon’s horn, 94.

Grenade, Saracen king of, I, rescues Clariet and offers her marriage, 619; ill-treats her, 620; is killed at Tours by Sir Peter of Aragon, 623.

Grenade, Saracen king of, II, besieges Nice, 740; killed by Croissant, 749.

Gualter, a peer of France, urges Huon’s death, 251.

Guaryn. See Garyn.

Guevara, Antonio de, the Spanish author, 786, 788.

Guy de Bourgogne, a chanson de geste, xiii.

Guy of Warwicke, a romance, xlvi.

Guychard, Huon’s companion, 54, 55; refuses to leave him, 59.

Guyer, Guyre, provost of Bordeaux, 15, 62; pilgrim to Holy Sepulchre, 209; a hundred years old, 209; tells Huon of his family, 210; Gerames’ brother, 211; with Huon at Rome, 215; at Bordeaux, 218; hated by Gerard, 226.

Guymart of Puylle (Apulia), becomes Emperor of Rome in Croissant’s absence, 740; learns of Croissant’s return, 768; takes food to Croissant, 770; sees treasure at the old palace, 771; is bidden to distribute three besants to poor, 772-3; restores crown to Croissant and dies, 775, 782.

Guynemer, earl of St. Omer, 100.

Gwyn-Araun, a Welsh fairy, xxx.

Gybouars, 219; Gylberde, duke of Cecyll [Sicily], a traitor, 53; promises to outwit Huon, 221; lays ambush for Huon, 223; binds Huon, 229; kills abbot of Mauryse, 233; seizes Huon’s treasure, 234; makes his cousin abbot of Mauryse, ib.; with Gerard at
Paris, 235; confirms Gerard's lies, 239; proved guilty by Gerard's confession, 263; is hanged, 265.

Gyrard. See Gerard.

Habourey, Huon's messenger, 342-3.

Harry of St. Omer, a peer of France, 251.

Hastings, Lord George, earl of Huntingdon, encourages Lord Berners to translate *Huo/n*, liv.

Helye. See Sebylle.

Henry VIII., patron of Lord Berners, xli, xlii.

Hildebert, a German duke, protects Esclaramonde, 533.

Hungary, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607.

Huon of Bordeaux, son of Sevin and Aclis (*q. v.*), chanson de geste about, xxiv; historical foundation for his story, xxviii; growth of romance, xxxii; its supplements, xxxiii; printed in French prose, xxxvii; first English translation, xxxix; its popularity, xlvi, xlix; English play of, xlix; bibliography of Lord Berners' romance about, liii, 791;—owns Bordeaux, but does no homage to the Emperor, 5; summoned to Paris, 5; starts for Paris, 15; comes upon Charlot, 19; sees Gerard fall, 20; challenges Charlot, 23; kills Charlot, 24; sets Gerard on Charlot's horse, 24; goes to the Emperor's court, 25; tells of Charlot's treachery, 26—30; defends himself from Amaury's charge of murder, 34; accepts Amaury's challenge, 37; swears on relics before fighting, 39; fights and slays Amaury, 42-4; is sentenced to banishment by Charlemagne, 45; complains of this injustice, 46; is ordered to go on a perilous mission to Babylon, 49; sets out on his journey, 51; arrives at Rome, 54; at Brandys, 56; is joined there by Garyn, 58; visits Jerusalem and Calvary, 59; meets Gerames, 60; sees Oberon, 65; refuses to speak to him, 67; runs from him, 69; marvels at his beauty, 71; speaks to him, 72; receives of Oberon a rich banquet, 74-5; drinks of Oberon's magic cup, 77; is given the cup and the ivory horn, 77; mistrusts their magic power, 79; blows the horn recklessly, 80; is cursed and forgiven by Oberon, 81; at Tormont, 82; lodges with the provost, 84; gives a great supper to 4000 poor men, 84-6; his cup works a miracle, 86; invites Macaire to supper, 88; goes with Macaire to
his castle, 90; is saved from Macaire's murderous plot, 90-1; is besieged by Macaire, 92-3; sounds his horn, 94; kills Macaire, 95; is aided by Oberon, 95; leaves Tormont, 97; approaches the tower of Dunother, 98; rouses the giant, 103; tells him his history, 104; does the giant's magic armour, 106; fights with the giant, 108; kills him and takes his tower, 109; leaves his company there, 110; carried by Malabron up the Nile, 112; reaches Babylon, 113; tells a lie, 114; reaches the admiral's garden, 116; blows his horn, 118; kills a paynim king, 120; shows Gaudys a ring, ib.; is well received and thrice kisses Esclaramonde, ib.; informs Gaudys of his mission, 122; fights with his men, ib.; kills his nephew, 123; is seized, ib.; is sent to prison, 124; is visited by Esclaramonde, 126; reproaches her with being a Saracen, ib.; is kept without food, ib.; is reconciled to Esclaramonde, 127; is reported to be dead, 128; overhears his companions talk in the prison, 134; reveals himself to them, 135; sees Gerames daily, 138-9; is invited to fight the giant Agrapart, 144; agrees to do so, 145; defies Agrapart, 147; conquers him, 148; invites Gaudys to become a Christian, 151; summons Oberon, 152; kills Gaudys, 153; obtains trophies from Gaudys, ib.; is warned by Oberon against intercourse with Esclaramonde before marriage at Rome, 154; sets out with Esclaramonde for Rome, 155; cannot resist temptation, ib.; is wrecked alone with Esclaramonde on an island, 157; begs bread of pirates, 158; is threatened by them, 159; is left alone by them, bound hand and foot, 160; is on the isle of Noisant, 166; is helped by Malabron, 168; is carried by him to the mainland, 169; meets Mouflet, a minstrel, who gives him food and clothes, 170; gives a lying account of himself, 171; calls himself Salater, 172; becomes servant of Mouflet, 173; goes to Mombraunt, 174; is asked by Ivoryn what he can do, 177, 178; is challenged to play chess with Ivoryn's daughter, 178; is loved by her, 179; wins the game, 180; refuses the advantage of his victory, ib.; begs for horse and armour to fight for Ivoryn, 181; obtains a magic sword and a poor horse, 182; accepts Sorbryn's challenge, 185; kills Sorbryn and seizes his horse Blanch-
ardin, 187; helps Ivoryn to defeat Galaffer, 188; is feasted by Ivoryn, 189; leads a second attack on Galaffer, 196; attacks Gerames fighting on the other side, 198; is forced to the ground, 199; recognizes Gerames, ib.; meets Esclaramonde, 200; is attacked by Ivoryn and Galaffer in concert, 203; hears Mouflet call on his aid from the gallows, 205; with his companions dashes out of the castle and kills the hangman, 205; fights valiantly against the Saracen, 206; receives French pilgrims at Anfalerne, 208; learns from Guyer of his family, 210; purposes to return to France in the pilgrims' ship, 212; with all his company sets sail for France and arrives at Bแนวys, 213; goes to church, 214; tells the wife of Gærn of St. Omer's of her husband's death, 214; at Rome, 215; welcomed by the Pope, 216; is married to Esclaramonde, 217; leaves Rome for Bordeaux, 218; sees Gerard, his brother, 223; tells him of his trophies and treasures, 224; regrets that his brother should have Gybouars for father-in-law, 225; sleeps with Gerard, 226; is roused by Gerard at cock-crow to go on to Bordeaux, 227; resolves to visit the Emperor, 228; promises Gerard half of his treasure, 229; is wrathful with his brother because he wants more, ib.; conciliates Gerard, 230; is attacked by Gybouars in ambush, ib.; is bound, ib.; is brought to Bordeaux, 231; cast into prison, 232; is brought before the Emperor, who visits Bordeaux, 243; accuses his brother of treachery, 244; tells the story of his journey, 245; and of his return, 246-8; challenges Gerard and Gybouars, 248; learns of Oberon's intervention, 258; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 260; pleads for his brother's life, 264; is promised by Oberon the kingdom of the fairies, 266; receives his lords' homage, 274; hangs Angelars, who defies him, 275; is envied by Raoul of Austrych, 279; learns of Raoul's plots against his life from an old servant, 279; sets out to Mayence to slay the traitor, 280; receives Raoul in disguise, 282; comes to Coleyn for a tournament, 284; leaves his escort behind and rides to Mayence, 285; visits the Emperor and Raoul in the palace, 286; puts his case without mentioning names to the Emperor, 287; kills Raoul in the Emperor's presence, 288; resists the attempt of the
Germans to arrest him, 289-90; strikes down the Emperor, 292; escapes, 293; meets his company at Coleyn, 295; has 13,000 men with him, 296; prepares for battle in a wood near Coleyn, 297; fights valiantly, ib.; meets the Emperor, and reproaches him, 299; overcomes the Emperor in a duel, 300-1; grants six months' truce, 303; is attacked in mistake by the burghers of Coleyn, 304; pardons the provost of Coleyn, 307; returns to Bordeaux, ib.; relates his adventures to his wife, 307-9; declines to seek aid of Salybraunt, 311; complains of Oberon's neglect, 313; summons his men, 316; begs Gerames' aid, 317; prepares a sortie, 319; fights valiantly, 320; attacks the Emperor, 323; retires to Bordeaux, 323; sees the gallows set up for Gerames, 327; prepares a rescue, 328; sees Gerames on the scaffold, 331; slays the hangman, 332; rescues Gerames, 333; spares Sir Otho, 334; repulses the Germans, 334, 338-9; pursued by Germans, who enter Bordeaux, 335; spares the lives of 500 prisoners, 336; finds his force dwindles, 341; sues for peace in vain, 342; makes sudden sortie, 344; strikes the Emperor, 346; loses more men, 348; despairs, 349; resolves to seek aid in the East, 350; seizes the German herds, 351; will slay Esclaramonde's brother if he will not be christened, 353; is confessed by the bishop of Bordeaux, and receives a hallowed stool, 355; takes his knights with him, ib.; sails down the Garonne, 356; takes ship for Anfamie, 358; encounters storms, 359; approaches the gulf of hell, 361; prepares for death, 362; speaks with Judas, 364-7; hurries from the gulf of hell, 367; approaches the rock Adamant, 368; longs to attack the castle, 371; is warned of its dangers, 372; desires to fight with the serpent in the castle, 375; attacked by Saracens, 376; loses many knights, 378; slays many Saracens, 378; alone of his company survives famine, 379; visits the Adamant castle, 380; slays the serpent, 382; marvels at the castle's splendour, 383; and eats fruit in the garden, 385; finds feeble sustenance there, 407; discovers a marvellous cellar, 408; sees four fairies, 409; obtains from them meat and drink, 410; enjoys every luxury, 412; sees Moorish ship on Adamant rock, 414; promises Moors safety, if converted to Christianity, 417; receives
the bishop of Lisbon, an old friend, 419; grows weary of inactivity, 425; perceives the griffin, 426; confessed by the bishop of Lisbon, 428; is carried off by the griffin, pretending to be dead, 429; at the white rock, 430; attacks and slays the griffin and her young, 431-3; bathes in the fountain of youth, 434; eats of the apples of youth, ib.; is bidden by an angel to gather these apples, 436; learns of the fate of Bordeaux from the angel, 436-7; leaves the rock, 439; finds a rich ship, ib.; passes through a dark passage in the rocks, 441; lands at Tauris in Persia, 443; meets Barnard, 447; finds the ballast of his ship to be precious stones, 448; well received by the admiral of Tauris, 456; gives the admiral an apple of youth, 465; is promised the aid of the admiral of Tauris, 470; leaves Tauris with the admiral, 471; at Angore, 472; fights against the men of the city, 475; kills the admiral, 476; conquers the city, 477; coasts by Abylaunte, 478; reaches an evil port, 480; ascends a mountain above, 483; meets Cain, 484; learns Cain's history, and abandons him, 487; meets an awful fiend, 489; pretends to be Cain, 491; is treated well by the fiend, ib.; at Colanders, 492; meets the admiral of Tauris and Barnard again, 495; travels to Antioch, 498; and Damascus, 499; and goes on to Jerusalem, 500; advises a forward attack on the Saracens at Rames, 503; kills five kings and two admirals, 508; kills the admiral of Dorbrys, 511; attacks the sultan Saphadim, 514; is hard beset, and is rescued, 516; returns to Acre, 519; has a vision of trouble at Mayence, 520; anxious to go to Esclaramonde, 522; advises a return of the admiral of Tauris' troops, 523; resolves to return to Europe, 525; at Marseilles, 528; visits Cluny disguised as a pilgrim from Jerusalem, 547; sees Claricet, 548; reveals himself, to the joy of all, and tells his adventures, 551; offers the abbot an apple of youth, 553; brings his men and wealth from Tournois to Cluny, 557; goes with Barnard to Mayence, 559; is the first pilgrim to approach the Emperor on Good Friday, 560; gives him a precious stone, 561; is promised the release of Esclaramonde, 565; tells his adventures, 566; gives the Emperor an apple of youth, 568; and meets Esclaramonde, 570; with his wife and Emperor goes to Cluny,
INDEX NOMINUM.

572; beats back abbot's men, 576; and enters Bordeaux, 578; sends the griffin's foot to King Louis, 583; sets out for fairyland, 583; driven into Spanish Sea, 585; shipwrecked near a beautiful castle, where monks live who are evil angels, 588; is preserved by magic stones, 593; carried by a monk to a high rock, 595; reaches Oberon's city of Momur, 597; is crowned king of fairyland by Oberon, 600; threatens to enforce obedience on King Arthur, 602; gives Arthur parts of his realm, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606; comes with fairy army to Courtois to arrange dispute between the kings of Navarre and Arragon, and to marry Florence to his daughter Clariet, 676-82; meets Clariet, 684; makes good all damage done by war, 687; returns to Momur, 689.

Ide, daughter of Florence and Clariet, born, 690; of great beauty, 692; sought in marriage by Florence, her own father, 694; escapes in man's apparel, 697; helped by Sorbare, 700; goes to Germany, 702; attacked by thieves, 705; at Rome salutes Emperor, 708; mistaken for a man, 709; attends Emperor's daughter Olive, 710; is knighted, 712; leads Emperor's army against Spaniards, 714; does deadly slaughter, 716; takes king of Spain prisoner, 718; pleads for his life, 719; declines to marry Olive, 721; yields to threats, 722; married to Olive, 724; sex discovered, and sent to stake, 728; sex miraculously changed, 729; crowned Emperor, 730; visits Florence at Courtois, 737; helps Florence to rule, 737.

Isoude, xxvii, loved by Tristram, 157.

Ivoryn of Mombraunte, 131; uncle of Esclaramonde, 161; learns of her and of her father's fortune, 163; sends to take Esclaramonde from Galaffer, 164; is defied, and prepares for war upon Galaffer, 165; summons his men of war, 174; swears vengeance, 175; receives Mouflet the minstrel, and Huon his servant, 176; asks Huon what is his capacity, 177; makes trial of his knowledge of chess by bidding him play with his daughter, 178; leads his troops to Anfalerne, 183; applauds Huon for slaying Sorbryn, 187; defeats Galaffer, 188; honours and feasts Huon, 189; leads second attack on Anfalerne, 197; sees Huon follow Gerames into Anfalerne, 199; urges his men to rescue Huon, 200; receives
Galaffier's submission, 201; fights with Galaffier against Huon, 203; condemns Mouflet to death, 204; learns of Huon's flight, 213; enters the castle of Anfalerne, 214. 

Ivoryn's daughter loves Huon, 179; plays chess with him, 180; watches the fight, 196.

Iyacars, son of Earl Remon of St. Giles, plots to murder Croissant, 745, 754; is killed, 756.

James, St., 28.

Jeracle, son of Ivoryn, 132.

John, St., feast of, 124, 132.

Joyeuse, Charlemagne's sword, xii.

JozeraNe, German knight killed by Huon, 322.

Judas Iscariot, 459; kisses Jesus, 52, 223; floats on canvas by gulf of hell, 363; recounts his history, 364-5; cannot die, 366; once gave away piece of canvas in charity, ib.; warns Huon of peril, 367.

Julius Cesar. See Cesar.

Katharine, Guymart's daughter, marries Croissant, 782.

Lempatrix, a fairy, 66.

Lewis, Loys, Lowis, Charlemagne's younger son, 4; succeeds as Emperor, 388; receives griffin's foot from Huon, 583.

Lisbon, bishop of, wrecked on Adamant rock, 416; recognizes Huon, 419; is free from sin, 421; eats at pleasure in Adamant castle, 422; baptizes Saracens, ib.; warns Huon of griffin, 428.

Loherains, Les, a romance where Huon mentioned, xxviii.

Lyl, John, and Euphuism, 785.

Macaire, Macayr, Huon's uncle, brother of Sevin, tyrant of Tornmont, 81; is a pagan, 83; longs for Huon's magic cup, 87; threatens Huon, ib.; recognizes him as his nephew, 89; invites him to his castle, ib.; plots to murder Huon, 90-1; is driven from castle, and besieges Huon there, 92. [There is a chanson named Macaire (twelfth cent.), whose hero charges Charlemagne's queen Blanchefleur with adultery.]

Mahounde, 133, et passim; Macomyte, 477; Mahomet, 500.

Malabron, Mallabron, a man transformed by Oberon into a sea beast, 111; bears Huon up the Nile, 112; begs Oberon to let him charl. Rom. xii.
aid Huon, 167; condemned to be sea monster twenty-eight years longer, 167-8; swims to Huon at Noisaunt, and brings him to mainland, 169; at Bordeaux, 267; accompanies fairy Gloriande, 598, 677.

*Marcus Aurelius, Book of*, translated by Lord Berners, xlv, 784.

Margale, a fairy, 65.

Markham, Gervase, quoted, xlix, 790.

Mauryse, abbot of, welcomes Huon, 219; invites Huon and Gerard to supper, 225; keeps Huon's treasure, ib. is killed by Gerard and Gybouars while guarding the treasure, 233.

Meres, Francis, quoted, xlviii.

Mouflet, a minstrel, 170; helps Huon, 171; served Gaudys, 172; takes Huon as his servant, 173; at Mombraunt, 174; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175; plays the viol before Ivoryn, ib. is well rewarded, 176; celebrates Huon's victories, 190; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204; is saved by Huon, 205; plays before Huon, 207; in France, 213; baptized by Pope, 217; is called Garyn, ib.

Mouflet, a minstrel, 170; helps Huon, 171; served Gaudys, 172; takes Huon as his servant, 173; at Mombraunt, 174; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175; plays the viol before Ivoryn, ib. is well rewarded, 176; celebrates Huon's victories, 190; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204; is saved by Huon, 205; plays before Huon, 207; in France, 213; baptized by Pope, 217; is called Garyn, ib.

Mourlet, a minstrel, 170; helps Huon, 171; served Gaudys, 172; takes Huon as his servant, 173; at Mombraunt, 174; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175; plays the viol before Ivoryn, ib. is well rewarded, 176; celebrates Huon's victories, 190; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204; is saved by Huon, 205; plays before Huon, 207; in France, 213; baptized by Pope, 217; is called Garyn, ib.

Naimes, Naymes, Duke of Bavaria. [A character invariably introduced into Charlemagne romances. According to Aubri le Bourgoing, he is son of Gasselin, king of Bavaria; is protected from an usurper, Cassile or Tassillon, by Charlemagne; in Roland, Aspremont, and Acquin he plays great part as friend of the Emperor; in the Voyage à Jerusalem he first appears as one of 'les douze pairs'; in the Anseis de Carthage (late poem) his death is recounted. He is the Nestor of the Charlemagne cycle; cp. Aspremont, 'Tel conseiller n'orent ongues li Franc.'] Survivor of Roncesvalles, 2; chief of Charlemagne's council, 3; complains of Amaury's guile, 6, 12; seeks to comfort Charlemagne, 32; prepares duel between Huon and Amaury, 38; reproaches Emperor, 41; intercedes for Huon, 47; with Huon at Troyes, 52; declines Gerard's offer of treasure, 235; suspects Gerard, 238; denounces him, 239;
MARCUS—OBERON.

urges Emperor to send for Huon, 249; declares Huon cannot be tried at Bordeaux, 255; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 261. NAVARRE, king of, fights against king of Aragon, 633; taken by Florence, 644; released, 647; enters Tarragon, 660; besieges king of Aragon at Courtois, 676; accepts Huon's intervention, 681; makes peace, 685; visits Florence, 701.

NEPTANABUS, father of Alexander the Great, 73.

OBERON, king of fairyland, his literary history traced, xxix; compared with Welsh Gwyn and German Alberich, xxx; his genealogy criticized, xxxi; Le Roman d'Auberon, xxxiii; Wieland's poem of, xxxviii; in Midsummer Night's Dream, 1; Weber's opera about, li;—besets the road to Babylon, 63; the dwarf king of fairyland, ib.; is seen by Huon, 65; blows his magic horn, 66, 70; speaks to Huon, 67; raises a storm, 67, 69; attacks him, 70; recites Huon's adventures, 71; tells his history, 72-3; king of Momur, 74; gives Huon a magic banquet, 74-5; his magic cup, 76; gives Huon the cup and horn, 77-8; makes a path through water for Huon, 78; is recklessly summoned by Huon, 80; curses him, ib.; forgives him, 81; foretells peril for Huon, and bids him farewell, 82, 96, 154, 267; comes to Tormont, to protect Huon, 94; is angry with Huon, 118; comes to Huon's aid in killing the Admiral Gaudys, 152; places Huon's trophies gained from Gaudys in Gerames' side, 153; warns Huon against having intercourse with Esclaramonde till their marriage at Rome, 154; gives him a ship, ib.; laments Huon's misfortunes, 166; bids Malabron fetch him Huon's horn, cup, and harness, 169; pities Huon's misfortunes in France, 257; appears before Charlemagne with 100,000 men, 258-9; wills the fetters to fall from Huon, 259; offers the king his enchanted cup, 260; charges Charlemagne with crime, ib.; rebukes the Emperor, 261; bids Gerard appear, ib.; orders the objects of Huon's mission to appear before Charlemagne, 264; is mistaken by Charlemagne for God. 265; recites his history, ib.; bids Huon come to Momur in four years' time, 266; promises him the kingdom of fairyland, ib.; tells of his going to Paradise, 267; laments over Huon, 273-4;
INDEX NOMINUM.

grieves for his father Julius Caesar's death, 412; will never come to castle of Adamant afterwards, ib.; sends Gloriande and Malabron to save Esclaramonde, 536-8; sick at Momur, 597; receives Huon as his successor, 598; crowns Huon king and Esclaramonde queen of fairyland, 600; welcomes King Arthur, 601; makes peace between Huon and Arthur, 602; dies, 605; is carried to Paradise, is buried in a new abbey, 606; sets treasure in old palace at Rome for Croissant, 780.

Ogier the Dane, subject of chanson de geste, xiii n., xv n.; father of Baudouyn, 4; kills Bertrand, Naymes' son, 33; destroyed city of Colanders, 489; father of Merlin, 601.

Olive, Roman Emperor's daughter, falls in love with Ide, 709; is betrothed to Ide, 721; married, 724; discovers Ide's sex, 726; is delivered of son, Croissant, 730.

Oliver, xii; death of, 2.

Olyfarne, king of, killed by Huon, 511.

Orcaney, admiral of, brother of the Sowdone, killed by Huon, 511.

Ortnit, a German Emperor, xxx, xxxi.

Oryane, a fairy, 684.

Otho, Emperor of Germany at Rome, 702; accepts Ide's service, 709; knights Ide, 712; applauds Ide's prowess, 717; spares king of Spain, 718; insists on Ide's marriage to Olive, 721; learns Ide's sex, 727; orders Ide to be burned, 728; dies, 729.

Othon, a German knight, ordered to hang Gerames and French prisoners, and pleads for delay, 329; rebukes the hangman for insulting Gerames, 331; is spared by Huon, 333; agrees to serve Huon, ib.; fights well, 334; supports Gerames, 393.

Otinel, or Otuel, a chanson de geste, xviii n., xix, xx.

Peter, St., church of, at Rome, 54.

Peter (Sir) of Aragon, 621; rescues Clariet at Tours, 622; kills king of Grenade, 623; brings Clariet to Tarragona, 624; leads men against king of Navarre, 634; rescues Clariet from drowning, 640; threatens king of Aragon, 642; pleads for watchman who released Clariet and Florence, 655.

Philip, king of France, hangs up Huon's griffin's foot in a chapel, 583.
Pompey, fights with Caesar, 73, 265; vanquished by Caesar, 411.
Pope of Rome, Huon's uncle, receives Huon, 54, 216; baptizes Esclaramonde and Moullet, 216; marries Huon and Esclaramonde, 217.

Ptolemy kings of Egypt attack Caesar at Adamant; their treasure, 411.

Raoul, duke of Austria, hears of Esclaramonde's beauty, 276-7; nephew of German Emperor, 278; begs his uncle to announce tournament, 278; plots Huon's death, 279; visits Bordeaux disguised as pilgrim, 281; lies to Huon, 282; deeply in love with Esclaramonde, 283; at Mayence, ib.; is abused by Huon of coveting his wife, 288; is slain by Huon, 289.

Rauf Colesear, an English poem, xix, xx.

Remon, Earl of St. Giles, besieged at Nice by kings of Grenade and Belmaryne, 741; accepts Croissant's help, 742; offers his daughter to Croissant, 745, 753; threatens to murder Croissant, 759.

Renaud de Montauban, a chanson de geste, xiii, xix n., xx.

Reynault of Beauland takes Sorbare, 668.

Reynaulde of Mountaban wins and loses Angore, 472-3.

Richard, a knight of Huon, 341.

Roland, chanson of, x; its authorship, xvii, xxi; death of, 2.

Roland and Vernagu, xviii, xx.

Rousillon, Gerard of. See Gerard.

Rowlande's Song, an English poem, xix.

Salamon, temple of, 500.

Salater, false name assumed by Huon, 172.

Salmet, Johan, an incredulous monk, 553; sent to prison, and is pardoned, 555.

Salybraunt, king of Bougye, brother of Esclaramonde, offers Huon aid, 310.

Saphadin, Sowdan of Babylon and Egypt, 500.

Savary, Earl, killed by Huon, 298.

Savary or Savory, duke, father of Raoull, 315; brother of Emperor of Germany weeps over his son's death, 315; before Bordeaux, 319; fights with Huon, 321; is defeated, 322; retreats from an
ttack, 339; believes Bordeaux impregnable, 340; urges Thierry to persist with siege, 390; falls on Gerames, 395.

Sebylle meets Huon at Dunother, 98; daughter of Guynemer of St. Omer, and niece of Duke Sevin, 100; her history, ib.; directs Huon to the giant’s chamber, 102; is married to a converted admiral of Babylon, 154.

_Sege of Melayne_, an English romance, xviii.

Sevin or Séguin, duke, his historical origin, xxviii, xxix; in romance, xxxvii; Huon’s father, 5, 12, 13, 17, 23, 59, 61.

Seyne, Earl of, slain by Huon, 291.

Sezar, 73. _See Cesar, Julius._

Sorbare, Saracen ruler and reputed Christian, takes care of Florence and Clariet, 666; once king of Belmaryn, 668; offers to become Christian, 669; welcomes French pilgrims, 670; attacked by Saracens, 673; overcomes them, 674; advises Florence, 693; helps Ide to escape, 700.

Sorbryn, nephew of Angolaffer, 184; challenges Ivoryn’s bravest soldier, 185; is defied by Huon, 186; and killed, 187.

Sowdone, _i.e._ Sultan. _See Gaudys and Saphadin._

_Sowdone of Babylon_, an English romance, xviii n.

Spain, king of, fights against Emperor of Rome, 714; is captured by Ide, 718; his life spared, 719.

Sperguer, Sir Hans, a German knight, 291.

Symcan, temple of, 500.

Tauris, admiral of, welcomes Huon, 456; has served Charlemagne, 459; consents to turn Christian, 463; eats apple of youth, and grows young, 465; hallowed by bishop of Greece, 466; offers Huon his daughters in marriage, 467; promises to help in rescue of Esclaramonde, 469; with Huon against the admiral of Angore, 475; gets the admiral’s horse, 477; is left by Huon, 480; at Colanders, 489; besieges the city, 493; conquers it, and finds Huon, 495; at Antioch, 498; marches to Jerusalem, 499; defeats Saracens there, 505-18; raises siege of Acre, 525; offers army to Huon against German Emperor, 525.

Thierry, Duke, 23.

Thierry, Tyrrey, Emperor of Germany, declares tournaments at
Mayence, 278, 284; appealed to by Huon, 287; sees Huon murder Raoull, 288; pursues him, 291; is struck by him, 292; swears to take Bordeaux, 293; leads his army against Huon, 297; challenges Huon, 300; is defeated and rescued, 301; begs six months' truce, 302; at Cologne, 303; censures the provost for ignoring truce, 305; collects army at Mayence, 314; ravages land about Bordeaux, 317; before the city, 318; promises Esclaramonde to the slayer of Huon, 320; wounded by Huon, 323; orders Gerames to be hanged, 326; orders another attack on city, 338; declines peace, 343; attacks Bordeaux, 389; runs Gerames through the body, 396; enters Bordeaux, 398; forbids outrage, ib.; speaks with Esclaramonde, 400; imprisons her at Mayence, 406; grieves for his nephew, 532; prepares to burn Esclaramonde, ib.; spares her by Oberon's order, 542; treats her well, 543; receives precious stone from Huon, 561; releases Esclaramonde, 565; eats Huon's apple and becomes young, 568; at Cluny met Huon, 572; entertained at Bordeaux, 578.

Tholomeus, 411. See Ptolemy.

Thybault, Thybaulde, king of Jerusalem, 500, 502.

Trampoynge, Trampoynifie, Trampoynifie ['the which is as moch to say as Balaach Balak'], messenger from the Sowdan at Jerusalem, 500; is hanged, 520.

Translyne, Transelyne, a fairy, 66, 601, 602, 603, 606, 684; her gift to Oberon, 73; niece of Morgan le Fay, 536.

Troyes, Cretien de, poet, xiv.

Trystram, xxvii; died of love, 157.

Turpin, his Latin chronicle, viii n., xx.

Vergier, lord of, 530; kills the German Emperor's nephew, 531.
X. GLOSSARY.

The following words occurring in the text are clearly typographical errors:

- p. 28, l. 13, puysyon read punysyon, i.e. punition or punishment.
- p. 81, l. 16, reynysyd read reynysyd, i.e. renounced.
- p. 223, l. 7, eunynyd read einiunyd, i.e. enjoined.
- p. 305, l. 4, asyse read aryse.
- p. 430, l. 30, repnisshed read reptenisshed.
- p. 596, l. 26, stone read shone.

A bought, adv. about, 372.  
A bowndance, sb. abundance, 367.  
A brode, adv. abroad, sprede abrode = spread out, 170.  
A hye, adv. alound, 197.  
A pon, prep. upon, 5.  
A tournyd, perf. have turned, 149.  
Above, adv. on shore, 160.  
Advertysyd, pp. informed, 71. 
Affectuosly, adv. earnestly, 9.  
Afrayed, ppl. alarmed, 40.  
Al to brast, burst utterly asunder, 300; al = utterly, entirely to brast, pt. ppl. = burst asunder, from tobrestan [A.S. toberstan]; to is a prefix signifying 'in pieces' or 'asunder.' Cf. Judges ix. 53: 'all to brake' = utterly brake in pieces.  
All wheres, adv. everywhere, 136.

---

Ahmayne, sb. Germany, 296. [O.F. allemaigne.]  
Almayns. sb. pl. Germans.  
Alonlye, adv. solely, entirely; emph, for only, 9.  
Alow, vt. commended, approved, 686.  
Amoures, sb. love, 155; in amoures = in love. [Fr. amour.]  
Amyte, sb. friendship, 8. [Fr. amitie]  
Apayred, ppl. attired, appareled, 15.  
Apayred. ppl. injured, weakened, 310. [O.Fr. empeirer, from Lat. empeirer, to worsen, make worse.]  
Apechcd, ppl. betrayed, informed against, 720. [O.F. empechier.]  
Apechcd. ppl. imputed, 22; v. Apele.  
Apel, vb. accuse, impeach, 25. [O. Fr. appeler.] 'appeler, . . . to accuse, impeach.'—Colgrave.

---

1 This part of the work is largely due to Mr. W. H. Utley of Owen's College, Manchester. Mr. Henry Bradley, co-editor of the Oxford New Dictionary, has kindly supplied a few notes.
Aperydy, pp. appareled, 3.  
Apercyndy, vb. belonged, 4.  
Apechydy, pt. accused, impeached, 27.  
Apon, prep. upon, 169.  
Appellyd, pp. 44; v. Apealyde.  
Arson, sb. poynall, saddle-bow, 700. [O.Fr. arson.]  
Assaye, vb. try, test, 178.  
Assembeled, pt. attacked, assailed, 613. [O.Fr. assembler.] This meaning is very rare, and Murray’s New English Dictionary cites this passage only in support of it. It occurs also on p. 659, l. 20.  
Assoyyld, pt. absolved, 217. [O. Fr. a(s)solliv, a(s)solde.]  
Asspyall, sb. [espial], a waylaying, 26. [O.Fr. espier.] ‘espier, ... to dog, lie for, waylay.’—Cobyr.  
Astonnyd, pp. stunned, 42. [O.Fr. estoner, to stun.] ‘He fell to the ground astonyed.’—Merlin, x. 164.  
Astaynyst, prep. against, 108.  
Atemperate, adj. temperate, 712. [O.Fr. atemprés.]  
Atous, ade. at once, 431.  
Auaylsyd, pt. advanced, 308.  
Auauont, sb. boast, 308; he made his avaunt = he boasted. [O.Fr. avauter, to boast.]  
Auayle, vb. lower, 359. [O.Fr. avaler, from phr. à val, Lat. ad vallem.] ‘Drew vp your ankers and auayle your sayles.’—Lord Berners, Froiss, I. ececlxiv., 619.  
Auctorpyte, sb. authority, power, 581. [O.Fr. auctorité.]  
Auow, sb. vow, 183.  
Auoyd, vb. depart, 48. ‘... he commanded them to avoid.’—G. Sandys, Trav., 72.  
Avoylyd, pp. emptied, cleared, 40. ‘... commanded the chambre to be avoided.’—Elyot, Gov., II. vii. 105.  

| barlast, due to confusion between the two. | Baptyme, sb. baptism, 95. [Fr. baptême]  
| Bassade, sb. embassy, 466. [O.Fr. embassade.]  
| Bayne, sb. bath, 698. [O.Fr. baigne.]  
| Baynyd, pt. bathed, 427.  
| Beofes, sb. beaves, cattle, 183. [O. Fr. boef.]  
| Besant, sb. 772. ‘A gold coin, first struck at Byzantium, and seemingly equivalent to the Roman solidus or aureus, but afterwards varying in value between the English sovereign and half-sovereign. It was current in Europe from the 9th cent., and in England till superseded by the noble, temp. Edw. III. Used by Wyc.if to tran-late both talentum and drachma.’—Murray.  
| Besene, adj. clad, furnished, 119, 680.  
| Bet, pt. beat, hammered, 86.  
| Borow, sb. town, borough, 336. [A.S. birk.]  
| Bountye, sb. goodness, generosity, 146. [Fr. bonte.]  
| Brast, pt. broke, burst, 103. [A.S. brestan.]  
| Brent, pp. burnt, 192. [brennen, Chancer, C.T., 2333. A.S. byrnan.]  
| Bresten, pp. burst, bursten, 63.  
| Bretherne, sb. pl. brethren, 56.  
| Brother-germayn, a full brother; i.e. with same father and mother, 511. [O.Fr. germaine.]  
| Brun, sb. attack, onset, 305. [Icel. bruna.]  
| Brute, sb. tumult, noise, 181. [Fr. bruit.]  
| Brydale, sb. bridal, wedding, 613. [M.E. bride ale, bride feast.]  
| Brydes, sb. p. newly married couple, 217. [Here bryde = spouse.]
Glossary.

Brynynge, prep. burning, 103. Burden, sb. bundle, 760. [L. as much as can be borne.]
Bushment, sb. ambuscade, ambush, 14.
By cause, conj. because, 19.

Camesyd, adj. flattened, 103; came-syld nose = a pug-nose. [Fr. camus. Ital. camuso.] 'And though my nose be camused, my lips thick.' — Ben Jonson, Sad Shep., ii. 1. 'Round was his face & camois was his nose.' — Chaucer, C. T., 3032.
Carnall, adj. pertaining to the flesh, hence related, connected by birth, 333. 'Thi were noble knyghtes . . . and many of hem car.ell frendes.' — Merlin, I. ii. 117.
Caryag, sb. [carriage], things carried, baggage, accoutrements, 498. [O. Fr. cariage.] 'cariage . . . all the necessary provision of an army, baggage.' — Cotgrave.
Cassydony, sb. chalcedony, 440. [Low Lat. cacedonius.]
Caytyle, sb. [caiff], prisoner, mean person, 645. [O. Fr. caitif.]
Chamene, sb. [chinnée] fire-place, 383. [O. Fr. cheminée.]
Chatelyne, sb. castellan, governor of a castle or town, 493. [Fr. châtelain.]
Chamberer, sb. maid-servant, 623. [O. Fr. chambrière.]
Chere, sb. face, countenance, 57. [O. Fr. chere.] 'The lady is rody in the chere.' — Alisander.
Chordysshely, adv. churlishly, 757.
Chynalrey, sb. collective for a body or number of knights, 2.
Clame, pt. of clumb, 652.
Cles, sb. pl. claws, 430. [A.S. élá.]
Clene, adv. completely, 197.
Clarke, sb. scholar, man of letters, 274.
Clocher, sb. belfry, 68. [Fr. clocher.]
Clpped, pt. embraced, 635. [A.S. clifpen.] ' . . . then again worries he his daughter, with clipping her.' — Shakspere, Winter’s T., V. ii.
Colyke, sb. colic, 194.
Communed, pt. [communed], conversed, 195. [O. Fr. communier.]
Company, vb. associate, consort, 17. [O. Fr. compagnier.]
Commalte, sb. common people, 401. [O. Fr. communauté.]
Condemne, pr. condemn, 167.
Conduite, vb. conduct, 18.
Connyng, adj. skilful, 172. [A.S. cuaman.]
Contyne, sb. contents, 57. [Fr. contenu.]
Conversante, adj. resident, having one’s abode, 522.
Connyng, sb. skill, dexterity, 730.
Corante, adj. current, in circulation, 364. [O. Fr. curant.]
Corante, 52; v. Corante.
Cordiners, sb. pl. shoemakers [= cordwainers, from cordemain, a kind of Spanish leather made at Cordova], 498.
Cordyall, adj. affectionate, cordial, 721.
Cosyn, sb. kinsman, cousin, 52.
Coude, vb. could, 499.
Conerte, sb. a covered place, hiding place, 636; by conerte = under cover, hiding. [O. Fr. covert.]
Conetyys, sb. covetousness, 251. [O. Fr. covetise.]
Connsell, vb. to take counsel, consult, 3.
Courteys, adj. courteous, 171. [O. Fr. curteis.]
Conyn, sb. trick, artifice, 50. [O. Fr. carine.] 'They ne knewe his sleight and his conyn.' — Chaucer, C. T., 605.
Conytys, 329; v. Conytys.
Coyfe, sb. [coif], a cap worn under the helmet, 715; a close fitting helmet, 21. [O. Fr. coiff.]
Creaty, sb. creator, 436.
Credens, sb. credit, 609. Cf. letters of credence. [O. Fr. cridence.]
Crope, sb. [crop.], back, lit. top, or that which sticks out, 169. [A.S. crompe. Cf. fcol, kroppe, a bump. D.n. krop, the trunk of the body.]
Crye, sb. proclamation, 296.
GLOSSARY.

Damoselles, sb. pl. maids, 540. [O. Fr. dameisde.]
Damned, pp. damned, 283; v. Condemned.
Deceyse, pp. [deceased], dead, 54. [O. Fr. deceus.]
Defes, sb. pl. deeds, 171.
Defende, vb. forbid, 46. [Fr. defendre.]
Defowlyd, pt. [defiled], trod under foot, trampled on, 433. [O. Fr. defouler, to trample under foot.] ' . . . defouléd hym under hym myd honde and myd fote.' — Rob. of Gloucester.
Dele, sb. part, portion, 554. [A. S. dola.]
Denyd, pp. dined, 190. [Fr. diner.]
Departed, pp. separated, 336. [O. Fr. departir, to distribute, separate.]
Denore, sb. duty, 46. [Fr. devoir.]
Deuyses, sb. pl. conversation, 58. [Fr. deviser, to converse, chat.]
Deuysyd, pp. proposed, planned, 7; conversed, 273.
Deuysynge, pp. conversing, communicating, 13; v. Deuyseys.
Devours, sb. pl. duties, 300. [Fr. devoirs.]
Dismay, vb. reflex. to be dismayed, 17; dismay you not = be not dismayed.
Dolent, adj. sorrowful, 356. [Fr. dolent, doleful.]
Dolour, sb. pain, suffering, 23. [O. Fr. doleur.]
Domage, sb. misfortune, injury, 146. [Fr. dommage.]
Doubled, sb. doublet, 757.
Dought, sb. [doubt], fear, 9; v. Doughted.
Doughted, sb. [doubted], feared, 197. [In M. E. usually spelt doubled, from Lat. dubitare. Not connected with doughty, which is from A. S. dyhtig, valiant.]
Douted, 335; v. Doughted.
Drans, sb. pl. drachmæ, 142.
Dressed up, erected, set up, 744. [Fr. dresser, to erect, set up.]
Duryng, pp. [during]. enduring, 232. [Fr. durcir, to endure, suffer.]
Dymes, sb. pl. [dimes], tithes, i. e. offerings, 485. [O. Fr. disme; Lat. decimus.] 'He gane hym dymes of alle thingis.' — Wycliffe, Gen. xiv. 20.
Dyn, pp. [done], used for, 502; past tense, = did.
Dysces, sb. decease, death, 603.
Dysconful, vb. [discomfit], vanquish, 47. [O. Fr. desconfire.]
Dysconfultryre, sb. discomfiture, defeat, 2. [O. Fr. desconfiture.]
Dyscryue, vb. [describe], describe, 140. [O. Fr. descryve.]
Dyschorporate, adj. [disordinate], unlawful, intemperate, 700. [Fr. désordonné.]
Dysordynate, 696; v. Dyschorporate.
Dysparasyon, sb. desperation, despair, 364.
Dyspence, sb. expense, 718. [O. Fr. despence.]
Dyssayue, vb. deceive, 69. [O. Fr. decever.]
Dyspyse, vb. [despise], to make despicable, i. e. to curse, 42.
Dyssymell, vb. [dissimule], to disguise, conceal, 254. [Fr. dissimuler.]
Dystroyed, pp. killed, 46.
Embassad, sb. [embassade], embassy, 740.
Embassetours, sb. pl. ambassadors, 740.
Enbashe, pp. ambushed, 222.
Endecryere, pp. [endoctrined], educated, taught, 576.
Enhurytor, sb. [enheritor], heir, 4. [Fr. héritier.]
Enexample, sb. example, 12. [O. Fr. ensembl.] Enmedled, pt. mingled, 337. [O. Fr. entremedler. 'Entremelled with tydynges.' — Chaucer, House of Fame, iii. 1031.]
Entraylyd, pp. interwoven, variegated, 384. [O. Fr. entrerlier.]
Entreated, pp. used, treated, 642. [O. Fr. entretuer.]
Erytage, sb. heritage, inheritance, 143.
Eseryed, pt. cried out, called, 185. [O. Fr. eserier, to exclaim, call out.]
Excusyd, pp. accused, 26.
Extorsyon, sb. [extortion], forcible exaction, 47.
Eyen, sb. pl. eyes, 13.
Fal, vb. [fall], to become, to happen; fal aquaynted = become acquainted, 629.
Falshede, sb. falsehood, 253. [O.Fr. fals.]
Fardell, sb. bundle, 172. [O.Fr. fardel; Low Lat. fardellus.]
Faye, sb. fairy, 536; the Fr. le is here used for the. [O.Fr. fée.]
Fayrve, sb. the nation of Fairies; Fairyland, also magic, enchantment, 305. [O.Fr. faerie.]
Fayre, vb. [fiance], betrothe, alliance, 50. [O.Fr. fiancée.]
Gables, sb. pl. impost, customs, 210. [O.Fr. gabelle.]
Gader, vb. gather, 305. [A.S. gaderian.]
Gamband, vb. gambol, 187. [Fr. gambaid.]
Goodes, sb. pl. services, good deeds, 752.
Goth, vb. goeth, 83. [3rd sing. prec. of go.]
Grees, sb. pl. [degrees], steps, stairs, 373. [O.Fr. grée; Lat. gradus.]
Grese, sb. pl. 119; v. Grees.
Gruged, pt. [grudge], angered, 374. [O.Fr. gruger, to murmur.]
Habandon, vb. abandon, give up, 190.
Hache, sb. axe, 510. [Fr. hache.]
Hast, vb. ask, 222.
Haunt, vb. frequent, 10. [O.Fr. hauier.]
Havers, sb. pl. heirs, 720.
Herber, sb. an arbour, a retreat formed by the branches of trees, 704. [There is some doubt whether this word is a corruption of harbour, O.E. herberge, O.Fr. herberge, a lodging (Skeat), or of M.E. herbere, O.Fr. herber, a garden of herbs (Stratman).]
Herbyger, sb. [harbinger], one who looks out for a lodging for another, 504. [O.Fr. herbergé, a lodging.]
Herytes, sb. heirress, 642.
Henynes, sb. heaviness, 544.
Hole, adj. [whole], healthy, well, 28. [A.S. hælan.]
Honeste, sb. chastity, 624. [O.Fr. honestié.]
Iore, adj. [hoar], white, 224. [A.S. hær.]
Iostrye, sb. hostelry, 235.
iowdeous, adj. hideous, 489.
Hyely, adv. nobly, 684.
GLOSSARY.

Hyssed, *pt.* hoisted, 478. [Fr. hausser.]

Ianglers, *sb.* pl. quarrelsome fellows, 10. [O.F. *jangler*, to talk loudly, to quarrel.]

Iapery, *sb.* jesting, 85; in iapery = in jest. [Fr. *gaber*.]

Ientylmen, *ill.* adj. evil, wicked, 4.

Imagenyd, *pt.* devised, 221.


Incombrance, *sb.* trouble, 23.

Incontynent, *adv.* immediately, forthwith, 7. [Fr. *incontinent*.]

In portables, *adj.* pl. intolerable, 544. [O.Fr. *importable*.] ‘im- portable, intolerable, insupportable, not to be borne.’—Cotgrave. The s is added by anal. with tr. pl.


Intreated, *pp.* treated, used, 365; *yl* intreated = ill used. [O.Fr. *entraite*.]

Jurnay, *sb.* journey, 275. [Fr. *journée*.]

Justed, *pp.* jousted, fought, 186. [O.Fr. *jouster*.]

Knowlege, *vb.* confess, acknowledge, 44.

Knowlegyng, *prp.* 504; *v.* Knowlege.

Kyne, *sb.* king, 692.

Kyrtyl, *sb.* kirtle, 520. [A.S. *cyrtel*.]

Langiushe, *vb.* linger in pain, languish, 408. [O.Fr. *languir*.]

Large, *adj.* liberal, generous, 546. [Fr. *large*; Lat. *largus*, liberal.]

Larges, *sb.* largess, liberality, 496. [Fr. *largesse*.]

Larum, *sb.* noise, abbrev. for alarum, 472. [Fr. *alarme*, to call to arms.]


Lesynges, *sb.* loosing, forfeit, 37.

Let, *vb.* to delay, be slow, also to hinder, 37. [A.S. *lot*, slow, whence *late* is also derived.]

Leuyes, *sb.* pl. levers, bars, 380. [O. Fr. *lerier*.]

Loge, *sb.* lodge, 56. [Fr. *logo*; It. *loggia*.]

Logynges, *sb.* [lodgings], dwelling-place, 31.

Longed, *vb.* belonged, 155. [A.S. *lengian*.] ‘That aj perteneith and longeth all only to the judges.’—Chaucer, Tale of Melibes.

Lothely, *adj.* loathsome, 533. [A.S. *loeg*.]

Lowe, *vb.* lower, abase, 628.

Lybardes, *sb.* pl. [libbards], leopards, 16.


Male, *sb.* bag, wallet, 170. [O.Fr. *male*; mod. Fr. *malle*.] This word still survives in the word *mail*, in the sense of letters, &c., carried by post, from the bag (mail-bag) in which they are carried.

Malle, *sb.* mallet, hammer, 484. [O.Fr. *mail*; Lat. *malleus*.]

Mantell tree, *sb.* the shelf over a fire-place, 363. [O.Fr. *mantel*, and tree, prob. in sense of a piece of wood, a beam.] ‘Upon the *mantle tree* ... stood a pot of lambative electuary.’—Tatler, No. 266.

Mastres, *sb.* mistress, governess, 696. [O.Fr. *maistresse*.]

Medelyd, *pp.* [meddled], mixed, mingled, 442. [O.Fr. *meder*, to mix, jumble.]


Mervayll. *sb.* wonder, astonishment, 321. [O.Fr. *merveille*.]

Mew, *a sparhawke, 177. (1) moult
Glossary.

a sparhawk, (2) cage a sparhawk.

Mew, vb. to confine, to keep in a cage, a term in falconry, 177. Cf. Baret's Alcearie: 'A line for haukes, cauea vel caueola accipi- trum; tomenu a hauke, in cæuan, &c., compingere accipitrem.' — Baret.

Minysshed, vb. diminished, 341. [0. Fr. menusier, to lessen.]

Mo, adj. and adv. more, 64. [A.S. má.]

Monysyons, sb. pl. munitions, 58.

Moo, adv. [mo], more, 36.

Mossell, sb. muzzle, snout, 140. [0. Fr. musel.]

Motoros, sb. pl. sheep. [Fr. moutons.]

Moyte, sb. half, 467. [Fr. moitié.]

Mulet, sb. mule, 52.

Muryed, pp. immured, 650. [Fr. murer.]

Mygh, vb. [might], could, 67. [A.S. mugan, to be able.]

Nerelahd, adv. nearly, almost, 40.

Noblesse, sb. nobles collectively, company of lords and ladies, 314. [Fr. noblesse.]

Nones, [nonce], for the none, 133; [= orig. for then anes] = for the once, for the occasion or purpose.

Nother, conj. neither, 5.

Nowell, sb. [noel], a cry of joy, orig. a Christmas carol, 578. [Fr. noël, Christmas.]

Noysfull, adj. irksome, painful, 440. [O. Fr. ausi, mod. Fr. ennui, annoyance.]

Oboute, prep. about, 13.

Or, adv. ere, before, 11. [A S. avr.]

Or it be longe, before long, 273.

Orpheline, sb. orphan, 695. [Fr. orpheline.]


Orrour, sb. horror, 122.

Orryble, adj. horrible, 101.

Oneragis, sb. pl. works, ornaments, 380. [Fr. ourage.]

Pagany, sb. heathendom, country of the pagans, 170.

Parage, sb. lineage, birth, 633. [Fr. parage.] 'Ye are a man in this town of great parage.'—Bëners, Froiss., ii. 52.

Parells, sb. pl. perils, 56.

Parentes, sb. pl. cousins, kindred, 2. [Fr. parent, a cousin or kinsman.]

Parfaitye, adj. complete, 66. [O. Fr. parfaite.]

Parforce, adv. by force, 275. [Fr. par- and force.]

Parfyte, adj. perfect, complete, 294.

Pariuryd, pp. perjured, 487.

Parteyntye, pr. p. belonging, 8. [O. Fr. parturir.]

Pastours = pastures, 477.

Patrone, sb. captain, 212. 'Patrone of a galley, patro de galee.'—Palsgrave.

Paynyms, sb. pl. pagans, heathens, 81. [Fr. paënieuse.]

Pelot, sb. pilot, 358. [O. Fr. pilot.]

Persauaut, vb. pursue, 81.

Perteyse, sb. pl. partes, 507.

Petiously, adv. piteously, 35, 715. [O. Fr. pitous.]

Playse, vb. please, 36. [O. Fr. plair, to please.]

Plee, sb. a suit, trial, 26. [O. Fr. plai.]

Portables; v. In Portables.

Porte, sb. gate, 56. [Fr. porte.]

Poynt, sb. condition in good point = in good condition, trans, of Fr. emboupoint [en bon point], 307.

Prayseyd, vb. esteemed, valued, 39. [O. Fr. préiser.] 'She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.'—Chaucer, C. T., 9728.

Proues, sb. prowess, valour, 1. [O. Fr. prouss.]

Pryce, to 'blow the pryce' means to 'blow a blast to celebrate the capture of an animal.' The phrase occurs several times in Middle English; v. Sir Gawain, 1362, also Bk. of St. Albans, and MS. Cotton Vesp. B. xii., quoted by the editors of Sir Tristrem. 'The pryce was blown when the hunting party arrived at the door of the hall on their return. In Sir Tristrem the same thing is called the 'tokening' in l. 518, but in
GLOSSARY.

2749/50 we have, "He blewe priis as he can pre mot oper mare." The word is probably to be identified with Fr. preise.

Pryuey, adj. privy, intimately conversant with, 1.3. (O.Fr. proyre.)

Purchase, vb. procure, 12. (O.Fr. procure.)

Purcolyys, sb. portecullis, 335. (O.Fr. porte coulisse.)

Puruy, vb. provide, 599. (O.Fr. porvoir.)

Pusant, adj. puissant, powerful, 47. (Fr. puissant.)

Puysance, sb. puissance, might, 39.

Pyllynge, vb. pyllyng, pillying, 401. (Fr. piller, to pilage.)

Pyrroettes, sb. pl. pirates, 375.

Quarter, sb. portion, 13.

Queyntance, sb. acquaintance, 92. (O.Fr. coint.)

Rased, pp. torn, lit. scraped, 145. (Fr. raser, to scrape.)

Recountre, blow, attack, 431. (Fr. rencontre.)

Reculvyld, pl. recoiled, 42. (Fr. reculer.)

Reclynyng, pr. p. recoiling, retreating, 317.

Regardly, pp. looked, 17. (Fr. regarder, to look.)

Relewyld, vb. a feudal term, signifying to recognise with the usual formalities that a fief is held from the feudal lord, 5. (Fr. relever.) In 511/4, releve = to rise up again.

Relewyld, vt. rose up, 147. (Fr. relever.)

Renegyd, pp. ranged, 404. (O.Fr. renuer.)

Renoume, sb. renown, fame, 2. (Fr. renom, renommee.) "... O thou far renowned sonne."—Spenser, F. Q., i. 6.

Reneyd, pp. denied, 89. (Fr. renier, to deny.)

Renynsyd, pt. renounced, 81. (Fr. renoncer.)

Repenished, for replenished = filled again, 430.

Requere, vb. require, ask, 3. (O.Fr. requerir.)

Requyre, vb. require, ask, 264; requyre me of = ask me for, prob. for Fr. requérir de.

Resorte, sb. refuge, resource, 752. (Fr. ressort.)

Retourned, turned, 637.

Ruede, adj. coarse, rough, 300. (Fr. rude.)

Rybault, sb. [ribald], a low fellow, 85. (O.Fr. ribaud.)

Rybawdis, sb. pl. [ribalds], brutal wretches, 538. (O.Fr. ribaud, riband.)

Rytghtwysly, adv. righteously, 251. (A.S. rihtwis, wise as to what is right.)

Ryuyled, riveled, pp. wrinkled, shrunk, 568. "I'll give thee tackling made of riveld gold, Wound, on the barks of odoriferous trees."—Marlowe's Dido, 1594.

Sage, adj. wise, discerning, 214. (Fr. sage.)

Sarnage, sb. [serfage], slavery, servitude, 468. "... Doth in lordship and servage."—Chaucer, C. T., 11106.

Sane conquyte, sb. safe conduct, 719.

Sawye, pp. saved, 477. (M.E. saueuen for sauen, Fr. sauer.)

Sclane, sb. slave, 161. (Fr. esclave.)

Scole, sb. school, 419. (A.S. scólu.)

Scot, sb. share, a contribution towards the general fund, 704. (O.Fr. escot.) This is the original meaning, but here it seems to mean rather that for which the share is paid, not the share itself. Cf. "... we may fortune to mete with suche that shall pay for our scotte."—Berners, Froiss., i. 207.

Sease, vt. cease, 14.

Sken, conj. since, 26.

Semblant, sb. [semblance], appearance, 26. (O.Fr. semblance.)

Semblant, made semblaunt = pretended, 205; v. SEMBLANT.
Semylytude, sb. [similitude], likeness, 41.
Sennys, conj. since, 71.
Sercles, sb. pl. [circles], 715; v. Sercell.
Serkell, sb. [circle], a band worn round the helmet, 24. [O.Fr. sercle.]
Sertes, sb. pl. servants, 138.
Set, pp. put, placed, 189.
Sew, conj. since, 49.
Seygnories, sb. pl. [seignories], domains, 140. [O.F. seigneurie.]
She, sb. this, 560. [Fr. s'etre, to be.]
Shev, vb. shew, 43. [A.S. sywdeov.]
Shew, vb. shew, 43. [O.F. s'etre, to show.]
Shre, sb. shrive, 560. [O.Fr. s'etre, to show.]
Sirode, sb. sea-road, 359.
Skayd, pt. escaped, 16.
Skant, adv. [scant], scarcely, 559. [Icel. skampt.]
Sle, vb. slew, 40.
Slee, vb. shay, 43.
Sleuers, sb. pl. slivers, fragments, 42. [A.S. sliqan, to cleave.]
Smoke, sb. smock, 606. [A.S. smoc.]
Solas, sb. [solute], comfort, 606. [O.Fr. solaz.]
Solempne, adj. solemn, 36.
Somery, sb. pack-horse, sumpter horse, 144. [O.Fr. somier, a pack-horse.]
Sommer, sb. 52; v. Sommer.
Sompterhors, sb. [sumpterhorse], pack-horse, 702. [O.Fr. sommetier, from O.Fr. somme, a pack, burden.]
Soort, sb. [sort], lot, company, 38. [Fr. sorte.]
Soppe, sb. sup, drink, 38. [Fr. souper; A.S. siapan.]
Sot, sb. fool, 47. [Fr. sot, a fool.]
Sowdeours, sb. pl. soldiers, 314. ‘... he had of suche servyndyres to defende hym.’—Fabian, Chron. c. 82.
Sowned, pt. [sound], swooned, 300. ‘Sound’ is common in Shakspere in this sense.
Sparhawke, sb. sparrowhawk, 7.
Sperclyd, pt. spread, scattered, 476.
Sporres, sb. pl. spurs, 291; on the spores = in great haste; equiv. to modern phr. ‘with whip and spur.’
Spryngynge tyne, spring time, 525.
Stalle, pt. stole, 310.
Stethy, sb. anvil, 380. [Icel. stiði, an anvil.]
Stradiot, sb. a kind of soldier, 761. [O.Fr. estradiot. ‘Among the Frenchmen were certaine light horsemen called stradiotes.—Hall., Henry VIII., f. 28.
Stuyd, pp. [stewed], bathed, washed, 543. [O.Fr. esturer, to bathe.] ‘Esturer, to stune, soake, bathe.’—Cotgrave.
Swerde, sb. sword, 182. [A.S. swerde.]
Swomnyd, pt. swooned, fainted, 24.
Sygnd, pp. assigned, appointed, 473. [O.Fr. signer. Chaucer, Ct. of Love, l. 642."
Syn, conj. since, 5. [A.S. sithen.]
Syngnory, sb. seignory, kingdom, dominion, 4. [Fr. seigneurie.]
Synse, conj. since, as, 36. Syt, vb. to lean on, rest on, 43.
Tale, sb. number, 328. [A.S. taln.]
Taylles, sb. pl. tolls, taxes, 210. [O.Fr. tallles.]
Temperours, for themperours, the emperor's, 13.
Than, then, 15. [A.S. thanne.]
Thedyr, adv. thither, 60. [A.S. sider.]
Thentent, for ‘the entent’ = the intent, ‘for thatent’ = with the intention, 60.
Thoug, sb. [thought], care, trouble, 3. ‘... the old man for very thought and grief of heart pined away.’—Holland.
Thrusty, adj. thirsty, 66. [A.S. therst.]
Tonne, sb. tun, barrel, 484. [A.S. tunne, a barrel.]
Torneys, sb. pl. tourneys, tournaments, 62. [O.Fr. tournei.]
Tournayd, pt. returned, 210. ‘Ere from this war thou turne a conqueror.—Shakspere.
Traytour, adj. faithless, traitorous, 41. [O.Fr. traiteur.]
Treson, sb. treachery, 41.
Trepasyd, pt. [trespassed], departed, 17. [O.Fr. trespasser, to go beyond, depart.] ‘Robert de Bruce
GLOSSARY.

... trespassed out of this uncertain world.—Berners, Froiss.
Trewes, sb. truce, 304. [O.Fr. trueze.]
Trone, sb. throne, 216. [O.Fr. throne.]
Trought, pt. believed, 44. [From M.E. trowen, mod. E. trow, A.S. treowian.]
Truage, sb. orig. meaning is homage, fealty, 334. Here it seems to be collective for those who do homage, i.e. prisoners.
Truss, vb. to pack, bind up, 173. [O.Fr. trasser.]
Trybutayr, adj. tributary, subject, 105. [O.Fr. tributaire.]
Tryumpe, sb. glory, 41.
Tuo, num. two, 252.

Vance, a vance for avaunt, q.v., 69.
Vaueryng, sb. wavering, 712.
Vaylable, adj. [valuable], profitable, 12. [O.Fr. vauler, to be of use.]
Vayleth, vb. availeth, 254.
Velony, sb. villainy, 20.
Vertu, sb. strength, 24. [Fr. vertu; Lat. virtus.]
Very, adj. true, 168. [O.Fr. verai.]
Ungaryous, adj. ungracious, 631.
Vttranse, sb. [utterance], extremity, 47. [O.Fr. outrance; mod. Fr. outrance; in phrase à outrance.]
'to the utterance.'—Macb., III. i. 72.

Vttraunce, 196; v. Vttranse.

Wan, vb. won, 184.
Wanhope, sb. delusion, false hope, 364. [A.S. wan, deficient.] 'The foolish wanhope of some usurer.'—Chaloner.
Warde, to her warde = toward her, 254. Cf. 'to you ward.'—2 Cor. xiii. 12.
Wassale, sb. [vassal], wretch, villain, 23. 'O, vassal! miserable!'—K. Lear, 1. i.
Wayter, sb. boarhound, 50. [Fr. vautre. Ital. veltro.]
Went, pp. thought, 233. [pt. of were, to suppose, ween. A.S. wēne.] 'She had went it had bene hir husbande.'—Chaucer, The Mylnor of Abingdon.
Wenyng, pr. p. [weening], thinking, 21; v. Went.
Wesshyde, pp. washed, 537. [M.E. wescchen.]
Whereas, adv. where, 744.
Whereas, adv. where.
Wight, adj. [wight], stout, strong, 96. [Icel. vigr, serviceable for war.]
Witsonday, sb. Whit-Sunday, 731. [White Sunday, perhaps from white garments worn on that day. Vigfusson.]
Wode, adj. violent, raging, 479. [A.S. wód, mad, raging.] 'What shuld he studie and make himselven wood.'—Chaucer, C. T., 184. ' . . . wode within this wood.'—Shakspere, Mid. N. Dr., II. i. 192.
Wold, pp. willed, wished, 304. [A.S. willen, pt. I. wolde.]
Woll, vb. wishes to, would, 87.
Wyage, sb. voyage, 16. [O.Fr. reiagne.]
Wyynge, sb. [winning], gain, 13. [A.S. winnan.]

Yentyll, adj. [gentle], noble, gallant, 20. [O.Fr. gentil.] 'gentil, . . . gallant, noble.'—Cotgrave.
Yll, adj. [ill], wicked, 37.
Ylmes, sb. [illness], wickedness, 43. 'She that is vnchaste is a sea and treasure of all ilnesse.'—Vives.
Ymageyne, pp. imagined, planned, 2.
Ynow, adj. pl. enough, 84. [A.S. genóh.]
Yode, pt. rode, 636.
Yought, sb. youth, 65. [A.S. geógh.]

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.
Early English Text Society
Extra series. no.41,43,50